CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR

GUNNISON AND HARLEY

NEW YORK EDITION

SILVER, BURDETT & COMPANY

possed

doubt & fearing

Outline forms of Sub Uses

Main verb	Incomplete time	Completed time
present Future Imperative	present	perfect
perfect pluperfect imperfect	Imperfect	pluperfect

266-7 300-298-2-298-6

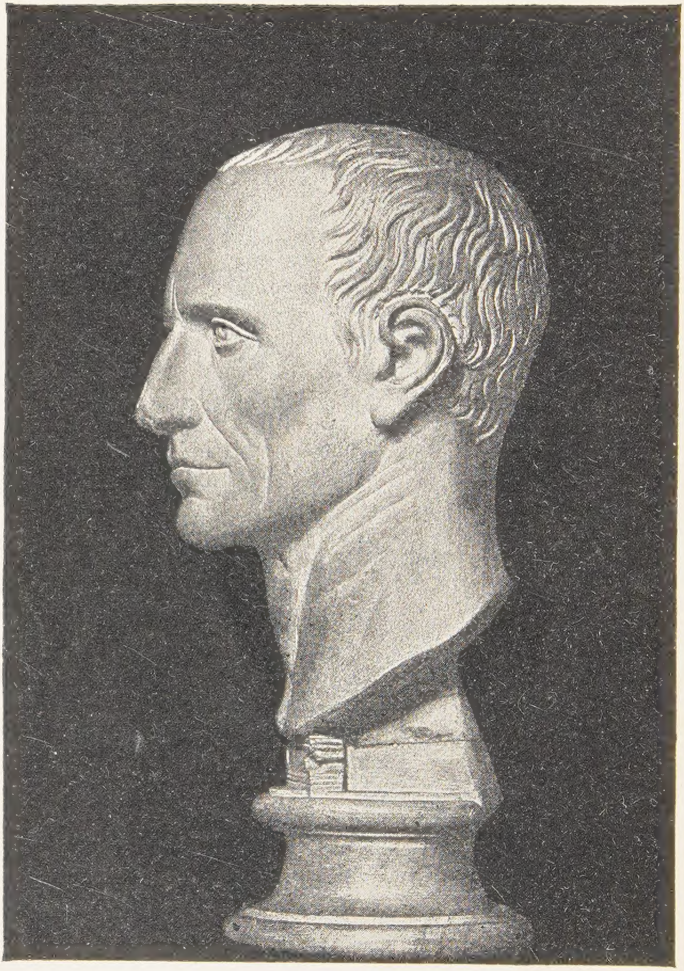
Video quid faciat
Vidi .. faceret
Video .. fecerit
Vidi .. fecisset

G. M. ELLIOTT LIBRARY
CINCINNATI BIBLE SEMINARY
2700 GLENWAY AVE.
P. O. BOX 043200
CINCINNATI, OHIO 45204-320

Landis True
Spencerport H.S.

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2023 with funding from
Kahle/Austin Foundation

https://archive.org/details/caesarsgallicwar0000walt_i0y3



JULIUS CAESAR
From the marble bust in the British Museum

G. M. ELLIOTT LIBRARY
CINCINNATI BIBLE SEMINARY
2700 GLENWAY AVE.
P. O. BOX 043200
CINCINNATI, OHIO 45204-3200

CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR

BOOKS I–IV
AND SELECTIONS FROM BOOKS V–VII

WITH

NOTES, GRAMMATICAL APPENDIX, AND PROSE COMPOSITION

BY

WALTER B. GUNNISON, PH.D.
PRINCIPAL OF ERASMUS HALL HIGH SCHOOL
BROOKLYN, NEW YORK

AND

WALTER S. HARLEY, A.M.
TEACHER OF LATIN, ERASMUS HALL HIGH SCHOOL

With Additional Selections for Sight Reading, from Caesar's Civil War and from Cornelius Nepos.

SILVER, BURDETT AND COMPANY
NEW YORK BOSTON CHICAGO

570.01
C128c

Copyright, 1907, 1911,
By SILVER, BURDETT AND COMPANY.

60836

PREFACE

At a time when so many excellent school editions of Caesar's Gallic War have been offered to the teachers of the country, representing the best scholarship and highest type of pedagogical presentation, it is but proper that a new edition should present its claims to consideration.

These must rest in large measure on the attempt to promote economy and convenience. The demands of the courses of study of our high schools and academies have so increased during the last few years as to suggest the wisdom of having all the required work for the second year of Latin in as compact form as possible. At present three books in Latin are used during this year: a grammar, a prose composition, and a Caesar text with its notes, vocabulary, history, etc. The aim in this edition is to place these three in one volume, containing all the text required for admission to college, all the grammar needed for the full interpretation of the text, together with all the usual grammatical forms for reference and for review, and a complete series of exercises in prose composition sufficient for the year's work.

By this arrangement it is felt that there will be not alone a marked economy in the cost to the pupil, but, what is far more important, a great saving of time through the easier reference from one part of the work to the other parts. For the most effective treatment,

FULL-PAGE ILLUSTRATIONS

Julius Caesar	*Frontispiece*
	PAGE
Caesar as Imperator	x
The Death of Caesar	xvi
A Roman Camp	xxvi
Constructing an Agger	xxxii
Roman and Gallic Soldiers. Colored Plate I	*following* xxxvi
Roman Officers. Colored Plate II	" "
A Roman Legionary Soldier. Colored Plate III	" "
Storming a Stronghold. Colored Plate IV	" "
Caesar's Bridge over the Rhine	98
The Surrender of Vercingetorix to Caesar	*facing* 144

MAPS AND BATTLE PLANS

	FACING PAGE
Gaul in the Time of Caesar	1
Helvetia and Neighboring Country	6
Campaign Map for 58 B.C.	
Defeat of the Helvetii	19
Battle with Ariovistus	40
Campaign of 57 B.C.	44
Battle of the Axona	49
Battle of the Sabis	55
Stronghold of the Aduatuci	61
Campaign against the Veneti	76
Campaign of 55 B.C.	86

Caesar as Imperator

INTRODUCTION

THE LIFE OF CAESAR

1. **The Roman Republic.** — After the expulsion of King Tarquin, about five centuries B.C., the Roman government became a republic. The chief officers were two consuls, or presidents, elected annually. A senate consisting at first of three hundred members, enlarged later to six hundred, was an advisory body, whose power and authority increased with the growth of the republic. Starting with a single city, the Roman nation gradually extended its sway until, in 64 B.C., it included all Italy, Sicily, Sardinia, Spain, Illyricum, Macedonia and Greece, northern Africa, Gaul between the Rhone and the Apennines, and Asia Minor. In other words, Rome was the mistress of all the territory surrounding the Mediterranean. The conquest of Greece brought to the city Greek scholars, writers, and artists, who spread the higher learning and civilization of their land. One result of these foreign conquests was great national and personal wealth. But with wealth came luxury and the loss of the sturdy virtues that had been developed in the earlier days. Socially, the people were divided into the nobles (or men of senatorial rank), the knights (or men of wealth), the commons, and slaves. Between the rich and the poor there was frequent strife, owing to the unjust distribution of land and the undue power of the senate, which was cast on the side of the few great landowners. Politically, two parties came into existence after the foreign conquests, — the aristocratic, and the democratic or popular. Under the leadership of Sulla and Marius, the rivalry of these parties became most intense. But these leaders depended for their support upon the army, rather than upon the free will of the people, and thereafter the army was to be recognized in the settlement of political questions. There were many problems for statesmen

to solve at Rome at the beginning of the first century B.C. Popular government, as then conducted, was a failure. The extent of the Roman territory, the differing interests of the population, the corrupt condition of the senate, called for a leader of the highest ability. This man appeared, destined to lay the foundation of a mighty empire, and to be the foremost man in all Roman history, — Julius Caesar.

2. **Caesar's Ancestry.** — Gaius Julius Caesar was born at Rome, July 12, 100 (or 102) [1] B.C. The distinguished Julian family of which he was a member traced its history to Iulus, son of the Trojan Aeneas, who by tradition was descended from the gods. His father, who died when Julius was still a boy, had held the office of praetor. His mother, Aurelia, was a Roman matron of the highest type. To her wise training and influence, in a time of degeneracy, the son owed much, a debt which he repaid by deep affection and gratitude. It was the good fortune of Aurelia to live to see the success of her son in the greatest undertaking of his life, the conquest of Gaul.

3. **Education.** — Caesar's early education was received from M. Antonius Gnipho, a Gaul who resided in his pupil's family. It is probable that this instructor aroused in him a special interest in the Gallic land, which afterwards became so closely associated with his name. As to the extent of his education, we know that he spoke Greek as well as his own language, that he was an orator of great ability, that he was fond of books and art, and that he was an excellent gymnast and rider. The deeds of his uncle Marius, the greatest general that Rome had seen, must have filled his youthful mind with enthusiasm for military life.

4. **Marriage.** — At the age of fourteen, Caesar was appointed priest of Jupiter (*flamen dialis*). Four years later, he married Cornelia, daughter of a leader of the popular party, but on the return of Sulla as leader of the opposite faction he was ordered to be divorced. His refusal to obey was followed by dismissal from the priesthood, together with loss of his wife's dowry and

[1] The date is uncertain; 100 according to Suetonius, 102 according to Mommsen.

his own right of inheritance. The incident required him to retire from Rome, and though he was finally pardoned, it led to Sulla's prophecy that a youth of such metal would some day overthrow the aristocracy, "for in young Caesar there were many Mariuses."

5. First Military Service. — Going to Asia in 81 B.C., he began his career as a soldier by serving as aide-de-camp in the war against Mithridates, winning a civic crown (*corona civica*) for bravery. He was not without some experience in sea service also, for he joined the expedition of Servilius against the pirates of Cilicia.

6. First Speeches. — Returning to Rome after the death of Sulla, Caesar made his first speeches in several legal cases. Though not successful, his efforts were well received. It may be owing to his lack of success that he now went to Rhodes to study under Apollonius Molo, a noted teacher of rhetoric and oratory, who included Cicero among his pupils. It was on the way there that he was captured by pirates, who held him for a ransom. This he agreed to pay, with the threat that when released he would return and hang them all; he kept his word.

7. First Command of an Army. — Caesar's stay in Rhodes was shortened by an act of patriotism. Seeing that Mithridates, king of Pontus, was gaining in power in the absence of a sufficient Roman force, he raised a volunteer army, became its leader, and succeeded in driving back the king's general.

8. Quaestorship. — In 74 B.C., Caesar returned to Rome and began his political career. He had been appointed pontifex and was now elected military tribune. Allying himself with those who opposed the constitution of Sulla, he was elected quaestor, or public treasurer (68 B.C.). This office was the first in the "cursus honorum," and had to be held before one could be a member of the senate. Caesar's special duty called him to Spain as financial secretary to the governor of that distant province.

9. Aedileship. — Caesar was elected curule aedile for the year 65 B.C. This official had charge of the public buildings and streets, and was afforded a special opportunity to win popular favor for later offices by providing public games and amusements.

Caesar's entertainments of this sort were noted for their splendor, but they involved him in heavy debt.

10. **Pontifex Maximus.** — In 63 B.C., Caesar became pontifex maximus, or chief priest, an office of great influence and to be held for life. Besides having charge of the religious system of the nation, he was required to keep the calendar. The calendar at that time was much in need of revision, and it is to Caesar that we owe the corrections which, with slight alteration, have been accepted since 45 B.C.

11. **Praetorship.** — We know nothing of Caesar's record as praetor, or Roman judge, in 62 B.C. But we know that the following year as propraetor he became governor of Farther Spain, where he conquered several mountain tribes and gave evidence of his qualities as general. He reorganized the civil government of the province and personally accumulated sufficient means to enable him to satisfy his creditors at Rome. For his successes in Spain the senate granted him a triumph, but this honor he gave up voluntarily, that he might become a candidate for the consulship.

12. **The First Triumvirate.** — Caesar now became the leader of the popular party, which for twenty years had found no able successor of Marius and Cinna. At this time there were two other men of special prominence in the nation, Pompey, the greatest soldier of the day, and Crassus, the richest man in Rome. Pompey had just returned from his victories in the East. He had disbanded his army and now found the senate in opposition to himself, as it was to Caesar. To further their interests and more successfully meet the senate, these three men formed a league known as the First Triumvirate (60 B.C.). By the terms of their alliance Pompey was to receive land for his soldiers, and have his acts in the East ratified, Crassus was to gain an opportunity for political advancement, and Caesar was to become consul and later a governor.

13. **Consulship.** — Caesar's election to the consulship for 59 B.C. was easily won. His colleague Bibulus proved to be a weak associate, so that it was humorously said that the consuls were Julius and Caesar. The year was one of conflict with the senate. The proceedings of that body had never been public;

Caesar caused a daily report of them to be posted in the Forum, where it could be read. As consul he secured the demands of Pompey (12), proposed an agrarian law and a law against extortion, and obtained for himself the Gallic provinces for five years (59–55 B.C.). At a conference of the triumvirate at Luca in 56, this period was extended for five years more (54–50 B.C.).

14. Caesar's Provinces. — The territory assigned to Caesar included three provinces: Illyricum, east of the Adriatic; Cisalpine Gaul, lying east of the Alps along the Po; and Transalpine Gaul or Narbonensis, extending from the Alps southwestward to the Pyrenees. Transalpine Gaul, which had belonged to the Romans since 121 B.C., was distinguished as the Province, from which modern Provence is named. Caesar's relation to these provinces was both civil and military. As civil officer he would preside over the courts and provide for the general government. As military officer he would protect them from insurrection and invasion.

15. The Conquest of Gaul. — Caesar had just finished his consulship when he learned of the proposed invasion of the Province by the Helvetii. Immediately leaving Rome, he mustered an army of six legions. The conflict that followed with the invaders was the first event in the conquest of Gaul proper, the country bounded by the Atlantic Ocean, the Rhine, the Alps, and the Pyrenees, including therefore modern France, Switzerland, and Belgium. This conquest, the task of eight years (58–51 B.C.), was one of the most important events of history, for it not only added a vast province to the Roman dominions, but resulted in the extension of eastern civilization to western Europe. It is because Caesar prepared the way for the spread of this civilization that we have the chief interest in his life and writings.

16. The Civil War. — The triumvirate was dissolved by the death of Crassus (53 B.C.), and by the estrangement of Caesar and Pompey. As the time approached for Caesar's second consulship, which was to follow his ten years in Gaul, the law required that he give up the command of his army and become a private citizen at Rome before his election. This he refused to do. With a faithful legion he crossed the Rubicon, a small

THE DEATH OF CAESAR *Rochegrosse.*

stream between his Cisalpine province and Italy. Civil war was inevitable. Pompey fled with his forces to Brundisium, thence to Greece. Having overrun Italy and undertaken the government at Rome, Caesar proceeded to Spain, where he secured control of the army in that country. Now in pursuit of Pompey he crossed the Adriatic and met his great rival in a decisive battle at Pharsalus (48 B.C.). Pompey fled to Egypt, where, upon landing, he was put to death by order of the king of that country.

17. Caesar as Dictator. — In 48 Caesar was appointed consul for five years, in 46 dictator for ten years, and in 44 dictator for life. To establish this supremacy he fought his last wars. He assigned the throne of Egypt to Cleopatra, defeating her brother Ptolemy. In Asia he suppressed the revolt of the son of Mithridates with such promptness that he could report the victory in his three famous words, veni, vidi, vici. He broke the power of Pompey's successors in Africa by defeating Scipio at Thapsus and Cato at Utica (46 B.C.). These and former victories he now had the honor to celebrate in four triumphs of unusual grandeur, — over Gaul, Egypt, Pontus, and Africa. In the following year the battle of Munda, in Spain, with the two sons of Pompey ended all resistance to his power.

18. Caesar's Reforms. — Caesar now turned his attention to improving the welfare of the people. He established a strong central government, enlarged the senate, making it more representative, and united the people by breaking down the old distinctions. He revised the laws, reduced pauperism, established colonies, encouraged agriculture, and protected the provinces from unjust taxation.

19. Caesar's Death. — While he was thus serving his country best, his enemies, including some whom he had pardoned and favored most, conspired to take his life, claiming that he intended to become king. On the Ides (the 15th) of March, 44 B.C., they assassinated him in the senate house, at the foot of Pompey's statue. "It was the most senseless deed," says Goethe, "that ever was done." It could not save Rome from monarchy, for within fifteen years Caesar's nephew and heir, Octavius Augustus, became the first emperor.

20. **Character of Caesar.** — Though not without vices, Caesar's virtues were such as to make his character well balanced. He was courteous, self-controlled, temperate, generous, and merciful toward his personal enemies. The breadth of his intellect has excited the wonder of all men. He has been called the greatest man in antiquity, for he was of the highest genius as statesman, soldier, orator, historian, and scholar. "Had he been nothing but a soldier," says Colonel Dodge, "Caesar would have been the equal of the other great captains." With but little military training, as we have seen, he learned the art of war by experience, and rarely made an error in strategy. A strict disciplinarian, he cared for his troops as few others have done, and was idolized by them. It is true that he seems needlessly cruel in slaying a million of the Gauls, a third of all with whom he fought, "but when he quitted Gaul and threw down the gauntlet to a mightier foe, the princes sent their bravest warriors to fight under his flag." But Caesar was primarily a statesman. He was a born ruler and organizer. The supreme act of his life was rescuing Rome from anarchy and laying the foundation of the empire, whose scepter he was the first to sway in fact, if not in name. To quote from Mommsen, "Caesar was monarch, but he never played the king. Even when absolute lord of Rome, he retained the deportment of the party leader. Complaisant toward every one, it seemed that he wished to be nothing but the first among his peers."

21. **Caesar's Commentaries.** — Caesar wrote on many topics, but the history of the Gallic war and another of the civil war are all that have come down to us. The former history, called *Commentarii de Bello Gallico* (*Commentaries on the Gallic War*), was written to justify his course in Gaul, and was probably finished before the end of 51 B.C. It was written in seven books, each being the record of a year's campaign in Gaul, for the period 58–52 B.C. To these was added an eighth book for 51 B.C., by his lieutenant, Aulus Hirtius. These commentaries tell of the defeat of the Helvetii and of Ariovistus in 58; of the conquest of the Belgae in 57; of the naval war with the Veneti and of the campaigns against the Aquitani and tribes on the northern coast in 56; of the defeat of two German tribes in Gaul and the

invasion of Germany and Britain in 55; of the second invasion of Britain in 54; of the second expedition to Germany and of the conflict with the Gallic chief Ambiorix in 53; of the last mighty struggle of all the tribes for freedom under the brave Vercingetorix in 52, and finally, of the taking of the last stronghold, Uxellodunum, in 51.

It is not merely a history of warfare that Caesar has given us, but an account of the country and the people who were among the first to live in western Europe. It is the earliest source of information regarding that part of the world.

THE GAULS

22. **Government.** — The Gauls whom Caesar conquered were divided into about sixty tribes. They were chiefly Celtic in origin and spoke different dialects of the Celtic language. These tribes did not form one nation. Though it is said that representatives met yearly to consider matters of general concern. Naturally, friendly alliances existed between some tribes, while others were subject to the more powerful. With few exceptions they had dethroned their kings, the government passing into the hands of nobles or chieftains, and a senate or council of elders. In some tribes, such as the Haedui, magistrates were elected annually.

23. **Civilization.** — In civilization the northern tribes were least advanced, while those in the south developed because of intercourse with the Roman Province, chiefly through merchants from Narbo and the old Greek city of Massilia (Marseilles). The central Gauls sowed grain and were famous for their horses and cattle; the Aquitani were miners; the Veneti were sailors. The houses were of timber and wickerwork. The people lived in open villages or in towns fortified with massive walls. They collected taxes and tolls. They used coined money. In their written language they adopted the characters of the Greek alphabet. Their religion was druidism, of which Caesar has given much interesting information in Book VI.

24. **Dress.** — Physically the Gauls were tall, fair-haired, and of great strength. They wore trousers (*braccae*) and many-

colored shirts, in distinction from other nations of their time, and were known for their jewelry of gold and bronze (see Plate I.).

25. **Warfare.** — Much of the time of the Gauls was spent in warfare. Their weapons were a heavy javelin or pike, and a long two-edged sword made for striking rather than thrusting. Their defensive armor was a large shield and a metal helmet, the latter often being made in the shape of some animal's head. The strength of the Gallic army was in its cavalry. The infantry advanced to the attack in close array (by phalanxes) protected by shields above and in front, as in the case of the Helvetii. Caesar himself testifies to the valor of his foe, but bravery and numbers counted for little before the discipline and the organization of the Roman legions.

THE GERMANS

26. The two battles which Caesar fought with German armies in 58 and 55 B.C. were on Gallic soil, to which the migrating Germans had come. In 55 Caesar entered Germany itself, and again in 53, but these brief expeditions were intended chiefly for display, and resulted in no conquest. The Romans knew little about Germany, although the Cimbri and Teutones, their well-nigh invincible enemies of the preceding century, had come from that country. Caesar was the first to learn of the nature and customs of the inhabitants and has left a record of his observations in Books IV and VI of the Commentaries. He found that they were less civilized than the Gauls, having scarcely left the nomadic stage. They lived in isolated tribes. Being herdsmen, they subsisted upon their cattle. They were tall in stature and stern looking. They were trained warriors, the Suebi alone having a standing army of a hundred thousand men. They worshiped the sun and the moon and were highly superstitious.

THE BRITONS

27. The history of Britain may be said to begin with Caesar's invasions of that island in 55 and 54 B.C. As a reason for these invasions, he says that the Britons had given aid to the Gauls

in their recent wars, and that he wished to learn personally about the people and their land. Long before his time the island had been famous for its tin, for which Phoenician merchants came and bartered their wares. Like the Gauls, the inhabitants of Britain were Celts. The coast tribes had customs like those of their neighbors on the continent, while those in the interior were less advanced. In battle they used a special kind of chariot drawn by trained horses. Druidism flourished in Britain even to a greater extent than in Gaul. On his second expedition Caesar conquered the country for some distance beyond the Thames, and compelled the chiefs to pay tribute and give hostages. But after his return to Gaul, the country regained its independence, and it was not until a century later that the Romans sent another army to secure the conquest.

CAESAR'S ARMY

Divisions of the Army

28. **The Infantry.** — The main division of the Roman infantry was the legion (*legio*). This consisted of six thousand men when fully recruited, but through disability or loss of life the number in actual service was smaller, probably four thousand or five thousand. It is clearly impossible to tell the exact number for a particular legion at a given time, for recruits were not added to the old legions, but formed into new. Caesar had six[1] legions in 58 B.C., eight in 57–55, ten in 53, and eleven[2] in 52. Each legion was divided into ten cohorts, thirty maniples, sixty centuries.

100 (?) men	in	1 century (*centuria, ordo*)
2 centuries	in	1 maniple (*manipulus*)
3 maniples	in	1 cohort (*cohors*)
10 cohorts	in	1 legion

29. **Auxiliaries.** — We have no knowledge of the number of auxiliaries (*auxilia*) in Caesar's army. They were not Roman

[1] Numbered 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12.

[2] Adding 1, 3, 13, 14, 15, to those of 58 B.C.

citizens. They included archers (*sagittarii*) from Crete and Numidia, slingers (*funditores*) from the Balearic Islands, and the soldiers of light armor (*milites levis armaturae*). The last kind of troops carried the usual sword and spear, but had a light round shield (*parma*), and wore light defensive armor in distinction from the legionary (40). The auxiliaries were used chiefly to make a show of strength, and generally were stationed on the wings (*alae*) of the army, from which they were called *alarii* (see Plate I.).

30. **Cavalry.** — This section of the army (*equitatus*, *equites*) was composed entirely of mercenaries from Gaul, Germany, and Spain. They numbered four thousand in 58 B.C., five thousand in 55, most of whom were furnished by the Haedui and Treveri. The divisions were *alae*, or regiments of three hundred or four hundred men; *turmae*, or squadrons of thirty-three men; and *decuriae*, of eleven men each. The officers were decurions (*decuriones*) and prefects (*praefecti equitum*). Caesar's cavalry won little glory in battle, being frequently defeated by much smaller numbers of the enemy.

31. **The Artillery.** — There was no regular artillery corps. The engines (56) for hurling stones and arrows were operated by skilled workmen (*fabri*) who ranked as legionaries.

32. **Baggage Train.** — The tents, mills for grinding grain, and stores of provisions and weapons were carried by pack-animals (*iumenta*), either horses or mules. It is estimated that about five hundred animals were required for each legion. These animals were attended by slaves (*calones*). The baggage train was called *impedimenta* because it was an "impediment" or hindrance to the army in its progress. A legion without its baggage was called *legio expedita*. For the personal baggage (*sarcinae*) carried by the soldiers, see 42.

The Officers

33. **Commander in Chief.** — Caesar, as commander in chief, was called *dux belli*, until his victory over the Helvetii, when he received the title *imperator*. His staff included the lieutenants (*legati*), the quaestor, spies (*speculatores*), and camp companions

(*contubernales*), young men who had come to learn the art of war.

34. Lieutenants. — The *legati* may be considered as lieutenant-generals, being the intimate advisers of the imperator. They were sometimes assigned to conduct special expeditions, or to be commanders of the legions in battle, a custom introduced by Caesar. In the absence of the general, they held his authority and were regularly in charge of the winter-quarters. They were men of senatorial rank, the most prominent being Labienus, Publius Crassus, and Quintus Cicero, the brother of the famous orator. Caesar mentions the names of eighteen men who were his lieutenants at different times during the years 58–52 B.C.

35. Quaestor. — The *quaestor* or treasurer was one of the quaestors elected by the people at Rome, and was assigned to the province by lot, to be associated with the governor. In connection with the army, his duty was to provide for the food, pay, clothing, and equipment of the soldiers, like a modern quartermaster. Caesar sometimes placed his quaestor in command of a legion.

36. Tribunes. — Six military tribunes (*tribuni militum*) were attached to each legion. They were generally young men of equestrian rank, appointed for personal or political reasons rather than because of military training. In earlier times they had charge of the legion in turn, but in Caesar's army the legions were under the command of the lieutenants, as stated in 34. "The duties of the tribunes became mainly administrative and judicial; they cared for the levying, the discharge, and the equipment of the troops, and for the army supplies, under the orders of the quaestor; and they presided at courts-martial and took part in the councils of war. Sometimes they led the legions on the march and received subordinate military commands."

37. Centurions. — Much of Caesar's success was due to the practical experience and faithfulness of his centurions (*centuriones*). They were selected from the ranks by the commander in chief because of good service and were men of humbler birth than the lieutenants or tribunes. Each legion had sixty centurions, one for every century. They were divided into ten classes of six each. From the tenth class to the first there was

a regular system of promotion, which must have done much to improve the service. The six centurions of the first cohort were called *centuriones primorum ordinum*, and were entitled to special privileges, such as a place in the councils of war. The senior centurion of this cohort (*primipilus*) was the chief centurion of the legion, and was an officer of great responsibility. The maniples and cohorts were commanded by the senior centurions of these divisions. In his Commentaries, Caesar frequently pays compliment to the centurions and other officers for special acts of bravery (see Plate II.).

38. Besides the officers mentioned above there were prefects (*praefecti*), who commanded the auxiliaries and cavalry, and the decurions (*decuriones*), who were the subordinate cavalry leaders (30). Other members of the army, distinct from the regular soldiers, were the *evocati*, veterans who had completed their term of service but had reenlisted (had been "called out") at the request of the commander; the standard bearers (*aquiliferi, signiferi*); and the musicians (*bucinatores, cornicines, tubicines*) (see Plate II.).

The Legionary Soldiers

39. The soldiers of a legion (*legionarii*) were Roman citizens. The age of service was seventeen to forty-six, and the period of enlistment probably twenty years, after which, if they volunteered, they were known as *evocati* (38). The fixed pay of a soldier was 225 denarii a year (about $45), the amount received by a laborer at Rome. This remuneration was increased by a share of the booty and by gifts from the commander. Twice a month an allowance of grain, the principal article of food, was made to each man, about half a bushel, the cost of which was deducted from the soldier's pay. Many traders (*mercatores*) followed the army to supply the men with their wares.

40. **Clothing and Armor.** — The soldier wore (1) a sleeveless woolen tunic (*tunica*); (2) a coat of mail (*lorica*) made of leather overlaid with bands of metal; (3) a woolen mantle (*sagum*) for wet or cold weather; (4) heavy leather shoes (*caligae*); (5) an iron helmet (*cassis*) or one of leather and brass (*galea*), often decorated with colored plumes (*cristae, insignia*). His shield

(*scutum*) was about four feet high and two feet broad, and was curved to protect the body. It was made of layers of wood covered with leather and bound with metal. The outer surface was decorated with the emblem of the cohort, such as a winged thunderbolt. When not in use, the shield was protected by a leather covering (*tegimentum*) (see Plate III.).

SHIELD (*Scutum*)

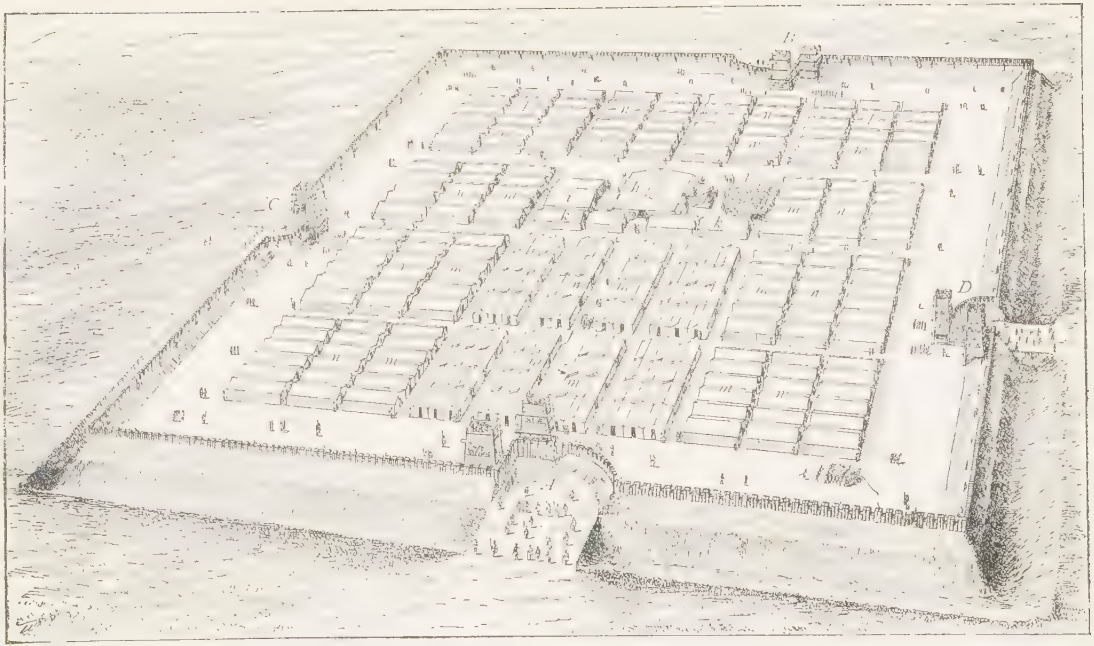
41. **Weapons.** — The soldier had two weapons, a sword and a spear. The sword (*gladius*) was about two feet long, straight, and two edged. It was carried on the right side, while the shield was necessarily on the left. The spear (*pilum*) was between six and seven feet in length, and consisted of an iron point two feet long inserted in a wooden shaft. The exact shape of the pilum of Caesar's army is not known. In the illustrations given on page xxxiv (*a*) was used a century before the Gallic War, (*b*) in the time of the empire. For the use of these weapons see 48.

SWORD AND SCABBARD (*Gladius*)

42. **Baggage.** — The soldier carried his rations, extra clothing, and some tools and utensils, amounting at times to a weight of sixty pounds. For convenience in carrying, these articles were tied in bundles (*sarcinae*) and attached to a forked pole, which was known as the mule of Marius (*mulus Marianus*), having been first introduced by that general. This was carried over the shoulder. A soldier without his sarcinae was called *expeditus* (see Plate I.).

The Camp

43. The Roman camp (*castra*) was always arranged and fortified with great care, even when it was to be used for only a single night. The first essential was a good location, on high, sloping ground, provided with water and wood, and having no large forest near by to conceal the enemy. The sloping ground was



A Porta praetoria
B Porta decumana
C Porta principalis dextra
D Porta principalis sinistra
e Via principalis
f Via quintana
g Via decumana
h Praetorium
i Quaestorium
j Forum
kk Tribuni
ll Auxilia
mm Equites
nn Pedites

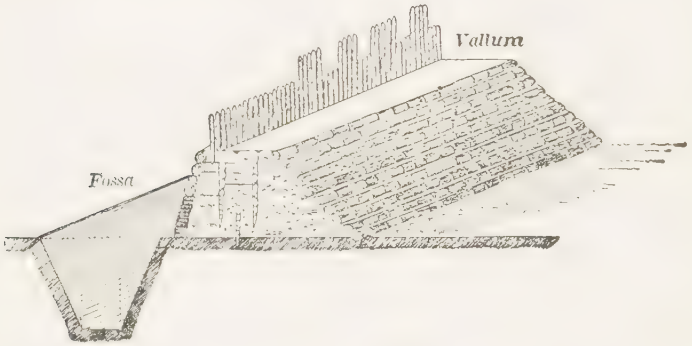
A Roman Camp

necessary to secure an advantage in case of attack. While the army was on the march, a detachment was sent ahead to select such a place. When the left wing arrived, the work of arranging the camp began at once, and since the soldier was trained to use the spade as well as the sword, it was completed in a few hours. The front of the camp faced the enemy, with the rear on higher ground (*superior locus*). The general plan was the same from day to day. In shape it was a rectangle, surrounded by a wall and ditch (44). There were four principal gates, one on each side. The front gate was *porta praetoria*, the rear *porta decumana* (see illustration). Within the wall, on four sides of the camp, there was left a wide space for marshaling troops and for protecting the interior from the enemy's missiles. Two parallel streets (*via principalis* and *via quintana*) divided the interior into three sections. In the rear or highest section were the headquarters of the general (*praetorium*) and of the quaestor (*quaestorium*), with the altar (*ara*) for religious observances, and the *forum*, where the general addressed the soldiers. Each division of the army had a certain position assigned to it. The tents (*tabernacula*, *pelles*) were large enough for ten men, and were made of leather. Hence *sub pellibus* meant "in the tents."

The permanent winter camp (*hiberna*) was constructed on the same plan as the temporary summer camp (*castra aestiva*) just described. It was larger, however, and had wooden huts with straw-thatched roofs instead of leather tents.

44. Wall and Ditch. The Romans fortified the camp by means of a wall (*vallum*) and an adjacent ditch (*fossa*). The construction of these was the most important work in connection with the camp. When the ditch was dug along the outside of the camp, the earth thrown inward formed the wall, which was then faced with sod and strengthened by stakes and bundles of brush (*fascines*). It was mounted from the inside by means of steps. Upon the wall was a breastwork of stakes (*valli*), and in addition towers were sometimes erected at different points over the wall. The wall was not only to furnish protection, but to afford an elevation from which spears might be thrown upon the enemy. There seems to have been a fixed proportion in the dimensions of the fortification, the height of the wall being

two thirds the width of the ditch. Thus in the camp on the Axona (Book II, chap. 5) the former was twelve feet and the latter eighteen feet. But as a rule they were smaller, the wall being from six to eight feet high, the ditch nine to twelve feet wide and seven to nine deep.



Wall and Ditch

45. Watches. – The night from sunset to sunrise was divided into four equal watches (*vigiliae*). The length of each, therefore, was three hours or less, varying with the time of year, but midnight always marked the end of the second watch and the beginning of the third. The musicians sounded a tattoo at night, a signal for the close of each watch, and a reveille at dawn. The guard consisted of five cohorts, one for each gate and one for the headquarters.

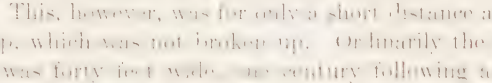
The Army on the March

46. Marching was usually begun at sunrise, or if necessary soon after midnight (*tertia vigilia*). It was continued about seven hours, the distance covered being fifteen or twenty miles. Any greater distance was called a forced march (*magnum iter*), many of which were made by Caesar. The army on the march was divided into (1) the van (*primum agmen*), consisting of the cavalry and light-armed infantry; (2) the main body of the troops (*agmen legionum*); (3) the rear guard (*agmen novissimum*). The

van might have to engage the enemy, to reconnoiter, or to select a position for the camp (§ 43). The order of the second division depended upon circumstances. When not near the enemy, the legions were separated, each being followed by its own baggage. In this order the legions were *expeditae*. If an attack of the enemy was expected, most of the legions were massed together, followed by the baggage of the whole army and by the remaining legions as a rear guard. In this order they were *expeditae*. But the individual soldiers were *expediti*, for besides helmets and shields they carried their personal baggage (*sarcinae*, § 23), which had to be disposed of before battle. The enemy sought the advantage of attacking the army *sub sarcinis suis agmine, in itinere* (). Again, the army might march in line of battle (*acies instructa*), that is, in three parallel lines, ready for immediate action. This, however, was for only a short distance away from the camp, which was not broken up. Ordinarily the marching column was forty feet wide, one century following another or two centuries marching abreast. It is said that the order of precedence was changed from day to day, so that the same legion might not always lead the line.

The Army in Battle

47. Arrangement of the Lines. — The usual arrangement of Caesar's army in battle was in three lines (*triplex acies*). The details of this plan are not altogether known, but the simpler facts seem to be as follows. The legions stood side by side, each in three lines of cohorts. Four of the ten cohorts of each legion were in the front line, while the others formed the second and third lines, three in each, thus:—



In each cohort the three maniples stood side by side, one century behind the other, thus:—

The first line consisted of the most experienced soldiers, while the third was generally held in reserve. The front was divided into three sections, right, left, and center (*cornu dextrum, cornu sinistrum, acies media*). The usual place of the auxiliaries (29) was on the wings, as they were not of service in making a charge. The cavalry (30), after skirmishing, guarded the auxiliaries on the wings, and in case of victory pursued the fleeing enemy. When no reserve was needed or when it was desired to extend the front, the army was drawn up in two lines (*acies duplex*, Book II, chap. 24). Special arrangements of small bodies of troops were the *testudo* ("tortoise"), in which the men were in close array, holding their overlapping shields above their heads (Plate IV.); and the *orbis* ("circle"), corresponding to our "hollow square," in which the men stood as on the circumference of a circle, facing outward.

48. Manner of Attack. — Before the battle the *sarcinae* (42) had to be laid aside, and the shield and helmet, with the decorations (*insignia*), had to be adjusted. For this the skirmishing line was expected to gain time. The general, if possible, passed from one legion to another with an encouraging speech (*cohortatio*). At the signal given by the trumpeters, the first line, with spears raised in their right hands, charged upon the enemy, hurling the weapons when within the required distance. Much depended upon this first assault, which was especially effective if made down hill. The rest of the contest was with the sword, hand to hand. As the first line weakened it was relieved by the second, while the third, as stated before, was held in reserve or deployed to resist a flank attack. A battle near the camp was of course more advantageous than one on the march (*ex itinere*).

49. Standards. — There were four kinds of standards.

1. The eagle (*aquila*) of each legion. This was of silver or bronze, mounted upon a staff. It was a sacred emblem, in the care of the chief centurion (*primipilus*), and carried by one whom he appointed (*aquilifer*) (see Plate II.).

2. The standards (*signa*) of the cohorts, of which there was a great variety. A common design was the figure of an animal, or an open hand having under it, upon the staff, a number of

other emblems. These colors, standards, were carried by the *signiferi* (see Plate II.).

3. A small white or red banner (*vexillum*) used by the cavalry (see Plate II.).

4. A large red flag (*vexillum*) displayed at the general's tent as a signal for battle.

The phrase *signa inferre* meant "to advance"; *signa referre*, "to retreat"; *signa convertere*, "to face about."

50. Music. — Wind instruments of music were used to carry the orders of the commanders in battle, as well as in camp duty (45). They were the *tuba*, a long straight trumpet; the *lituus*, a curved trumpet of the cavalry; the *bucina*, a curved bugle; and the *cornu*, a horn [illegible] (see Plate II.).

Siege Operations

51. Methods of Capturing Towns. — The towns of the Gauls were fortified with strongly built walls. To capture such places, the Romans employed one of three means: assault, blockade, or a long siege.

1. Assault (*oppugnatio repentina*) was an attempt to break down the walls without long-continued preparation. The defenders were dislodged by archers and slingers and by means of engines (*tormenta*, 56). The moat or ditch about the town was filled with brush and earth. The battering ram (*aries* 55) and scaling ladders (*scalae*) were applied. Some formed a testudo (47) for attack; others under protection sought to undermine the wall or set fire to the gates (see Plate IV.).

2. Blockade (*obsidio*) consisted in surrounding the town with a series of fortifications, including redoubts (*castella*) held by garrisons (*praesidia*), the aim being to [illegible] defenders into surrender, as at Alesia (Book VII).

3. The active siege [illegible] was directed against places that were strongly fortified or well supplied with provisions. This involved the building of an *agger* (52).

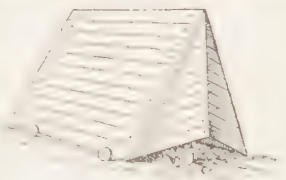
52. Agger. — The agger was a "large mound or terrace, composed of a core of earth and timber, supported by walls of logs piled crosswise in successive layers" (p. xxxii). It was begun

a Vinea *b* Pluteus

CONSTRUCTING AN AGGER

at a distance of four or five hundred feet from the town wall, toward which it extended at a right angle, and was gradually brought up to the wall, equaling it in height. Its length might therefore be four or five hundred feet, width fifty or sixty feet, height forty to eighty. The purpose of this great structure was to furnish the Romans a means of access to the top of the enemy's fortifications. In the war with the Belgae (Book II, chap. 30), the agger seems to have been "a smooth roadway" upon which a tower (54) was erected to the height of the wall.

53. Plutei. Vineae. — During the building of the agger the soldiers were protected by *plutei*, wicker shields covered with rawhides and moving on three rollers; by *musculi*, small sheds of great strength; and by *vineae* ("grape arbors"), which were movable wooden sheds, sixteen feet long, open at each end, and covered on the roof with hides. The vineae were placed end to end, forming a long gallery under which the men could move to the works, shielded from fire as well as darts thrown by the enemy.



Musculus

54. Turris. — The movable tower (*turris ambulatoria*) is frequently mentioned by Caesar, and was used as an aid in agger building. It consisted of as many as ten stories, connected by stairs, and was moved upon rollers to the wall of the enemy's town. A bridge at the top of it could then be let down upon the wall by which the Roman soldiers who garrisoned the tower could assault the defenders of the town.

55. Aries. The battering ram (*aries*) consisted of a long beam with a heavy iron head and was used in breaking down a wall, against which it was forcibly driven. Stones were pulled from the top of a wall by a huge iron hook attached to a long pole (*falx muralis*).

56. Tormenta. The engines used for hurling heavy missiles were called *tormenta* (*torqueo*, twist "because their power was derived from the torsion of twisted ropes." They included (1) the catapult (*catapulta*), for shooting large arrows, (2) the

scorpion (*scorpio*), for shooting a single heavy arrow; (3) the *ballista*, for hurling stones; (4) the *onager* ("wild ass"), a small ballista (see Plate IV.).

CAESAR'S SHIPS

57. Caesar required ships in the war with the Veneti, 56 B.C., and in his two expeditions to Britain. They were made for the occasion and were of two kinds, war galleys and transports. The galleys (*naves longae*) in length were about eight times their breadth, and were noted for their speed. Though provided with a sail they were usually propelled by oars, which were often arranged in three banks (*triremes*). They carried the regular legionaries as fighters, the rowers (*remiges*), the sailors (*nautae*), and the pilot (*gubernator*). At the prow was a heavy beak (*rostrum*) of bronze or iron, intended for ramming the vessels of the enemy. In the war with the Veneti, grappling hooks of new design were used to cut down the enemy's sails, after which the contest was hand to hand. Missiles were thrown with great effect from towers erected upon the vessels, or by means of tormenta (56). When not in service the ships were beached rather than anchored.

The transports (*naves onerariae*) conveyed troops and supplies. They were shorter and broader than the galleys and were propelled more frequently by sails than by oars.

a

b

PILA (*Javelins*)

WORKS OF REFERENCE

1. Holmes, T. R., *Caesar's Conquest of Gaul*, Macmillan and Company, 1899.

2. Dodge, Colonel T. A., *Caesar*, Houghton, Mifflin and Company, 1892.

3. Napoleon III, *History of Julius Caesar*, Harper and Brothers, 1865.

4. Trollope, A., *The Commentaries of Caesar*, J. B. Lippincott Company, 1880.

5. Froude, J. A., *Caesar: A Sketch*, Charles Scribner's Sons, 1879.

6. Fowler, W. W., *Julius Caesar*, G. P. Putnam's Sons, 1892.

7. Merivale, C., *The Roman Triumvirates*, Charles Scribner's Sons, 1887.

8. Plutarch, *Lives of Illustrious Men*.

9. Smith, William, *Dictionary of Greek and Roman Biography*.

10. Judson, H. P., *Caesar's Army*, Ginn and Company, 1888.

11. *Teachers College Record*, Vol. III, Nos. 3 and 4, Columbia University Press, 1902.

Mommsen's *History of Rome*, Merivale's *General History of Rome*, Guizot's *History of France*, Motley's *Rise of the Dutch Republic*, Hug and Stead's *Switzerland*, Taylor's *History of Germany*, Scarth's *Roman Britain*, and other histories discuss Caesar's conquest in its relation to the early history of western Europe.

ROMAN SOLDIERS

1 Funditor 2 Miles levis armaturae 3 Miles sub sarcinis 4 Legionarius

GALLIC SOLDIERS

5 Trumpeter 6 Foot Soldier 7 Standard Bearer 8 Leader

ROMAN OFFICERS

1 Legatus	3 Centurio	5–6 Signiferi	8 Tubicen
2 Imperator	4 Lictor	7 Aquilifer	9 Buciuator

LEGIONARIUS
(Roman Legionary Soldier)

PLATE IV

STORMING A STRONGHOLD

a Turris *b* Aries *c* Testudo *d* Onager *e* Ballista

Caesar's Battles with:
1. Helvetii, 58
2. Helvetii, 58
3. Ariovistus, 58
4. Belgae, 57
5. Nervii, 57
6. Aduatuci, 57
7. Veragri, 56
8. Veneti, 56
9. Venelli, 56
10. Sotiates, 56
11. Germans, 55
12. Britons, 55
13. Vercingetorix, 52
14. Location of Bridge, 55
(B.C.)
GAUL
IN THE TIME OF
CAESAR
Scale of Roman Miles
0 20 40 60 80 100 120
BRITANNIA
OCEANUS
CENIMAGNI
Cassivellauni
TRINOVANTES
Londinium
ANTALITES
SEGONTIACI
BIBROCI
Cantium
M. GERMANICU
MORINI
Itius Portus
ATREBATES
AMBIANI
Samarobriva
Bratuspantium
BELLOVACI
Durocor
LEXOVII
EBUROVICES
Lutetia
PARISI
Metiose
VENELLI
ESUVII
DIABLINTES
AULERCI
CARNUTES
Vellaunodunum
OSISMI
CURIOSOLITES
VENETI
REDONES
CENOMANI
Cenabum
ANDES
TURONI
NAMNETES
Condivincum
Liger F.
Noviodunum
BITURIGES
Avaricum
Gorgobina
PICTONES
Lemonum
LEMOVICES
SANTONES
PETROCORII
Vesunna
Uxellodunum
Gergovia
ARVERNI
ELEUTETI
ADURCI
Segodunum
COCOSATES
VOCATES
ALTIOBROGES
Sotiates
SIBUSATES
ELUSATES
GATES
TARUSATES
PTIANII
TARBELLI
AUSCI
TOLOSATES
Tolosa
Carcaso
CANTABRI
HISPANIA
CITERIORIA
BIGERRIONES
GARUMNI
TECIOSAGES
Pyrenaei M.
Longitude
P.D. SERVOSS, N.Y.

Treverorum
Mediolanum
GALLIA
ITALIA
INTERNUM
Greenwich
ROMA

CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR

BOOK I

SUMMARY

Chap. 1. Geography of Gaul.

Chaps. 2–29. The War with the Helvetii, 58 B.C. — In the year 61 B.C. Orgetorix, an Helvetian chieftain, persuades his countrymen to plan the conquest of Gaul. Before the plan is completed, however, he is brought to trial on the charge of attempting to become king of his tribe. After his death, which was probably self-inflicted, the Helvetii continue their preparations for the conquest. They attempt to cross the Rhone three years later (58 B.C.), but are prevented by Caesar, the newly appointed governor of Illyricum, Cisalpine Gaul, and the Province. Foiled thus, they march through the country of the Sequani, three cantons crossing the Saône, the fourth being attacked and defeated by Caesar. After some parleying between Caesar and Helvetian envoys, there follows the defeat of the Roman cavalry and the treachery of Dumnorix, a Haeduan ally of the Romans. Pursuing the enemy farther, Caesar conquers them in a battle near Bibracte, the chief town of the Haeduans. The Helvetii and allied tribes are ordered to return to their own country, their forces having been reduced from 368,000 to 110,000.

Chaps. 30–54. The War with Ariovistus, 58 B.C. — Gallic chiefs inform Caesar of the invasion of the German king, Ariovistus, and of his arrogance and cruelty. They ask aid from Caesar, which he promises to give. He demands a conference with the German, who refuses to meet him and replies in a demeni

tone. Hearing further complaints against the invaders, Caesar advances and seizes the stronghold of Vesontio. Here through fear of the enemy the Roman army is panic-stricken, but confidence is restored. A meeting of the two commanders, which is finally brought about, is interrupted by the treachery of the Germans. Though the latter seek to avoid a contest till after the new moon, Caesar forces battle upon them near the Rhine, putting them to rout and driving them across the Rhine.

The nations of Gaul. Their territories.

1. Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam, quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquītānīs Garumna flūmen, ā Belgīs Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit.

Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, propterea quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant atque ea, quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent, important; proximīque sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt, cum aut suīs fīnibus eōs prohibent aut ipsī in eōrum fīnibus bellum gerunt.

Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, fīnibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septentriōnēs. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae fīnibus oriuntur, pertinent ad īnferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī, spectant

in septentriōnem et orientem sōlem. Aquītānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pȳrēnaeōs montes et eam partem Oceanī, quae est ad Hispāniam, pertinet; spectat inter occāsum sōlis et septentriōnēs.

2-29 THE WAR WITH THE HELVETII, MARCH-JUNE, 58 B.C.

The plan of Orgetorix, the Helvetian.

2. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorix. Is M. Messālā, M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus, rēgnī cupiditāte inductus coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit et cīvitātī persuāsit, ut dē fīnibus suīs cum cōpiīs exīrent: perfacile esse, cum virtūte omnibus praestārent, tōtīus Galliae imperiō potīrī.

Id hōc facilius eīs persuāsit, quod undique locī nātūrā Helvētiī continentur: una ex parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit; alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā, lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs dīvidit.

His rēbus fīēbat, ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile fīnitimīs bellum inferre possent; quā ex parte homines bellandī cupidī magnō dolōre adficiēbantur. Prō multitūdine autem hominum et prō gloriā belli atque fortitūdinis angustōs sē fīnōs habere arbitrābantur, quī in longitūdinem mīlia passuum CCXL, in lātitūdinem CLXXX patēbant.

The Helvetii prepare to leave their country. Orgetorix conspires with Casticus and Dumnorix.

3. His rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōtī constituērunt ea, quae ad proficiscendum per-

tinērent, comparāre, iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam māximum numerum coēmere, sēmentēs quam māximās facere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmentī suppeteret, cum proximīs cīvitātibus pācem et amīcitiam cōnfīrmāre. Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās biennium sibi satis esse dūxērunt; in tertium annum profectiōnem lēgibus cōnfirmant.

Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās Orgetorīx dēligitur. Is sibi lēgātiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscēpit. In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, Catamantāloedis fīliō, Sēquanō, cūius pater rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amīcus appellātus erat, ut rēgnum in cīvitāte suā occupāret, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorīgī Haeduō, frātrī Dīviciācī, quī eō tempore principātum in cīvitāte obtinēbat ac māxime plēbī acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur, persuādet eīque fīliam suam in mātrimōnium dat.

Perfacile factū esse illīs probat cōnāta perficere, propterea quod ipse suae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrus esset: nōn esse dubium, quīn tōtīus Galliae plūrimum Helvētiī possent; sē suīs cōpiīs suōque exercitū illīs rēgna conciliātūrum cōnfīrmat. Hāc ōrātiōne adductī inter sē fidem et iūs iūrandum dant, et rēgnō occupātō per trēs potentissimōs ac fīrmissimōs populōs tōtīus Galliae sēsē potīrī posse spērant.

The trial and death of Orgetorix.

1. Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per indicium ēnūntiāta. Mōribus suīs Orgetorīgem ex vinculīs causam dīcere coēgērunt; damnātum poenam sequī oportēbat, ut īgnī cremārētur.

Diē cōnstitūtā causae dictiōnis Orgetorīx ad iūdicium

omnem suam familiam, ad hominum mīlia decem, undique coēgit, et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum māgnum numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs, nē causam dīceret, sē ēripuit. Cum cīvitās ob eam rem incitāta armīs iūs suum exsequī cōnārētur, multitudinemque hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorīx mortuus est; neque abest suspīciō, ut Helvētiī arbitrantur, quīn ipse sibi mortem cōnscīverit.

The Helvetii continue their preparations. Their allies.

5. Post eius mortem ubi is quoque Helvētiī id, quod constituerant, facere cōnantur, ut ē fīnibus suīs exeant. Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vīcōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua prīvāta aedificia incendunt; frūmentum omne, praeter quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunt, ut, domum reditiōnis spē sublātā, parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula subeunda essent; trium mēnsium molita cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre iubent.

Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrīgīs, fīnitimīs, utī eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō, oppidīs suīs vīcīsque exūstīs, ūnā cum eīs proficīscantur; Bōiōsque, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōrēiamque oppūgnārant, receptōs ad sē socios sibi adsciscunt.

The two roads from Helvetia. The Helvetii decide to go through the Roman province.

6. Erant omnīnō itinera duo, quibus itineribus domō exīre possent: ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā singulī carrī dūcerentur; mōns autem altissimus im-

pendēbat, ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent; alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expedītius, propterea quod inter fīnēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nōnnūllīs locīs vadō trānsītur.

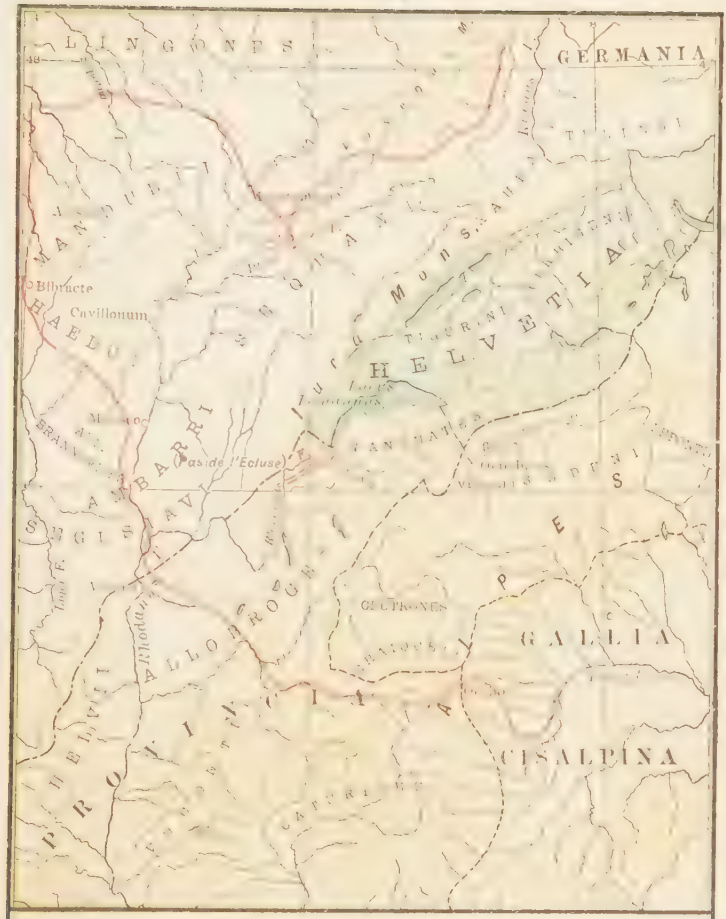
Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvētiōrum fīnibus Genāva. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs, quod nondum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidērentur, exīstimābant, vel vī coāctūrōs, ut per suōs fīnēs eōs īre paterentur. Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātīs diem dīcunt, quā diē ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant. Is diēs erat a. d. V. Kal. Apr., L. Pīsōne, A. Gabīniō cōnsulibus.

Caesar goes to Genera. The Helvetii send an embassy.

7. Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe proficīscī et, quam māximīs potest itineribus, in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad Genāvam pervenit. Prōvinciae tōtī quam māximum potest mīlitum numerum imperat (erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna); pontem, quī erat ad Genāvam, iubet rescindī.

Ubi dē ēius adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, cūius lēgātiōnis Nammēius et Verucloetius prīncipem locum obtinēbant, quī dīcerent sibi esse in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, propterea quod aliud iter habērent nūllum; rogāre, ut ēius voluntāte id sibi facere liceat.

Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat L. Cassium cōnsulem



HELVETIA AND NEIGHBORING COUNTRY

occīsum exercitumque ēius ab Helvētiīs pulsum et sub iugum missum, concēdendum non putābat; neque hominēs inimīco animō, datā facultāte per provinciam itineris faciundi, temperātūros ab iniūriā et maleficiō existimābat. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset, dum mīlitēs quōs imperāverat, convenīrent, lēgātīs respondit diem sē ad dēlīberandum sūmptūrum, sī quid vellent, ad Id.-Apr. reverterentur.

Fortifications Caesar prevents the Helvetii from crossing the Rhone.

8. Intereā eā legiōne, quam sēcum habēbat, mīlitibusque, quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, a lacū Lemanno, quī in flūmen Rhodanum ināfluit, ad montem Iūram, quī fīnēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs dīvidit, mīlia passuum ūndecimgentā mūrum, in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim, fossamque perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō praesidia dispōnit, castella communit, quō facilius, sī sē invītō trānsīre cōnārentur, prohibēre possit.

Ubi ea diēs, quam cōnstituerat cum lēgātīs, vēnit et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē more et exemplō populī Rōmānī posse iter ūlli per prōvinciam dare et, sī vim facere cōnentur, prohibitūrum ostendit. Helvētiī eā spē dēiectī, nāvibus iūnctīs ratibusque complūribus factīs, aliī vadīs Rhodani, quā minima altitūdō flūminis erat, nonnumquam interdiū, saepius noctū, sī perrumpere possent cōnātī, operis mūnītiōne et mīlitum concursū et tēlīs repulsī, hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.

They now arrange to go by way of the Sequani.

9. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanīs invītīs propter angustiās īre nōn poterant. Hīs

cum suā sponte persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem Haeduum mittunt, ut eō dēprecātōre ā Sēquanīs impetrārent.

Dumnorīx grātiā et largītiōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat et Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex eā cīvitāte Orgetorīgis fīliam in mātrimōnium dūxerat, et cupiditāte rēgnī adductus novīs rēbus studēbat et quam plūrimās cīvitātēs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat, ut per fīnēs suōs Helvētiōs īre patiantur, obsidēsque utī inter sēsē dent, perficit: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant; Helvētiī, ut sine maleficiō et iniūriā trānseant.

Caesar reinforces his army.

10. Caesarī renūntiātur, Helvētiīs esse in animō per agrum Sēquanōrum et Haeduōrum iter in Santonum fīnēs facere, quī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium fīnibus absunt, quae cīvitās est in prōvinciā. Id sī fieret, intellegēbat māgnō cum perīculō prōvinciae futūrum, ut hominēs bellicōsōs, populī Rōmānī inimīcos, locīs patentibus māximēque frūmentāriīs fīnitimōs habēret.

Ob eās causās eī mūnītiōnī, quam fēcerat, T. Labiēnum lēgātum praefēcit; ipse in Ītaliam māgnīs itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōnscrībit et trēs, quae circum Aquilēiam hiemābant, ex hībernīs ēdūcit et, quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpēs erat, cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus īre contendit.

Ībi Ceutronēs et Grāiocelī et Caturīgēs, locīs superiōribus occupātīs, itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Complūribus hīs proeliīs pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est oppidum citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum, in fīnēs Vocon-

tiōrum ulteriōris prōvinciae diē septimō pervenit; inde in Allobrogum fīnēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum prīmī.

The Haedui and others ask Caesar's aid against the Helvetii.

11. Helvētiī iam per angustiās et fīnēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant, et in Haeduōrum fīnēs pervēnerant eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Haeduī, cum sē suaque ab eīs dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum auxilium: Ita sē omnī tempore de populō Rōmānō meritōs esse, ut, paene in cōnspectū exercitūs nostrī, agrī vāstārī, līberī eōrum in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expūgnārī nōn dēbuerint.

Eōdem tempore, Ambarrī, necessāriī et cōnsanguineī Haeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem faciunt sēsē, dēpopulātīs agrīs, nōn facile ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēre. Item Allobrogēs, qui trāns Rhodanum vīcōs possessiōnēsque habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt et dēmōnstrant sibi praeter agrī solum nihil esse reliquī. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn exspectandum sibi statuit, dum omnibus fortūnīs sociōrum cōnsūmptīs in Santonōs Helvētiī pervenīrent.

Three cantons of the Helvetii cross the Arar; the fourth is attacked and defeated.

12. Flūmen est Arar, quod per fīnēs Haeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum īnfluit incrēdibilī lēnitāte, ita ut oculīs, in utram partem fluat, iūdicārī nōn possit. Id Helvētiī ratibus ac lintribus iūnctīs trānsībant.

Ubi per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est trēs iam partēs cōpiārum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse, quārtam ferē partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs profectus ad eam partem pervēnit, quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. Eōs impedītōs et inopīnantēs adgressus māgnam partem cōrum concīdit; reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunt atque in proximās silvās abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus; nam omnis cīvitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvīsa est.

Hīc pāgus ūnus, cum domō exīsset patrum nostrōrum memoriā, L. Cassium cōnsulem interfēcerat et ēius exercitum sub iugum mīserat. Ita sīve cāsū sīve cōnsiliō deōrum immortālium, quae pars cīvitātis Helvētiae īnsīgnem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea prīnceps poenās persolvit. Quā in rē Caesar nōn sōlum pūblicās, sed etiam prīvātās iniūriās ultus est, quod ēius socerī L. Pīsōnis avum, L. Pīsōnem lēgātum, Tigurīnī eōdem proeliō, quō Cassium, interfēcerant.

Caesar crosses the Arar. The Helvetii send a second embassy.

13. Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōnsequī posset, pontem in Ararī faciendum cūrat atque ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētiī repentīnō ēius adventū commōtī, cum id, quod ipsī diēbus vīgintī aegerrimē cōnfēcerant, ut flūmen trānsīrent, illum ūnō diē fēcisse intellegerent, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; cūius lēgātiōnis Dīvicō prīnceps fuit, quī bellō Cassiānō dux Helvētiōrum fuerat.

Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: Sī pācem populus Rōmānus

cum Helvētiīs faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs Helvētiōs, ubi eōs Caesar cōnstituisset atque esse voluisset; sīn bellō persequī persevērāret, reminīscerētur et veteris incommodī populī Rōmānī et prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod improvīsō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum eī, quī flūmen trānsīssent, suīs auxilium ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut suae māgnopere virtūtī tribueret aut ipsōs dēspiceret. Sē ita ā patribus māiōribusque suīs didicisse, ut magis virtūte contenderent, quam dolō aut īnsidiīs nīterentur. Quārē nē committeret, ut is locus, ubi cōnstitissent, ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et internecione exercitūs nōmen caperet aut memoriam prōderet.

Caesar's reply to the Helvetian embassy.

14. Hīs Caesar ita respondit: Eō sibi minus dubitātiōnis darī, quod eās rēs, quās lēgātī Helvētiī commemorāssent, memoriā tenēret, atque eō gravius ferre, quō minus meritō populī Rōmānī accidissent; quī sī alicūius iniūriae sibi cōnscius fuisset, nōn fusse difficile cavēre; sed eō dēceptum, quod neque commissum ā sē intellegeret, quārē timēret, neque sine causā timendum putāret. Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblīvīscī vellet, num etiam recentium iniūriārum, quod eō invītō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāssent, quod Haeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogas vexāssent, memoriam dēpōnere posse?

Quod suā victōriā tam īnsolenter glōriārentur, quodque tam diū sē impūne iniūriās intulisse admīrārentur, eōdem pertinēre. Cōnsuēsse enim deōs immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs

prō scelere eōrum ulcīscī velint, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen, sī obsidēs ab eīs sibi dentur, utī ea, quae polliceantur, factūrōs intellegat, et sī Haeduīs dē iniūriīs, quās ipsīs sociīsque eōrum intulerint, item sī Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sēsē cum eīs pācem esse factūrum.

Dīvicō respondit: Ita Helvētiōs ā māiōribus suīs īnstitūtōs esse, utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare cōnsuērint; ēius reī populum Rōmānum esse testem. Hōc respōnsō datō discessit.

A cavalry skirmish. Both armies march northward.

15. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar equitātumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor mīlium, quem ex omnī prōvinciā et Haeduīs atque eōrum sociīs coāctum habēbat, praemittit, quī videant, quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant. Quī cupidius novissimum agmen īnsecūtī aliēnō locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt; et paucī dē nostrīs cadunt.

Quō proeliō sublātī Helvētiī, quod quīngentīs equitibus tantam multitūdinem equitum prōpulerant, audācius subsistere nōnnumquam et novissimō agmine proeliō nostrōs lacessere coepērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat ac satis habēbat in praesentiā hostem rapīnīs, pābulātiōnibus populātiōnibusque prohibēre. Ita diēs circiter quīndecim iter fēcērunt, ut inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum prīmum nōn amplius quīnīs aut sēnīs mīlibus passuum interesset.

The Haedui fail to furnish grain to Caesar.

16. Interim cotīdiē Caesar Haeduōs frūmentum, quod essent pūblicē pollicitī, flāgitāre. Nam propter frīgora,

quod Gallia sub septentriōnibus, ut ante dictum est, posita est, nōn modo frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn erant, sed nē pābulī quidem satis māgna cōpia suppetēbat; cō autem frūmentō, quod flūmine Ararī nāvibus subvexerat, propterea minus ūtī poterat, quod iter ab Ararī Helvētiī āverterant, ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat. Diem ex diē dūcere Haeduī: cōnferrī, comportārī, adesse dīcere.

Ubi sē diūtius dūcī intellēxit et diem īnstāre, quō diē frūmentum mīlitibus mētīrī oportēret, convocātīs eōrum prīncipibus, quōrum māgnam cōpiam in castrīs habēbat, in hīs Dīviciācō et Liscō, qui summō magistrātuī praerat, quem vergobretum appellant Haeduī, quī creātur annuus et vītae necisque in suōs habet potestātem, graviter eōs accūsat, quod, cum neque emī neque ex agrīs sūmī possit, tam necessāriō tempore, tam propinquīs hostibus ab eīs nōn sublevētur: praesertim cum māgnā ex parte eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscēperit, multō etiam gravius, quod sit dēstitūtus, queritur.

The explanation of Liscus.

17. Tum dēmum Liscus ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus, quod anteā tacuerat, prōpōnit: Esse nōnnūllos, quōrum auctōritās apud plebem plūrimum valeat, qui prīvātim plūs possint quam ipsī magistrātus. Hōs sēditiōsā atque improbā ōrātiōne multitūdinem dēterrēre, nē frūmentum cōnferant, quod dēbeant: praestāre, sī iam prīncipātum Galliae obtinēre nōn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre; neque dubitāre dēbēre, quīn, sī Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmānī, ūnā cum reliquā Galliā Haeduīs libertātem sint ēreptūrī.

Ab eīsdem nostra cōnsilia, quaeque in castrīs gerantur, hostibus ēnūntiārī: hōs ā sē coërcērī nōn posse. Quīn etiam, quod necessāriam rem coāctus Caesarī ēnūntiārit, intellegere sēsē, quantō id cum perīculō fēcerit, et ob eam causam, quam diū potuerit, tacuisse.

Dumnorix, the Haeduan.

18. Caesar hāc ōrātiōne habitā Liscī Dumnorīgem, Dīviciācī frātrem, dēsignārī sentiēbat, sed, quod plūribus praesentibus cās rēs iactārī nōlēbat, celeriter concilium dīmittit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex sōlō ea, quae in conventū dīxerat. Dīcit līberius atque audācius.

Eadem sēcrētō ab aliīs quaerit; reperit esse vēra: Ipsum esse Dumnorīgem, summā audāciā, māgnā apud plēbem propter līberālitātem grātiā, cupidum rērum novārum. Complūrēs annōs portōria reliquaque omnia Haeduōrum vectīgālia parvō pretiō redēmpta habēre, propterea quod illō licente contrā licērī audeat nēmō. Hīs rēbus et suam rem familiārem auxisse et facultātēs ad largiendum māgnās comparāsse; māgnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper alere et circum sē habēre, neque sōlum domī, sed etiam apud fīnitimās cīvitātēs largiter posse, atque hūius potentiae causā mātrem in Biturīgibus hominī illīc nōbilissimō ac potentissimō conlocāsse; ipsum ex Helvētiīs uxōrem habēre, sorōrem ex mātre et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās cīvitātēs conlocāsse. Favēre et cupere Helvētiīs propter eam adfīnitātem, ōdisse etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia ēius dēminūta et Dīviciācus frāter in antīquum locum grātiae atque honōris sit restitūtus. Sī quid accidat Rōmānīs, summam in spem

per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī venīre; imperiō populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā, quam habeat, grātiā dēspērāre.

Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucīs ante diēbus esset factum, initium ēius fugae factum ab Dumnorīge atque ēius equitibus (nam equitātuī, quem auxiliō Caesarī Haeduī mīserant, Dumnorīx praerat); eōrum fugā reliquum esse equitātum perterritum.

Caesar summons Divitiacus, brother of Dumnorix.

19. Quibus rēbus cognitīs, cum ad hās suspīciōnēs certissimae rēs accēderent, quod per fīnēs Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs trādūxisset, quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs cūrāsset, quod ea omnia nōn modo inussū suō et cīvitātis, sed etiam īnscientibus ipsīs fēcisset, quod ā magistrātū Haeduōrum accūsārētur, satis esse causae arbitrābātur, quārē in eum aut ipse animadverteret aut cīvitātem animadvertere iubēret.

Hīs omnibus rēbus ūnum repūgnābat, quod Dīviciācī frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium, summam in sē voluntātem, ēgregiam fidem, iūstitiam, temperantiam cognōverat; nam, nē ēius suppliciō Dīviciācī animum offenderet, verēbātur. Itaque priusquam quicquam cōnārētur, Dīviciācum ad sē vocārī iubet et cotīdiānīs interpretibus remōtīs per C. Valerium Troucillum, prīncipem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem suum, cui summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat, cum eō colloquitur; simul commonefacit, quae ipsō praesente in conciliō Gallōrum dē Dumnorīge sint dicta, et ostendit, quae sēparātim quisque dē eō apud sē dīxerit; petit

atque hortātur, ut sine ēius offēnsiōne animī vel ipse dē eō, causā cognitā, statuat vel cīvitātem statuere iubeat.

The plea of Diviciacus in behalf of Dumnorix.

20. Dīviciācus multīs cum lacrimīs Caesarem complexus obsecrāre coepit, nē quid gravius in frātrem statueret: Scīre sē illa esse vēra, nec quemquam ex eō plūs quam sē dolōris capere, propterea quod, cum ipse grātiā plūrimum domī atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter adulēscentiam posset, per sē crēvisset; quibus opibus ac nervīs nōn sōlum ad minuendam grātiam, sed paene ad perniciem suam ūterētur. Sēsē tamen et amōre frāternō et exīstimātiōne vulgī commovērī. Quod sī quid eī ā Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amīcitiae apud eum tenēret, nēminem exīstimātūrum nōn suā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē futūrum, utī tōtius Galliae animī ā sē āverterentur.

Haec cum plūribus verbīs flēns ā Caesare peteret, Caesar ēius dextram prēndit; cōnsōlātus rogat, fīnem ōrandī faciat; tantī ēius apud sē grātiam esse ostendit, utī et reī pūblicae iniūriam et suum dolōrem ēius voluntātī ac precibus condōnet. Dumnorīgem ad sē vocat, frātrem adhibet; quae in eō reprehendat, ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae cīvitās querātur, prōpōnit; monet, ut in reliquum tempus omnēs suspīciōnēs vītet; praeterita sē Dīviciācō frātrī condōnāre dīcit. Dumnorīgī custōdēs pōnit, ut, quae agat, quibuscum loquātur, scīre possit.

Caesar prepares for battle.

21. Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus hostēs sub monte cōnsēdisse mīlia passuum ab ipsīus castrīs

octō, quālis esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū ascēnsus, quī cognōscerent, mīsit. Renūntiātum est [illegible]. De tertiā vigiliā T. Labiēnum, legātum prō praetōre, cum duābus legiōnibus et eis ducibus, quī iter cognōverant, summum iugum montis ascendere iubet; quid sui cōnsilī sit, ostendit. Ipse dē quārtā vigiliā eādem itinere, quō hostēs ierant, ad eōs contendit equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, qui rei militaris peritissimus habēbātur et in sacrātā L. Sullae et posteā in M. Crassi fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemittitur.

The error of Considius, the scout.

22. Prīmā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenēretur, ipse ab hostium castris nōn longius mīlis et quingentis passibus abesset neque, ut postea ex captivis cōnsperit, aut ipsius adventus aut Labiēnī cognitus esset, Cōnsidius equō admissō ad eum accurrit, dīcit montem, quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit, ab hostibus tenērī: id sē ā Gallicis armīs atque insignibus cognōvisse.

Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum collem subdūcit, aciem instruit. Labiēnus, ut erat ei praeceptum ā Caesare, nē proelium committeret, nisi ipsius cōpiae prope hostium castra vīsae essent, ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs impetus fieret, monte occupātō nostros exspectābat proelioque abstinēbat. Multō dēnique diē per exploratores Caesar cognovit et montem ā suīs tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōnsidium timōre perterritum, quod nōn vidisset, prō vīsō sibi renūntiāsse. Eō diē, quō cōnsuērat intervāllō, hostēs sequitur et mīlia passuum tria ab eōrum castrīs castra pōnit.

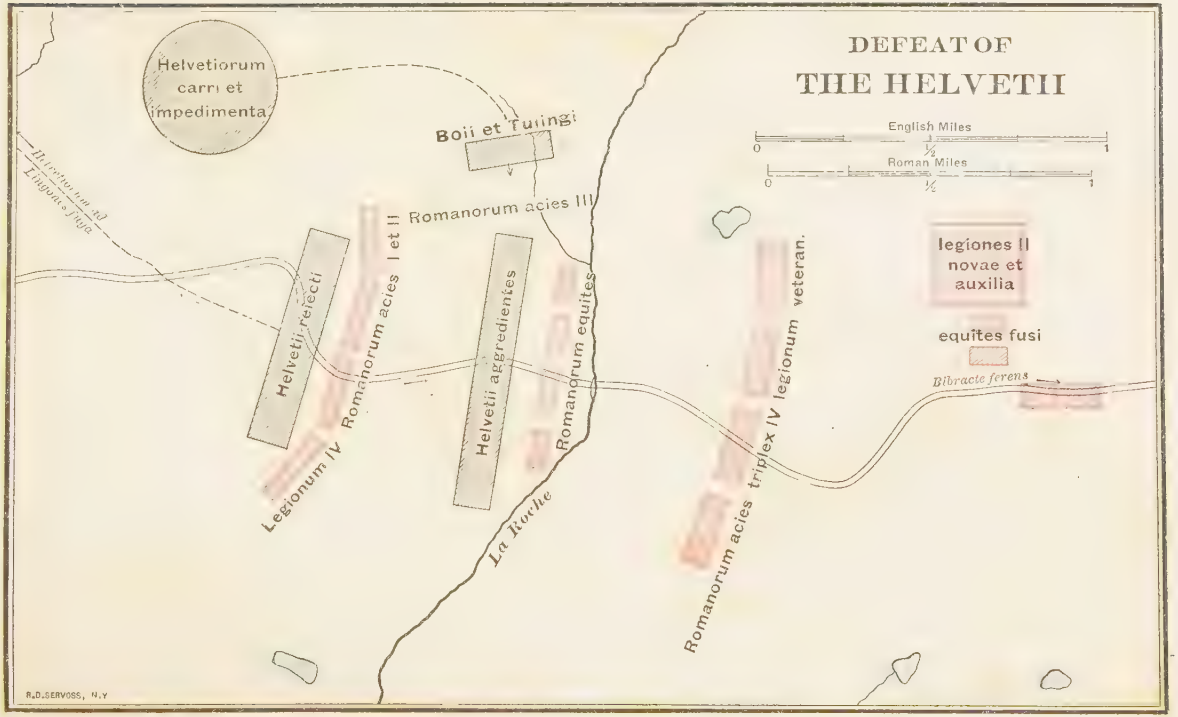
Caesar marches toward Bibracte for supplies.

23. Postrīdiē ēius diēī, quod omnīnō bīduum supererat, cum exercituī frūmentum mētīrī oportēret, et quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Haeduōrum longē māximō et cōpiōsissimō, nōn amplius mīlibus passuum duodēvīgintī aberat, reī frūmentāriae prōspiciendum exīstimāvit; iter ab Helvētiīs āvertit ac Bibracte īre contendit.

Ea rēs per fugitīvōs L. Aemilī, decuriōnis equitum Gallōrum, hostibus nūntiātur. Helvētiī, seu quod tīmōre perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē exīstimārent, eō magis quod prīdiē, superiōribus locīs occupātīs, proelium nōn commīsissent, sīve eō, quod rē frūmentāriā interclūdī posse cōnfīderent, commūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō nostrōs ā novissimō agmine īnsequī ac lacessere coepērunt.

Further preparations for battle.

24. Postquam id animum advertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subdūcit equitātumque, quī sustinēret hostium impetum, mīsit. Ipse interim in colle mediō triplicem aciem īnstrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum; sed in summō iugō duās legiōnēs, quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōnscrīpserat, et omnia auxilia conlocārī ac tōtum montem hominibus complērī et intereā sarcinās in ūnum locum cōnferrī et eum ab eīs, quī in superiōre aciē cōnstiterant, mūnīrī iussit. Helvētiī cum omnibus suīs carrīs secūtī impedīmenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī cōnfertissimā aciē, rēiectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā, sub prīmam nostram aciem successērunt.


DEFEAT OF
THE HELVETII
English Miles
Roman Miles
Helvetiorum carri et impedimenta
Boii et Tulingi
Romanorum acies III
Helvetii reiecti
Romanorum acies I et II
Legionum IV
Helvetii aggredientes
Romanorum equites
La Rorche
Romanorum acies triplex IV legionum veteran.
legiones II novae et auxilia
equites fusi
Bibracte ferens
R.D.SERVOSS, N.Y

The battle near Bibracte, June, 58 B.C.

25. Caesar prīmum suō, deinde omnium ex cōnspectū remōtīs equīs, ut aequātō omnium perīculō spem fugae tolleret, cohortātus suōs proelium commīsit. Mīlitēs ē locō superiōre pīlīs missīs facile hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt. Eā disiectā, gladiīs dēstrictīs in eōs impetum fēcērunt. Gallīs magnō ad pūgnam erat impedīmentō, quod, plūribus eōrum scūtīs ūnō ictū pīlōrum trānsfīxīs et conligātīs, cum ferrum sē īnflexisset, neque ēvellere neque sinistrā impedītā satis commodē pūgnāre poterant, multī ut diū iactātō bracchiō praeoptārent scūtum manū ēmittere et nūdō corpore pugnāre.

Tandem vulneribus dēfessī et pedem referre et, quod mōns aberat circiter mille passūs, eō sē recipere coepērunt. Captō monte et succēdentibus nostrīs, Bōiī et Tulingī, quī hominum mīlibus circiter quīndecim agmen hostium claudēbant et novissimīs praesidiō erant, ex itinere nostrōs ab latere apertō adgressī circumvenīre; et id cōnspicātī Helvētiī, quī in montem sēsē recēperant, rūrsus īnstāre et proelium redintegrāre coepērunt. Rōmānī conversa sīgna bipertītō intulērunt: prīma et secunda aciēs, ut victīs ac submōtīs resisteret; tertia, ut venientēs sustinēret.

Defeat of the Helvetii.

26. Ita ancipitī proeliō diū atque ācriter pūgnātum est. Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alterī sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alterī ad impedīmenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum

pūgnātum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedīmenta pūgnātum est, propterea quod prō vāllō carrōs obiēcerant et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs venientēs tēla coniciēbant, et nōnnūllī inter carrōs raedāsque matarās ac trāgulās subiciēbant nostrōsque vulnerābant. Diū cum esset pūgnātum, impedīmentīs castrīsque nostrī potītī sunt. Ibi Orgetorīgis fīlia atque ūnus ē fīliīs captus est.

Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum mīlia CXXX superfuērunt eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt; nūllam partem noctis itinere intermissō, in fīnēs Lingonum diē quārtō pervēnērunt, cum et propter vulnera mīlitum et propter sepultūram occīsōrum nostrī trīduum morātī eōs sequī nōn potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonas litterās nūntiōsque mīsit, nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent; quī sī iūvissent, sē eōdem locō, quō Helvētiōs, habitūrum. Ipse trīduō intermissō cum omnibus cōpiīs eōs sequī coepit.

Surrender of the Helvetii.

27. Helvētiī omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē dēditiōne ad eum mīsērunt. Quī cum eum in itinere convēnissent sēque ad pedēs prōiēcissent suppliciterque locūtī flentēs pācem petīssent, atque eōs in eō locō, quō tum essent, suum adventum exspectāre iussisset, pāruērunt. Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, servōs, quī ad eōs perfūgissent, poposcit.

Dum ea conquīruntur et cōnferuntur, nocte intermissā, circiter hominum mīlia sex ēius pāgī, quī Verbigenus appellātur, sīve timōre perterritī, nē armīs trāditīs suppliciō adficerentur, sīve spē salūtis inductī, quod in tantā multitūdine dēditīciōrum suam fugam aut occul-

tārī aut omnīnō ignōrārī posse exīstimārent, prīmā nocte ē castrīs Helvētiōrum ēgressī ad Rhēnum fīnēsque Germānōrum contendērunt.

The Helvetii return to their own country.

28. Quod ubi Caesar rescīit, quōrum per fīnēs ierant, hīs, utī conquīrerent et [illegible] sibi pūrgātī esse vellent, imperāvit; reductos in hostium numerō habuit; reliquōs omnēs, obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs trāditīs, in dēditiōnem accēpit. Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrīgōs in fīnēs suōs, unde erant profectī, revertī iussit; et, quod omnibus frūgibus āmissīs domī nihil erat, quō famem tolerārent, Allobrogibus imperāvit, ut eīs frūmentī cōpiam facerent; ipsōs oppida vīcōsque, quōs incenderant, restituere iussit.

Id ea māximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum, unde Helvētiī discesserant, vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ē suīs fīnibus in Helvētiōrum fīnēs trānsīrent et fīnitimī Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Bōiōs petentibus Haeduīs, quod ēgregiā virtūte erant cognitī, ut in fīnibus suīs conlocārent, concessit; quibus illī agrōs dedērunt, quōsque posteā in parem iūris lībertātisque condiciōnem, atque ipsī erant, recēpērunt.

The records of the Helvetii.

29. In castrīs Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae sunt litterīs Graecīs cōnfectae et ad Caesarem relātae, quibus in tabulīs nōminātim ratiō cōnfecta erat, quī numerus domō exīsset cōrum, quī arma ferre possent, et item sēparātim puerī, senēs mulierēsque. Quārum omnium

rērum summa erat capitum Helvētiōrum mīlium CCLXIII, Tulingōrum mīlium XXXVI, Latobrīgōrum XIIII, Rauracōrum XXIII, Bōiōrum XXXII; ex hīs, quī arma ferre possent, ad mīlia XCII. Summa omnium fuērunt ad mīlia CCCLXVIII. Eōrum, quī domum rediērunt, cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus est numerus mīlium C et X.

30–54. THE WAR WITH ARIOVISTUS, JULY–SEPTEMBER, 58 B.C.

Gallic chiefs congratulate Caesar and request a conference.

30. Bellō Helvētiōrum cōnfectō, tōtīus ferē Galliae lēgātī, prīncipēs cīvitātum, ad Caesarem grātulātum convēnērunt: Intellegere sēsē, tametsī prō veteribus Helvētiōrum iniūriīs populī Rōmānī ab hīs poenās bellō repetīsset, tamen eam rem nōn minus ex ūsū terrae Galliae quam populī Rōmānī accidisse, propterea quod eō cōnsiliō flōrentissimīs rēbus domōs suās Helvētiī relīquissent, utī tōtī Galliae bellum īnferrent imperiōque potīrentur locumque domicilio ex māgnā cōpiā dēligerent, quem ex omnī Galliā opportūnissimum ac frūctuōsissimum iūdicāssent, reliquāsque cīvitātēs stīpendiāriās habērent.

Petiērunt, utī sibi concilium tōtīus Galliae in diem certam indīcere idque Caesaris voluntāte facere licēret: sēsē habēre quāsdam rēs, quās ex commūnī cōnsēnsū ab eō petere vellent. Eā rē permissā, diem conciliō cōnstituērunt et iūre iūrandō, nē quis ēnūntiāret, nisi quibus commūnī cōnsiliō mandātum esset, inter sē sānxērunt.

In the conference, Diviciacus tells of two factions of Gaul, and complains of Ariovistus, the German.

31. Eō conciliō dīmissō, īdem prīncipēs cīvitātum, quī ante fuerant, ad Caesarem revertērunt petēruntque, utī sibi sēcrētō dē suā omniumque salūte cum eō agere licēret. Eā rē impetrātā, sēsē omnēs flentēs Caesarī ad pedēs prōiēcērunt: "Non minus sē id contendere et labōrāre, nē ea, quae dīxissent, ēnūntiārentur, quam utī ea, quae vellent, impetrārent, propterea quod, sī ēnūntiātum esset, summum in cruciātum sē ventūrōs vidērent.

Locūtus est prō hīs Dīviciācus Haeduus: Galliae tōtīus factiōnēs esse duās: hārum alterius prīncipatum tenēre Haeduōs, alterius Arvernōs. Hī cum tamquam dē potentātū inter sē multōs annōs contenderent, factum esse, utī ab Arvernīs Sēquanīsque Germānī mercēde arcesserentur. Hōrum prīmō circiter mīlia quīndecim Rhēnum trānsīsse; posteāquam agros et cultum et cōpiās Gallōrum hominēs fōrī ac barbarī adamāssent, trāductōs plūrēs; nunc esse in Galliā ad centum et vīgintī mīlium numerum. Cum hīs Haeduōs cōrumque clientēs semel atque iterum armīs contendisse; māgnam calamitātem pulsōs accēpisse, omnem nōbilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum āmīsisse.

Quibus proeliīs calamitātibusque frāctōs, quī et suā virtūte et populī Rōmānī hospitiō atque amīcitiā plūrimum ante in Galliā potuissent, coāctōs esse Sēquanīs obsidēs dare nōbilissimōs cīvitātis et iūre iūrandō cīvitātem obstringere, sēsē neque obsidēs repetītūrōs neque auxilium ā populō Rōmānō implōrātūrōs neque

recūsātūrōs, quōminus perpetuō sub illōrum diciōne atque imperiō essent. Ūnum sē esse ex omnī cīvitāte Haeduōrum, quī adductī nōn potuerit, ut iūrāret aut līberōs suōs obsidēs daret. Ob eam rem sē ex cīvitāte profūgisse et Rōmam ad senātum vēnisse auxilium postulātum, quod sōlus neque iūre iūrandō neque obsidibus tenērētur.

Sed peius victōribus Sēquanīs quam Haeduīs victīs accidisse, propterea quod Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, in eōrum fīnibus cōnsēdisset tertiamque partem agrī Sēquanī, quī esset optimus tōtius Galliae, occupāvisset, et nunc dē alterā parte tertiā Sēquanōs dēcēdere iubēret, propterea quod paucīs mēnsibus ante Harūdum mīlia hominum XXIIII ad eum vēnissent, quibus locus ac sēdēs parārentur. Futūrum esse paucīs annīs, utī omnēs ex Galliae fīnibus pellerentur atque omnēs Germānī Rhēnum trānsīrent; neque enim cōnferendum esse Gallicum cum Germānōrum agrō, neque hanc cōnsuētūdinem victūs cum illā comparandam.

Ariovistum autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō vīcerit, quod proelium factum sit ad Magetobrigam, superbē et crūdēliter imperāre, obsidēs nōbilissimī cūiusque līberōs poscere et in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque ēdere, sī qua rēs nōn ad nūtum aut ad voluntātem ēius facta sit. Hominem esse barbarum, īrācundum, temerārium: nōn posse ēius imperia diūtius sustinērī.

Nisi quid in Caesare populōque Rōmānō sit auxilī, omnibus Gallīs idem esse faciendum, quod Helvētiī fēcerint, ut domō ēmigrent, aliud domicilium, aliās sēdēs, remōtās ā Germānīs, petant fortūnamque, quaecumque accidat, experiantur. Haec sī ēnūntiāta Ario-

vistō sint, nōn dubitāre, quīn dē omnibus obsidibus, quī apud eum sint, gravissimum supplicium sūmat. Caesarem vel auctōritāte suā atque exercitūs vel recentī victōriā vel nōmine populī Rōmānī dēterrēre posse, nē māior multitūdō Germānōrum Rhēnum trādūcātur, Galliamque omnem ab Ariovistī iniūriā posse dēfendere.

The unfortunate condition of the Sequani.

32. Hāc ōrātiōne ab Dīviciācō habitā, omnēs, quī aderant, māgnō flētū auxilium ā Caesare petere coepērunt. Animadvertit Caesar ūnōs ex omnibus Sēquanōs nihil eārum rērum facere, quās cēterī facerent, sed trīstēs capite dēmissō terram intuērī. Ēius reī quae causa esset, mīrātus ex ipsīs quaesiit. Nihil Sēquanī respondēre, sed in eādem trīstitiā tacitī permanēre.

Cum ab hīs saepius quaereret neque ūllam omnīnō vōcem exprimere posset, īdem Dīviciācus Haeduus respondit: Hōc esse miseriōrem et graviōrem fortūnam Sēquanōrum quam reliquōrum, quod sōlī nē in occultō quidem querī neque auxilium implōrāre audērent, absentisque Ariovistī crūdēlitātem, velut sī cōram adesset, horrērent, proptereā quod reliquīs tamen fugae facultās darētur, Sēquanīs vērō, quī intrā fīnēs suōs Ariovistum recēpissent, quōrum oppida omnia in potestāte ēius essent, omnēs cruciātūs essent perferendī.

Caesar promises to aid the Gauls against Ariovistus.

33. Hīs rēbus cognitīs, Caesar Gallōrum animōs verbīs cōnfirmāvit pollicitusque est sibi eam rem cūrae futūram; māgnam sē habēre spem et beneficiō suō et auctōritāte adductum Ariovistum fīnem iniūriīs factūrum. Hāc

ōrātiōne habitā concilium dīmīsit. Et secundum ea multae rēs eum hortābantur, quārē sibi eam rem cōgitandam et suscipiendam putāret, in prīmīs quod Haeduōs; frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque saepenumerō ā senātū appellātōs, in servitūte atque in diciōne vidēbat Germānōrum tenērī, eōrumque obsidēs esse apud Ariovistum ac Sēquanōs intellegēbat; quod in tantō imperiō populī Rōmānī turpissimum sibi et reī pūblicae esse arbitrābātur.

Paulātim autem Germānōs cōnsuēscere Rhēnum transīre et in Galliam māgnam eōrum multitūdinem venīre, populō Rōmānō perīculōsum vidēbat; neque sibi hominēs ferōs ac barbarōs temperātūrōs exīstimābat, quīn, cum omnem Galliam occupāvissent, ut ante Cimbrī Teutonīque fēcissent, in prōvinciam exīrent atque inde in Ītaliam contenderent, praesertim cum Sēquanōs ā prōvinciā nostrā Rhodanus dīvideret; quibus rebus quam mātūrrimē occurrendum putābat. Ipse autem Ariovistus tantōs sibi spīritūs, tantam arrogantiam sūmpserat, ut ferendus nōn vidērētur.

Caesar demands a conference, which Ariovistus refuses.

34. Quam ob rem placuit eī, ut ad Ariovistum lēgātōs mitteret, quī ab eō postulārent, utī aliquem locum medium utrīusque conloquiō dēligeret; velle sēsē dē rē pūblicā et summīs utrīusque rēbus cum eō agere. Eī lēgātiōnī Ariovistus respondit: Sī quid ipsī ā Caesare opus esset, sēsē ad eum ventūrum fuisse; sī quid ille sē velit, illum ad sē venīre oportēre. Praetereā sē neque sine exercitū in eās partēs Galliae venīre audēre, quās Caesar possidēret, neque exercitum sine māgnō commeātū atque mōlīmentō in ūnum locum contrahere

posse. Sibi autem mīrum vidērī, quid in suā Gallia, quam bellō vīcisset, aut Caesarī aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō negōtī esset.

Caesar sends a second embassy to Ariovistus.

35. Hīs respōnsīs ad Caesarem relātīs, iterum ad eum Caesar lēgātōs cum hīs mandātīs mittit: Quoniam tantō suō populīque Rōmānī beneficiō adfectus, cum in cōnsulātū suō rēx atque amīcus ab senātū appellātus esset, hanc sibi populōque Rōmānō grātiam referret, ut in eum loquium venīre invītātus gravārētur neque dē commūnī rē dīcendum sibi et cognōscendum putāret, haec esse, quae ab eō postulāret: prīmum, nē quam multitūdinem hominum amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūcat; deinde obsidēs, quōs habēret ab Haeduīs, reddieret Sēquanisque permitteret, ut, quōs illī habērent, voluntāte ēius reddere illīs liceret; nēve Haeduōs iniūriā lacesseret nēve hīs sociīsque eōrum bellum īnferret.

Sī id ita fēcisset, sibi populōque Rōmānō perpetuam grātiam atque amīcitiam cum eō futūram; sī nōn impetrāret, sēsē, quoniam M. Messālā, M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus senātus cēnsuisset, ut, quīcumque Galliam prōvinciam obtinēret, quam commodō rē pūblicā fierī posset, Haeduōs cēterōsque amīcōs populī Rōmānī defenderet, sē Haeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglēctūrum.

Ariovistus replies defiantly.

36. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: Iūs esse bellī, ut, quī vīcissent, eīs, quōs vīcissent, quem ad modum vellent, imperārent; item populum Rōmānum victīs non

ad alterius praescrīptum, sed ad suum arbitrium imperāre cōnsuēsse. Sī ipse populō Rōmānō nōn praescrīberet, quem ad modum suō iūre ūterētur, nōn oportēre sē ā populō Rōmānō in suō iūre impedīrī.

Haeduōs sibi, quoniam bellī fortūnam temptāssent et armīs congressī ac superātī essent, stīpendiāriōs esse factōs. Māgnam Caesarem iniūriam facere, quī suō adventū vectīgālia sibi dēteriōra faceret. Haeduīs sē obsidēs redditūrum nōn esse, neque hīs neque eōrum sociīs iniūriā bellum inlātūrum, sī in eō manērent, quod convēnisset, stīpendiumque quotannīs penderent; sī id nōn fēcissent, longē eīs frāternum nōmen populī Rōmānī āfutūrum. Quod sibi Caesar dēnūntiāret sē Haeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglēctūrum, nēminem sēcum sine suā pernicië contendisse. Cum vellet, congredērētur; intellēctūrum, quid invictī Germānī, exercitātissimī in armīs, quī inter annōs quattuordecim tēctum nōn subīssent, virtūte possent.

After hearing the complaints of the Haedui and Treveri, Caesar hastens against Ariovistus.

37. Haec eōdem tempore Caesarī mandāta referēbantur, et lēgātī ab Haeduīs et ā Trēverīs veniēbant: Haeduī questum, quod Harūdēs, quī nūper in Galliam trānsportātī essent, fīnēs eōrum populārentur; sēsē nē obsidibus quidem datīs pācem Ariovistī redimere potuisse; Trēverī autem, pāgōs centum Suēbōrum ad rīpās Rhēnī cōnsēdisse, quī Rhēnum trānsīre cōnārentur; hīs praeesse Nasuam et Cimberium frātrēs. Quibus rēbus Caesar vehementer commōtus mātūrandum sibi exīstimāvit, nē, sī nova manus Suēbōrum cum

veteribus cōpiīs Ariovistī sēsē coniūnxisset, minus facile resistī posset. Itaque rē frūmentāriā, quam celerrimē potuit, comparātā, mātūrīs itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

Caesar occupies Vesontio.

38. Cum trīduī viam prōcessisset, nūntiātum est eī Ariovistum cum suīs omnibus cōpiīs ad occupandum Vesontiōnem, quod est oppidum maximum Sēquanōrum, contendere, trīduōque viam a suīs fīnibus prōcessisse. Id ne accideret, māgnopere sibi praecavendum Caesar exīstimābat. Namque omnium rērum, quae ad bellum ūsuī erant, summa erat in eō oppidō facultās; idemque nātūrā locī sīc mūnīēbātur, ut māgnam ad dūcendum bellum daret facultātem, propterea quod flūmen Dūbis ut circinō circumductum, paene tōtum oppidum cingit; reliquum spatium, quod est nōn amplius pedum mille sexcentōrum, quā flūmen intermittit, mōns continet māgnā altitūdine, ita ut rādīcēs ēius montis ex utrāque parte rīpae flūminis contingant. Hunc mūrus circumdatus arcem efficit et cum oppidō coniungit. Hūc Caesar māgnīs nocturnīs diurnīsque itineribus contendit, occupātōque oppidō ibi praesidium conlocat.

The Roman army is panic-stricken.

39. Dum paucōs diēs ad Vesontiōnem rē frūmentāriae commeātūsque causā morātur, ex percontātione nostrōrum vōcibusque Gallōrum ac mercātōrum, quī ingentī māgnitūdine corporum Germānos, incredibilī virtūte atque exercitātiōne in armīs esse praedicābant (saepenumerō sēsē cum hīs congressōs nē vultum qui-

eōdem atque aerem oculōrum dīcēbant ferre potuisse), tantus subitō timor omnem exercitum occupāvit, ut nōn mediocriter omnium mentēs animōsque perturbāret.

Hīc prīmum ortus est ā tribūnīs mīlitum, praefectīs reliquīsque, quī ex urbe amīcitiae causā Caesarem secūtī nōn māgnum in rē mīlitārī ūsum habēbant: quōrum alius alia causā inlātā, quam sibī ad proficīscendum necessāriam esse dīceret, petēbat, ut eius voluntāte discēdere liceret; nonnulli pudore adducti, ut timōris suspiciōnem vītārent, remanēbant. Hī neque vultum fingere neque interdum lacrimās tenēre poterant; abditī in tabernaculīs aut suum fātum querēbantur aut cum familiāribus suīs commūne perīculum miserābantur. Vulgō tōtīs castrīs testāmenta obsignābantur.

Hōrum vōcibus ac timōre paulātim etiam eī, quī māgnum in castrīs ūsum habēbant, mīlitēs centuriōnēsque, quīque equitātuī praeerant, perturbabantur. Quī sē ex hīs minus timidōs exīstimārī volēbant, nōn sē hostem verērī, sed angustiās itineris et māgnitūdinem silvārum, quae intercēderent inter ipsōs atque Ariovistum, aut rem frūmentāriam, ut satis commodē supportārī posset, timēre dicēbant. Nōnnūllī etiam Caesarī nūntiābant, cum castra movērī ac signa ferrī iussisset, nōn fore dictō audientēs mīlitēs neque propter timōrem signa lātūrōs.

Caesar calls a council of war and restores confidence.

40. Haec cum animadvertisset, convocātō cōnsiliō omniumque ōrdinum ad id cōnsilium adhibitīs centuriōnibus, vehementer eōs incūsāvit: prīmum quod, aut quam

in partem aut quō cōnsiliō dūcerentur, sibi quaerendum aut cōgitandum putārent. Ariovistum sē cōnsule cupi- §10
dissimē populī Rōmānī amīcitiam adpetīsse; cūr hunc tam temerē quisquam ab sēsē discessūrum iūdicāret? Sibi quidem persuādērī, cognitīs suīs postulātīs atque aequitāte condiciōnum perspectā, eum neque suam neque populī Rōmānī gratiam repudiātūrum. Quod sī furōre atque āmentiā impulsus bellum intulisset, quid tandem verērentur? aut cūr dē suā virtūte aut dē ipsīus dīligentiā dēspērārent? Factum ēius hostis perīculum patrum nostrōrum memoriā, cum Cimbrīs et Teutonīs ā C. Mariō pulsīs nōn minōrem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperātor meritus vidēbātur: factum etiam nūper in Italiā servīlī tumultū, quōs tamen aliquid ūsus ac disciplīna, quam ā nōbīs accēpissent, sublevārent. Ex quō iūdicārī posse, quantum habēret in sē bonī cōnstantia, propterea quod, quōs aliquamdiū inermōs sine §25
causā timuissent, hōs posteā armātōs ac victōrēs superāssent.

Dēnique hōs esse eōsdem Germānōs, quibuscum saepenumerō Helvētiī congressi, nōn sōlum in suīs sed etiam in illōrum fīnibus, plērumque superāssent, quī §30
tamen parēs esse nostrō exercituī nōn potuerint. Sī quōs adversum proelium et fuga Gallōrum commovēret, hōs, sī quaererent, reperīre posse, diūturnitāte bellī dēfatīgatīs Gallīs, Ariovistum, cum multōs mēnsēs castrīs sē ac paludibus tenuisset neque suī potestātem §35
fēcisset, dēspērantēs iam dē pūgnā et dissipātōs subitō adortum, magis ratiōne et cōnsiliō quam virtūte vīcisse. Cui ratiōnī contrā hominēs barbarōs atque imperītōs locus fuisset, hāc nē ipsum quidem spērāre nostrōs exercitūs capī posse. §40

Quī suum timōrem in reī frūmentāriae simulātiōnem angustiāsque itineris cōnferrent, facere arroganter, cum aut dē officiō imperātōris dēspērāre aut praescrībere vidērentur. Haec sibi esse cūrae; frūmentum Sē-
845 quanōs, Leucōs, Lingonēs subministrāre, iamque esse in agrīs frūmenta mātūra; dē itinere ipsōs brevī tempore iūdicātūrōs.

Quod nōn fore dictō audientēs neque sīgna lātūrī dīcantur, nihil sē eā rē commovērī; scīre enim, quibus-
850 cumque exercitus dictō audiēns nōn fuerit, aut male rē gestā fortūnam dēfuisse aut aliquō facinore compertō avāritiam esse convictam; suam innocentiam perpetuā vītā, fēlīcitātem Helvētiōrum bellō esse perspectam.

Itaque sē, quod in longiōrem diem conlātūrus fuisset,
855 repraesentātūrum et proximā nocte dē quārtā vigiliā castra mōtūrum, ut quam prīmum intellegere posset, utrum apud eōs pudor atque officium an timor plūs valēret. Quod sī praetereā nēmō sequātur, tamen sē cum sōlā decimā legiōne itūrum, dē quā nōn dubitāret,
860 sibique eam praetōriam cohortem futūram. Huic legiōnī Caesar et indulserat praecipuē et propter virtūtem cōnfīdēbat māximē.

The soldiers apologize. The march is resumed.

41. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā, mīrum in modum conversae sunt omnium mentēs summaque alacritās et cupiditās
865 bellī gerendī inlāta est, prīncepsque decima legiō per tribūnōs mīlitum eī grātiās ēgit, quod dē sē optimum iūdicium fēcisset, sēque esse ad bellum gerendum parātissimam cōnfīrmāvit. Deinde reliquae legiōnēs cum tribūnīs mīlitum et prīmōrum ōrdinum centuriōnibus

ēgērunt, uti Caesarī satisfacerent; sē neque umquam dubitāsse neque timuisse, neque dē summā bellī suum iūdicium, sed imperātōris esse exīstimāvisse.

Eōrum satisfactiōne acceptā et itinere exquisitō per Dīviciācum, quod ex Gallis eī maximam fidem habēbat, ut mīlium amplius quinquāgintā circuitū locīs apertīs exercitum dūceret, dē quārtā vigiliā, ut dīxerat, profectus est. Septimō diē, cum iter nōn intermitteret, ab explōrātōribus certior factus est Ariovistī cōpiās ā nostrīs mīlia passuum XXIV abesse.

Ariovistus finally consents to meet Caesar.

42. Cognitō Caesaris adventū, Ariovistus lēgātōs ad eum mittit: Quod antea de conloquiō postulāsset, id per sē fierī licēre, quoniam propius accessisset sēque id sine perīculō facere posse exīstimāret. Nōn respuit condicionem Caesar iamque eum ad sāmitātem revertī arbitrābātur, cum id, quod anteā petentī dēnegāsset, ultrō pollicērētur; māgnamque in spem veniēbat, prō suīs tantīs populīque Rōmānī in eum beneficiīs, cognitīs suīs postulātīs, fore utī pertināciā dēsisteret. Diēs conloquiō dictus est ex eō diē quīntus.

Interim saepe cum lēgātī ultrō citrōque inter eōs mitterentur, Ariovistus postulāvit, nē quem peditem ad conloquium Caesar addūceret: Verērī sē, nē per īnsidiās ab eō circumvenīrētur; uterque cum equitātū venīret; aliā ratiōne sēsē nōn esse ventūrum. Caesar, quod neque conloquium interpositā causā tollī volēbat neque salūtem suam Gallōrum equitātuī committere audēbat, commodissimum esse statuit, omnibus equīs Gallīs equitibus dētrāctīs, eō legiōnāriōs mīlitēs legiōnis

decimae, cui quam māximē cōnfīdēbat, impōnere, ut praesidium quam amīcissimum, sī quid opus factō esset, habēret. Quod cum fieret, nōn inrīdiculē quīdam ex mīlitibus decimae legiōnis dīxit: Plūs quam pollicitus esset, Caesarem facere; pollicitum sē in cohortis praetōriae locō decimam legiōnem habitūrum, ad equum rescrībere.

Meeting of Caesar and Arioristus. Caesar's speech.

43. Plānitiēs erat māgna et in eā tumulus terrēnus satis grandis. Hīc locus aequō ferē spatiō ā castrīs Ariovistī et Caesaris aberat. Eō, ut erat dictum, ad conloquium vēnērunt. Legiōnem Caesar, quam equīs dēvexerat, passibus ducentīs ab eō tumulō cōnstituit. Item equitēs Ariovistī parī intervāllō cōnstitērunt. Ariovistus, ex equīs ut conloquerentur et praeter sē dēnōs ad conloquium addūcerent, postulāvit.

Ubi eō ventum est, Caesar initiō ōrātiōnis sua senātūsque in eum beneficia commemorāvit, quod rēx appellātus esset ā senātū, quod amīcus, quod mūnera amplissima missa; quam rem et paucīs contigisse et prō māgnīs hominum officiīs cōnsuēsse tribuī docēbat; illum, cum neque aditum neque causam postulandī iūstam habēret, beneficiō ac līberālitāte suā ac senātūs ea praemia cōnsecūtum.

Docēbat etiam, quam veterēs quamque iūstae causae necessitūdinis ipsīs cum Haeduīs intercēderent, quae senātūs cōnsulta, quotiēns, quamque honōrifica in eōs facta essent, ut omnī tempore tōtīus Galliae prīncipātum Haeduī tenuissent, prius etiam quam nostram amīcitiam adpetīssent. Populī Rōmānī hanc esse cōnsuētūdinem,

ut sociōs atque amīcōs nōn modo suī nihil dēperdere, sed grātiā, dignitāte, honōre auctiōrēs vellet esse; quod vērō ad amīcitiam populī Rōmānī attulissent, id eīs ēripī quis patī posset? Postulāvit deinde eadem, quae lēgātīs in mandātīs dederat: nē aut Haeduīs aut eōrum sociīs bellum īnferret; obsidēs redderet; sī nūllam partem Germānōrum domum remittere posset, at nē quōs amplius Rhēnum trānsīre paterētur.

The speech of Ariovistus.

44. Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesaris pauca respondit, dē suīs virtūtibus multa praedicāvit: Trānsīsse Rhēnum sēsē nōn suā sponte, sed rogātum et arcessītum ā Gallīs; nōn sine māgnā spē māgnīsque praemiīs domum propinquōsque relīquisse; sēdēs habēre in Galliā ab ipsīs concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs; stīpendium capere iūre bellī, quod victōrēs victīs impōnere cōnsuērint. Nōn sēsē Gallīs, sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse; omnēs Galliae cīvitātēs ad sē oppūgnandum vēnisse ac contrā sē castra habuisse; eās omnēs cōpiās ā sē ūnō proeliō pulsās ac superātās esse. Sī iterum experīrī velint, sē iterum parātum esse dēcertāre; sī pāce ūtī velint, inīquum esse dē stīpendiō recūsāre, quod suā voluntāte ad id tempus pependerint. Amīcitiam populī Rōmānī sibi ōrnāmentō et praesidiō, nōn dētrīmentō esse oportēre, atque sē hāc spē petīsse. Sī per populum Rōmānum stīpendium remittātur et dēditīciī subtrahantur, nōn minus libenter sēsē recūsātūrum populī Rōmānī amīcitiam, quam adpetierit.

Quod multitūdinem Germānōrum in Galliam trādūcat, id sē suī mūniendī, nōn Galliae oppūgnandae causā

facere; ēius reī testimōnium esse, quod nisi rogātus nōn vēnerit, et quod bellum nōn intulerit, sed dēfenderit. Sē prius in Galliam vēnisse quam populum Rōmānum. Numquam ante hōc tempus exercitum populī Rōmānī Galliae prōvinciae fīnibus ēgressum. Quid sibi vellet? Cūr in suās possessiōnēs venīret? Prōvinciam suam hanc esse Galliam, sīcut illam nostram. Ut ipsī concēdī nōn oportēret, sī in nostrōs fīnēs impetum faceret, sīc item nōs esse inīquōs, quod in suō iūre sē interpellārēmus.

Quod frātrēs ā senātū Haeduōs appellātōs dīceret, nōn sē tam barbarum neque tam imperītum esse rērum, ut nōn scīret neque bellō Allobrogum proximō Haeduōs Rōmānīs auxilium tulisse, neque ipsōs in hīs contentiōnibus, quās Haeduī sēcum et cum Sēquanīs habuissent, auxiliō populī Rōmānī ūsōs esse.

Dēbēre sē suspicārī simulātā Caesarem amīcitiā, quem exercitum in Galliā habeat, suī opprimendī causā habēre. Quī nisi dēcēdat atque exercitum dēdūcat ex hīs regiōnibus, sēsē illum nōn prō amīcō, sed prō hoste habitūrum. Quod sī eum interfēcerit, multīs sēsē nōbilibus prīncipibusque populī Rōmānī grātum esse factūrum (id sē ab ipsīs per cōrum nūntiōs compertum habēre), quōrum omnium grātiam atque amīcitiam ēius morte redimere posset. Quod sī dēcessisset et līberam possessiōnem Galliae sibi trādidisset, māgnō sē illum praemiō remūnerātūrum et, quaecumque bella gerī vellet, sine ūllō ēius labōre et perīculō cōnfectūrum.

Caesar's final reply to Ariovistus.

45. Multa ā Caesare in eam sententiam dicta sunt, quārē negōtiō dēsistere nōn posset: Neque suam neque

opulī Rōmānī cōnsuētūdinem patī, utī optimē meritōs
ociōs dēsereret, neque sē iūdicāre Galliam potius esse
ariovistī quam populī Rōmānī. Bellō superātōs esse
rvernōs et Rutēnōs ā Q. Fabiō Māximō, quibus populus 990
Rōmānus ignōvisset neque in prōvinciam redēgisset
eque stīpendium imposuisset. Quod sī antīquissimum
uodque tempus spectārī oportēret, populī Rōmānī
ūstissimum esse in Galliā imperium; sī iūdicium senātūs
bservārī oportēret, līberam dēbēre esse Galliam, quam 995
ellō victam suīs lēgibus ūtī voluisset.

Treachery of the Germans breaks up the conference.

46. Dum haec in colloquiō geruntur, Caesarī nūn-
iātum est equitēs Ariovistī propius tumulum accēdere
t ad nostrōs adequitāre, lapidēs tēlaque in nostrōs
oniicere. Caesar loquendī fīnem fēcit sēque ad suōs 1000
ecēpit suīsque imperāvit, nē quod omnīnō tēlum in
ostēs rēicerent. Nam etsī sine ūllō perīculō legiōnis
ōlōectae cum equitātū proelium tore vidēbat, tamen
ommittendum nōn putābat, ut pulsīs hostibus dīcī
osset eōs ab sē per fidem in colloquiō circumventōs. 1005
Posteāquam in vulgus mīlitum ēlātum est, quā arro-
gantiā in colloquiō Ariovistus ūsus omnī Galliā Rōmānīs
interdīxisset, impetumque ut in nostrōs ēius equitēs
fēcissent, eaque rēs colloquium dirēmisset, multō māior
alacritās studiumque pūgnandī māius exercituī iniectum 1010
est.

Ariovistus arrests two of Caesar's envoys.

47. Bīduō post Ariovistus ad Caesarem lēgātōs
mīsit: Velle sē dē ēis rēbus, quae inter eōs agī coeptae
neque perfectae essent, agere cum eō; utī aut iterum

conloquiō diem cōnstitueret aut, sī id minus vellet, ex suīs lēgātīs aliquem ad sē mitteret.

Conloquendī Caesarī causa vīsa nōn est, et eō magis, quod prīdiē ēius diēī Germānī retinērī nōn potuerant, quīn in nostrōs tēla conicerent. Lēgātum ex suīs sēsē māgnō cum perīculō ad eum missūrum et hominibus ferīs obiectūrum exīstimābat. Commodissimum vīsum est C. Valerium Procillum, C. Valerī Cabūrī fīlium, summā virtūte et hūmānitāte adulēscentem, cūius pater ā C. Valeriō Flaccō cīvitāte dōnātus erat, et propter fidem et propter linguae Gallicae scientiam, quā multā iam Ariovistus longinquā cōnsuētūdine ūtēbātur, et quod in eō peccandī Germānīs causa nōn esset, ad eum mittere, et ūnā M. Metium, quī hospitiō Ariovistī ūtēbātur. Hīs mandāvit, ut, quae dīceret Ariovistus, cognōscerent et ad sē referrent. Quōs cum apud sē in castrīs Ariovistus cōnspexisset, exercitū suō praesente conclāmāvit: Quid ad sē venīrent? an speculandī causā? Cōnantēs dīcere prohibuit et in catēnās coniēcit.

Ariovistus moves his camp. The German method of fighting.

48. Eōdem diē castra prōmōvit et mīlibus passuum sex ā Caesaris castrīs sub monte cōnsēdit. Postrīdiē ēius diēī praeter castra Caesaris suās cōpiās trādūxit et mīlibus passuum duōbus ultrā eum castra fēcit eō cōnsiliō, utī frūmentō commeātūque, quī ex Sēquanīs et Haeduīs supportārētur, Caesarem interclūderet. Ex eō diē diēs continuōs quīnque Caesar prō castrīs suās cōpiās prōdūxit et aciem īnstrūctam habuit, ut, sī vellet Ariovistus proeliō contendere, eī potestās nōn

dēësset. Ariovistus hīs omnibus diēbus exercitum castrīs continuit, equestrī proeliō cotīdiē contendit.

Genus hōc erat pūgnae, quō sē Germānī exercuerant. Equitum mīlia erant sex, totidem numerō peditēs vēlōcissimī ac fortissimī, quōs ex omnī cōpiā singulī singulōs suae salūtis causā dēlēgerant; cum hīs in proeliīs versābantur. Ad eōs sē equites recipiēbant; hī, sī quid erat dūrius, concurrēbant; sī quī graviōre vulnere acceptō equō dēciderat, circumsistēbant; sī quō erat longius prōdeundum aut celerius recipiendum, tanta erat hōrum exercitātiōne celeritās, ut iubīs sublevātī equōrum cursum adaequārent.

The Roman army is divided in two camps.

49. Ubi eum castrīs sēsē tenērē Caesar intellēxit, nē diūtius commeātū prohibērētur, ulterā eum locum, quō in locō Germānī cōnsederant, circiter passūs sexcentōs ab hīs, castrīs idōneum locum dēlēgit aciēque triplicī īnstrūctā ad eum locum vēnit. Primam et secundam aciem in armīs esse, tertiam castra mūnīre iussit. Hīc locus ab hoste circiter passūs sexcentōs, ut dictum est, aberat. Eō circiter hominum sēscentōs mīlia expedīta cum omnī equitātū Ariovistus mīsit, quae cōpiae nostrōs terrērent et mūnītiōne prohibērent. Nihilō sētius Caesar, ut ante cōnstituerat, duās aciēs hostem prōpulsāre, tertiam opus perficere iussit. Mūnītīs castrīs duās ibi legiōnēs relīquit et partem auxiliōrum; quattuor reliquās legiōnēs in castra māiōra redūxit.

A battle begun but discontinued because of a German superstition.

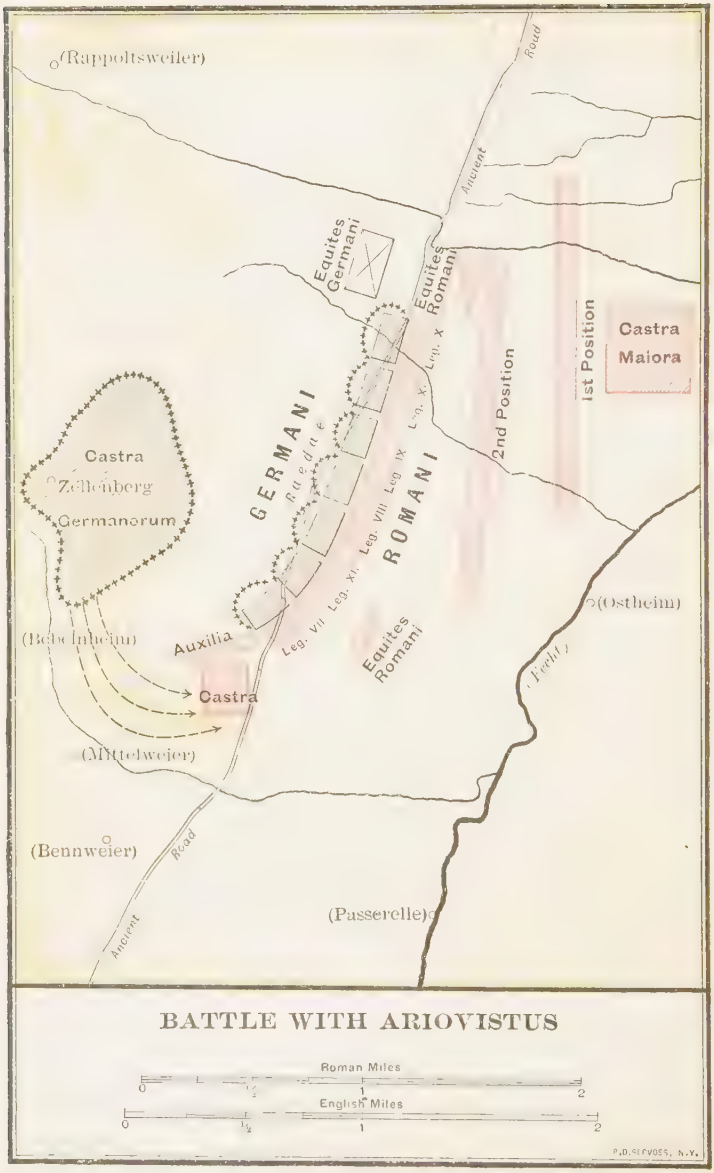
50. Proximō diē īnstitūtō suō Caesar ex castrīs utrīsque cōpiās suās ēdūxit, paulumque ā māiōribus castrīs

prōgressus aciem īnstrūxit hostibusque pūgnandī potestātem fēcit. Ubi nē tum quidem eōs prōdīre intellēxit, circiter merīdiē exercitum in castra redūxit. Tum dēmum Ariovistus partem suārum cōpiārum, quae castra minōra oppūgnāret, mīsit. Ācriter utrimque ūsque ad vesperum pūgnātum est. Sōlis occāsū suās cōpiās Ariovistus, multīs et inlātīs et acceptīs vulneribus, in castra redūxit.

Cum ex captīvīs quaereret Caesar, quam ob rem Ariovistus proeliō nōn dēcertāret, hanc reperiēbat causam, quod apud Germānōs ea cōnsuētūdō esset, ut mātrēs familiae eōrum sortibus et vāticinātiōnibus dēclārārent, utrum proelium committī ex ūsū esset necne; eās ita dīcere: Nōn esse fās Germānōs superāre, sī ante novam lūnam proeliō contendissent.

Caesar forces the Germans to a general engagement.

51. Postrīdiē ēius diēī Caesar praesidiō utrīsque castrīs, quod satis esse vīsum est, relīquit, ālāriōs omnēs in cōnspectū hostium prō castrīs minōribus cōnstituit, quod minus multitūdine mīlitum legiōnāriōrum prō hostium numerō valēbat, ut ad speciem ālāriīs ūterētur; ipse triplicī īnstrūctā aciē ūsque ad castra hostium accessit. Tum dēmum necessāriō Germānī suās cōpiās castrīs ēdūxērunt generātimque cōnstituērunt paribus intervāllīs, Harūdēs, Marcomannōs, Tribocōs, Vangiōnēs, Nemetēs, Sedusiōs, Suēbōs, omnemque aciem suam raedīs et carrīs circumdedērunt, nē qua spēs in fugā relinquerētur. Eō mulierēs imposuērunt, quae ad proelium proficīscentēs passīs manibus flentēs implōrābant, nē sē in servitūtem Rōmānīs trāderent.


(Rappoltsweiler)
Ancient Road
Equites Germani
Equites Romani
Leg. X
1st Position
2nd Position
Castra Maiora
GERMANI
Reserve
ROMANI
Leg. VII Leg. XI Leg. VIII Leg. IX
Castra Zellenberg Germanorum
(Ostheim)
(Bebelnheim)
Auxilia
Castra
Equites Romani
Fecht
(Mittelweier)
(Bennweier)
Ancient Road
(Passerelle)
BATTLE WITH ARIOVISTUS
Roman Miles
0 ½ 1 2
English Miles
0 ½ 1 2
P.D. SERVOSS, N.Y.

The battle is fought at close quarters.

52. Caesar singulis legionibus singulos [illegible] et quaestōrem praefēcit, uti eos testes suae quisque virtūtis habēret; ipse ā dextrō cornū, quod eam partem minimē fīrmam hostium esse animadverterat, proelium commīsit. Ita nostrī ācriter in hostēs sīgnō datō impetum fēcērunt, itaque hostēs repente celeriterque prōcurrērunt, ut spatium pīla in hostēs coniciendī nōn darētur. Rēiectīs pīlīs comminus gladiīs pūgnātum est. At Germānī celeriter ex cōnsuētūdine suā phalange factā impetus gladiōrum excēpērunt. Repertī sunt complūrēs nostrī, quī in phalangem insilīrent et scūta manibus revellerent et dēsuper vulnerārent. Cum hostium aciēs ā sinistrō cornū pulsa atque in fugam coniecta esset, ā dextrō cornū vehementer multitūdine suōrum nostram aciem premēbant. Id cum animadvertisset P. Crassus adulēscens, quī equitātuī praeerat, quod expedītior erat quam eī, quī inter aciem versābantur, tertiam aciem labōrantibus nostrīs subsidiō mīsit.

The flight of the Germans.

53. Ita proelium restitūtum est, atque omnēs hostēs terga vertērunt, neque prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen Rhēnum, mīlia passuum ex eō locō circiter quīnque, pervēnērunt. Ibi perpauci aut vīribus cōnfīsī trānāre contendērunt aut linteribus inventīs sibi salūtem repperērunt. In hīs fuit Ariovistus, quī nāviculam dēligātam ad rīpam nactus eā profūgit; reliquōs omnēs cōnsecūtī equitēs nostrī interfēcērunt.

Duae fuērunt Ariovistī uxōrēs, ūna Suēba nātiōne, quam domō sēcum dūxerat, altera Nōrica, rēgis Voccionis soror, quam in Galliā dūxerat ā frātre missam; utraque in eā fugā perīit. Duae filiae hārum altera occīsa, altera capta est.

Gāius Valerius Procillus, cum a custōdibus in fugā trīnīs catēnīs vīnctus traherētur, in ipsum Caesarem [illegible] equitātū insequentem incidit. Quae quidem rēs Caesarī nōn minōrem quam ipsa victōria voluptātem attulit, quod hominem summum prōvinciae Galliae, suum familiārem et hospitem, ēreptum ex manibus hostium, sua restitūtum vidēbat; neque eius calamitāte dē tanto [illegible] et gratulātiōne quicquam fortūna [illegible]. Is sē praesente dē sē ter sortibus cōnsultum dīcēbat, utrum īgnī statim necārētur an in aliud tempus reservārētur; sortium beneficiō sē esse incolumem. Item M. Metius repertus et ad eum reductus est.

End of the year's warfare, September, 58 B.C.

51. Hōc proeliō trāns Rhēnum nūntiātō, Suēbī, quī ad rīpās Rhēnī vēnerant, domum revertī coepērunt; quōs Ubiī, quī proximī Rhēnum incolunt, perterritōs īnsecūtī māgnum ex hīs numerum occīdērunt.

Caesar ūnā aestāte duōbus māximis bellīs cōnfectīs, mātūrius paulō quam tempus annī postulābat, in hīberna in Sēquanōs exercitum dēdūxit; hībernīs Labiēnum praeposuit; ipse in citeriōrem Galliam ad conventūs agendōs profectus est.

BOOK II

SUMMARY

Chaps. 1–33. The War with the Belgae, 57 B.C. — The Belgian tribes, fearing an advance of the Romans, combine against them. Learning of this, Caesar adds two new legions to his army and early in the season proceeds to northern Gaul. He makes friends with the Remi, a Belgian tribe, who agree to aid him (1–4). The first battle is fought on the Axona (Aisne) against the combined forces of the Belgae, who are defeated and decide to disband (5–12). Two tribes surrender (13–15). The Nervii then prove to be a powerful foe, and in the battle of the Sabis (Sambre) submit only after one of the hardest struggles Caesar had in Gaul (16–28). Finally the Aduatuci surrender, but becoming treacherous are sold into slavery (29–33).

Chaps. 34, 35. The account closes with a favorable report from Crassus, the lieutenant on the Atlantic coast, the return of Caesar to Italy, and the decree of a period of thanksgiving at Rome.

1–33. THE WAR WITH THE BELGAE, 57 B.C.

The Belgian tribes combine against Caesar.

1. Cum essem Caesar in citeriore Galliā, ita uti suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, crebrī ad eum rūmōrēs adferēbantur, litterīsque item Labiēnī certior fīēbat omnēs Belgās, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dīxerāmus, contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obsidēsque inter sē dare.

Coniūrandī hās esse causās: prīmum, quod verērentur, nē omnī pācātā Galliā ad eōs exercitus noster addūcerētur; deinde, quod ab nōnnūllīs Gallīs sollicitārentur, partim quī et Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versārī nōluerant, cum populō Rōmānō exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Galliā molestē ferēbant, partim quī mōbilitāte et levitāte animī novīs imperiīs studēbant; ab nonnūllīs etiam, quod in Galliā ā potentiōribus atque eīs, quī ad conduēendōs hominēs facultātēs habēbant, vulgō rēgna occupābantur, quī minus facile eam rem imperiō nostrō cōnsequī poterant.

Caesar increases his army and marches to the enemy's country.

2. Hīs nūntiīs litterīsque commōtus Caesar duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā novās cōnscripsit et initā aestāte, in ulteriōrem Galliam quī dēdūceret, Q. Pedium lēgātum mīsit. Ipse, cum prīmum pābulī cōpia esse inciperet, ad exercitum vēnit. Dat negōtium Senonibus reliquīsque Gallīs, quī fīnitimī Belgīs erant, utī ea, quae apud eōs gerantur, cognōscant sēque dē hīs rēbus certiōrem faciant. Hī cōnstanter omnēs nūntiāvērunt manūs cōgī, exercitum in ūnum locum condūcī. Tum vērō dubitandum nōn exīstimāvit, quīn ad eōs proficīscerētur. Rē frūmentāriā prōvīsā, castra movet diēbusque circiter quīndecim ad fīnes Belgārum pervenit.

The Remi are friendly to the Romans.

3. Eō cum dē improvīsō celeriusque omnium opīnione vēnisset, Rēmī, quī proximī Galliae ex Belgīs sunt, ad eum lēgātōs Iccium et Andebrogium, prīmōs

Roman Miles
10
25
50
Route of Caesar
Modern names in Parentheses
MARE
GERMANICUM
CENIMAGNI
BATAVORUM INSULA
Lupia
Rura
EBU
(Lille)
(Bonn)
Castra Labieni
TREVERI
VANGIONES
(Worms)
NEMETES
(Laon)
Bibrax
Axona
(Evreux)
EBUROVICES
Luteti
(Paris)
Meaux
MELDI
ESUVII
CAMPAIGN OF 57 B. C.

cīvitātis, mīsērunt, quī dīcerent: Sē suaque omnia in fidem atque potestātem populī Rōmānī permittere, neque sē cum reliquīs Belgīs cōnsēnsisse neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāsse, parātōsque esse et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidīs recipere et frūmentō cēterisque rēbus iuvāre; reliquōs omnēs Belgās in armīs esse, Germānōsque, quī eis Rhēnum incolant, sēsē cum hīs coniūnxisse, tantumque esse eōrum omnium furōrem, ut nē Suessiōnēs quidem, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque suōs, quī eōdem iūre et īsdem lēgibus ūtantur, ūnum imperium ūnumque magistrātum cum ipsīs habeant, dēterrēre potuerint, quīn cum hīs cōnsentīrent.

Strength of the Belgian tribes.

4. Cum ab hīs quaereret, quae cīvitates quantaeque in armīs essent et quid in bellō possent, sīc reperiēbat: Plērōsque Belgās esse ortōs ā Germānīs, Rhēnumque antīquitus trānsductōs propter locī fertilitātem ibi cōnsēdisse, Gallōsque, quī ea loca incolerent, expulisse, sōlōsque esse, quī patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omnī Galliā vexātā, Teutonōs Cimbrōsque intrā suōs fīnēs ingredī prohibuerint; quā ex rē fierī, ut eārum rērum memoriā māgnam sibi auctōritātem māgnōsque spīritūs in rē mīlitārī sūmerent.

Dē numerō eōrum omnia sē habēre explōrāta Rēmī dīcēbant, propterea quod propinquitātibus adfīnitātibusque coniūnctī, quantum quisque multitudinem in commūnī Belgārum conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit, cognōverint. Plūrimum inter eos Bellovacōs et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō valēre: hōs posse

cōnficere armāta mīlia centum, pollicitōs ex eō numerō
dēcta mīlia sexāgintā, tōtiusque bellī imperium sibi
postulāre. Suessiōnēs nōs esse fīnitimōs; fīnēs lātis-
simōs fertilissimōsque agros possidēre. Apud eōs fuisse
rēgem nostrō etiam memoriā Dīviciācum, tōtius Galliae
potentissimum, quī cum māgnae partis hārum regiōnum,
tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuerit; nunc esse
rēgem Gallum; ad hunc propter iūstitiam prūdentiam-
que summam tōtius bellī omnium voluntāte dēferrī;
oppida habēre numerō duodecim, pollicērī mīlia armāta
quīnquāgintā; totidem Nerviōs, quī māximē ferī inter
ipsōs habeantur longissimēque absint; XV mīlia Atre-
bātēs, Ambiānōs X mīlia, Morinōs XXV mīlia, Menapiōs
VII mīlia, Caletōs X mīlia, Veliocassōs et Viromanduōs
totidem, Aduatucōs XIX mīlia; Condrūsōs, Eburōnēs,
Caerōsōs, Caemānōs, quī ūnō nōmine Germānī appellan-
tur, arbitrārī ad XL mīlia.

Caesar consults with Diviciacus and crosses the Axona.

5. Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus līberāliterque ōrātiōne
prōsecūtus omnem senātum ad sē convenīre prīncipum-
que līberōs obsidēs ad sē addūcī iussit. Quae omnia
ab hīs dīligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Dīviciācum
Haeduum māgnopere cohortātus docet, quantō opere
reī pūblicae communisque salūtis intersit manūs hos-
tium distinērī, nē cum tantā multitūdine ūnō tempore
cōnflīgendum sit. Id fierī posse, sī suās cōpiās Haeduī
in fīnēs Bellovacōrum intrōdūxerint et cōrum agrōs
populārī coeperint. Hīs datīs mandātīs, eum ā sē dī-
mittit.

Postquam omnēs Belgārum cōpiās in ūnum locum

coāctās ad sē venīre vīdit, neque iam longē abesse, ab eīs, quōs mīserat, explōrātōribus et ab Rēmīs cognōvit, flūmen Axonam, quod est in extrēmīs Rēmōrum fīnibus, exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit atque ibi castra posuit. Quae rēs et latus ūnum castrōrum rīpīs flūminis mūniēbat et post eum quae erant, tūta ab hostibus reddēbat et, commeātūs ab Rēmīs reliquīsque cīvitātibus ut sine perīculō ad eum portārī possent, efficiēbat. In eō flūmine pōns erat. Ibi praesidium pōnit et in alterā parte flūminis Q. Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum sex cohortibus relinquit; castra in altitūdinem pedum duodecim vāllō fossāque duodēvīgintī pedum mūnīrī iubet.

The Belgae attack Bibrax.

6. Ab hīs castrīs oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrax aberat mīlia passuum octō. Id ex itinere magnō impetū Belgae oppūgnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē sustentātum est. Gallōrum eadem atque Belgārum oppūgnātiō est haec: ubi, circumiectā multitūdine hominum tōtīs moenibus undique in mūrum lapidēs iacī coeptī sunt mūrusque dēfēnsōribus nūdātus est, testūdine factā portās succēdunt mūrumque subruunt. Quod tum facile fīēbat. Nam cum tanta multitūdō lapidēs ac tēla conicerent, in mūrō cōnsistendī potestās erat nūllī.

Cum fīnem oppūgnandī nox fēcisset, Iccius Rēmus, summā nōbilitāte et grātiā inter suōs, quī tum oppidō praefuerat, ūnus ex eīs, quī lēgātī dē pāce ad Caesarem vēnerant, nūntium ad eum mittit: nisi subsidium sibi submittātur, sēsē diūtius sustinēre nōn posse.

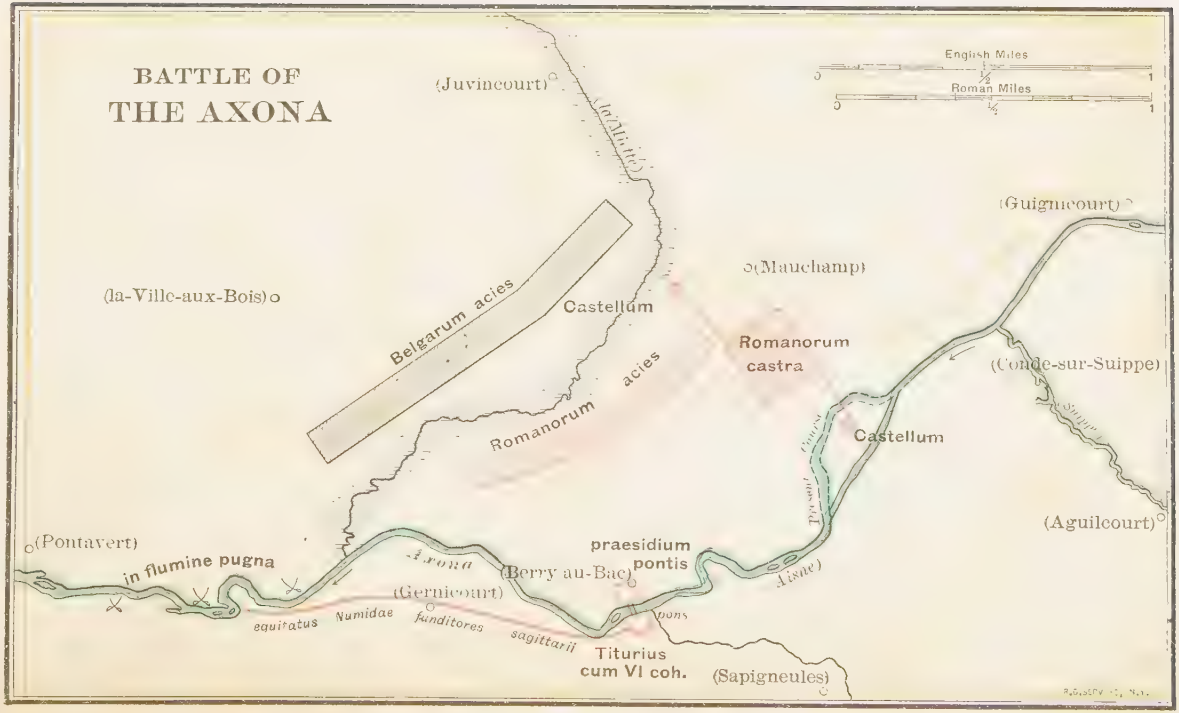
Caesar aids Bibrax. The Belgae encamp near the Romans.

7. Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar īsdem ducibus ūsus, quī nūntiī ab Icciō vēnerant, Numidās et Crētas sagittāriōs et funditōrēs Baleārēs subsidiō oppidānīs mittit. Quōrum adventū et Rēmīs cum spē dēfēnsiōnis studium prōpūgnandī accessit, et hostibus eādem dē causā spēs potiundī oppidī discessit. Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morātī agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulātī, omnibus vīcīs aedificiīsque, quō adīre potuerant, incēnsīs, ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiīs contendērunt et ā mīlibus passuum minus duōbus castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut fūmō atque īgnibus sīgnificābātur, amplius mīlibus passuum octō in lātitūdinem patēbant.

Caesar fortifies his position.

8. Caesar prīmō et propter multitūdinem hostium et propter eximiam opīniōnem virtūtis proeliō supersedēre statuit; cotīdiē tamen equestribus proeliīs, quid hostis virtūte posset et quid nostrī audērent, perīclitābātur.

Ubi nostrōs nōn esse īnferiōrēs intellēxit, locō prō castrīs ad aciem īnstruendam nātūrā opportūnō atque idōneō, quod is collis, ubi castra posita erant, paululum ex plānitiē ēditus tantum adversus in lātitūdinem patēbat, quantum locī aciēs īnstrūcta occupāre poterat, atque ex utrāque parte lateris dēiectūs habēbat et in frontem lēniter fastīgātus paulātim ad plānitiem redībat, ab utrōque latere ēius collis trānsversam fossam obdūxit


BATTLE OF
THE AXONA
English Miles
Roman Miles
(Juvincourt)
(la-Ville-aux-Bois)
Belgarum acies
Castellum
Romanorum acies
(Mauchamp)
Romanorum castra
(Guignicourt)
(Condé-sur-Suippe)
Castellum
(Aguilcourt)
(Pontavert)
in flumine pugna
Axona
(Berry au-Bac)
praesidium pontis
(Gernicourt)
equitatus
Numidae
funditores
sagittarii
Titurius cum VI coh.
pons
(Sapigneules)

circiter passuum quadringentōrum et ad extrēmās fossās castella cōnstituit ibique tormenta conlocāvit, nē, cum aciem īnstrūxisset, hostēs, quod tantum multitūdine poterant, ab lateribus pūgnantēs suōs circumvenīre possent.

Hōc factō, duābus legiōnibus, quās proximē cōnscrīpserat, in castris relictīs, ut, sī quō opus esset, subsidiō dūcī possent, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castrīs in aciē cōnstituit. Hostēs item suās copiās ex castrīs ēductās īnstrūxērunt.

The enemy attempt to cross the Axona.

9. Palūs erat nōn māgna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc sī nostrī trānsīrent hostēs exspectābant; nostrī autem, sī ab illīs initium trānseundī fieret, ut impedītōs adgrederentur, parātī in armīs erant. Interim proeliō equestrī inter duās aciēs contendebatur. Ubi neutrī trānseundī initium faciunt, secundiōre equitum proeliō nostrīs, Caesar suōs in castra redūxit. Hostēs prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt, quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est. Ibi vadīs repertīs partem suarum copiārum traducere cōnātī sunt, eō cōnsiliō, ut, sī possent, castellum, cui praeerat Q. Titūrius lēgātus, expūgnārent pontemque interscinderent; sī minus potuissent, agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur, quī māgnō nōbīs ūsuī ad bellum gerendum erant, commeātūque nostrōs prohibērent.

The battle of the Axona.

10. Caesar certior factus ab Titūriō omnem equitātum et levis armātūrae Numidās, funditōrēs sagittāriōsque

ponte trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Ācriter in eō locō pūgnātum est. Hostēs impedītōs nostrī in flūmine adgressī māgnum eōrum numerum occīdērunt; per eōrum corpora reliquōs audācissimē trānsīre cōnantēs multitūdine tēlōrum reppulērunt; prīmōsque, quī trānsierant, equitātū circumventōs interfēcērunt.

Hostēs, ubi et dē expūgnandō oppidō et dē flūmine trānseundō spem sē fefellisse intellēxērunt neque nostrōs in locum inīquiōrem prōgredī pūgnandī causā vīdērunt, atque ipsōs rēs frūmentāria dēficere coepit, conciliō convocātō, cōnstituērunt optimum esse, domum suam quemque revertī et, quōrum in fīnēs prīmum Rōmānī exercitum intrōdūxissent, ad eōs dēfendendōs undique convenīrent, ut potius in suīs quam in aliēnīs fīnibus dēcertārent et domesticīs cōpiīs reī frūmentāriae ūterentur. Ad eam sententiam cum reliquīs causīs haec quoque ratiō eōs dēdūxit, quod Dīviciācum atque Haeduōs fīnibus Bellovacōrum adpropinquāre cognōverant. Hīs persuādērī, ut diūtius morārentur neque suīs auxilium ferrent, nōn poterat.

The Romans pursue the fleeing enemy.

11. Eā rē cōnstitūtā, secundā vigiliā māgnō cum strepitū ac tumultū castrīs ēgressī nūllō certō ōrdine neque imperiō, cum sibi quisque prīmum itineris locum peteret et domum pervenīre properāret, fēcērunt, ut cōnsimilis fugae profectiō vidērētur. Hāc rē statim Caesar per speculātōrēs cognitā, īnsidiās veritus, quod, quā dē causā discēderent, nōndum perspexerat, exercitum equitātumque castrīs continuit. Prīmā lūce cōnfīrmātā rē ab explōrātōribus, omnem equitātum, quī novissimum agmen morārētur, praemīsit.

His Q. Pedium et Aurunculēium Cottam lēgātōs praefēcit: T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus subsequī iussit. Hī novissimōs secūtōrī et multa mīlia passuum prōsecūtī māgnam multitūdinem eōrum fugientium conciderunt; cum ab extrēmō agmine, ad quōs ventum erat, cōnsisterent fortiterque impetum nostrōrum mīlitum sustinērent, priōrēs, quod abesse ā perīculō vidērentur neque ūllā necessitāte neque imperiō continērentur, exaudītō clāmōre perturbātīs ōrdinibus omnēs in fugā sibi praesidium pōnerent. Ita sine ūllō perīculō tantam eōrum multitūdinem nostrī interfēcērunt, quantum fuit diēī spatium; sub occāsum sōlis sequī dēsitērunt sēque in castra, ut erat imperātum, recēpērunt.

The siege of Noviodunum.

12. Postrīdiē ēius diēī Caesar, priusquam sē hostēs ex terrōre ac fugā reciperent, in fīnēs Suessiōnum, quī proximī Rēmīs erant, exercitum dūxit et māgnō itinere ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex itinere oppūgnāre cōnātus, quod vacuum ab dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitūdinem fossae mūrīque altitūdinem, paucīs dēfendentibus, expūgnāre nōn potuit. Castrīs mūnītīs vīneās agere, quaeque ad oppūgnandum ūsuī erant, comparāre coepit. Interim omnis ex fugā Suessiōnum multitūdō in oppidum proximā nocte convēnit. Celeriter vīneīs ad oppidum āctīs, aggere iactō turribusque cōnstitūtīs, māgnitūdine operum, quae neque vīderant ante Gallī neque audierant, et celeritāte Rōmānōrum permōtī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditiōne mittunt et, petentibus Rēmīs, ut cōnservārentur, impetrant.

GEORGE MARK ELLIOTT LIBRARY
The Cincinnati Bible Seminary
60836

The Suessiones surrender. The Bellovaci seek peace.

13. Caesar, obsidibus acceptīs prīmīs cīvitātis atque ipsīus Galbae rēgis duōbus fīliīs, armīsque omnibus ex oppidō trāditīs, in dēditiōnem Suessiōnēs accipit exercitumque in Bellovacōs dūcit. Quī cum sē suaque omnia in oppidum Brātuspantium contulissent, atque ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter mīlia passuum quīnque abesset, omnēs māiōrēs nātū ex oppidō ēgressī manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce sīgnificāre coepērunt, sēsē in ēius fidem ac potestātem venīre nec contrā populum Rōmānum armīs contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō passīs manibus suō mōre pācem ab Rōmānīs petiērunt.

Diviciacus pleads for the Bellovaci.

14. Prō hīs Dīviciācus (nam post discessum Belgārum dīmissīs Haeduōrum cōpiīs ad eum reverterat) facit verba: Bellovacōs omnī tempore in fidē atque amīcitiā cīvitātis Haeduae fuisse; impulsōs ab suīs prīncipibus, quī dīcerent Haeduōs ā Caesare in servitūtem redāctōs omnēs indignitātēs contumēliāsque perferre, et ab Haeduīs dēfēcisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Quī ēius cōnsilī prīncipēs fuissent, quod intellegerent, quantam calamitātem cīvitātī intulissent, in Britanniam profūgisse. Petere nōn sōlum Bellovacōs, sed etiam prō hīs Haeduōs, ut suā clēmentiā ac mānsuētūdine in eōs ūtātur. Quod sī fēcerit, Haeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās amplificātūrum, quōrum auxiliīs atque opibus, sī qua bella inciderint, sustentāre cōnsuērint.

Surrender of the Bellovaci. The Nervii.

15. Caesar honōris Dīviciācī atque Haeduōrum causā sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōnservātūrum dīxit; et quod erat cīvitās māgnā inter Belgās auctōritāte atque hominum multitūdine praestābat, sexcentōs obsidēs poposcit. Hīs trāditīs omnibusque armīs ex oppidō conlātīs, ab eō locō in fīnēs Ambiānōrum pervēnit, quī sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdidērunt.

Eōrum fīnēs Nervīī attingēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sīc reperiēbat: Nūllum esse aditum ad eōs mercātōribus; nihil patī vīnī reliquārumque rērum ad lūxuriam pertinentium īnferrī, quod hīs rēbus relanguēscere animōs et remittī virtūtem exīstimārent; esse hominēs ferōs māgnaeque virtūtis, increpitāre atque incūsāre reliquōs Belgās, quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdidissent patriamque virtūtem prōiēcissent; cōnfīrmāre sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ūllam condiciōnem pācis acceptūrōs.

The Nervii cross the Sabis and await the Romans.

16. Cum per eōrum fīnēs trīduum iter fēcisset, inveniēbat ex captīvīs Sabim flūmen ā castrīs suīs nōn amplius mīlia passuum decem abesse; trāns id flūmen omnēs Nerviōs cōnsēdisse adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum exspectāre ūnā cum Atrebātibus et Viromanduīs, fīnitimīs suīs (nam hīs utrīsque persuāserant, utī eandem bellī fortūnam experīrentur); exspectārī etiam ab hīs Aduatucōrum cōpiās atque esse in itinere; mulierēs, quīque per aetātem ad pūgnam inūtilēs vidērentur, in eum locum conīēcisse, quō propter palūdēs exercituī aditus nōn esset.

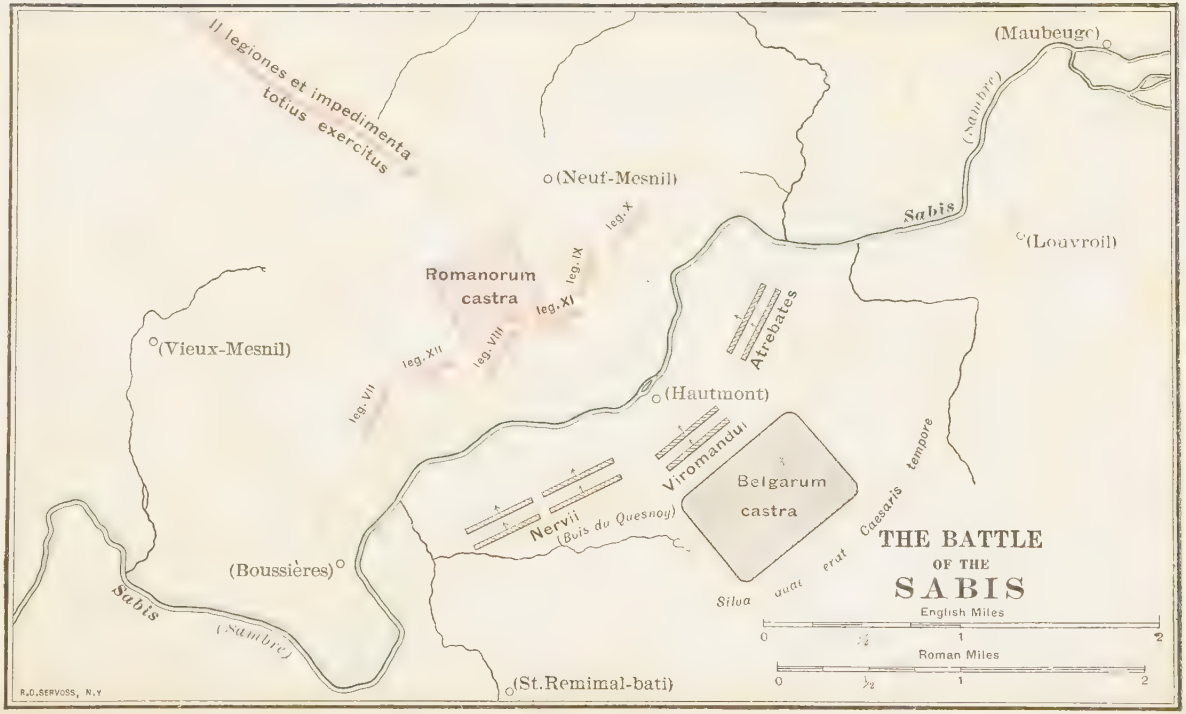
The Nervii plan an attack. Their hedges.

17. Hīs rēbus cognitīs, explōrātōrēs centuriōnēsque praemittit, quī locum idōneum castrīs dēligant. Cum ex dēditīciīs Belgīs reliquīsque Gallīs complūrēs Caesarem secūtī ūnā iter facerent, quīdam ex hīs, ut posteā ex captīvīs cognitum est, eōrum diērum cōnsuētūdine itineris nostrī exercitūs perspectā, nocte ad Nerviōs pervēnērunt atque hīs dēmōnstrārunt inter singulās legiōnēs impedīmentōrum māgnum numerum intercēdere, neque esse quicquam negōtī, cum prīma legiō in castra vēnisset reliquaeque legiōnēs māgnum spatium abessent, hanc sub sarcinīs adorīrī; quā pulsā impedīmentīsque dīreptīs futūrum, ut reliquae contrā cōnsistere nōn audērent.

Adiuvābat etiam eōrum cōnsilium, quī rem dēferēbant, quod Nervīī antīquitus, cum equitātū nihil possent (neque enim ad hōc tempus eī reī student, sed, quicquid possunt, pedestribus valent cōpiīs), quō facilius fīnitimōrum equitātum, sī praedandī causā ad eōs vēnissent, impedīrent, tenerīs arboribus incīsīs atque īnflexīs crēbrīsque in lātitūdinem rāmīs ēnātīs et rubīs sentibusque interiectīs effēcerant, ut īnstar mūrī hae saepēs mūnīmentum praebērent, quō nōn modo nōn intrārī, sed nē perspicī quidem posset. Hīs rēbus cum iter agminis nostrī impedīrētur, nōn omittendum sibi cōnsilium Nervīī exīstimāvērunt.

The enemies select opposite hills.

18. Locī nātūra erat haec, quem locum nostrī castrīs dēlēgerant. Collis ab summō aequāliter dēclīvis ad


II legiones et impedimenta totius exercitus
(Maubeuge)
(Sambre)
(Neuf-Mesnil)
Sabis
(Louvroil)
leg. X
leg. IX
leg. XI
Romanorum castra
leg. VIII
leg. XII
leg. VII
(Vieux-Mesnil)
Atrebates
(Hautmont)
Viromandui
Belgarum castra
Nervii (Bois du Quesnoy)
tempore
Caesaris
erat
vadi
Silva
THE BATTLE OF THE SABIS
English Miles
0
½
1
2
Roman Miles
0
½
1
2
(Boussières)
Sabis
(Sambre)
(St.Remimal-bati)
R.D.SERVOSS, N.Y

flūmen Sabim, quod suprā nōmināvimus, vergēbat. Ab eō flūmine pari aeclīvitate collis nascebātur adversus huic et contrārius, passus circiter ducentos īnfimus apertus, ab superiōre parte silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōrsus perspicī posset. Intrā eās silvās hostēs in occultō sēsē continēbant; in apertō locō secundum flūmen paucae statiōnēs equitum vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdō pedum circiter trium.

The battle of the Sabis begins.

19. Caesar equitātū praemissō subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiīs, sed ratiō ōrdōque agminis aliter sē habēbat, ac Belgae ad Nerviōs dētulerant. Nam quod hostibus adpropinquābat, cōnsuētūdine suā Caesar sex legiōnēs expedītās dūcēbat; post eās tōtīus exercitūs impedīmenta conlocārat; inde duae legiōnēs, quae proximē cōnscrīptae erant, tōtum agmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedīmentīs erant. Equitēs nostrī cum funditōribus sagittāriīsque flūmen trānsgressī cum hostium equitātū proelium commīsērunt. Cum sē illī identidem in silvās ad suōs reciperent ac rūrsus ex silvā in nostrōs impetum facerent neque nostrī longius, quam quem ad fīnem porrēcta loca aperta pertinēbant, cēdentēs īnsequī audērent, interim legiōnēs sex, quae prīmae vēnerant, opere dīmēnsō castra mūnīre coepērunt.

Ubi prīma impedīmenta nostrī exercitūs ab eīs, quī in silvīs abditī latēbant, vīsa sunt, quod tempus inter eōs committendī proelī convēnerat, ita ut intrā silvās aciem ōrdinēsque cōnstituerant atque ipsī sēsē cōnfīrmāverant, subitō omnibus cōpiīs prōvolāvērunt impetumque in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. Hīs facile pulsīs

ac prōturbātīs, incrēdibilī celeritāte ad flūmen dēcucurrērunt, ut paene ūnō tempore et ad silvās et in flūmine et iam in manibus nostrīs hostēs vidērentur. Eādem autem celeritāte adversō colle ad nostra castra atque eōs, quī in opere occupātī erant, contendērunt.

A critical moment for the Romans.

20. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda: vēxillum prōpōnendum (quod erat īnsīgne, cum ad arma concurrī oportēret), sīgnum tubā dandum, ab opere revocandī mīlitēs, quī paulō longius aggeris petendī causā prōcesserant, arcessendī, aciēs īnstruenda, mīlitēs cohortandī, sīgnum dandum. Quārum rērum māgnam partem temporis brevitās et incursus hostium impediēbat.

Hīs difficultātibus duae rēs erant subsidiō, scientia atque ūsus mīlitum, quod superiōribus proeliīs exercitātī, quid fierī oportēret, nōn minus commodē ipsī sibi praescrībere quam ab aliīs docērī poterant, et quod ab opere singulīsque legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs Caesar discēdere nisi mūnītīs castrīs vetuerat. Hī propter propinquitātem et celeritātem hostium nihil iam Caesaris imperium exspectābant, sed per sē, quae vidēbantur, administrābant.

Caesar quickly encourages his men.

21. Caesar, necessāriīs rēbus imperātīs, ad cohortandōs mīlitēs, quam in partem fors obtulit, dēcucurrit et ad legiōnem decimam dēvēnit. Mīlitēs nōn longiōre ōrātiōne cohortātus, quam utī suae prīstinae virtūtis memoriam retinērent neu perturbārentur animō hostiumque

impetum fortiter sustinērent, quod nōn longius hostēs aberant, quam quō tēlum adigī posset, proelī committendī sīgnum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandī causā profectus pūgnantibus occurrit.

Temporis tanta fuit exiguitās hostiumque tam parātus ad dīmicandum animus, ut nōn modo ad īnsīgnia accommodanda, sed etiam ad galeās induendās scūtīsque tegimenta detrahenda tempus dēfuerit. Quam quisque ab opere in partem suam dēvēnit quaeque prīma sīgna cōnspexit, ad haec cōnstitit, nē in quaerendīs suīs pūgnandī tempus dīmitteret.

Disadvantage of the Romans.

22. Īnstrūctō exercitū, magis ut locī nātūra dēlectusque collis et necessitās temporis, quam ut reī mīlitāris ratio atque ōrdo postulabat, cum dīversae legiōnēs aliae aliā in parte hostibus resisterent, saepibusque densissimīs, ut ante dēmōnstrāvimus, interiectis prōspectus impedīrētur, neque certa subsidia conlocārī neque, quid in quāque parte opus esset, prōvidērī neque ab ūnō omnia imperia administrārī poterant. Itaque in tantā rērum inīquitāte fortūnae quoque ēventūs variī sequēbantur.

The battle is fiercely fought.

23. Legiōnis nōnae et decimae mīlites, ut in sinistrā parte aciē cōnstiterant, pīlīs ēmissīs, cursū ac lassitūdine exanimātōs vulneribusque cōnfectōs Atrebātēs (nam hīs ea pars obvēnerat) celeriter ex locō superiōre in flūmen compulērunt, et trānsīre cōnantēs īnsecūtī gladiīs māgnam partem eōrum impedītam interfēcērunt. Ipsī

trānsīre flūmen nōn dubitāvērunt, et in locum inīquum prōgressī rūrsus resistentēs hostēs redintegrātō proeliō in fugam coniēcērunt.

Item aliā in parte dīversae duae legiōnēs, ūndecima et octāva, prōflīgātīs Viromanduīs, quibuscum erant congressī, ex locō superiōre in ipsīs flūminis rīpīs proeliābantur. At tōtīs ferē castrīs ā fronte et ā sinistrā parte nūdātīs, cum in dextrō cornū legiō duodecima et nōn māgnō ab eā intervāllō septima cōnstitisset, omnēs Nerviī cōnfertissimō agmine duce Boduognātō, quī summam imperī tenēbat, ad eum locum contendērunt; quōrum pars ab apertō latere legiōnēs circumvenīre, pars summum castrōrum locum petere coepit.

Panic in the Roman camp.

24. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī levisque armātūrae peditēs, quī cum eīs ūnā fuerant, quōs prīmō hostium impetū pulsōs dīxeram, cum sē in castra reciperent, adversīs hostibus occurrēbant ac rūrsus aliam in partem fugam petēbant; et cālōnēs, quī ab decumānā portā ac summō iugō collis nostrōs victōrēs flūmen trānsīsse cōnspexerant, praedandī causā ēgressī, cum respexissent et hostēs in nostrīs castrīs versārī vīdissent, praecipitēs fugae sēsē mandābant. Simul eōrum, quī cum impedīmentīs veniēbant, clāmor fremitusque oriēbātur, aliīque aliam in partem perterritī ferēbantur.

Quibus omnibus rēbus permōtī equitēs Trēverī, quōrum inter Gallōs virtūtis opīniō est singulāris, quī auxilī causā ā cīvitāte missī ad Caesarem vēnerant, cum multitūdine hostium castra nostra complērī, legiōnēs premī et paene circumventās tenērī, cālōnēs, equitēs, funditōrēs, Numidās dispersōs dissipātōsque in omnēs

partēs fugere vīdissent, dēspērātīs nostrīs rēbus domum contendērunt; Rōmānōs pulsōs superātōsque, castrīs impedīmentīsque eōrum hostēs potītōs cīvitātī renūntiāvērunt.

Caesar himself goes to the front and rallies his army.

25. Caesar ab decimae legiōnis cohortātiōne ad dextrum cornū protectus, ubi suōs urgērī sīgnisque in ūnum locum conlātīs duodecimae legiōnis cōnfertos mīlitēs sibi ipsōs ad pūgnam esse impedīmentō vīdit, quārtae cohortis omnibus centuriōnibus occīsīs, sīgniferō interfectō, sīgnō āmissō, reliquārum cohortium omnibus ferē centuriōnibus aut vulnerātīs aut occīsīs, in hīs prīmipīlō P. Sextiō Baculō, fortissimō virō, multīs gravibusque vulneribus cōnfectō, ut iam sē sustinēre nōn posset, reliquōs esse tardiōrēs et nōnnūllōs ab novissimīs dēserto proeliō excēdere ac tēla vītare, hostēs neque ā fronte ex īnferiōre locō subeuntēs intermittere et ab utrōque latere īnstāre et rem esse in angustō vīdit neque ūllum esse subsidium, quod submittī posset, scūtō ab novissimīs ūnī mīlitī dētrāctō, quod ipse eō sine scūtō vēnerat, in prīmam aciem prōcessit centuriōnibusque nōminātim appellātīs reliquōs cohortātus mīlitēs sīgna īnferre et manipulōs laxāre iussit, quō facilius gladiīs ūtī possent. Cūius adventū spē inlātā mīlitibus ac redintegrātō animō, cum prō sē quisque in cōnspectū imperātōris etiam in extrēmīs suīs rēbus operam nāvāre cuperet, paulum hostium impetus tardātus est.

The Romans advance. Labienus sends aid.

26. Caesar cum septimam legiōnem, quae iūxtā cōnstiterat, item urgērī ab hoste vīdisset, tribūnōs mīlitum

monuit, ut paulātim sēsē legiōnēs coniungerent et conversa signa in hostēs īnferrent. Quō factō, cum aliīs aliī subsidium ferre neque timōrem ab hoste circumvenīrentur, audācius resistere ac fortius pūgnāre coepērunt.

Interim mīlitēs legiōnum duārum, quae in novissimō agmine praesidiō impedīmentīs fuerant, proeliō nūntiātō, cursū incitātō, in summō colle ab hostibus cōnspiciēbantur; et T. Labiēnus castrīs hostium potītus et ex locō superiōre, quae rēs in nostrīs castrīs gererentur, cōnspicātus, decimam legiōnem subsidiō nostrīs mīsit. Quī cum ex equitum et cālōnum fugā, quō in locō rēs esset quantōque in perīculō et castra et legiōnēs et imperātor versārētur, cognōvissent, nihil ad celeritātem sibi reliquī fēcērunt.

The great bravery of both Romans and Nervii.

27. Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commūtātiō est facta, ut nostrī, etiam quī vulneribus cōnfectī prōcubuissent, scūtīs innīxī proelium redintegrārent, cālōnēs perterritōs hostēs cōnspicātī etiam inermēs armātīs occurrerent; equitēs verō, ut turpitūdinem fugae virtūte dēlērent, omnibus in locīs pūgnandō sē legiōnāriīs mīlitibus praeferrent.

At hostēs etiam in extrēmā spē salūtis tantam virtūtem praestitērunt, ut, cum prīmī eōrum cecidissent proximī iacentibus īnsisterent atque ex eōrum corporibus pūgnārent; hīs dēiectīs et coacervātīs cadāveribus, quī superessent, ut ex tumulō, tēla in nostrōs conicerent et pīla intercepta remitterent; ut nōn nēquīquam tantae virtūtis hominēs iūdicārī dēbēret ausōs esse trānsīre lātissimum flūmen, ascendere altissimās rīpās, subīre

THE STRONGHOLD OF THE ADUATUCI

English Miles

0 ¼ ½ ¾ 1

Roman Miles

0 ¼ ½ ¾ 1

R.D.SERVOSS, N.Y.

inīquissimum locum; quae facilia ex difficillimīs animī māgnitūdō redēgerat.

Surrender of the Nervii.

28. Hōc proeliō factō et prope ad interneciōnem gente ac nōmine Nerviōrum redāctō, māiōrēs nātū, quōs ūnā cum puerīs mulieribusque in aestuāria ac palūdēs coniectōs dīxerāmus, hāc pugnā nūntiātā, cum victōribus nihil impedītum, victīs nihil tūtum arbitrārentur, omnium, quī supererant, cōnsēnsū lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt sēque eī dēdidērunt et in commemorandā cīvitātis calamitāte ex sescentīs ad trēs senātōrēs, ex hominum mīlibus sexāgintā vix ad quīngentōs, quī arma ferre possent, sēsē redāctōs esse dīxērunt. Quōs Caesar, ut in miserōs ac supplicēs ūsus misericordiā vidērētur, dīligentissimē cōnservāvit, suīsque fīnibus atque oppidīs ūtī iussit et fīnitimīs imperāvit, ut ab iniūriā et maleficiō sē suōsque prohibērent.

The Aduatuci withdraw to their stronghold. Their origin.

29. Aduatucī, dē quibus suprā dīximus, cum omnibus cōpiīs auxiliō Nerviīs venīrent, hāc pugnā nūntiātā ex itinere domum revertērunt; cūnctīs oppidīs castellīsque dēsertīs, sua omnia in ūnum oppidum ēgregiē nātūrā mūnītum contulērunt. Quod cum ex omnibus in circuitū partibus altissimās rūpēs dēspectūsque habēret, ūnā ex parte lēniter acclīvis aditus in lātitūdinem nōn amplius ducentōrum pedum relinquēbātur; quem locum duplicī altissimō mūrō mūnierant; tum māgnī ponderis saxa et praeacūtās trabēs in mūrō collocābant.

Ipsī erant ex Cimbrīs Teutonīsque prōgnātī, quī, cum iter in prōvinciam nostram atque Ītaliam facerent, eīs impedīmentīs, quae sēcum agere ac portāre nōn poterant, citrā flūmen Rhēnum dēpositīs custōdiam ex suīs ac praesidium sex mīlia hominum ūnā relīquerant. Hī post eōrum obitum multōs annōs ā fīnitimīs exagitātī, cum aliās bellum īnferrent, aliās inlātum dēfenderent, cōnsēnsū eōrum omnium pāce factā hunc sibi domiciliō locum dēlēgerant.

They taunt the Romans who besiege their town.

30. Ac primō adventū exercitūs nostrī crēbrās ex oppidō excursiōnēs faciēbant parvulīsque proeliīs cum nostrīs contendēbant; posteā vāllō pedum duodecim, in circuitū quīndecim mīlium, crēbrīsque castelliīs circumm ūnītī oppidō sēsē continēbant. Ubi, vīneīs āctīs, aggere exstrūctō, turrim procul cōnstituī vīdērunt, prīmum inrīdēre ex mūrō atque increpitāre vōcibus, quod tanta māchinātiō ā tantō spatiō īnstituerētur: Quibusnam manibus aut quibus vīribus praesertim hominēs tantulae statūrae (nam plērumque omnibus Gallīs prae māgnitūdine corporum suōrum brevitās nostra contemptuī est) tantī oneris turrim in mūrō sēsē posse conlocāre cōnfīderent?

The Aduatuci send envoys.

31. Ubi vērō movērī et adpropinquāre mūrīs vīdērunt, novā atque inūsitātā speciē commōtī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce mīsērunt, quī ad hunc modum locūtī: Nōn sē exīstimāre Rōmānōs sine ope deōrum bellum gerere, qui tantae altitūdinis māchinātiōnēs tantā celeritāte prō-

movēre possent; sē suaque omnia eōrum potestātī per
mittere, dīxērunt. Ūnum petere ac dēprecārī: sī forte
prō suā clēmentiā ac mānsuētūdine, quam ipsī ab aliīs
audīrent, statuisset Aduatucōs esse cōnservandōs, nē
sē armīs dēspoliāret. Sibi omnēs ferē fīnitimōs esse
inimīcōs ac suae virtūtī invidēre; ā quibus sē dēfendere
trāditīs armīs nōn possent. Sibi praestāre, sī in eum
cāsum dēdūcerentur, quamvīs fortūnam ā populō
Rōmānō patī, quam ab hīs per cruciātum interfieī, inter
quōs dominārī cōnsuēssent.

Caesar's reply.

32. Ad haec Caesar respondit, sē magis cōnsuētūdine
suā quam meritō eōrum cīvitātem cōnservātūrum, sī,
priusquam mūrum ariēs attigisset, sē dēdidissent; sed
dēditiōnis nūllam esse condiciōnem nisi armīs trāditīs.
Sē id, quod in Nerviīs fēcisset, facturum fīnitimīsque
imperātūrum, nē quam dēditīciīs populī Rōmānī iniū-
riam īnferrent.

Rē renūntiātā ad suōs, quae imperārentur, facere
dīxērunt. Armōrum māgnā multitūdine dē mūrō in
fossam, quae erat ante oppidum, iactā, sīc ut prope
summam mūrī aggeresque altitudinem aequārent armōrum
adaequārent, et tamen circiter parte tertiā, ut post ā
perspectum est, cēlātā atque in oppidō retentā, portīs
patefactīs eō diē pāce sunt ūsī.

After a partial surrender, the Aduatuci attack the Romans by night and are defeated.

33. Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudī mīlitēsque
ex oppidō exīre iussit, nē quam noctū oppidānī ā mīli-

tibus iniūriam acciperent. Illī ante initō, ut intellēctum est, cōnsiliō, quod dēditiōne factā nostrōs praesidia dēductūrōs aut dēnique indīligentius servātūrōs crēdiderant, partim cum eīs, quae retinuerant et cēlāverant, armīs, partim scūtīs ex cortice factīs aut vīminibus intextīs, quae subitō, ut temporis exiguitās postulābat, pellibus indūxerant, tertiā vigiliā, quā minimē arduus ad nostrās mūnītiōnēs ascēnsus vidēbātur, omnibus cōpiīs repente ex oppidō ēruptiōnem fēcērunt. Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperāverat, īgnibus sīgnificātiōne factā, ex proximīs castellīs eō concursum est, pūgnātumque ab hostibus ita ācriter est, ut ā virīs fortibus in extrēmā spē salūtis inīquō locō contrā eōs, quī ex vāllō turribusque tēla iacerent, pūgnārī dēbuit, cum in ūnā virtūte omnis spēs cōnsisteret. Occīsīs ad hominum mīlibus quattuor reliquī in oppidum rēiectī sunt.

Postrīdiē ēius diēī refrāctīs portīs, cum iam dēfenderet nēmō, atque intrōmissīs mīlitibus nostrīs, sectiōnem ēius oppidī ūniversam Caesar vēndidit. Ab eīs, quī ēmerant, capitum numerus ad eum relātus est mīlium quīnquāgintā trium.

34, 35. END OF THE YEAR'S CAMPAIGNS.

Other tribes submit.

34. Eōdem tempore ā P. Crassō, quem cum legiōne ūnā mīserat ad Venetōs, Venellōs, Osismōs, Coriosolitas, Esuviōs, Aulercōs, Redonēs, quae sunt maritimae cīvitātēs Ōceanumque attingunt, certior factus est omnēs

eās cīvitātēs in diciōnem potestātemque populī Rōmānī esse redāctās.

The army goes into winter quarters. Caesar returns to Italy. Thanksgiving at Rome.

35. Hīs rēbus gestīs, omnī Gallliā pācātā, tanta hūius bellī ad barbarōs opīniō perlāta est, utī ab eīs nātiōnibus, quae trāns Rhēnum incolerent, lēgātī ad Caesarem mitterentur, quī sē obsidēs datūrās, imperāta factūrās pollicērentur. Quās lēgātiōnēs Caesar, quod in Ītaliam Īllyricumque properābat, initā proximā aestāte ad sē revertī iussit.

Ipse in Carnutēs, Andēs, Turonōs, quaeque cīvitātēs propinquae eīs locīs erant, ubi bellum gesserat, legiōnibus in hīberna dēductīs, in Ītaliam profectus est. Ob eāsque rēs ex litterīs Caesaris dierum quīndecim supplicātiō dēcrēta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nūllī.

BOOK III

SUMMARY

The third book deals chiefly with the work in different parts of Gaul of four of Caesar's lieutenants.

Chaps. 1–6. Caesar knew that the southern merchants in crossing the Alps were heavily taxed by the natives. Accordingly, before returning to Italy for the winter of 57–56 B.C., he sends Galba with the twelfth legion to open a mountain road for commerce. Early in the season the winter quarters of this legion at Octodurus are attacked by the mountaineers. He defeats them, but returns to the province without accomplishing his purpose.

Chaps. 7–16. Publius Crassus with the seventh legion had established winter quarters near the mouth of the Loire. The Veneti on the Atlantic coast bring war on themselves by seizing messengers sent to them by Crassus. Owing to the nature of the locality, the fighting is on the water, necessitating the building of ships by the Romans. Though Caesar himself is present on the scene of action, the victory is won by Brutus, the commander of the fleet.

Chaps. 17–19. Sabinus, another lieutenant, is successful among the Venelli, an Atlantic tribe.

Chaps. 20–27. Meanwhile Crassus, with about 5000 legionaries and all the cavalry, conducts a difficult campaign in Aquitania, securing the submission of many tribes.

Chaps. 28–29. Finally, Caesar himself, leaving the country of the Veneti after the naval battle, marches a distance of over four hundred miles to the northeast, to the Morini. Having ravaged their territories, he ends the year's warfare.

16. WAR WITH ALPINE TRIBES, AUTUMN OF 57 B.C.

The twelfth legion, under Galba, is sent to the Alps. Winter quarters at Octodurus.

1. Cum in Ītaliam proficīscerētur Caesar, Ser. Galbam cum legiōne duodecimā et parte equitātūs in Nantuātēs, Veragrōs Sedūnōsque mīsit, quī ā fīnibus Allobrogum et lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō ad summās Alpēs pertinent. Causa mittendī fuit, quod iter per Alpēs, quō māgnō cum periculō māgnīsque cum portōriīs mercātōrēs ire cōnsuērant, patefierī volēbat. Huic permīsit, sī opus esse arbitrārētur, ut in hīs locīs legiōnem hiemandī causā conlocāret.

Galba, secundīs aliquot proeliīs factīs castellīsque complūribus eōrum expūgnātīs, missīs ad eum undique lēgātīs obsidibusque datīs et pāce factā, cōnstituit cohortēs duās in Nantuātibus conlocāre et ipse cum reliquīs ēius legiōnis cohortibus in vīcō Veragrōrum, quī appellātur Octodūrus, hiemāre: quī vīcus positus in valle, nōn māgnā adiectā plānitiē, altissimīs montibus undique continētur. Cum hīc in duās partēs flūmine dīviderētur, alteram partem ēius vīcī Gallīs concessit, alteram vacuam ab hīs relictam cohortibus ad hiemandum attribuit. Eum locum vāllō fossāque mūnīvit.

The Gauls withdraw to the mountains and plan to attack the legion.

2. Cum diēs hībernōrum complūrēs trānsīssent, frūmentumque eō comportārī iussisset, subitō per explōrātōrēs certior factus est ex eā parte vīcī, quam Gallīs concesserat, omnēs noctū discessisse montēsque,

quī impendērent, ā māximā multitūdine Sedūnōrum et Veragrōrum tenērī.

Id aliquot dē causīs acciderat, ut subitō Gallī bellī renovandī legiōnisque opprimendae cōnsilium caperent: prīmum, quod legiōnem, neque eam plēnissimam, dētrāctīs cohortibus duābus et complūribus singillātim, quī commeātūs petendī causā missī erant, absentibus, propter paucitātem dēspiciēbant; tum etiam quod propter inīquitātem locī, cum ipsī ex montibus in vallem dēcurrerent et tēla conicerent, nē prīmum quidem impetum suum posse sustinērī exīstimābant. Accēdēbat, quod suōs ab sē līberōs abstrāctōs obsidum nōmine dolēbant, et Rōmānōs, nōn sōlum itinerum causā sed etiam perpetuae possessiōnis, culmina Alpium occupāre cōnārī et ea loca fīnitimae prōvinciae adiungere sibi persuāsum habēbant.

Though their position is unfavorable, the Romans decide to defend it.

3. Hīs nūntiīs acceptīs, Galba, cum neque opus hībernōrum mūnītiōnēsque plēnē essent perfectae neque dē frūmentō reliquōque commeātū satis esset prōvīsum, quod dēditiōne factā obsidibusque acceptīs nihil dē bellō timendum exīstimāverat, cōnsiliō celeriter convocātō, sententiās exquīrere coepit. Quō in cōnsiliō, cum tantum repentīnī perīculī praeter opīniōnem accidisset ac iam omnia ferē superiōra loca multitūdine armātōrum complēta cōnspicerentur, neque subsidiō venīrī neque commeātūs supportārī interclūsīs itineribus possent, prope iam dēspērātā salūte nōnnūllae ēius modī sententiae dīcēbantur, ut impedīmentīs relictīs

eruptiōne factā, īsdem itineribus, quibus eō pervenissent, ad salūtem contenderent. Māiōrī tamen parti placuit, hōc reservātō ad extrēmum consiliō, interim rei ēventum experīrī et castra dēfendere.

They are almost overwhelmed by the numbers of the enemy.

4 Brevi spatiō interiectō, vix ut eīs rēbus quās cōnstituissent, conlocandīs atque administrandīs tempus darētur, hostēs ex omnibus partibus signō datō dēcurrere, lapides gaesaque in vāllum conicere. Nostrī prīmō integrīs vīribus fortiter prōpūgnāre neque ūllum frūstrā tēlum ex locō superiōre mittere, et quaecumque pars castrōrum nūdāta defēnsōribus premī vidēbātur, eō occurrere et auxilium ferre; sed hōc superārī, quod diūturnitāte pūgnae hostēs dēfessī proeliō excēdēbant, aliī integrīs vīribus succēdēbant: quārum rērum ā nostrīs propter paucitātem fierī nihil poterat, ac nōn modo dēfesso ex pūgnā excēdendī, sed nē sauciō quidem ēius locī, ubi cōnstiterat, relinquendī ac suī recipiendī facultās dabātur.

A fierce struggle.

5 Cum iam amplius hōrīs sex continenter pūgnārētur, ac nōn sōlum vīrēs sed etiam tela nostros deficerent, atque hostēs ācrius īnstārent languidiōribusque nostrīs vāllum scindere et fossās complēre coepissent, resque esset iam ad extrēmum perducta cāsum, P. Sextius Baculus, prīmī pilī centuriō, quem Nervicō proeliō complūribus cōnfectum vulneribus dīximus, et item C. Volusēnus, tribūnus mīlitum, vir et cōnsilī māgnī et virtūtis, ad Galbam accurrunt atque ūnam esse spem salūtis

docent, sī ēruptiōne factā extrēmum auxilium experīrentur. Itaque convocātīs centuriōnibus celeriter mīlitēs certiōrēs facit, paulisper intermitterent proelium ac tantummodo tēla missa exciperent sēque ex labōre reficerent; post datō sīgnō ex castrīs ērumperent atque omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnerent.

Fortune favors the Romans.

6. Quod iussī sunt, faciunt, ac subitō omnibus portīs ēruptiōne factā, neque cognōscendī, quid fieret, neque suī colligendī hostibus facultātem relinquunt. Ita commūtātā fortūnā eōs, quī in spem potiundōrum castrōrum vēnerant, undique circumventōs interficiunt et ex hominum mīlibus amplius trīgintā, quem numerum barbarōrum ad castra vēnisse cōnstābat, plūs tertiā parte interfectā reliquōs perterritōs in fugam coniciunt ac nē in locīs quidem superiōribus cōnsistere patiuntur. Sīc omnibus hostium cōpiīs fūsīs armīsque exūtīs sē intrā mūnītiōnēs suās recipiunt.

Quō proeliō factō, quod saepius fortūnam temptāre Galba nōlēbat atque aliō sē in hīberna cōnsiliō vēnisse meminerat, aliīs occurrisse rēbus vīderat, māximē frūmentī commeātūsque inopiā permōtus posterō diē, omnibus ēius vīcī aedificiīs incēnsīs, in prōvinciam revertī contendit ac, nūllō hoste prohibente aut iter dēmorante, incolumem legiōnem in Nantuātēs, inde in Allobrogēs perdūxit ibique hiemāvit.

7–16. WAR WITH THE VENETI, 56 B.C.

Cause of the war.

7. Hīs rēbus gestīs, cum omnibus dē causīs Caesar pācātam Galliam exīstimāret, superātīs Belgīs, expulsīs

Germānīs, victīs in Alpibus Sedūnīs, atque ita initā hieme in Īllyricum profectus esset, quod eās quoque nātiōnēs adīre et regiōnēs cognōscere volēbat, subitum bellum in Galliā coörtum est. Ēius bellī haec fuit causa. P. Crassus adulēscēns cum legiōne septimā proximus mare Ōceanum in Andibus hiemābat. Is, quod in hīs locīs inopia frūmentī erat, praefectos tribūnōsque mīlitum complūrēs in fīnitimās cīvitātēs frūmentī commeātūsque petendī causā dīmīsit; quō in numerō est T. Terrasidius missus in Esuviōs, M. Trebius Gallus in Coriosolitas, Q. Velānius cum T. Sīliō in Venetōs.

The Veneti and other tribes arrest the messengers from Caesar's army.

8. Hūius est cīvitātis longē amplissima auctōritās omnis ōrae maritimae regiōnum eārum, quod et nāvēs habent Venetī plūrimās, quibus in Britanniam nāvigāre cōnsuērunt, et scientiā atque ūsū rērum nauticārum cēterōs antecēdunt, et in māgnō impetū maris vāstī atque apertī paucīs portibus interiectīs, quōs tenent ipsī, omnēs ferē, quī eō marī ūtī cōnsuērunt, habent vectīgālēs. Ab hīs fit initium retinendī Sīlī atque Velānī, quod per eōs suōs sē obsidēs, quōs Crassō dedissent, recuperātūrōs exīstimābant.

Hōrum auctōritāte fīnitimī adductī, ut sunt Gallōrum subita et repentīna cōnsilia, eādem dē causā Trebium Terrasidiumque retinent, et celeriter missīs lēgātīs per suōs prīncipēs inter sē coniūrant, nihil nisi commūnī cōnsiliō āctūrōs eundemque omnēs fortūnae exitum esse lātūrōs; reliquāsque cīvitātēs sollicitant, ut in eā lībertāte, quam ā māiōribus accēperint, permanēre quam

Rōmānōrum servitūtem perferre mālint. Omnī ōrā maritimā celeriter ad suam sententiam perductā, commūnem lēgātiōnem ad P. Crassum mittunt: si velit suōs recuperāre, obsidēs sibi remittat.

Caesar and the Veneti both prepare for a naval war.

9. Quibus dē rēbus Caesar ā Crassō certior factus, quod ipse aberat longius, nāvēs interim longās aedificārī in flūmine Ligerī, quod influit in Ōceanum, rēmigēs ex prōvinciā īnstituī, nautās gubernātōrēsque comparārī iubet. Hīs rēbus celeriter administrātīs, ipse, cum prīmum per annī tempus potuit, ad exercitum contendit. Venetī reliquaeque item cīvitātēs cognitō Caesaris adventū, simul quod, quantum in sē facinus admīsissent, intellegēbant, lēgātōs, quod nōmen ad omnēs nātiōnēs sānctum inviolātumque semper fuisset, retentōs ab sē et in vincula coniectōs, prō māgnitūdine perīculī bellum parāre et māximē ea, quae ad ūsum nāvium pertinent, prōvidēre īnstituunt, hōc māiōre spē, quod multum nātūrā locī cōnfīdēbant. Pedestria esse itinera concīsa aestuāriīs, nāvigātiōnem impedītam propter īnscientiam locōrum paucitātemque portuum sciēbant, neque nostrōs exercitūs propter frūmentī inopiam diūtius apud sē morārī posse cōnfīdēbant; ac iam ut omnia contrā opīniōnem acciderent, tamen sē plūrimum nāvibus posse, Rōmānōs neque ūllam facultātem habēre nāvium neque eōrum locōrum, ubi bellum gestūrī essent, vada, portūs, īnsulās nōvisse; ac longē aliam esse nāvigātiōnem in conclūsō marī atque in vāstissimō atque apertissimō Ōceanō perspiciēbant.

Hīs initīs cōnsiliīs oppida mūniunt, frūmenta ex agrīs

in oppida comportant, nāvēs in Venetiam, ubi Caesarem prīmum bellum gestūrum cōnstābat, quam plūrimās possunt, cōgunt. Sociōs sibi ad id bellum Osismōs, Lexoviōs, Nammetēs, Ambiliatōs, Morinōs, Diablintēs, Menapiōs adsciscunt; auxilia ex Britanniā, quae contrā eās regiōnēs posita est, arcessunt.

Caesar's reasons for undertaking the war.

10. Erant hae difficultātēs bellī gerendī, quās suprā ostendimus, sed tamen multa Caesarem ad id bellum incitābant: iniūria retentōrum equitum Rōmānōrum, rebelliō facta post dēditiōnem, dēfectiō datīs obsidibus, tot cīvitātum coniūrātiō, in prīmīs nē hāc parte neglēctā reliquae nātiōnēs sibi idem licēre arbitrārentur. Itaque cum intellegeret omnēs ferē Gallōs novīs rēbus studēre et ad bellum mōbiliter celeriterque excitārī, omnēs autem hominēs nātūrā lībertātī studēre et condiciōnem servitūtis ōdisse, priusquam plūrēs cīvitātēs cōnspīrārent, partiendum sibi ac lātius distribuendum exercitum putāvit.

Caesar sends four lieutenants to different parts of Gaul.

11. Itaque T. Labiēnum lēgātum in Trēverōs, quī proximī flūmini Rhēnō sunt, cum equitātū mittit. Huic mandat, Rēmōs reliquōsque Belgās adeat atque in officiō contineat Germānōsque, quī auxiliō ā Gallīs arcessītī dīcēbantur, sī per vim nāvibus flūmen trānsīre cōnentur, prohibeat. P. Crassum cum cohortibus legiōnāriīs duodecim et māgnō numerō equitātūs in Aquītāniam proficīscī iubet, nē ex hīs nātiōnibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur ac tantae nātiōnēs coniungantur. Q. Titū-

rium Sabīnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus in Venellōs, Coriosolitas Lexoviōsque mittit, quī eam manum distinendam cūret. D. Brūtum adulēscentem classī Gallicīsque nāvibus, quās ex Pictonibus et Santonīs reliquīsque pācātīs regiōnibus convenīre iusserat, praeficit et, cum prīmum possit, in Venetōs proficīscī iubet. Ipse eō pedestribus cōpiīs contendit.

The towns of the Veneti.

12. Erant ēius modī ferē sitūs oppidōrum, ut posita in extrēmīs lingulīs prōmunturiīsque neque pedibus adītum habērent, cum ex altō sē aestus incitāvisset, quod accidit semper hōrārum duodēnārum spatiō, neque nāvibus, quod rūrsus minuente aestū nāvēs in vadīs adflictārentur. Ita utrāque rē oppidōrum oppūgnātiō impediēbātur; ac sī quandō, māgnitūdine operis forte superātī, extrūsō marī aggere ac mōlibus atque hīs oppidī moenibus adaequātīs, suīs fortūnīs dēspērāre coeperant, māgnō numerō nāvium adpulsō, cūius reī summam facultātem habēbant, sua dēportābant omnia sēque in proxima oppida recipiēbant; ibi sē rūrsus īsdem opportūnitātibus locī dēfendēbant. Haec eō facilius māgnam partem aestātis faciēbant, quod nostrae nāvēs tempestātibus dētinēbantur, summaque erat vāstō atque apertō marī, māgnīs aestibus, rārīs ac prope nūllīs portibus, difficultās nāvigandī.

The ships of the Veneti.

13. Namque ipsōrum nāvēs ad hunc modum factae armātaeque erant: carīnae aliquantō plāniōrēs quam nostrārum nāvium, quō facilius vada ac dēcessum aestūs

excipere possent; prōrae admodum erectae atque item puppēs, ad māgnitūdinem fluctuum tempestātumque accommodātae; nāvēs totae factae ex rōbore ad quam vīs vim et contumeliam perferendam; trānstra ex pedālibus in altitūdinem trabibus, cōnfīxa clāvīs ferreīs digitī pollicis crassitūdine, ancorae prō fūnibus ferreīs catēnīs revīnctae, pellēs prō vēlīs alūtaeque tenuiter cōnfectae, sīve propter inopiam līnī atque ēius ūsūs inscientiam, sīve eō, quod est magis vērīsimile, quod tantās tempestātes Ō canī tantōsque impetus ventōrum sustinērī ac tanta onera nāvium regī vēlīs nōn satis commodē posse arbitrābantur.

Cum hīs nāvibus nostrae classī ēius modī congressus erat, ut ūnā celeritāte et pulsū rēmōrum praestāret, reliqua prō locī nātūra, prō vī tempestātum illīs essent aptiora et accommodātiōra. Neque enim eīs nostrae rōstrō nocēre poterant (tanta in eīs erat fīrmitūdo), neque propter altitūdinem facile tēlum adigēbātur, et eādem dē causā minus commodē cōpulīs continēbantur. Accēdebat ut cum saevīre ventus coepisset et sē ventō dedissent, et tempestātem ferrent facilius et in vadīs cōnsisterent tūtiūs et ab aestū relictae nihil saxa et cautēs timērent; quārum rerum omnium nostris nāvibus cāsus erat extimēscendus.

The Roman plan to weaken the enemy's ships.

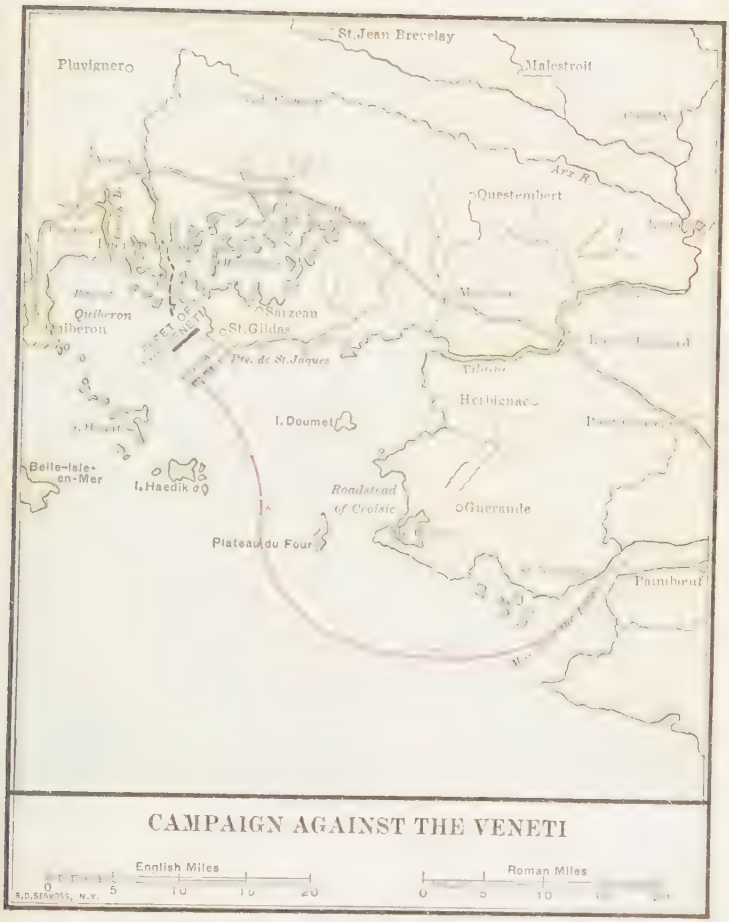
14. Complūribus expūgnātīs oppidīs Caesar, ubi intellēxit frūstrā tantum laborem sumi neque hostium fugam captīs oppidīs reprimi neque eīs nocērī posse, statuit exspectandam classem. Quae ubi convēnit ac primum ab hostibus vīsa est, circiter ducentae et vīgintī nāvēs

eōrum, parātissimae atque omnī genere armōrum ōrnātissimae, profectae ex portū nostrīs adversae cōnstitērunt; neque satis Brūtō, quī classī praeerat, vel tribūnīs mīlitum centuriōnibusque, quibus singulae nāvēs erant attribūtae, cōnstābat, quid agerent aut quam ratiōnem pūgnae īnsisterent. Rōstrō enim nocērī nōn posse cognōverant; turribus autem excitātīs, tamen hās altitūdō puppium ex barbarīs nāvibus superābat, ut neque ex īnferiōre locō satis commodē tēla adigī possent et missa ā Gallīs gravius acciderent.

Ūna erat māgnō ūsuī rēs praeparāta ā nostrīs, falces praeacūtae īnsertae adfīxaeque longuriīs, nōn absimili fōrmā mūrālium falcium. Hīs cum fūnēs, quī antemnās ad mālōs dēstinābant, comprehēnsī adductīque erant, nāvigiō rēmīs incitātō praerumpēbantur. Quibus abscīsīs antemnae necessāriō concidēbant, ut, cum omnis Gallicīs nāvibus spēs in vēlīs armāmentīsque cōnsisteret, hīs ēreptīs omnis ūsus nāvium ūnō tempore ēriperētur. Reliquum erat certāmen positum in virtūte, quā nostrī mīlitēs facile superābant, atque eō magis, quod in cōnspectū Caesaris atque omnis exercitūs rēs gerēbātur, ut nūllum paulō fortius factum latēre posset; omnēs enim collēs ac loca superiōra, unde erat propinquus dēspectus in mare, ab exercitū tenēbantur.

End of the naval battle.

15. Dēiectīs, ut dīximus, antemnīs, cum singulās bīnae ac ternae nāvēs circumsteterant, mīlitēs summā vī trānscendere in hostium nāvēs contendēbant. Quod postquam barbarī fierī animadvertērunt, expūgnātīs complūribus nāvibus, cum eī reī nūllum reperīrētur


St Jean Brevelay
Pluvigner
Malestroit
Arz R.
Questembert
Quiberon
Quiberon
Sarzeau
St. Gildas
Pte. de St. Jaques
Herbignac
I. Doumet
Belle-Isle-en-Mer
I. Haedik
Roadstead of Croisic
Guerande
Plateau du Four
Pambeuf
CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE VENETI
English Miles
0 5 10 15 20
Roman Miles
0 5 10
R.D. SEARLES, N.Y.

auxilium, fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Ac iam conversīs in eam partem nāvibus, quō ventus ferēbat, tanta subitō malacia ac tranquillitās exstitit, ut sē ex locō movēre non possent. Quae quidem rēs ad negōtium cōnficiendum māximē fuit opportūna; nam singulās nostrī cōnsectātī expūgnāvērunt, ut perpaucae ex omnī numerō noctis interventū ad terram pervenīrent, cum ab hōrā ferē quārtā ūsque ad sōlis occāsum pūgnārētur.

Caesar's treatment of the conquered.

16. Quō proeliō bellum Venetōrum tōtīusque ōrae maritimae cōnfectum est. Nam cum omnis iuventūs, omnēs etiam graviōris aetātis, in quibus aliquid cōnsilī aut dīgnitātis fuit, eō convēnerant, tum, nāvium quod ubīque fuerat, in ūnum locum coēgerant: quibus āmissīs, reliquī neque quō sē recīperent, neque quem ad modum oppida dēfenderent, habēbant. Itaque sē suaque omnia Caesarī dēdidērunt. In quōs eō gravius Caesar vindicandum statuit, quō dīligentius in reliquum tempus ā barbarīs iūs lēgātōrum cōnservārētur. Itaque omnī senātū necātō, reliquōs sub corōnā vēndidit.

17–19. WAR WITH THE VENELLI, 56 B.C.

Sabinus adopts the policy of delaying.

17. Dum haec in Venetīs geruntur, Q. Titūrius Sabīnus cum eīs cōpiīs, quās ā Caesare accēperat, in fīnēs Venellōrum pervēnit. Hīs praeerat Viridovīx ac summam imperī tenēbat eārum omnium cīvitātum, quae dēfēcerant, ex quibus exercitum māgnāsque cōpiās coēgerat; atque hīs paucīs diēbus Aulercī Eburovīcēs

Lexoviīque senātū suō interfectō, quod auctōrēs bellī esse nōlēbant, portās clausērunt sēque cum Viridovīce coniūnxērunt; māgnaque praetereā multitūdō undique ex Galliā perditōrum hominum latrōnumque convēnerat, quōs spēs praedandī studiumque bellandī ab agrī cultūrā et cotīdiānō labōre sēvocābat.

Sabīnus idōneō omnibus rēbus locō castrīs sēsē tenēbat, cum Viridovīx contrā cum duōrum mīlium spatiō cōnsēdisset cotīdiēque prōductīs cōpiīs pūgnandī potestātem faceret, ut iam nōn sōlum hostibus in contemptiōnem Sabīnus venīret, sed etiam nostrōrum mīlitum vōcibus nōnnihil carperētur; tantamque opīniōnem timōris praebuit, ut iam ad vāllum castrōrum hostēs accēdere audērent. Id eā dē causā faciēbat, quod cum tantā multitūdine hostium, praesertim eō absente, quī summam imperī tenēret, nisi aequō locō aut opportūnitāte aliquā datā, lēgātō dīmicandum nōn exīstimābat.

Encouraged by the delay of the Romans, the Gauls attack the camp.

18. Hāc cōnfīrmātā opīniōne timōris, idōneum quendam hominem et callidum dēlēgit, Gallum, ex eīs, quōs auxilī causā sēcum habēbat. Huic māgnīs praemiīs pollicitātiōnibusque persuādet, utī ad hostēs trānseat, et, quid fierī velit, ēdocet. Quī ubi prō perfugā ad eōs vēnit, timōrem Rōmānōrum prōpōnit; quibus angustiīs ipse Caesar ā Venetīs premātur, docet; neque longius abesse, quīn proximā nocte Sabīnus clam ex castrīs exercitum ēdūcat et ad Caesarem auxilī ferendī causā proficīscātur. Quod ubi audītum est, conclāmant omnēs occāsiōnem negōtī bene gerendī āmittendam nōn esse, ad castra īrī oportēre.

Multae rēs ad hōc cōnsilium Gallōs hortābantur: superiōrum diērum Sabīnī cunctātiō, perfugae cōnfīrmātiō, inopia cibāriōrum, cui reī parum dīligenter ab eīs erat prōvīsum, spēs Venetici belli, et quod ferē libenter hominēs id, quod volunt, crēdunt. Hīs rēbus adductī nōn prius Viridovīcem reliquōsque ducēs ex concilio dīmittunt, quam ab eīs sit concessum, arma uti capiant et ad castra contendant. Quā rē concessā laetī, ut explōrātā victōriā, sarmentīs virgultīsque collectīs, quibus fossās Rōmānōrum compleant, ad castra pergunt.

Sabinus is victorious.

19. Locus erat castrōrum ēditus et paulātim ab īmō acclīvis circiter passūs mille. Hūc māgnō cursū contendērunt, ut quam minimum spatī ad sē colligendōs armandōsque Rōmānīs darētur, exanimātīque pervēnērunt. Sabīnus suōs hortātus cupientibus sīgnum dat. Impedītīs hostibus propter ea, quae ferēbant, onera subitō duābus portīs ēruptiōnem fierī iubet. Factum est opportūnitāte locī, hostium īnscientiā ac dēfatīgātiōne, virtūte mīlitum et superiōrum pūgnārum exercitātiōne, ut nē prīmum quidem nostrōrum impetum ferrent ac statim terga verterent. Quōs integrīs vīribus mīlitēs nostrī cōnsecūtī māgnum numerum eōrum occīdērunt; reliquōs equitēs cōnsectātī paucōs, quī ex fugā ēvāserant, relīquērunt.

Sīc ūnō tempore et dē nāvālī pūgnā Sabīnus et dē Sabīnī victōriā Caesar est certior factus, cīvitātēsque omnēs sē statim Titūriō dēdidērunt. Nam ut ad bella suscipienda Gallōrum alacer ac prōmptus est animus,

sīc mollis ac minimē resistēns ad calamitātēs perferendās mēns eōrum est.

20–26. EXPEDITION OF CRASSUS INTO AQUITANIA, 56 B.C.

The army is attacked by the Sotiates.

20. Eōdem ferē tempore P. Crassus, cum in Aquītāniam pervēnisset, quae pars, ut ante dictum est, et regiōnum lātitūdine et multitūdine hominum ex tertiā parte Galliae est aestimanda, cum intellegeret in eīs locīs sibi bellum gerendum, ubi paucīs ante annīs L. Valerius Praecōnīnus lēgātus exercitū pulsō interfectus esset, atque unde L. Manlius prōcōnsul impedīmentīs āmissīs profūgisset, nōn mediocrem sibi dīligentiam adhibendam intellegēbat.

Itaque rē frūmentāriā prōvīsā, auxiliīs equitātūque comparātō, multīs praetereā virīs fortibus Tolōsā et Carcasōne et Narbōne, quae sunt cīvitātēs Galliae prōvinciae fīnitimae hīs regiōnibus, nōminātim ēvocātīs, in Sōtiātium fīnēs exercitum intrōdūxit. Cūius adventū cognitō, Sōtiātēs māgnīs cōpiīs coāctīs equitātūque, quō plūrimum valēbant, in itinere agmen nostrum adortī prīmum equestre proelium commīsērunt, deinde equitātū suō pulsō atque īnsequentibus nostrīs subitō pedestrēs cōpiās, quās in convalle in īnsidiīs conlocāverant, ostendērunt. Hī nostrōs disiectōs adortī proelium renovārunt.

Surrender of the Sotiates.

21. Pūgnātum est diū atque ācriter, cum Sōtiātēs superiōribus victōriīs frētī in suā virtūte tōtīus Aquītāniae salūtem positam putārent, nostrī autem, quid

sine imperātōre et sine reliquīs legiōnibus adulēscentulō duce ellicere possent, perspicī cuperent; tandem cōnfectī vulneribus hostēs terga vertērunt. Quōrum māgnō numerō interfectō, Crassus ex itinere oppidum Sōtiātium oppugnāre coepit. Quibus fortiter resistentibus vīneās turrēsque ēgit. Illī aliās ēruptiōne temptātā, aliās cuniculīs ad aggerem vīneāsque āctīs (cūius reī sunt longē perītissimī Aquītānī, propterea quod multīs locīs apud eōs aerāriae sectūraeque sunt), ubi dīligentiā nostrōrum nihil hīs rēbus prōtectī posse intellēxērunt, lēgātōs ad Crassum mittunt, sēque in dēditiōnem ut recipiat, petunt. Quā rē impetrātā, arma trādere iussī faciunt.

Adiatunnus and his "soldurii."

22. Atque in eam rem omnium nostrōrum intentīs animīs, aliā ex parte oppidī Adiatunnus, quī summam imperī tenēbat, cum sexcentīs dēvōtīs, quōs illī 'solduriōs' appellant, quōrum haec est condiciō, utī omnibus in vītā commodīs ūnā cum eīs fruantur, quōrum sē amīcitiae dēdiderint, sī quid hīs per vim accidat, aut eundem cāsum ūnā ferant aut sibi mortem cōnscīscant; neque adhūc hominum memoriā repertus est quisquam, quī eō interfectō, cūius sē amīcitiae dēvōvisset, mortem recūsāret), cum hīs Adiatunnus ēruptiōnem facere cōnātus, clāmōre ab eā parte mūnītiōnis sublātō, cum ad arma mīlitēs concurrissent vehementerque ibi pūgnātum esset, repulsus in oppidum tamen, utī eādem dēditiōnis condiciōne ūterētur, ā Crassō impetrāvit.

Other tribes prepare to resist Crassus.

23. Armīs obsidibusque acceptīs, Crassus in fīnēs Vocātium et Tarusātium profectus est. Tum vērō

barbarī commōtī, quod oppidum et nātūrā locī et manū mūnītum paucīs diēbus, quibus eō ventum erat, expūgnātum cognōverant, lēgātōs quōqueversus dīmittere, coniūrāre, obsidēs inter sē dare, cōpiās parāre coepērunt. Mittuntur etiam ad eās cīvitātēs lēgātī, quae sunt citeriōris Hispāniae fīnitimae Aquītāniae; inde auxilia ducēsque arcessuntur. Quōrum adventū māgnā cum auctōritāte et māgnā cum hominum multitūdine bellum gerere cōnantur.

Ducēs vērō eī dēliguntur, quī ūnā cum Q. Sertōriō omnēs annōs fuerant summamque scientiam reī mīlitāris habēre exīstimābantur. Hī cōnsuētūdine populī Rōmānī loca capere, castra mūnīre, commeātibus nostrōs interclūdere īnstituunt. Quod ubi Crassus animadvertit suās copiās propter exiguitātem nōn facile dīdūcī, hostem et vagārī et viās obsidēre et castrīs satis praesidī relinquere, ob eam causam minus commodē frūmentum commeātumque sibi supportārī, in diēs hostium numerum augērī, nōn cunctandum exīstimāvit, quīn pūgnā dēcertāret. Hāc rē ad cōnsilium dēlātā, ubi omnēs idem sentīre intellēxit, posterum diem pūgnae cōnstituit.

Though outnumbering the Romans, they defer a battle.

24. Prīmā lūce prōductīs omnibus cōpiīs, duplicī aciē īnstitūtā, auxiliīs in mediam aciem coniectīs, quid hostēs cōnsilī caperent, exspectābat. Illī, etsī propter multitūdinem et veterem bellī glōriam paucitātemque nostrōrum sē tūtō dīmicātūrōs exīstimābant, tamen tūtius esse arbitrābantur obsessīs viīs, commeātū interclūsō sine ūllō vulnere victōriā potīrī; et, sī propter inopiam reī frūmentāriae Rōmānī sēsē recipere coepissent, im-

peditōs in agmine et sub sarcinīs īnfirmiōrēs animō adorīrī cōgitabant. Hōc cōnsiliō probāto ab ducibus, prōductīs Rōmānōrum cōpiīs, sesē castrīs tenēbant. Hāc rē perspectā Crassus, cum suā cunctātiōne atque opīniōne timoris hostes nostros militēs alacriōrēs ad pūgnandum effēcissent, atque omnium vōcēs audīrentur exspectārī diūtius nōn oportēre, quīn ad castra īrētur, cohortātus suōs omnibus cupientibus ad hostium castra contendit.

Brave fighting.

25. Ibi cum aliī fossās compleērent, aliī multīs tēlīs coniectīs dēfēnsōrēs vāllō mūnītiōnibusque dēpellerent auxiliārēsque, quibus ad pūgnam nōn multum Crassus cōnfīdēbat, lapidibus tēlīsque subministrandīs et ad aggerem caespitibus comportandīs speciem atque opīniiōnem pūgnantium praebērent, cum item ab hostibus cōnstanter ac nōn timidē pugnārētur tēlaque ex locō superiōre missa nōn frūstrā acciderent, equitēs circumitīs hostium castrīs Crassō renūntiāvērunt nōn eādem esse dīligentiā ab decumānā portā castra mūnīta facilemque aditum habēre.

Crassus is victorious.

26. Crassus equitum praefectōs cohortātus, ut māgnīs praemiīs pollicitātiōnibusque suōs excitārent, quid fierī vellet, ostendit. Illī, ut erat imperātum, dēvectīs eīs cohortibus, quae praesidiō castrīs relictae intrītae ab labōre erant, et longiōre itinere circumductīs, nē ex hostium castrīs cōnspicī possent, omnium oculīs mentibusque ad pūgnam intentīs, celeriter ad eās, quās dīximus, mūnītiōnēs pervēnērunt atque hīs prōrutīs prius in hos-

tium castrīs cōnstitērunt, quam plānē ab hīs vidērī aut quid reī gererētur, cognōscī posset. Tum vērō clāmōre ab eā parte audītō nostrī redintegrātīs vīribus, quod plērumque in spē victōriae accidere cōnsuēvit, ācrius impūgnāre coepērunt. Hostēs undique circumventī, dēspērātīs omnibus rēbus, sē per mūnītiōnēs dēicere et fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Quōs equitātus apertissimīs campīs cōnsectātus, ex mīlium quīnquāgintā numerō, quae ex Aquītāniā Cantabrīsque convēnisse cōnstābat, vix quārtā parte relictā, multā nocte sē in castra recēpit.

Surrender of other tribes.

27. Hāc audītā pūgnā, māxima pars Aquītāniae sēsē Crassō dēdidit obsidēsque ultrō mīsit; quō in numerō fuērunt Tarbellī, Bigerriōnēs, Ptiānī, Vocātēs, Tarusātēs, Elusātēs, Gatēs, Auscī, Garumnī, Sibusātēs, Cocosātēs; paucae ultimae nātiōnēs annī tempore cōnfīsae, quod hiems suberat, id facere neglēxērunt.

27–29. EXPEDITION AGAINST THE MORINI AND MENAPII, 56 B.C.

The enemy are driven into their forests.

28. Eōdem ferē tempore Caesar, etsī prope exācta iam aestās erat, tamen quod omnī Galliā pācātā Morinī Menapiīque supererant, quī in armīs essent neque ad eum umquam lēgātōs dē pāce mīsissent, arbitrātus id bellum celeriter cōnficī posse, eō exercitum dūxit; quī longē aliā ratiōne ac reliquī Gallī bellum gerere coepērunt. Nam quod intellegēbant māximās nātiōnēs, quae proeliō contendissent, pulsās superātāsque esse

continentēsque silvās ac palūdēs habēbant, eō sē suaque omnia contulerunt. Ad quārum initium silvārum cum Caesar pervēnisset castraque mūnīre īnstituisset, neque hostis interim vīsus esset, dispersīs in opere nostrīs, subitō ex omnibus partibus silvae ēvolāvērunt et in nostrōs impetum fēcērunt. Nostrī celeriter arma cēpērunt eōsque in silvās reppulerunt et complūribus interfectīs, longius impedītōribus locīs secūtī paucōs ex suīs dēperdidērunt.

Fighting is discontinued because of severe storms.

29. Reliquīs deinceps diēbus Caesar silvās caedere īnstituit et, nē quis inermibus imperāntibusque mīlitibus ab latere impetus fierī posset, omnem eam mūnītionem, quae erat caesa, conversam ad hostem conlocābat et prō vāllō ad utrumque latus exstruēbat. Incrēdibilī celeritāte māgnō spatiō paucīs diēbus cōnfectō, cum iam pecus atque extrēma impedīmenta ā nostrīs tenērentur, ipsī dēnsiōrēs silvās petēbant. Eius modī sunt tempestātēs cōnsecūtae, ut ī opus necessāriō intermitterētur et continuātiōne imbrium diūtius sub pellibus mīlitēs continērī non possent. Itaque vāstātīs omnibus eōrum agrīs, vīcīs aedificiīsque incēnsīs, Caesar exercitum redūxit et in Aulercīs Lexoviīsque, reliquīs item cīvitātibus, quae proximē bellum fēcerant, in hībernīs conlocāvit.

BOOK IV

SUMMARY

Chaps. 1–15. Driven from their homes by the powerful Suebi, two German tribes, the Usipetes and Tencteri, cross the Rhine. Fearing a combination of Gallic and German tribes, Caesar returns to the army. He marches against the invaders, who in violation of a truce had attacked his cavalry, and annihilates their host of 430,000.

Chaps. 16–19. In order to terrify the Germans, Caesar then builds his famous bridge over the Rhine. Having taken the army across and made peace with many tribes without bloodshed, he returns to Gaul and destroys the bridge.

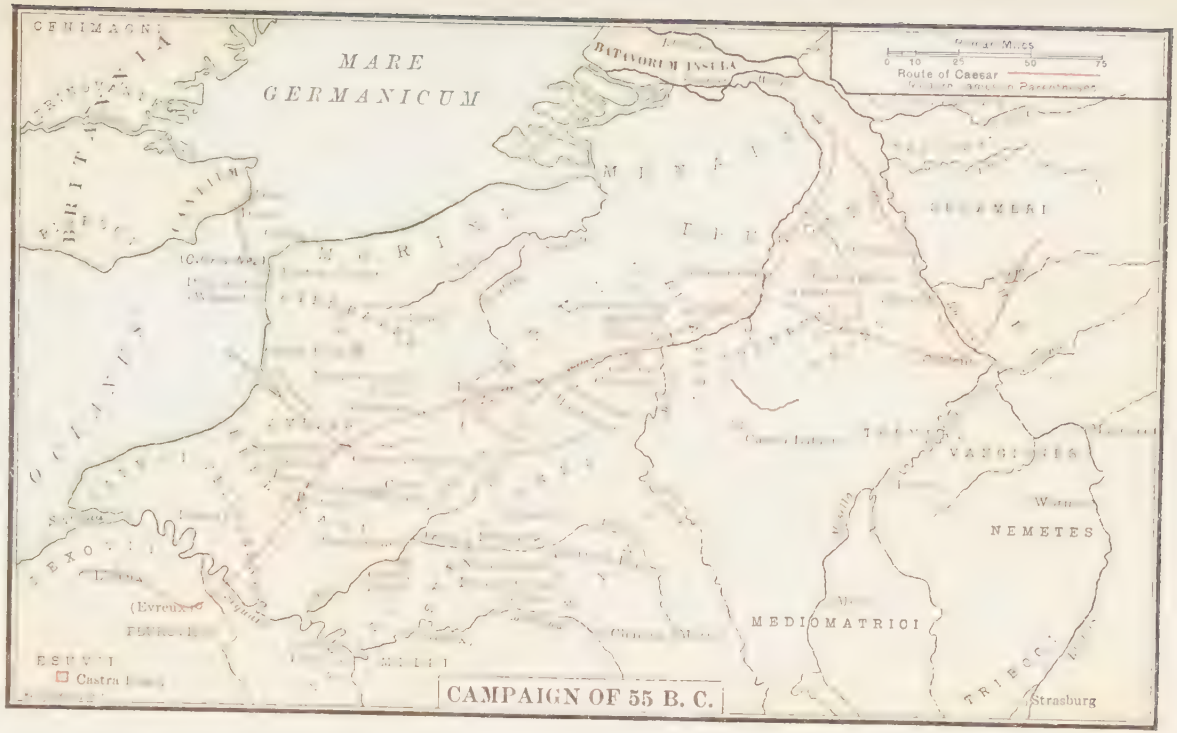
Chaps. 20–36. Because of the discovery that aid is coming to the Gauls from Britain, Caesar decides to visit that island, but with the spirit rather of adventure than of conquest. Two legions and the cavalry embark for the expedition. After a difficult landing he defeats the Britons and arranges for peace. The event, attended with great peril to Caesar, is not of much importance in a military sense, but is important historically, being the first instance of contact between Britain and the older eastern nation.

Chaps. 37, 38. The year 55 B.C. ends with a rebellion of two coast tribes and the placing of the legions in winter quarters among the Belgae.

1–15. WAR WITH GERMAN TRIBES, 55 B.C.

The Usipetes and Tencteri invade Gaul.

1. Eā, quae secūta est, hieme, quī fuit annus Cn. Pompēiō, M. Crassō cōnsulibus, Usipetēs Germānī et



CAMPAIGN OF 55 B. C.

item Tencterī māgnā cum multitūdine hominum flūmen Rhēnum trānsiērunt nōn longē ā marī, quō Rhēnus īnfluit. Causa trānseundī fuit, quod ab Suēbis complūrēs annōs exagitātī bellō premēbantur et agrī cultūrā prohibēbantur.

Customs of the Suebi.

Suēbōrum gēns est longē māxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium. Hī centum pāgōs habēre dīcuntur, ex quibus quotannīs singula mīlia armātōrum bellandī causā ex fīnibus ēdūcunt. Reliquī, quī domī mānsērunt, sē atque illōs alunt; hī rūrsus in vicem annō post in armīs sunt, illī domī remanent. Sīc neque agrī cultūra nec ratiō atque ūsus bellī intermittitur. Sed prīvātī ac sēparātī agrī apud eōs nihil est, neque longius annō remanēre ūnō in locō colendī causā licet. Neque multum frūmentō, sed māximam partem lacte atque pecore vīvunt multumque sunt in vēnātiōnibus; quae rēs et cibī genere et cotīdiānā exercitātiōne et lībertāte vītae, quod ā puerīs nūllō officiō aut disciplīnā adsuēfactī nihil omnīnō contrā voluntātem faciunt, et vīrēs alit et immānī corporum māgnitūdine hominēs efficit. Atque in eam sē cōnsuētūdinem addūxērunt, ut locīs frīgidissimīs neque vestītūs praeter pellēs habērent quicquam, quārum propter exiguitātem māgna est corporis pars aperta, et lavārentur in flūminibus.

Their commercial relations. Their cavalry.

2. Mercātōribus est aditus magis eō, ut, quae bellō cēperint, quibus vēndant, habeant, quam quō ūllam

rem ad sē importārī dēsīderent. Quīn etiam iūmentīs, quibus māximē Gallī dēlectantur quaeque impēnsō parant pretiō, Germānī importātīs nōn ūtuntur, sed quae sunt apud cōs nāta, parva atque dēfōrmia, hace cotīdiānā exercitātiōne, summī ut sint labōris, efficiunt.

Equestribus proeliīs saepe ex equīs dēsiliunt ac pedibus proeliantur equōsque cōdem remanēre vēstīgiō adsuēfēcērunt, ad quōs sē celeriter, cum ūsus est, recipiunt; neque cōrum mōribus turpius quicquam aut inertius habētur quam ephippiīs ūtī. Itaque ad quemvīs numerum ephippiātōrum equitum quamvīs paucī adīre audent. Vīnum omnīnō ad sē importārī nōn patiuntur, quod eā rē ad labōrem ferendum remollēscere hominēs atque effēminārī arbitrantur.

Their neighbors.

3. Pūblicē māximam putant esse laudem quam lātissimē ā suīs fīnibus vacāre agrōs: hāc rē sīgnificārī māgnum numerum cīvitātum suam vim sustinēre nōn posse. Itaque ūnā ex parte ā Suēbīs circiter mīlia passuum centum agrī vacāre dīcuntur. Ad alteram partem succēdunt Ubiī, quōrum fuit cīvitās ampla atque flōrēns, ut est captus Germānōrum. Eī paulō, quamquam sunt ēiusdem generis, sunt cēterīs hūmāniōrēs, propterea quod Rhēnum attingunt multumque ad cōs mercātōrēs ventitant et ipsī propter propinquitātem Gallicīs sunt mōribus adsuēfactī. Hōs cum Suēbī, multīs saepe bellīs expertī, propter amplitūdinem gravitātemque cīvitātis fīnibus expellere nōn potuissent, tamen vectīgālēs sibi fēcērunt ac multō humiliōrēs īnfīrmiōrēsque redēgērunt.

The Usipetes and Tencteri seize the property of the Menapii.

4. In eādem causā fuērunt Usipetēs et Tenctērī, quōs suprā dīximus, quī complūrēs annōs Suēbōrum vim sustinuērunt; sed extrēmum tamen agrīs expulsī et multīs locīs Germāniae triennium vagātī ad Rhēnum pervēnērunt quās regiōnēs Menapiī incolēbant. Hī ad utramque rīpam flūminis agrōs, aedificia vīcōsque habēbant; sed tantae multitūdinis adventū perterritī, ex eīs aedificiīs, quae trāns flūmen habuerant, dēmigrāverant et cis Rhēnum dispositīs praesidiīs Germānōs trānsīre prohibēbant.

Illī omnia experīī, cum neque vī contendere propter inopiam nāvium neque clam trānsīre propter custōdiās Menapiōrum possent, revertī sē in suās sēdēs regiōnēsque simulāvērunt et trīduī viam prōgressī rursus reverterunt atque, omnī hōc itinere ūnā nocte equitātū cōnfectō, inscīōs inopīnantēsque Menapiōs oppressērunt, quī dē Germānōrum discessū per explōrātōrēs certiōrēs factī sine metū trāns Rhēnum in suōs vīcōs remigrāverant. Eīs interfectīs nāvibusque eōrum occupātīs, priusquam ea pars Menapiōrum, quae citrā Rhēnum erat, certior fieret, flūmen trānsiērunt atque, omnibus eōrum aedificiīs occupātīs, reliquam partem hiemis se eōrum cōpiīs aluērunt.

The fickleness of the Gauls.

5. Hīs dē rēbus Caesar certior factus et īnfīrmitātem Gallōrum veritus, quod sunt in cōnsiliīs capiendīs mōbilēs et novīs plērumque rēbus student, nihil hīs committendum exīstimāvit. Est enim hōc Gallicae cōnsuētūdinis,

utī et viātōrēs etiam invītōs cōnsistere cōgant et, quid quisque cōrum dē quāque rē audierit aut cognōverit, quaerant; et mercātōrēs in oppidīs vulgus circumsistat, quibusque ex regiōnibus veniant quāsque ibi rēs cognōverint, prōnūntiāre cōgat. Hīs rēbus atque audītiōnibus permōtī dē summīs saepe rēbus cōnsilia ineunt, quōrum cōs in vōstīgiō paenitēre necesse est, cum incertīs rūmōribus serviant et plērīque ad voluntātem eōrum ficta respondeant.

Caesar returns to the army and calls a council.

6. Quā cōnsuētūdine cognitā Caesar, nē graviōrī bellō occurreret, mātūrius, quam cōnsuērat, ad exercitum proficīscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, ea, quae fore suspicātus erat, facta cognōvit: missās lēgātiōnēs ab nōnnūllīs cīvitātibus ad Germānōs invītātōsque eōs, utī ab Rhēnō discēderent, omniaque, quae postulāssent, ab sē fore parāta. Quā spē adductī Germānī lātius iam vagābantur et in fīnēs Eburōnum et Condrūsōrum, quī sunt Trēverōrum clientēs, pervēnerant. Prīncipibus Galliae cōvocātīs Caesar ea, quae cognōverat, dissimulanda sibi exīstimāvit, cōrumque animīs permulsīs et cōnfīrmātīs equitātūque imperātō, bellum cum Germānīs gerere cōnstituit.

The Germans send envoys, asking for lands.

7. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā equitibusque dēlēctīs, iter in ea loca facere coepit, quibus in locīs esse Germānōs audiēbat. Ā quibus cum paucōrum diērum iter abesset, lēgātī ab eīs vēnērunt, quōrum haec fuit ōrātiō: Germānōs neque priōrēs populō Rōmānō bellum

īnferre neque tamen recūsāre, sī lacessantur, quīn armīs contendant, quod Germānōrum cōnsuētūdō sit ā māiōribus trādita, quīcumque bellum īnferant, resistere neque dēprecārī. Haec tamen dīcere: vēnisse invītōs, ēiectōs domō: sī suam grātiam Rōmānī velint, posse eīs ūtilēs esse amīcōs: vel sibi agrōs attribuant vel patiantur eōs tenēre, quōs armīs possēderint: sēsē ūnīs Suēbīs concēdere, quibus nē dī quidem immortālēs parēs esse possint: reliquum quidem in terrīs esse nēminem, quem non superāre possint.

Caesar's reply.

8. Ad haec Caesar, quae vīsum est, respondit; sed exitus fuit ōrātiōnis: Sibi nūllam cum hīs amīcitiam esse posse, sī in Galliā remanērent, neque vērum esse, quī suōs fīnēs tuērī nōn potuerint, aliēnōs occupāre, neque ūllōs in Galliā vacāre agrōs, quī dārī tantae praesertim multitūdinī sine iniūriā possint: sed licēre, sī velint, in Ubiōrum fīnibus cōnsīdere, quōrum sint lēgātī apud sē et dē Suēbōrum iniūriīs querantur et ā sē auxilium petant; hōc sē Ubiīs imperātūrum.

The envoys request a truce.

9. Lēgātī haec sē ad suōs relātūrōs dīxērunt et rē dēlīberātā post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversūrōs: intereā nē propius sē castra movēret, petiērunt. Nē id quidem Caesar ab sē impetrārī posse dīxit. Cognōverat enim māgnam partem equitātūs ab eīs aliquot diēbus ante praedandī frūmentandīque causā ad Ambivaritōs trāns Mosam missam: hōs exspectārī equitēs atque eius reī causā moram interpōnī arbitrābātur.

The Meuse and the Rhine described.

10. Mosa prōfluit ex monte Vosegō, quī est in fīnibus Lingonum, et parte quādam ex Rhēno receptā, quae appellātur Vacalus, īnsulam efficit Batāvōrum, neque longius inde mīlibus passuum octōgintā in Ōceanum īnfluit. Rhēnus autem oritur ex Lepontiīs, quī Alpēs incolunt, et longō spatiō per fīnēs Nantuātium, Helvētiōrum, Sēquanōrum, Mediomatricōrum, Tribocōrum, Trēverōrum citātus fertur; et, ubi Ōceanō adpropinquāvit, in plūrēs dīfluit partēs multīs ingentibusque īnsulīs effectīs, quārum pars māgna ā ferīs barbarīsque nātiōnibus incolitur (ex quibus sunt, quī piscibus atque ōvīs avium vīvere exīstimantur), multīsque capitibus in Ōceanum īnfluit.

German envoys return and request further delay.

11. Caesar cum ab hoste nōn amplius passuum duodecim mīlibus abesset, ut erat cōnstitūtum, ad eum lēgātī revertuntur; quī in itinere congressī māgnopere, nē longius prōgrederētur, ōrābant. Cum id nōn impetrāssent, petēbant, utī ad eōs equitēs, quī agmen antecessissent, praemitteret eōsque pūgnā prohibēret, sibique ut potestātem faceret in Ubiōs lēgātōs mittendī: quōrum sī prīncipēs ac senātus sibi iūre iūrandō fidem fēcisset, eā condiciōne, quae ā Caesare ferrētur, sē ūsūrōs ostendēbant; ad hās rēs cōnficiendās sibi trīduī spatium daret.

Haec omnia Caesar eōdem illō pertinēre arbitrābātur, ut trīduī morā interpositā equitēs eōrum, quī abessent, reverterentur; tamen sēsē nōn longius mīlibus pas-

passuum quattuor aquātiōnis causā prōcessūrum eō diē dīxit; hūc posterō diē quam frequentissimī convenīrent, ut dē eōrum postulātīs cognōsceret. Interim ad praefectōs, quī cum omnī equitātū antecesserant, mittit quī nūntiārent, nē hostēs proeliō lacesserent et, sī ipsī lacesserentur, sustinērent, quoad ipse cum exercitū propius accessisset.

Treacherous attack upon the Roman cavalry.

12. At hostēs, ubi prīmum nostrōs equitēs cōnspexērunt, quōrum erat quīnque mīlium numerus, cum ipsī nōn amplius octingentōs equitēs habērent, quod iī, quī frūmentandī causā ierant trāns Mosam, nōndum redierant, nihil timentibus nostrīs, quod lēgātī eōrum paulō ante ā Caesare discesserant atque is diēs indūtiīs erat ab hīs petītus, impetū factō celeriter nostrōs perturbāvērunt; rūrsus hīs resistentibus, cōnsuētūdine suā ad pedēs dēsiluērunt, subfossīsque equīs complūribusque nostrīs dēiectīs reliquōs in fugam coniēcērunt atque ita perterritōs ēgērunt, ut nōn prius fugā dēsisterent, quam in cōnspectum agminis nostrī vēnissent.

In eō proeliō ex equitibus nostrīs interficiuntur quattuor et septuāgintā, in hīs vir fortissimus Pīsō Aquītānus, amplissimō genere nātus, cuius avus in cīvitāte suā rēgnum obtinuerat, amīcus ā senātū nostrō appellātus. Hic cum frātrī interclūsō ab hostibus auxilium ferret, illum ex perīculō ēripuit, ipse equō vulnerātō dēiectus, quoad potuit, fortissimē restitit; cum circumventus multīs vulneribus acceptīs cecidisset, atque id frāter, quī iam proeliō excesserat, procul animadvertisset, incitātō equō sē hostibus obtulit atque interfectus est.

Caesar arrests the German chiefs.

13. Hōc factō proeliō, Caesar neque iam sibi lēgātōs audiendōs neque condiciōnēs accipiendās arbitrābātur ab eīs, quī per dolum atque īnsidiās petītā pāce ultrō bellum intulissent; exspectāre vērō, dum hostium cōpiae augērentur equitātusque reverterētur, summae dēmentiae esse iūdicābat, et cognitā Gallōrum īnfīrmitāte, quantum iam apud eōs hostēs ūnō proeliō auctōritātis essent cōnsecūtī, sentiēbat; quibus ad cōnsilia capienda nihil spatī dandum exīstimābat.

Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus et cōnsiliō cum lēgātīs et quaestōre commūnicātō, nē quem diem pūgnae praetermitteret, opportūnissima rēs accidit, quod postrīdiē eius diēī māne eādem et simulātiōne et perfidiā ūsī Germānī frequentēs, omnibus prīncipibus māiōribusque nātū adhibitīs, ad eum in castra vēnērunt; simul, ut dīcēbātur, pūrgandī suī causā, quod contrā atque esset dictum et ipsī petīssent, proelium prīdiē commīsissent; simul ut, sī quid possent, dē indūtiīs fallendō impetrārent. Quōs sibi Caesar oblātōs gāvīsus illōs retinērī iussit; ipse omnēs cōpiās castrīs ēdūxit equitātumque, quod recentī proeliō perterritum esse exīstimābat, agmen subsequī iussit.

Caesar surprises the camp of the enemy.

14. Acië triplicī īnstitūtā et celeriter octō mīlium itinere cōnfectō, prius ad hostium castra pervēnit quam, quid agerētur, Germānī sentīre possent. Quī omnibus rēbus subitō perterritī et celeritāte adventūs nostrī et discessū suōrum, neque cōnsilī habendī neque arma

reperiendī spatiō datō, perturbantur, cōpiāsne adversus hostem dūcere an castra dēfendere an fugā salūtem petere praestāret. Quōrum timor cum fremitū et concursū significārētur, mīlitēs nostrī prīstinī diēī perfidiā incitātī in castra irrūpērunt. Quō locō, quī celeriter arma capere potuērunt, paulisper nostrīs restitērunt atque inter carrōs impedīmentaque proelium commīsērunt; at reliqua multitūdō puerōrum mulierumque (nam cum omnibus suīs domō excesserant Rhēnumque trānsierant) passim fugere coepit; ad quōs cōnsectandōs Caesar equitātum mīsit.

Caesar annihilates the enemy in their flight.

15. Germānī, post tergum clāmōre audītō, cum suōs interficī vidērent, armīs abiectīs signīsque mīlitāribus relictīs sē ex castrīs ēiēcērunt, et cum ad cōnfluentem Mosae et Rhēnī pervēnissent, reliquā fugā dēspērātā, magnō numerō interfectō, reliquī sē in flūmen praecipitāvērunt atque ibi timōre, lassitūdine, vī flūminis oppressī periērunt. Nostrī ad ūnum omnēs incolumēs, perpaucīs vulnerātīs, ex tantī bellī timōre, cum hostium numerus capitum quadringentōrum et trīgintā mīlium fuisset, sē in castra recēpērunt. Caesar eīs, quōs in castrīs retinuerat, discēdendī potestātem fēcit. Illī supplicia cruciātūsque Gallōrum veritī, quōrum agrōs vexāverant, remanēre sē apud eum velle dīxērunt. Hīs Caesar lībertātem concessit.

16–19. FIRST EXPEDITION INTO GERMANY, 55 B.C.

Caesar decides to bridge the Rhine.

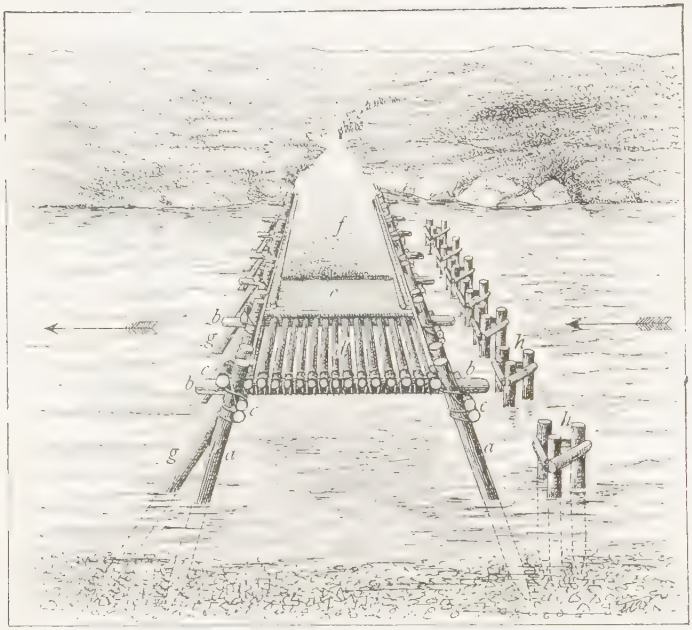
16. Germānicō bellō cōnfectō, multīs dē causīs Caesar statuit sibi Rhēnum esse trānseundum; quārum illa

fuit iūstissima, quod, cum vidēret Germānōs tam facile impellī, ut in Galliam venīrent, suīs quoque rēbus cōs timēre voluit, cum intellegerent et posse et audēre populī Rōmānī exercitum Rhēnum trānsīre. Accessit etiam, quod illa pars equitātūs Usipetum et Tencterōrum, quam suprā commemorāvī praedandī frūmentandīque causā Mosam trānsīsse neque proeliō interfuisse, post fugam suōrum sē trāns Rhēnum in fīnēs Sugambrōrum receperat sēque cum hīs coniūnxerat. Ad quōs cum Caesar nūntiōs mīsisset, quī postulārent, cōs, quī sibi Galliaeque bellum intulissent, sibi dēderent, respondērunt: Populī Rōmānī imperium Rhēnum fīnīre; sī sē invītō Germānōs in Galliam trānsīre non aequum exīstimāret, cūr suī quicquam esse imperī aut potestātis trāns Rhēnum postulāret?

Ubiī autem, quī ūnī ex Trānsrhēnānīs ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīserant, amīcitiam fēcerant, obsidēs dederant, māgnopere ōrābant, ut sibi auxilium ferret, quod graviter ab Suēbīs premerentur; vel, sī id facere occupātiōnibus reī pūblicae prohibērētur, exercitum modo Rhēnum trānsportāret; id sibi ad auxilium spemque reliquī temporis satis futūrum. Tantum esse nōmen atque opīniōnem ēius exercitūs, Ariovistō pulsō et hōc novissimō proeliō factō, etiam ad ultimās Germānōrum nātiōnēs, utī opīniōne et amīcitiā populī Rōmānī tūtī esse possent. Nāvium māgnam cōpiam ad trānsportandum exercitum pollicēbantur.

Description of the bridge.

17. Caesar hīs dē causīs, quās commemorāvī, Rhēnum trānsīre dēcrēverat; sed nāvibus trānsīre neque satis



aa Tigna bina sesquipedalia
bb Trabes bipedales
cc Fibulae
d Derecta materia
e Longurii
f Crates
gg Sublicae pro ariete oblique actae
hh Sublicae supra pontem immissae

CAESAR'S BRIDGE OVER THE RHINE

tūtum esse arbitrābātur, neque suae neque populī Rōmānī dignitātis esse statuēbat. Itaque, etsī summa difficultās faciendī pontis proponēbātur propter lātitūdinem, rapiditātem altitūdinemque flūminis, tamen id sibi contendendum aut aliter non trādūcendum exercitum exīstimābat.

Rationem pontis hanc īnstituit. Tigna bina sesquipedālia paulum ab īmō praeacūta, dīmēnsa ad altitūdinem flūminis, intervāllō pedum duōrum inter sē iungēbat. Haec cum māchinātiōnibus immissa in flūmen dēfīxerat fistucīsque adegerat, non sublicae modo dērēctē ad perpendiculum, sed prōnē ac fastīgātē, ut secundum nātūram flūminis prōclīnāberent eīs item contrāria duo ad eundem modum iūncta intervāllō pedum quadrāgēnum ab īnferiōre parte contrā vim atque impetum flūminis conversa statuēbat.

Haec utraque īnsuper bipedālibus trabibus immissīs, quantum eōrum tignōrum iūnctūra distābat, bīnīs utrimque fībulīs ab extrēmā parte distinēbantur: quibus dissolūtīs atque in contrāriam partem revīnctīs tanta erat operis firmitūdō atque ea rērum nātūra, ut, quō māior vīs aquae sē incitāvisset, hōc artius inligāta tenērentur. Haec dērēctā māteriā iniectā contexēbantur ac longuriīs crātibusque cōnsternēbantur; ac nihilō sētius sublicae et ad īnferiōrem partem flūminis oblīquō agēbantur, quae prō ariete subiectae et cum omnī opere coniūnctae vim flūminis exciperent: et aliae item suprā pontem mediocrī spatiō, ut, sī arborum truncī sīve nāvēs dēiciendī operis causā essent ā barbarīs missae, hīs dēfēnsōribus cārum rērum vīs minuerētur, neu pontī nocērent.

The army crosses the bridge into Germany.

18. Diēbus decem, quibus māteria coepta erat comportārī, omnī opere effectō, exercitus trādūcitur. Caesar, ad utramque partem pontis firmō praesidiō relictō in fīnēs Sugambrōrum contendit. Interim ā complūribus cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt; quibus pācem atque amīcitiam petentibus līberāliter respondet obsidēsque ad sē addūcī iubet. At Sugambrī ex eō tempore, quō pōns īnstituī coeptus est, fugā comparātā, hortantibus eīs, quōs ex Tenctcrīs atque Usipetibus apud sē habēbant, fīnibus suīs excesserant suaque omnia exportāverant sēque in sōlitūdinem ac silvās abdiderant.

Having received the submission of many tribes, Caesar returns to Gaul and destroys the bridge.

19. Caesar paucōs diēs in eōrum fīnibus morātus, omnibus vīcīs aedificiīsque incēnsīs frūmentīsque succīsīs, sē in fīnēs Ubiōrum recēpit atque hīs auxilium suum pollicitus, sī ā Suēbīs premerentur, haec ab eīs cognōvit: Suēbōs, posteāquam per explōrātōrēs pontem fierī comperissent, mōre suō conciliō habitō, nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsisse, utī dē oppidīs dēmigrārent, līberōs, uxōrēs suaque omnia in silvīs dēpōnerent atque omnēs, quī arma ferre possent, ūnum in locum convenīrent; hunc esse dēlēctum medium ferē regiōnum eārum, quās Suēbī obtinērent; hīc Rōmānōrum adventum exspectāre atque ibi dēcertāre cōnstituisse.

Quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus eīs rēbus cōnfectīs, quārum rērum causā trādūcere exercitum cōn-

stituerat, ut Germānīs metum iniceret, ut Sugambrōs ulcīscerētur, ut Ubiōs obsidiōne līberāret, diēbus omnīnō duodēvīgintī trāns Rhēnum cōnsūmptīs, satis et ad laudem et ad ūtilitātem prōfectum arbitrātus, sē in Galliam recēpit pontemque rescidit.

20–36. FIRST EXPEDITION TO BRITAIN, 55 B.C.

Caesar seeks information concerning Britain.

20. Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā Caesar, etsī in hīs locīs, quod omnis Gallia ad septentriōnēs vergit, mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficīscī contendit, quod omnibus fere Gallicīs bellīs hostibus nostrīs inde subministrāta auxilia intellegēbat; et sī tempus annī ad bellum gerendum dēfuisset, tamen magnō sibi ūsuī fore arbitrābātur, sī modo īnsulam adīsset, genus hominum perspexisset, loca, portūs, aditūs cognōvisset; quae omnia ferē Gallīs erant incognita. Neque enim temerē praeter mercātōrēs illō adit quisquam, neque hīs ipsīs quicquam praeter ōram maritimam atque eās regiōnēs, quae sunt contrā Galliās, nōtum est. Itaque vocātīs ad sē undique mercātōribus, neque quanta esset īnsulae māgnitūdō, neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem ūsum bellī habērent aut quibus īnstitūtīs ūterentur, neque quī essent ad māiōrem nāvium multitūdinem idōneī portūs, reperīre poterat.

Volusenus and Comius are sent to reconnoiter.

21. Ad haec cognōscenda, prīusquam perīculum faceret, idōneum esse arbitrātus C. Volusēnum cum nāvī longā praemittit. Huic mandat, ut explōrātīs omnibus

rēbus ad sē quam prīmum revertātur. Ipse cum omnibus cōpiīs in Morinōs proficīscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam trāiectus. Hūc nāvēs undique ex fīnitimīs regiōnibus et, quam superiōre aestāte ad Veneticum bellum fēcerat, classem iubet convenīre. Interim cōnsiliō ēius cognitō et per mercātōrēs perlātō ad Britannōs, ā complūribus īnsulae cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt, quī polliceantur obsidēs dare atque imperiō populī Rōmānī obtemperāre. Quibus audītīs, līberāliter pollicitus hortātusque, ut in eā sententiā permanērent, eōs domum remittit, et cum eīs ūnā Commium, quem ipse Atrebātibus superātīs rēgem ibi cōnstituerat, cūius et virtūtem et cōnsilium probābat et quem sibi fidēlem esse arbitrābātur cūiusque auctōritās in hīs regiōnibus māgnī habēbātur, mittit. Huic imperat, quās possit, adeat cīvitātēs hortēturque, ut populī Rōmānī fidem sequantur, sēque celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiet. Volusēnus perspectīs regiōnibus omnibus, quantum eī facultātis darī potuit, quī nāvī ēgredī ac sē barbarīs committere nōn audēret, quīntō diē ad Caesarem revertitur, quaeque ibi perspexisset, renūntiat.

Caesar assembles his fleet.

22. Dum in hīs locīs Caesar nāvium parandārum causā morātur, ex māgnā parte Morinōrum ad eum lēgātī vēnērunt, quī sē dē superiōris temporis cōnsiliō excūsārent, quod hominēs barbarī et nostrae cōnsuētūdinis imperītī bellum populō Rōmānō fēcissent, sēque ea, quae imperāsset, factūrōs pollicērentur. Hōc sibi Caesar satis opportūnē accidisse arbitrātus, quod neque

post tergum hostem relinquere volēbat neque bellī gerendī propter annī tempus facultātem habēbat neque hās tantulārum rērum occupātiōnēs sibi Britanniae antepōnendās iūdicābat, nāgumm ōīs numerum obsidum imperat. Quibus adductīs eōs in fidem recipit.

Nāvibus circiter octōgintā onerāriīs coāctīs, quot satis esse ad duās trānsportandās legiōnēs exīstimābat, quod praeterea nāvium longārum habēbat, quaestōrī, lēgātīs praefectīsque distribuit. Hūc accēdēbant duodēvīgintī onerāriae nāvēs, quae ex eō locō ā mīlibus passuum octō ventō tenēbantur, quō minus in eundem portum venīre possent; hās equitibus distribuit. Reliquum exercitum Titūriō Sabīnō et Aurunculēiō Cottae lēgātīs in Menapiōs atque in eōs pāgōs Morinōrum, ā quibus ad eum lēgātī nōn vēnerant, dūcendum dedit. Sulpicium Rūfum lēgātum cum eō praesidiō, quod satis esse arbitrābātur, portum tenēre iussit.

Setting sail. Caesar reaches Britain and casts anchor.

23. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus, nactus idōneam ad nāvigandum tempestātem tertiā ferē vigiliā solvit, equitēsque in ulteriōrem portum prōgredī et nāvēs cōnscendere et sē sequī iussit. Ā quibus cum paulō tardius esset administrātum, ipse hōrā diēī circiter quārtā cum prīmīs nāvibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās hostium cōpiās armātās cōnspexit. Cūius locī haec erat nātūra atque ita montibus angustē mare continēbatur, utī ex locīs superiōribus in lītus tēlum adigī posset. Hunc ad ēgrediendum nōn idōneum locum arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs eō convenīrent, ad hōram nōnam in ancorīs exspectāvit.

Interim lēgātīs tribūnīsque mīlitum convocātīs, et quae ex Volusēnō cognōvisset et quae fierī vellet, ostendit monuitque (ut rei mīlitāris ratiō, māximē ut maritimae rēs postulārent, ut quae celerem atque īnstabilem mōtum habērent), ad nūtum et ad tempus omnēs rēs ab eīs administrārentur. Hīs dīmissīs et ventum et aestum ūnō tempore nactus secundum, datō sīgnō et sublātīs ancorīs circiter mīlia passuum septem ab eō locō prōgressus, apertō ac plānō lītore nāvēs cōnstituit.

The natives prevent the Romans from landing.

24. At barbarī, cōnsiliō Rōmānōrum cognitō, praemissō equitātū et essedāriīs, quō plērumque genere in proeliīs ūtī cōnsuērunt, reliquīs cōpiīs subsecūtī nostrōs nāvibus ēgredī prohibēbant. Erat ob hās causās summa difficultās, quod nāvēs propter māgnitūdinem nisi in altō cōnstituī nōn poterant; mīlitibus autem ignōtīs locīs, impedītīs manibus, māgnō et gravī onere armōrum pressīs simul et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et in fluctibus cōnsistendum et cum hostibus erat pūgnandum, cum illī aut ex āridō aut paulum in aquam prōgressī, omnibus membrīs expedītīs, nōtissimīs locīs, audācter tēla conicerent et equōs īnsuēfactōs incitārent. Quibus rēbus nostrī perterritī atque hūius omnīnō generis pūgnae imperītī nōn eādem alacritāte ac studiō, quō in pedestribus ūtī proeliīs cōnsuērant, ūtēbantur.

The soldiers are encouraged to disembark.

25. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās, quārum et speciēs erat barbarīs inūsitātior et mōtus ad ūsum expedītior, paulum removērī ab onerāriīs

nāvibus et rēmīs incitārī et ad latus apertum hostium cōnstituī, atque inde fundīs, sagittīs, tormentīs hostēs prōpellī ac submovērī iussit; quae rēs māgnō ūsuī nostrīs fuit. Nam et nāvium figūrā et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitātō genere tormentōrum permōtī, barbarī cōnstitērunt ac paulum etiam pedem rettulērunt. Atque nostrīs mīlitibus cunctantibus, māximē propter altitūdinem maris, quī decimae legiōnis aquilam ferēbat, obtestātus deōs, ut ea rēs legiōnī fēlīciter ēvenīret, "Dēsilīte," inquit, "commīlitōnēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere; ego certē meum reī pūblicae atque imperātōrī officium praestiterō." Hōc cum vōce māgnā dixisset, sē ex nāvī prōiēcit atque in hostēs aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostrī cohortātī inter sē, ne tantum dēdecus admitterētur, ūniversī ex nāvī dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex proximīs nāvibus cum cōnspexissent, subsecūtī hostibus adpropinquārunt.

The Britons are put to flight.

26. Pūgnātum est ab utrīsque ācriter. Nostrī tamen, quod neque ōrdinēs servāre neque firmiter īnsistere neque sīgna subsequī poterant, atque alius aliī ex nāvī, quibuscumque sīgnīs occurrerat, sē adgregābat, māgnopere perturbābantur; hostēs vērō, nōtīs omnibus vadīs, ubi ex lītore aliquōs singulārēs ex nāvī ēgredientēs cōnspexerant, incitātīs equīs impedītos adoriēbantur, plūrēs paucōs circumsistēbant, alii ab latere apertō in ūniversōs tēla coniciēbant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās longārum nāvium, item speculātōria nāvigia mīlitibus complērī iussit et, quōs labōrantēs cōnspexerat, hīs subsidia submittēbat. Nostrī, simul in āridō cōn-

stitērunt, suīs omnibus cōnsecūtīs in hostēs impetum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt; neque longius prōsequī potuērunt, quod equitēs cursum tenēre atque īnsulam capere nōn potuerant. Hōc ūnum ad prīstinam fortūnam Caesarī dēfuit.

They ask pardon for the arrest of Commius.

27. Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīsērunt; obsidēs datūrōs, quaecque imperāsset, factūrōs sēsē pollicitī sunt. Ūnā cum hīs lēgātīs Commius Atrebās vēnit, quem suprā dēmōnstrāveram ā Caesare in Britanniam praemissum. Hunc illī ē nāvī ēgressum, cum ad eōs ōrātōris modō Caesaris mandāta dēferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula coniēcerant; tum proeliō factō remīsērunt et in petendā pāce ēius reī culpam in multitūdinem contulērunt et, propter imprūdentiam ut ignōscerētur, petīvērunt.

Caesar questus, quod, cum ultrō in continentem lēgātīs missīs pācem ab sē petīssent, bellum sine causā intulissent, ignōscere imprūdentiae dīxit obsidēsque imperāvit; quōrum illī partem statim dedērunt, partem ex longinquiōribus locīs arcessītam paucīs diēbus sēsē datūrōs dīxērunt. Intereā suōs remigrāre in agrōs iussērunt, prīncipēsque undique convenīre et sē cīvitātēsque suās Caesarī commendāre coepērunt.

The Roman cavalry transports are driven back by a storm.

28. Hīs rēbus pāce cōnfīrmātā, post diem quārtum quam est in Britanniam ventum, nāvēs duodēvīgintī, dē quibus suprā dēmōnstrātum est, quae equitēs sus-

tulerant, ex superiōre portū lēnī ventō solvērunt. Quae cum adpropinquārent Britanniae et ex castrīs vidērentur, tanta tempestās subitō coorta est, ut nūlla ārum cursum tenēre posset, sed aliae eōdem, unde erant profectae, referrentur, aliae ad īnferiōrem partem īnsulae, quae est propius sōlis occāsum, māgnō suō cum perīculō dēicerentur: quae tamen ancorīs iactīs cum fluctibus complērentur, necessāriō adversā nocte in altum prōvectae continentem petiērunt.

The tide nearly wrecks the fleet on the British coast.

29. Eādem nocte accidit, ut esset lūna plēna, quī diēs maritimōs aestūs māximōs in Ōceanō efficere cōnsuēvit, nostrīsque id erat incognitum. Ita ūnō tempore et longās nāvēs, quibus Caesar exercitum trānsportandum cūrāverat quāsque in āridum subdūxerat, aestus complēbat, et onerāriās, quae ad ancorās erant dēligātae, tempestās adflīctābat, neque ūlla nostrīs facultās aut administrandī aut auxiliandī dabātur. Complūribus nāvibus frāctīs, reliquae cum essent, fūnibus, ancorīs reliquōque armāmentō āmissīs, ad nāvigandum inūtilēs, māgna, id quod necesse erat accidere, tōtīus exercitūs perturbātiō facta est. Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae, quibus reportārī possent, et omnia deërant, quae ad reficiendās nāves erant ūsuī; et, quod omnibus cōnstābat hiemārī in Galliā oportēre, frūmentum in hīs locīs in hiemem prōvīsum nōn erat.

The Britons plan to renew the war.

30. Quibus rēbus cognitīs, prīncipēs Britanniae, quī post proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē colocūtī, cum et equitēs et nāvēs et frūmentum Rōmānīs

dcëssc intellegerent et paucitātem mīlitum ex castrōrum exiguitāte cognōscerent, quae hōc erant etiam angustiōra, quod sine impedīmentīs Caesar legiōnēs trānsportāverat, optimum factū esse dūxērunt, rebelliōne factā, frūmentō commeātūque nostrōs prohibēre et rem in hiemem prōdūcere; quod, hīs superātīs aut reditū interclūsīs, nēminem posteā bellī īnferendī causā in Britanniam trānsitūrum cōnfīdēbant. Itaque rūrsus coniūrātiōne factā, paulātim ex castrīs discēdere et suōs clam ex agrīs dēdūcere coepērunt.

Caesar secures grain and repairs the fleet.

31. At Caesar, etsī nōndum cōrum cōnsilia cognōverat, tamen et ex ēventū nāvium suārum et ex eō, quod obsidēs dare intermīserant, fore id, quod accidit, suspicābātur. Itaque ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparābat. Nam et frūmentum ex agrīs cotīdiē in castra cōnferēbat et, quae gravissimē adflīctae erant nāvēs, eārum māteriā atque aere ad reliquās reficiendās ūtēbātur et, quae ad eās rēs erant ūsuī, ex continentī comparārī iubēbat. Itaque cum summō studiō ā mīlitibus administrārētur, duodecim nāvibus āmissīs, reliquīs ut nāvigārī satis commodē posset, effēcit.

The Britons attack a foraging legion.

32. Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex cōnsuētūdine ūnā frūmentātum missā, quae appellābātur septima, neque ūllā ad id tempus bellī suspīciōne interpositā, cum pars hominum in agrīs remanēret, pars etiam in castra ventitāret, eī, quī prō portīs castrōrum in statiōne erant, Caesarī nūntiāvērunt pulverem māiōrem, quam cōn-

suētūdō ferret, in eā parte vidērī, quam in partem legiō iter fēcisset. Caesar id, quod erat, suspicātus, aliquid novī ā barbarīs initum cōnsilī, cohortēs, quae in statiōnibus erant, sēcum in eam partem profiscīscī, ex reliquīs duās in statiōnem succedere, reliquās armārī et cōnfestim sēsē subsequī iussit.

Cum paulō longius ā castrīs prōcessisset, suōs ab hostibus premī atque aegrē sustinēre et cōnfertā legiōne ex omnibus partibus tēla conicī animadvertit. Nam quod, omnī ex reliquīs partibus dēmessā frūmentō, pars ūna erat reliqua, suspicātī hostēs hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs noctū in silvīs dēlituerant: tum, dispersōs dēpositīs armīs in metendō occupātōs subitō adortī, paucīs interfectīs reliquōs incertīs ōrdinibus perturbāverant, simul equitātū atque essedīs circumdederant.

The war-chariots of the Britons.

33. Genus hōc est ex essedīs pūgnae. Prīmō per omnēs partēs perequitant et tela conciunt atque ipsō terrōre equōrum et strepitū rotārum ōrdinēs plērumque perturbant, et cum sē inter equitum turmās īnsinuāvērunt, ex essedīs dēsiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurīgae interim paulātim ex proeliō excēdunt atque ita currūs conlocant, ut, sī illī ā multitūdine hostium premantur, expedītum ad suōs receptum habeant. Ita mōbilitātem equitum, stabilitātem peditum in proeliīs praestant; ac tantum ūsū cotīdiānō et exercitātiōne efficiunt, utī in dēclīvī ac praecipitī locō incitātōs equōs sustinēre et brevī moderārī ac flectere et per tēmōnem percurrere et in iugō īnsistere et sē inde in currūs citissimē recipere cōnsuērint.

Caesar relieves his foragers. Storms prevent further fighting.

34. Quibus rēbus perturbātīs nostrīs novitāte pūgnae tempore opportūnissimō Caesar auxilium tulit; namque ēius adventū hostēs cōnstitērunt, nostrī sē ex timōre recēpērunt. Quō factō ad lacessendum hostem et ad committendum proelium aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus, suō sē locō continuit et brevī tempore intermissō in castra legiōnēs redūxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostrīs omnibus occupātīs, quī erant in agrīs reliquī, discessērunt. Secūtae sunt continuōs complūrēs diēs tempestātēs, quae et nostrōs in castrīs continērent et hostem ā pūgnā prohibērent. Interim barbarī nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsērunt paucitātemque nostrōrum mīlitum suīs praedicāvērunt et, quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum suī līberandī facultās darētur, sī Rōmānōs castrīs expulissent, dēmōnstrāvērunt. Hīs rēbus celeriter māgnā multitūdine peditātūs equitātūsque coāctā, ad castra vēnērunt.

Defeat of the Britons.

35. Caesar, etsī idem, quod superiōribus diēbus acciderat, fore vidēbat, ut, sī essent hostēs pulsī, celeritāte perīculum effugerent, tamen nactus equitēs circiter trīgintā, quōs Commius Atrebās, dē quō ante dictum est, sēcum trānsportāverat, legiōnēs in aciē prō castrīs cōnstituit. Commissō proeliō diūtius nostrōrum mīlitum impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuērunt ac terga vertērunt. Quōs tantō spatiō secūtī, quantum cursū et vīribus efficere potuērunt, complūrēs ex eīs occīdērunt;

deinde, omnibus longē lātēque aedificiīs incēnsīs, sē in castra recēpērunt.

Caesar demands hostages and returns to Gaul.

36. Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem dē pācē vēnērunt. His Caesar numerum obsidum, quem ante imperāverat, duplicāvit cōsque in continentem addūcī iussit, quod propinquā diē aequinoctī īnfīrmīs nāvibus hiemī nāvigātiōnem subiciendam non existimābat. Ipse idōneam tempestātem nactus paulō post mediam noctem nāvēs solvit, quae omnēs incolumēs ad continentem pervenērunt; sed ex eīs onerāriae duae eōsdem portūs, quōs reliquae, capere non potuērunt et paulō īnfrā dēlātae sunt.

37, 38. REBELLION OF THE MORINI AND MENAPII.

The Morini attack the Romans as they disembark.

37. Quibus ex nāvibus cum essent expositī mīlitēs circiter trecentī atque in castra contenderent, Morinī, quōs Caesar in Britanniam proficīscēns pācātōs relīquerat, spē praedae adductī prīmō non ita māgnō suōrum numerō circumsteterunt ac, sī sēsē interficī nōllent, arma pōnere iussērunt. Cum illī orbe factō sēsē dēfenderent, celeriter ad clāmōrem hominum circiter mīlia sex convēnērunt. Quā rē nūntiātā, Caesar omnem ex castrīs equitātum suīs auxiliō mīsit. Interim nostrī mīlitēs impetum hostium sustinuērunt atque amplius hōrīs quattuor fortissimē pūgnāvērunt, et paucīs vulneribus acceptīs complūrēs ex hīs occīdērunt. Posteā vērō quam equitātus noster in cōnspectum vēnit, hostēs

abiectīs armīs terga vertērunt māgnusque eōrum nume-
635 rus est occīsus.

Labienus defeats them. Winter quarters among the Belgae.

38. Caesar posterō diē T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum eīs legiōnibus, quās ex Britanniā redūxerat, in Morinōs, quī rebelliōnem fēcerant, mīsit. Quī cum propter siccitātēs palūdum, quō sē reciperent, nōn habērent, quō
640 perfugiō superiōre annō erant ūsī, omnēs ferē in potestātem Labiēnī vēnērunt. At Q. Titūrius et L. Cotta lēgātī, quī in Menapiōrum fīnēs legiōnēs dūxerant, omnibus eōrum agrīs vāstātīs, frūmentīs succīsīs, aedificiīs incēnsīs, quod Menapiī sē omnēs in dēnsissimās silvās
645 abdiderant, sē ad Caesarem recēpērunt.

Caesar in Belgīs omnium legiōnum hīberna cōnstituit. Eō duae omnīnō cīvitātēs ex Britanniā obsidēs mīsērunt, reliquae neglēxērunt. Hīs rēbus gestīs, ex litterīs Caesaris diērum vīgintī supplicātiō ā senātū dēcrēta est.

SELECTIONS FROM BOOKS V., VI., AND VII

INTENDED ESPECIALLY FOR SIGHT READING

THE CAPTURE AND DEATH OF DUMNORIX, 54 B.C. BOOK V., CHAPS. 6, 7.

When Caesar was preparing to invade Britain a second time, he feared an uprising in Gaul during his absence, and therefore intended to take with him most of the Gaulish chiefs, including Dumnorix. This troublesome Haeduan deserted him, but was captured and put to death.

6.[1] Erat ūnā cum cēterīs Dumnorīx Haeduus, dē quō ante[2] ā nōbīs dictum est. Hunc sēcum habēre in prīmīs[3] cōnstituerat, quod eum cupidum rērum novārum, cupidum imperī, māgnī[4] animī, māgnae inter Gallōs auctōritātis cognōverat. Accēdēbat hūc, quod in concilio Haeduōrum Dumnorīx dīxerat sibi ā Caesare rēgnum cīvitātis dēferrī; quod dictum[5] Haeduī graviter ferēbant neque recūsandī aut dēprecandī causā lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittere audēbant. Id factum ex suīs hospitibus Caesar cognōverat.

Ille omnibus prīmō precibus petere contendit, ut in Galliā relinquerētur, partim quod īnsuētus[6] nāvigandī

6. [1] The chapter numbers are given as in the complete text. [2] Dumnorix was last mentioned in Bk. I., chap. 20. [3] in primis *especially.* [4] *haughty.* [5] *statement.* [6] *unaccustomed,* w. gen.

mare timēret, partim quod religiōnibus[7] impedīrī sēsē dīceret. Posteāquam id obstinātē sibi negārī vīdit, omnī spē impetrandī adēmptā, prīncipēs Galliae sollicitāre, sēvocāre singulōs hortārīque coepit, utī in continentī remanērent; metū territāre: nōn[8] sine causā fierī, ut Gallia omnī nōbilitāte spoliārētur; id esse cōnsilium Caesaris ut, quōs in cōnspectū Galliae interficere verērētur, hōs omnēs in Britanniam trāductōs necāret; fidem reliquīs interpōnere,[9] iūs iūrandum poscere ut, quod esse ex ūsū Galliae intellēxissent, commūnī cōnsiliō administrārent. Haec ā complūribus ad Caesarem dēferēbantur.

7. Quā rē cognitā Caesar, quod tantum cīvitātī Haeduae dignitātis[1] tribuēbat, coërcendum atque dēterrendum, quibuscumque rēbus posset, Dumnorīgem statuēbat; quod longius ēius āmentiam prōgredī vidēbat, prōspiciendum,[2] nē quid[3] sibi ac reī pūblicae nocēre posset. Itaque diēs circiter vīgintī quīnque in eō locō commorātus, quod Cōrus ventus nāvigātiōnem impediēbat, quī māgnam partem omnis temporis[4] in hīs locīs flāre[5] cōnsuēvit, dabat operam,[6] ut in officiō Dumnorīgem continēret, nihilō tamen sētius[7] omnia ēius cōnsilia cognōsceret; tandem idōneam nactus tempestātem mīlitēs equitēsque cōnscendere nāvēs iubet.

At omnium impedītīs[8] animīs, Dumnorīx cum equitibus Haeduōrum ā castrīs īnscīente Caesare domum discēdere coepit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar, intermissā

6. [7] *religious scruples.* [8] *saying that*, etc. [9] *gave.*

7. [1] dignitatis tribuebat: *had respect for.* [2] *take precaution.* [3] quid nocere: *do any harm.* [4] omnis temporis: *every season.* [5] *blow.* [6] dabat operam: (gave attention) *tried.* [7] strengthens tamen. [8] *occupied.*

profectiōne atque omnibus rēbus postpositīs,[9] māgnam partem equitatūs ad eum īnsequendum mittit retrahīque imperat: sī vim faciat neque pāreat, interficī iubet, nihil hunc sē absente prō sānō[10] factūrum arbitrātus, quī praesentis imperium neglēxisset. Ille[11] autem revocātus resistere ac sē manū dēfendere suōrumque fidem implōrāre coepit, saepe clāmitāns līberum sē līberaeque esse cīvitātīs. Illi, ut erat imperātum, circumsistunt hominem atque interficiunt: at equitēs Haeduī ad Caesarem omnēs revertuntur.

BRITAIN: ITS INHABITANTS, PRODUCTS, SIZE, ETC. BOOK V., CHAPS. 12–14.

The observations here noted about Britain were made by Caesar on his second invasion of that island, 54 B.C., and are the first of which we have any record.

12. Britanniae pars interior ab eīs incolitur, quōs nātōs in īnsulā ipsā memoriā[1] prōditum dicunt; maritima pars ab eīs, quī praedae ac bellī īnferendī causā ex Belgiō trānsiērunt (quī omnēs ferē īsdem[2] nōminibus cīvitātum appellantur, quibus[3] ortī ex cīvitātibus eō pervēnērunt) et bellō inlātō ibi remānsērunt atque agrōs colere[4] coepērunt. Hominum est infīnīta multitūdō creberrimaque aedificia ferē Gallicīs cōnsimilia, pecoris māgnus numerus. Ūtuntur aut nummō[5] aureō[6] aut tāleīs[7] ferreīs ad certum pondus exāminātīs[8] prō nummō.

7. [9] *laid aside* everything else. [10] *as a sane man.* [11] Dumnorix.

12. [1] memoria proditum: *according to tradition.* [2] eisdem. [3] order: ex quibus civitatibus orti (sunt et) pervenerunt eo. [4] *cultivate.* [5] *money.* [6] *of gold.* [7] *bars.* [8] *weighed.*

Nāscitur ibi plumbum [9] album in mediterrāneīs regiōnibus, in maritimīs ferrum, sed ēius exigua est cōpia; aere ūtuntur importātō. Māteria [10] cūiusque generis, ut in Galliā, est praeter fāgum [11] atque abietem.[12] Leporem [13] et gallīnam [14] et ānserem [15] gustāre fās nōn putant; haec tamen alunt animī voluptātisque causā.[16] Loca sunt temperātiōra quam in Galliā, remissiōribus frīgoribus.

13. Insula nātūrā triquetra,[1] cūius ūnum latus est contrā Galliam. Hūius lateris alter angulus,[2] quī est ad Cantium, quō ferē omnēs ex Galliā nāvēs adpelluntur, ad orientem sōlem, īnferior [3] ad merīdiem [4] spectat. Hōc latus pertinet circiter mīlia passuum quīngenta.

Alterum [5] vergit ad Hispāniam atque occidentem sōlem: quā ex parte est Hibernia īnsula, dīmidiō minor,[6] ut exīstimātur, quam Britannia, sed parī [7] spatiō trānsmissūs atque ex Galliā est in Britanniam. In [8] hōc mediō cursū est īnsula, quae appellātur Mona; complūrēs praetereā minōrēs obiectae [9] īnsulae exīstimantur, dē quibus īnsulīs nōnnūllī scrīpsērunt diēs continuōs trīgintā sub brūmam [10] esse noctem. Nōs nihil dē eō percontātiōnibus [11] reperiēbāmus, nisi certīs ex aquā [12] mēnsūrīs breviōrēs esse quam in continentī noctēs vidēbāmus. Hūius est longitūdō lateris, ut fert [13] illōrum opīniō, septingentōrum mīlium.

12. [9] **plumbum album**: *tin.* [10] *timber.* [11] *beech.* [12] *fir.* [13] *hare.* [14] *hen.* [15] *goose.* [16] *i.e.* as pets.

13. [1] *triangular.* [2] *angle.* [3] sc. **angulus.** [4] *south.* [5] sc. **latus.** [6] *by half.* [7] **pari . . . atque**: *with the same distance across as.* [8] **in . . . cursu**: *in the middle of this passage.* [9] sc. **esse**. *to lie opposite.* [10] *winter-solstice.* [11] *inquiry.* [12] **ex aqua**: *by the water-clock*, an instrument constructed like a sand-glass. [13] *is.*

Tertium est contrā septentriōnēs, cui parti nūlla est obiecta terra; sed ēius angulus alter māximē ad Germāniam spectat. Hōc mīlium passuum octingentōrum in longitūdinem esse exīstimātur. Ita omnis īnsula est in circuitū vīciēs centum mīlium passuum.

14. Ex hīs omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī, quī Cantium incolunt, quae regiō est maritima omnis, neque multum ā Gallicā differunt cōnsuētūdine. Interiōrēs plērīque frūmenta nōn serunt,[1] sed lacte et carne vīvunt pellibusque sunt vestītī. Omnēs vērō sē Britannī vitrō[2] īnficiunt,[3] quod caeruleum[4] efficit colōrem, atque hōc horribiliōrēs sunt in pūgnā aspectū; capillōque[5] sunt prōnissō[6] atque omnī parte corporis rāsā praeter caput et labrum[7] superius.

THE RIVALRY OF TWO CENTURIONS. BOOK V., CHAP. 44.

For the winter of 54–53 B.C., Caesar placed his legions in several scattered camps. Quintus Cicero, the lieutenant in charge of one legion among the Nervii, was besieged in his camp by the Gallic chief Ambiorix. During the siege occurred the incident given below.

44. Erant in eā legiōne fortissimī virī, centuriōnēs, quī iam prīmīs ōrdinibus adpropinquārent, T. Pullō et L. Vorēnus. Hī perpetuīs inter sē contrōversiīs habēbant, uter alterī anteferrētur, omnibusque annīs dē locō[1] summīs simultātibus[2] contendēbant. Ex hīs Pullō, cum

14. [1] *sow.* [2] *woad.* [3] *stain.* [4] *dark blue.* [5] *hair.* [6] (let grow) *long.* [7] *lip.*

44. [1] *precedence.* [2] *rivalry.*

ācerrimē ad mūnītiōnēs pūgnārētur, "Quid dubitās," inquit, "Vorēne? aut quem locum [3] tuae probandae virtūtis exspectās? Hīc diēs dē nostrīs contrōversiīs iūdicābit." Haec cum dīxisset, prōcēdit extrā mūnītiōnēs, quaeque pars [4] hostium cōnfertissima est vīsa, inrumpit.

Nē Vorēnus quidem sēsē tum vāllō continet, sed omnium veritus exīstimātiōnem subsequitur. Mediocrī spatiō relictō [6] Pullō pīlum in hostēs immittit atque ūnum ex multitūdine prōcurrentem trāicit; quō percussō [7] et exanimātō hunc scūtīs prōtegunt hostēs, in illum [8] ūniversī tēla cōniciunt neque dant prōgrediendī facultātem. Trānsfīgitur scūtum Pullōnī [9] et verūtum [10] in balteō [11] dēfīgitur. Āvertit hīc cāsus vāgīnam [12] et gladium ēdūcere cōnantī dextram morātur manum, impedītumque hostēs circumsistunt. Succurrit inimīcus illī Vorēnus et labōrantī subvenit.

Ad hunc sē cōnfestim ā Pullōne omnis multitūdō convertit; illum verūtō trānsfīxum arbitrantur. Gladiō comminus rem gerit Vorēnus atque ūnō interfectō reliquōs paulum prōpellit; dum cupidius īnstat, in locum dēiectus īnferiōrem concidit. Huic rūrsus circumventō subsidium fert Pullō, atque ambō [13] incolumēs complūribus interfectīs summā cum laude sēsē intrā mūnītiōnēs recipiunt. Sīc fortūna in contentiōne et certāmine utrumque versāvit,[14] ut alter alterī inimīcus auxiliō salūtīque esset, neque dīiūdicārī posset, uter utrī virtūte anteferendus vidērētur.

41. [3] *opportunity.* [4] quaeque pars — et eam partem quae. [6] *attacked.* [8] *i.e.* between him and the enemy. [7] *thrust through.* [8] *i.e.* Pullo. [9] dat. of ref. [10] *dart.* [11] *belt.* [12] *sheath.* [13] *both.* [14] *dealt with.*

THE CUSTOMS OF THE GAULS AND THE GERMANS. BOOK VI., CHAPS. 11-28.

In the spring of 53 B.C. Caesar suppressed the uprisings among the Nervii, Treveri and other tribes. Then building another bridge across the Rhine, near the site of the former one (Bk. IV.), he entered Germany a second time. The following chapters are a digression introduced at this point in the narrative.

Two factions of Gaul.

11. Quoniam ad hunc locum[1] perventum est, non aliēnum[2] esse vidētur dē Galliae Germāniaeque mōribus et, quō[3] differant hae nātiōnēs inter sēsē, prōpōnere.[4]

In Gallia non sōlum in omnibus cīvitātibus atque in omnibus pāgīs partibusque, sed paene etiam in singulīs domibus factiōnēs sunt; earumque factiōnum prīncipēs sunt, quī summam auctōritātem eōrum iūdiciō habēre exīstimantur, quōrum[5] ad arbitrium iūdicium[6] summa[7] omnium rērum cōnsiliōrumque redeat.[8] Idque[9] ēius reī causā antīquitus īnstitūtum[10] vidētur, nē quis ex plēbe contrā potentiōrem auxilī egēret; suōs enim quisque opprimī et circumvenīrī non patitur, neque, aliter sī faciat, ūllam inter suōs habeat auctōritātem. Haec eadem ratiō[11] est in summā[12] tōtius Galliae; namque omnēs cīvitātēs dīvīsae sunt in duās partēs.

Relation of the Romans to the factions.

12. Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterius factiōnis prīncipēs erant Haeduī, alterius Sēquanī.[1] Hī,[2]

11. [1] *i.e.* in the narrative. [2] *inappropriate.* [3] *how.* [4] *explain.* [5] antecedent is principes. [6] *management.* [7] *is referred.* [8] *this custom.* [9] sc. esse. [10] *need,* governs gen. [11] *system.* [12] *in general.*

12. [1] cf. Bk. I., chap. 31. [2] *the latter.*

cum per sē minus valērent, quod summa auctōritās antīquitus erat in Haeduīs māgnaeque eōrum erant clientēlae,[3] Germānōs atque Ariovistum sibi adiūnxerant eōsque ad sē māgnīs iactūrīs[4] pollicitātiōnibusque perdūxerant. Proeliīs vērō complūribus factīs secundīs atque omnī nōbilitāte Haeduōrum interfectā, tantum potentiā antecesserant, ut māgnam partem clientium ab Haeduīs ad sē trādūcerent obsidēsque ab hīs prīncipum fīliōs acciperent, et pūblicē iūrāre cōgerent nihil sē contrā Sēquanōs cōnsilī initūrōs, et partem fīnitimī agrī per vim occupātam possidērent, Galliaeque tōtīus prīncipātum obtinērent. Quā necessitāte adductus, Dīviciācus auxilī petendī causā Rōmam[1] ad senātum profectus īnfectā[5] rē redierat.

Adventū Caesaris factā commūtātiōne rērum, obsidibus Haeduīs redditīs, veteribus clientēlīs restitūtīs, novīs per Caesarem comparātīs, quod eī, quī sē ad eōrum amīcitiam adgregāverant, meliōre condiciōne atque aequiōre imperiō sē ūtī vidēbant, reliquīs rēbus[6] eōrum grātiā dignitāteque amplificātā, Sēquanī prīncipātum dīmīserant.[7] In eōrum locum Rēmī successerant; quōs quod adaequāre[8] apud Caesarem grātiā intellegēbātur, eī, quī propter veterēs inimīcitiās nūllō modō cum Haeduīs coniungī poterant, sē Rēmīs in clientēlam dicābant.[9] Hōs illī dīligenter tuēbantur; ita et novam et repente collēctam[10] auctōritātem tenēbant. Eō tamen statū rēs erat, ut longē prīncipēs habērentur Haeduī, secundum locum dignitātis Rēmī obtinērent.

12. [3] *dependencies.* [4] *sacrifices.* [5] **infecta re**: *without success.* [6] abl. of spec. [7] *lost.* [8] sc. obj. **eōs**, *i.e.* the Remi. [9] *gave up.* [10] *acquired.*

The druids and the knights.

13. In omnī Gallliā cōrum hominum, quī aliquō sunt numerō[1] atque honōre, genera sunt duo. Nam plēbēs paene servōrum habētur locō,[2] quae nihil audet per sē, nūllī adhibētur[3] consiliō. Plērique, cum aut aere[4] aliēnō aut māgnitūdine tribūtōrum aut iniūriā potentiōrum premuntur, sēsē in servitūtem dicant[5] nōbilibus, quibus in[6] hōs eadem omnia sunt iūra, quae dominīs[7] in servōs. Sed dē hīs duōbus generibus alterum est druidum, alterum equitum.[8] Illī rēbus dīvīnīs intersunt,[9] sacrificia pūblica ac prīvāta prōcūrant,[10] religiōnēs interpretantur: ad eōs māgnus adulēscentium numerus disciplīnae causā concurrit, māgnōque hī sunt apud eōs honōre. Nam ferē dē omnibus contrōversiīs pūbliceīs prīvātīsque cōnstituunt; et, sī quod est admissum[11] facinus, sī caedēs facta, sī dē hērēditāte, dē fīnibus contrōversia est, īdem dēcernunt, praemia poenāsque cōnstituunt; sī quī aut prīvātus aut populus eōrum dēcrētō nōn stetit,[12] sacrificiīs interdīcunt.[13] Haec poena apud eōs est gravissima. Quibus ita est interdictum, hī numerō impiōrum ac scelerātōrum habentur, hīs omnēs dēcēdunt, aditum eōrum sermōnemque[14] dēfugiunt, nē quid ex contāgiōne incommodī accipiant, neque eīs petentibus iūs redditur[15] neque honōs ūllus commūnicātur.

Hīs autem omnibus druidibus praest ūnus, quī summam inter eōs habet auctōritātem. Hōc mortuō aut,

13. [1] *account.* [2] *as.* [3] *invited.* [4] **aere alieno**: *debt.* [5] *give up.* [6] *over.* [7] *masters.* [8] *knights.* [9] *preside over.* [10] *attend to.* [11] *committed.* [12] *abide by.* [13] *prohibit (them).* [14] *speech.* [15] *granted.*

sī quī ex reliquīs excellit dignitāte, succēdit aut, sī sunt plūrēs parēs, suffrāgiō druidum, nōnnumquam etiam armīs de prīncipātū contendunt. Hī certō annī tempore in fīnibus Carnutum, quae regiō tōtīus Galliae media habētur, cōnsīdunt in locō cōnsecrātō. Hūc omnēs undique, quī contrōversiās habent, conveniunt cōrumque dēcrētīs iūdiciīsque pārent. Disciplīna[16] in Britanniā reperta atque inde in Galliam trānslāta exīstimātur, et nunc, quī dīligentius eam rem cognōscere volunt, plērumque illō discendī causā proficīscuntur.

Privileges and doctrines of the druids.

14. Druidēs ā bellō abesse[1] cōnsuērunt neque tribūta ūnā cum reliquīs pendunt; mīlitiae vacātiōnem omniumque rērum habent immūnitātem.[2] Tantīs excitātī praemiīs et suā sponte multī in[3] disciplīnam conveniunt et ā parentibus propinquīsque mittuntur. Māgnum ibi numerum versuum ēdiscere dīcuntur. Itaque annōs nōnnūllī vīcēnōs in disciplīnā permanent. Neque fās esse exīstimant ea litterīs mandāre, cum[4] in reliquīs ferē rēbus, pūblicīs prīvātīsque ratiōnibus,[5] Graecīs litterīs[6] ūtantur.

Id mihi duābus dē causīs īnstituisse videntur, quod neque in vulgus disciplīnam efferrī[7] velint neque eōs, quī discunt, litterīs cōnfīsōs minus memoriae studēre;[8] quod ferē plērīsque accidit, ut praesidiō[9] litterārum dīligentiam in perdiscendō ac memoriam remittant.[10] In prīmīs hōc volunt persuādēre,[11] nōn interīre[12] ani-

13. [16] *the system* of the Druids.

14. [1] *take no part in.* [2] *freedom from.* [3] *for.* [4] *although.* [5] *accounts.* [6] cf. Bk. I., chap. 29. [7] *to be disclosed.* [8] *pay attention to.* [9] *assistance.* [10] *relax.* [11] *inculcate.* [12] *perish.*

mās,[13] sed ab aliīs post mortem trānsīre ad aliōs, atque 230
hōc [14] māximē ad virtūtem excitārī putant metū mortis
neglēctō. Multa praeterea dē sīderibus atque eōrum
mōtū, dē mundī [15] ac terrārum māgnitūdine, dē rērum
nātūrā, dē deōrum immortālium vī ac potestāte dis-
putant et iuventūtī trādunt. 235

Power of the knights.

15. Alterum genus est equitum. Hi, cum est ūsus
atque aliquod bellum incidit (quod ferē ante Caesaris
adventum quotannīs accidere solēbat,[1] utī aut ipsī
iniūriās īnferrent aut inlātās prōpulsārent[1]), omnēs in
bellō versantur,[2] atque eōrum ut[3] quisque est genere[4] 240
cōpiīsque amplissimus,[5] ita plūrimōs circum sē ambactōs[6]
clientēsque habet. Hanc ūnam grātiam potentiamque
nōvērunt.

Human sacrifices.

16. Nātiō est omnis Gallōrum admodum[1] dēdita[2]
religiōnibus, atque ob eam causam, quī sunt adfectī 245
graviōribus morbīs quīque in proeliīs perīculīsque ver-
santur,[3] aut prō victimīs hominēs immolant[4] aut sē
immolātūrōs vovent,[5] administrīsque ad ea sacrificia
druidibus ūtuntur, quod, prō vītā hominis nisi hominis
vīta reddātur, nōn posse deōrum immortālium nūmen[6] 250
plācārī[7] arbitrantur, pūblicēque eiusdem generis habent
īnstitūta sacrificia. Aliī immānī māgnitūdine simu-

14. [13] *souls.* [14] *by this (belief).* [15] *the universe.*

15. [1] *was accustomed.* [2] *are engaged.* [3] *according as.* [4] *birth.* [5] *distinguished.* [6] *vassals.*

16. [1] *very.* [2] *devoted.* [3] *engage.* [4] *sacrifice.* [5] *vow.* [6] *will.* [7] *to be appeased.*

lācra [8] habent, quōrum contexta vīminibus membra vīvīs hominibus complent; quibus succēnsīs circumventī flammā exanimantur hominēs. Supplicia cōrum, quī in fūrtō [9] aut latrōciniō aut aliquā noxiā [10] sint comprehēnsī, grātiōra dīs immortālibus esse arbitrantur; sed, cum ēius generis cōpia dēficit, etiam ad innocentium supplicia dēscendunt.[11]

The gods of the Gauls.

17. Deōrum māximē Mercurium colunt;[1] hūius sunt plūrima simulācra, hunc omnium inventōrem artium ferunt,[2] hunc viārum atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad quaestūs [3] pecūniae mercātūrāsque [4] habēre vim māximam arbitrantur; post hunc Apollinem et Mārtem et Iovem et Minervam. Dē hīs eandem ferē, quam reliquae gentēs, habent opīniōnem: Apollinem morbōs dēpellere, Minervam operum atque artificiōrum [5] initia trādere,[6] Iovem imperium caelestium [7] tenēre, Mārtem bella regere. Huic, cum proeliō dīmicāre cōnstituērunt, ea, quae bellō cēperint, plērumque dēvovent; cum superāvērunt, animālia capta immolant, reliquās rēs in ūnum locum cōnferunt. Multīs in cīvitātibus hārum rērum exstrūctōs cumulōs [8] locīs cōnsecrātīs cōnspicārī licet; neque saepe accidit, ut neglēctā quispiam religiōne aut capta apud [9] sē occultāre aut posita [10] tollere audēret, gravissimumque eī reī supplicium cum cruciātū cōnstitutūm est.

16. [8] *images* (of wicker-work). [9] *theft.* [10] *crime.* [11] *resort.*

17. [1] *worship.* [2] *call.* [3] *gaining.* [4] *pursuits of trade.* [5] *arts.* [6] *impart.* [7] *of the gods.* [8] *heaps.* [9] **apud se**: *at his house.* [10] *set aside, i.e.* consecrated as gifts.

They claim descent from Pluto.

18. Gallī sē omnēs ab Dīte[1] patre prōgnātōs praedicant idque[2] ab druidibus prōditum dīcunt. Ob eam causam spatia omnis temporis nōn numerō diērum, sed noctium fīniunt;[3] diēs nātālēs et mēnsium et annōrum initia sīc observant, ut noctem diēs subsequātur. In reliquīs vītae īnstitūtīs hōc ferē ab reliquīs[4] differunt, quod suōs līberōs, nisi cum adolēverint, ut mūnus[5] mīlitiae sustinēre possint, palam[6] ad sē adīre nōn patiuntur fīliumque puerīlī aetāte in pūblicō in cōnspectū patris adsistere turpe dūcunt.

Laws of marriage. Funeral rites.

19. Virī, quantās pecūniās ab uxōribus dōtis[1] nōmine accēpērunt, tantās ex suīs bonīs aestimātiōne[2] factā cum dōtibus communicant.[3] Hūius omnis pecūniae coniūnctim[4] ratiō habētur frūctūsque[5] servantur: uter eōrum vītā superāvit, ad eum pars utrīusque cum frūctibus superiōrum temporum pervenit.[6] Virī in[7] uxōrēs, sīcutī in līberōs, vītae necisque habent potestātem; et cum pater familiae illustriōre[8] locō nātus dēcessit, eius propinquī conveniunt et, dē[9] morte sī rēs in suspīciōnem vēnit dē uxōribus in servīlem modum[10] quaestiōnem habent, et sī[11] compertum est, īgnī atque omnibus tormentīs exercitātās interficiunt. Fūnera

18. [1] *Pluto.* [2] *and this tradition.* [3] *measure.* [4] sc. **nationibus.** [5] **munus militiae**: *military service.* [6] *publicly.*

19. [1] **dotis nomine**: *as a dowry.* [2] *valuation.* [3] *put along.* [4] *jointly.* [5] *income.* [6] *belongs.* [7] *over.* [8] **illustriore . . . natus**: *of higher rank.* [9] **de . . . venit**: *if there is any suspicion regarding the cause of death.* [10] *the manner of slaves.* [11] *if any guilt.*

sunt prō cultū Gallōrum māgnifica et sūmptuōsa; omniaque, quae vīvīs cordī[12] fuisse arbitrantur, in īgnem īnferunt, etiam animālia, ac paulō suprā[13] hanc memoriam servī et clientēs, quōs ab eīs dīlēctōs[14] esse cōnstābat, iūstīs[15] fūnebribus cōnfectīs ūnā cremābantur.

Rumors are to be reported to the magistrates.

20. Quae cīvitātēs commodius[1] suam rem pūblicam administrāre exīstimantur, habent lēgibus sānctum,[2] sī quis quid dē rē pūblicā ā fīnitimīs rūmōre ac fāmā accēperit, utī ad magistrātum dēferat nēve cum quō aliō commūnicet, quod saepe hominēs temerāriōs atque imperītōs falsīs rūmōribus terrērī et ad facinus impellī et dē summīs rēbus cōnsilium capere cognitum[3] est. Magistrātūs, quae vīsa sunt,[4] occultant; quae esse ex ūsū iūdicāvērunt, multitūdinī prōdunt. Dē rē pūblicā nisi per concilium loquī nōn concēditur.

The customs of the Germans.

21. Germānī multum ab hāc cōnsuētūdine differunt. Nam neque druidēs habent, quī rēbus dīvīnīs praesint, neque sacrificiīs student. Deōrum numerō eōs sōlōs dūcunt, quōs cernunt[1] et quōrum apertē opibus iuvantur, Sōlem et Vulcānum et Lūnam, reliquōs nē fāmā quidem accēpērunt. Vīta omnis in vēnātiōnibus atque in studiīs[2] reī mīlitāris cōnsistit; ā parvīs labōrī

19. [12] *dear.* [13] **supra . . . memoriam:** *before our time.* [14] *loved.* [15] *regular.*

20. [1] *effectively.* [2] *established.* [3] *known.* [4] *seems best (to be concealed).*

21. [1] *see.* [2] *pursuit.*

ac dūritiae[3] student.[4] Quī diūtissimē impūberēs[5] permānsērunt, māximam inter suōs ferunt laudem; hōc alī[6] statūram, alī vīrēs nervōsque[7] cōnfīrmārī putant.

Ownership of land.

22. Agrī cultūrae nōn student, māiorque pars eōrum vīctūs in[1] lacte, cāseō, carne cōnsistit. Neque quisquam agrī modum[2] certum aut fīnēs habet propriōs,[3] sed magistrātūs ac prīncipēs in annōs singulōs gentibus cognātiōnibusque[4] hominum, quīque ūnā coiērunt, quantum[5] et quō locō vīsum est agrī, attribuunt atque anno post aliō[6] trānsīre cōgunt. Eius reī multās afferunt causās: nē adsiduā[7] cōnsuētūdine[8] captī studium bellī gerendī agrī cultūrā commūtent;[9] nē lātōs fīnēs parāre studeant potentiōrēs atque humiliōrēs possessiōnibus expellant; nē accūrātius ad frīgora atque aestūs vītandōs aedificent; nē qua oriātur pecūniae cupiditās, quā ex rē factiōnēs dissēnsiōnēsque nāscuntur; ut animī aequitāte[10] plēbem contineant, cum suās quisque opēs cum potentissimīs aequārī videat.[11]

The isolation of German tribes; chieftains; brigandage; hospitality.

23. Cīvitātibus māxima laus est, quam lātissimē circum sē vāstātīs fīnibus sōlitūdinēs habēre.[1] Hōc

21. [3] *hardship.* [4] *devote themselves.* [5] *unmarried.* [6] *is increased.* [7] *muscles.*

22. [1] *of.* [2] *amount.* [3] *his own.* [4] *families.* [5] w. **agri.** [6] *to another place.* [7] *continuous.* [8] *mode of life.* [9] *exchange* (*for*). [10] **animi aequitate**: *contentment.* [11] cf. Bk. IV., chap. 1.

23. [1] cf. Bk. IV., chap. 3.

proprium [2] virtūtis exīstimant, expulsōs agrīs fīnitimōs cēdere neque quemquam prope sē audēre cōnsistere; simul hōc sē fore tūtiōrēs arbitrantur, repentīnae incursiōnis timōre sublātō. Cum bellum cīvitās aut inlātum dēfendit aut īnfert, magistrātūs, quī eī bellō praesint et vītae necisque habeant potestātem, dēliguntur. In pāce nūllus est commūnis magistrātus, sed prīncipēs regiōnum atque pāgōrum inter suōs iūs dīcunt [3] controversiāsque minuunt.[4]

Latrōcinia nūllam habent īnfāmiam, quae extrā fīnēs cūiusque cīvitātis fīunt, atque ea [5] iuventūtis exercendae ac dēsidiae [6] minuendae causā fierī praedicant. Atque ubi quis ex prīncipibus in conciliō dīxit sē ducem fore, quī [7] sequī velint, profiteantur, cōnsurgunt [8] eī, quī et causam et hominem probant, suumque auxilium pollicentur atque ā multitūdine conlaudantur; quī ex hīs secūtī nōn sunt, in dēsertōrum ac prōditōrum [9] numerō dūcuntur, omniumque hīs rērum posteā fidēs dērogātur.[10] Hospitem violāre fās nōn putant; quī quācumque dē causā ad eōs vēnērunt, ab iniūriā prohibent sānctōsque habent, hīsque omnium domūs patent victusque commūnicātur.

Gallic colonies in Germany.

21. Ac fuit anteā tempus, cum Germānōs Gallī virtūte superārent, ultrō bella īnferrent, propter hominum multitūdinem agrīque inopiam trāns Rhēnum colōniās mitterent. Itaque ea, quae fertilissima Ger-

23. [2] *a proof.* [3] *declare.* [4] *settle.* [5] *i.e.* latrocinia. [6] *idleness.* [7] qui . . . profiteantur: *that those who,* etc., *should volunteer.* [8] *rise.* [9] *traitors.* [10] *is refused.*

māniae sunt, loca circum Hercyniam silvam, quam Eratosthenī et quibusdam Graecīs fāmā nōtam esse videō, quam illī Orcyniam appellant, Volcae Tecto- 370
sagēs occupāvērunt atque ibi cōnsēdērunt; quae gēns ad hōc tempus hīs sēdibus sēsē continet summamque[1] habet īnstitiae et bellicae laudis opīniōnem.[2] Nunc, quod in eādem inopiā, egestāte,[3] patientiā quā ante, Germānī permanent, eōdem victū et cultū[4] corporis 375
ūtuntur; Gallīs[5] autem prōvinciārum[6] propinquitās et trānsmarīnārum rērum nōtitia multa ad cōpiam atque ūsūs[7] largītur;[8] paulātim adsuēfactī superārī multīsque victī proeliīs nec sē quidem ipsī[9] cum illīs virtūte comparant. 380

The Hercynian forest.

25. Hūius Hercyniae silvae, quae suprā dēmōnstrāta est, lātitūdō novem diērum iter expedītō[1] patet; nōn enim aliter fīnēs[2] potest, neque mēnsūrās itinerum nōvērunt. Oritur ab Helvētiōrum et Nemetum et Rauracōrum fīnibus rēctāque[3] flūminis Dānuvī regiōne 385
pertinet ad fīnēs Dācōrum et Anartium; hinc[4] sē flectit sinistrōrsus dīversīs[5] ā flūminis regiōnibus multārumque gentium fīnēs propter māgnitūdinem attingit: neque quisquam est hūius[6] Germāniae, quī sē aut adīsse ad initium[7] ēius silvae dīcat, cum diērum iter 390

24. [1] adj. [2] *reputation (for).* [3] *poverty.* [4] *care.* [5] dat. w. largitur. [6] These were on both sides of the Alps. [7] *enjoyment.* [8] *afford.* [9] *i.e.* the Gauls.

25. [1] *to a rapid traveler, i.e.* without baggage. [2] *measured.* [3] recta regione : *parallel* (to). [4] *from this place.* [5] diversis . . . regionibus : *away from the river.* [6] *i.e.* the western part. [7] the eastern edge.

sexāgintā prōcesserit, aut, quō ex locō oriātur, accēperit; multaque in eā genera ferārum [8] nāscī cōnstat, quae reliquīs in locīs vīsa nōn sint; ex quibus, quae māximē differant ā cēterīs et memoriae prōdenda videantur, haec sunt.

The reindeer.

26. Est bōs [1] cervī [2] figūrā, cūius ā mediā fronte inter aurēs ūnum [3] cornū exsistit excelsius magisque dērēctum hīs, quae nōbīs nōta sunt, cornibus; ab ēius summō sīcut palmae rāmīque [4] lātē diffunduntur. Eadem est fēminae marisque nātūra, eadem fōrma māgnitūdōque cornuum.

The elk.

27. Sunt item, quae appellantur alcēs. Hārum est cōnsimilis caprīs [1] figūra et varietās pellium, sed māgnitūdine paulō antecēdunt mutilaeque [2] sunt cornibus et crūra [3] sine nōdīs articulīsque [4] habent; neque quiētis causā prōcumbunt neque, sī quō adflictae [5] cāsū concidērunt, ērigere sēsē ac sublevāre possunt. Hīs sunt arborēs prō cubīlibus; ad eās sē adplicant [6] atque ita paulum modo reclīnātae quiētem capiunt. Quārum ex vēstīgiīs cum est animadversum ā vēnātōribus, quō [7] sē recipere cōnsuērint, omnēs [8] eō locō aut ab rādīcibus subruunt aut accīdunt arborēs, tantum ut summa speciēs ārum

25. [8] *wild animals.*

26. [1] *large animal.* [2] *stag.* [3] An inaccurate description of the reindeer, which has two horns. [4] palmae ramique: *branching horns,* extending like the fingers from the palm of the hand.

27. [1] *goats.* [2] mutilae cornibus: *with short broken horns.* [3] *legs.* [4] *protuberant joints* (hendiadys). [5] *thrown down.* [6] se adplicant: *lean against.* [7] quo, *where.* [8] w. arbores.

stantium relinquātur." Hīc cum sē cōnsuētūdine reclīnāvērunt, īnfīrmās arborēs pondere adflīgunt atque ūnā ipsae concidunt.

The wild ox (urochs).

28. Tertium est genus cōrum, quī ūrī appellantur. Hī sunt magnitūdine paulō īnfrā elephantōs, speciē et colōre et figūrā taurī. Māgna vīs cōrum est et māgna vēlōcitās; neque hominī neque ferae, quam cōnspexērunt, parcunt.[1] Hōs studiōsē foveīs[2] captōs interficiunt. Hōc sē labōre dūrant[3] adulēscentēs atque hōc genere vēnātiōnis exercent, et quī plūrimōs ex hīs interfēcērunt, relātīs in pūblicum cornibus, quae[4] sint testimōniō, māgnam ferunt laudem. Sed adsuēscere[5] ad hominēs et mānsuēfierī[6] nē parvulī quidem excipiī[7] possunt. Amplitūdō cornuum et figūra et speciēs multum ā nostrōrum boum cornibus differt. Haec studiōsē conquīsīta ab labrīs[8] argentō circumclūdunt atque in amplissimīs epulīs[9] prō pōculīs ūtuntur.

THE BATTLE OF ALESIA, AUTUMN OF 52 B.C.
BOOK VII., CHAPS. 77–90.

The last and greatest struggle of the Gauls for independence was made in 52 B.C. Owing to political disturbances at Rome, the chiefs supposed that Caesar would be detained in Italy, and they planned to prevent him from joining his legions now wintering among the Treveri and other northern tribes. Vercingetorix, chief of the Arverni, united the tribes and became the first able leader of Gaul against the Roman armies. Caesar

27. [9] **summa . . . relinquatur**: *they appear to be standing firmly.*

28. [1] *spare.* [2] *pitfalls.* [3] *harden.* [4] purpose cl. [5] *become accustomed.* [6] *be tamed.* [7] *caught.* [8] **ab labris**: *around the rim.* [9] *feasts.*

in haste returned, protected the Province, crossed the snow-covered Cevennes, and by eluding the enemy reached his forces. The first important engagement was at the stronghold of Avaricum, among the Bituriges, which Caesar captured, slaying most of the inhabitants. The Gauls continued the war and in turn defeated the Romans with great loss at Gergovia, capital of the Arverni. After this disaster the Haedui, Caesar's old allies, broke out in open revolt, and were the last to add their strength to the common Gallic cause. Caesar united his troops with the detachment under Labienus, and sent to Germany for cavalry, forming an army of 60,000. Defeated in an attack upon the Romans, Vercingetorix with 80,000 men retired into the city of Alesia (the modern *Alise Ste. Reine*), which became the scene of the final efforts of both sides. The Romans skilfully constructed siege-works upon a novel plan. Vercingetorix sent his cavalry throughout Gaul for help, and a quarter of a million men responded to the call. This army of relief approached, but before arriving at Alesia the food supply of the town was exhausted. The following chapters tell the rest of the story.

The starving garrison in Alesia hold a council. The proposal of Critognatus.

77. At eī, quī Alesiae obsidēbantur, praeteritā diē, quā auxilia suōrum exspectāverant, cōnsūmptō omnī frūmentō, īnsciī quid in Haeduīs gererētur, conciliō coāctō dē exitū suārum fortūnārum cōnsultābant. Ac variīs dictīs sententiīs, quārum pars dēditiōnem, pars, dum vīrēs suppeterent,[1] ēruptiōnem cēnsēbat,[2] nōn praetereunda ōrātiō Critognātī vidētur propter ēius singulārem et nefāriam[3] crūdēlitātem.

Hīc summō in Arvernīs ortus locō[4] et māgnae habitus auctōritātis, "Nihil," inquit "dē eōrum sententiā dic-

77. [1] *hold out.* [2] *favor.* [3] *infamous.* [4] *social position.*

tūrus sum, quī turpissimam servitūtem dēditiōnis nōmine appellant, neque hōs habendōs cīvium locō[5] neque ad concilium adhibendōs cēnseō. Cum[6] hīs mihi rēs est, quī ēruptiōnem probant; quōrum in cōnsiliō omnium vestrum cōnsēnsū prīstinae residēre virtūtis memoria vidētur. Animī est ista[7] mollitia, nōn virtūs, paulisper inopiam ferre nōn posse. Quī sē ultrō mortī offerant, facilius reperiuntur, quam quī dolōrem patienter ferant.

"Atque ego hanc sententiam probārem (tantum apud mē dignitās[8] potest), sī nūllam praeterquam vītae nostrae iacturam[9] fierī vidērem: sed in cōnsiliō capiendō omnem Galliam respiciāmus, quam ad nostrum auxilium concitāvimus. Quid,[10] hominum mīlibus octōgintā ūnō locō interfectīs, propinquīs cōnsanguineīsque nostrīs animī fore exīstimātis, sī paene in ipsīs cadāveribus proeliō dēcertāre cōgentur? Nōlīte hōs vestrō auxiliō exspoliāre quī vestrae salūtis causā suum perīculum neglēxērunt, nec stultitiā[11] ac temeritāte vestrā aut animī imbēcillitāte omnem Galliam prōsternere[12] et perpetuae servitūtī subicere.[13] An quod ad[14] diem nōn vēnērunt, dē cōrum fidē cōnstantiāque dubitātis? Quid ergō? Rōmānōs in illīs ulteriōribus mūnītiōnibus animīne causā[15] cotīdiē exercērī putātis? Sī illōrum[16] nūntiīs cōnfirmārī nōn potestis omnī aditū praesaeptō,[17] hīs[18] ūtiminī testibus[19] adpropinquāre cōrum[16] adventum, cūius reī timōre exterritī diem noctemque in opere versantur.

77. [5] *as.* [6] **cum mihi res est:** *I have to do with.* [7] *that is weakness* (**mollitia**). [8] *authority* (of those advising a sally). [9] *loss.* [10] w. **animi.** [11] *folly.* [12] *overthrow.* [13] *put under.* [14] *on.* [15] *for amusement.* [16] the Gauls. [17] *barricaded.* [18] the Romans. [19] *as witnesses.*

"Quid ergō meī cōnsilī est? Facere, quod nostrī māiōrēs nēquāquam parī bellō Cimbrōrum Teutonumque fēcērunt; quī, in oppida compulsī ac similī inopiā subāctī, eōrum corporibus, quī aetāte ad bellum inūtilēs vidēbantur, vītam tolerāvērunt neque sē hostibus trādidērunt. Cūius reī sī exemplum nōn habērēmus, tamen lībertātis causā īnstituī et posterīs prōdī pulcherrimum iūdicārem. Nam quid[20] illī simile bellō fuit? Dēpopulātā Galliā Cimbrī, māgnāque inlātā calamitāte, fīnibus quidem nostrīs aliquandō excessērunt atque aliās terrās petiērunt; iūra, lēgēs, agrōs, lībertātem nōbīs relīquērunt. Rōmānī vērō quid petunt aliud aut quid volunt, nisi invidiā adductī, quōs[21] fāmā nōbilēs potentēsque bellō cognōvērunt, hōrum in agrīs cīvitātibusque cōnsīdere atque hīs aeternam iniungere servitūtem? Neque enim umquam aliā condiciōne bella gessērunt. Quod sī ea, quae in longinquīs nātiōnibus geruntur, ignōrātis, respicite fīnitimam Galliam, quae in prōvinciam redācta, iūre et lēgibus commūtātīs, secūribus[22] subiecta perpetuā premitur[23] servitūte."

The non-combatants are sent away.

78. Sententiīs dictīs cōnstituunt, ut eī, quī valētūdine[1] aut aetāte inūtilēs sint bellō, oppidō excēdant, atque omnia prius experiantur quam ad Critognātī sententiam dēscendant, illō tamen potius ūtendum cōnsiliō, sī rēs cōgat atque auxilia morentur, quam aut dēditiōnis aut pācis subeundam condiciōnem. Mandubiī,[2] quī eōs oppidō recēperant, cum līberīs atque

77. [20] **quid . . . fuit**: *what resemblance had that war (to this)?* [21] antecedent is **horum**. [22] *authority.* [23] *is burdened.*

78. [1] *ill-health.* [2] the inhabitants of Alesia.

uxōribus exīre cōguntur. Hī, cum ad mūnītiōnēs Rō- 495
mānōrum accessissent, flentēs omnibus precibus ōrā-
bant, ut sē in servitūtem receptōs cibō iuvārent. At
Caesar dispositīs in vāllō custōdiīs recipī prohibēbat.

The large army of relief arrives near the city.

79. Intereā Commius[1] reliquīque ducēs, quibus
summa imperī permissa erat, cum omnibus cōpiīs 500
ad Alesiam perveniunt et, colle exteriōre[2] occupātō, nōn
longius mīlle passibus ā nostrīs mūnītiōnibus cōnsī-
dunt. Posterō diē equitātū ex castrīs ēductō omnem
eam plānitiem, quam in longitūdinem mīlia passuum
tria patēre dēmōnstrāvimus,[3] complent pedestrēsque 505
cōpiās paulum ab eō locō abductās in locīs superiōribus
cōnstituunt. Erat ex oppidō Alesiā dēspectus in cam-
pum. Concurrunt[4] hīs auxiliīs vīsīs: fit grātulātiō
inter cōs atque omnium animī ad laetitiam[5] excitantur.
Itaque prōductīs cōpiīs ante oppidum cōnsistunt, et 510
proximam fossam[6] crātibus[7] integunt atque aggere[8] ex-
plent, sēque ad ēruptiōnem atque omnēs casūs comparant.

Fierce conflict in the valley. Failure of the Gauls.

80. Caesar, omnī exercitū ad utramque partem
mūnītiōnum dispositō, ut, sī ūsus[1] veniat, suum quisque
locum teneat et nōverit, equitātum ex castrīs ēdūcī et 515
proelium committī iubet. Erat ex omnibus[2] castrīs,
quae summum undique iugum tenēbant, dēspectus;

79. [1] leader of the Atrebates. [2] on the west side of the plain of Alesia. [3] in chap. 69. [4] the Gauls in Alesia. [5] *gladness.* [6] This was twenty feet wide. [7] *with hurdles.* [8] *with earth.*

80. [1] *need.* [2] The Romans had eight camps on the heights about the town.

atque omnēs mīlitēs intentī pūgnae prōventum [3] exspectābant. Gallī inter equitēs [4] rārōs [5] sagittāriōs expedītōsque levis armātūrae interīcērant, quī suīs cēdentibus auxiliō succurrerent et nostrōrum equitum impetūs sustinērent. Ab hīs complūrēs dē improvīsō vulnerātī proeliō excēdēbant.

Cum suōs pūgnā superiōrēs esse Gallī cōnfīderent et nostrōs multitūdine premī vidērent, ex omnibus partibus et eī, quī mūnītiōnibus continēbantur, et eī, quī ad auxilium convēnerant, clāmōre et ululātū [6] suōrum animōs cōnfīrmābant. Quod in cōnspectu omnium rēs gerēbātur, neque rēctē aut turpiter factum cēlārī poterat; utrōsque et laudis cupiditās et timor ignōminiae ad virtūtem excitābat. Cum ā merīdiē prope ad sōlis occāsum dubiā victōriā pūgnārētur, Germānī [7] ūnā in parte cōnfertīs turmīs in hostēs impetum fēcērunt eōsque prōpulērunt; quibus in fugam coniectīs sagittāriī circumventī interfectīque sunt. Item ex reliquīs partibus nostrī cēdentēs ūsque ad castra īnsecūtī suī colligendī facultātem nōn dedērunt. At eī, qui Alesiā prōcesserant, maestī [8] prope victōriā dēspērātā sē in oppidum recēpērunt.

The Gauls attack by night.

81. Ūnō diē intermissō Gallī [1] atque hōc spatiō [2] māgnō crātium, scālārum,[3] harpagōnum [4] numerō effectō, mediā nocte silentiō ex castrīs ēgressī ad campestrēs [5]

80. [3] *outcome.* [4] using German tactics, as described in Bk. I., chap. 48. [5] *in scattered groups.* [6] *shrieking.* [7] the German cavalry in Caesar's service. [8] *sad.*

81. [1] the relief army of Gauls. [2] *i.e.* one day. [3] *ladders.* [4] *grappling-hooks.* [5] *on the plain,* west of Alesia.

mūnītiōnēs accēdunt. Subitō clāmōre sublātō, quā significātiōne, quī in oppidō obsidēbantur, dē suō adventū cognōscere possent,[6] crātēs prōicere, fundīs, sagittīs, lapidibus nostrōs dē vāllō prōturbāre[7] reliquaque, quae ad oppūgnātiōnem pertinent, parant administrāre. Eōdem tempore clāmōre exaudītō dat tubā signum suīs Vercingetorīx atque ex oppidō ēdūcit.

Nostrī, ut superiōribus diebus suus cuique erat locus attribūtus, ad mūnītiōnēs accēdunt: fundīs librīlibus[8] sudibusque,[9] quās in opere disposuerant, ac glandibus[10] Gallōs prōterrent. Prōspectu tenebrīs[11] adēmptō multa utrimque vulnera accipiuntur; complūra tormentīs tēla coniciuntur. At M. Antōnius et C. Trebōnius lēgātī, quibus hae partēs ad dēfendendum obvēnerant,[12] quā ex parte[13] nostrōs premī intellēxerant, hīs auxiliō ex ulteriōribus castellīs dēductōs submittēbant.

Second failure of the Gauls.

82. Dum longius ā mūnītiōne aberant Gallī, plūs multitūdine tēlōrum prōficiēbant; posteāquam propius successērunt, aut sē stimulīs[1] inopīnantēs indūcēbant[2] aut in scrobēs[3] dēlātī trānsfodiēbantur[4] aut ex vāllō ac turribus trāiectī[5] pīlīs mūrālibus interībant. Multīs undique vulneribus acceptīs, nūllā mūnītiōne perruptā, cum lūx adpeteret,[6] veritī, nē ab latere apertō ex superiōribus[7] castrīs ēruptiōne circumvenīrentur, sē ad

81. [6] purpose cl. beginning w. **quā**. [7] *repulse.* [8] **fundis librilibus:** *by slinging stones weighing a pound.* [9] *stakes* [10] *bullets.* [11] *by the darkness.* [12] *had fallen to the lot of.* [13] **qua ex parte**: *where.*

82. [1] *pointed stakes,* described in chap. 73. [2] *impaled.* [3] *pits;* cf. chap. 73. [4] *wounded.* [5] *pierced.* [6] *approached.* [7] *on the heights.*

suōs recēpērunt. At interiōrēs,[8] dum ea, quae à Vercingetorīge ad ēruptiōnem praeparāta erant, prōferunt, priōrēs[9] fossās explent; diūtius in hīs rēbus administrandīs morātī prius suōs discessisse cognōvērunt, quam mūnītiōnibus adpropinquārent. Ita rē īnfectā in oppidum revertērunt.

Third attempt of the Gauls to relieve the city.

83. Bis[1] māgnō cum dētrīmentō repulsī Gallī, quid agant, cōnsulunt: locōrum perītōs[2] adhibent; ex hīs superiōrum castrōrum sitūs mūnītiōnēsque cognōscunt. Erat ā septentriōnibus collis,[3] quem propter māgnitūdinem circuitūs opere circumplectī[4] nōn potuerant nostrī; necessāriōque paene inīquō locō et lēniter dēclīvī castra fēcerant. Haec C. Antistius Rēgīnus et C. Canīnius Rebilus lēgātī cum duābus legiōnibus obtinēbant.

Cognitīs per explōrātōrēs regiōnibus ducēs hostium sexāgintā mīlia ex omnī numerō dēligunt eārum cīvitātum, quae māximam virtūtis opīniōnem habēbant; quid quōque pactō[5] agī placeat, occultē inter sē cōnstituunt; adeundī tempus dēfīniunt, cum merīdiēs esse videātur. Hīs cōpiīs Vercassivellaunum Arvernum, ūnum ex quattuor ducibus, propinquum Vercingetorīgis, praficiunt. Ille ex castrīs prīmā vigiliā ēgressus, prope cōnfectō sub[6] lūcem itinere, post montem[3] sē occultāvit mīlitēsque ex nocturnō labōre sēsē reficere iussit. Cum

82. [8] *i.e.* the Gauls in the city. [9] the trenches in front of the city.

83. [1] *twice.* [2] *familiar with.* [3] now Mont Réa. [4] *inclose.* **quoque pacto**: *and in what manner.* [6] *before.*

iam merīdiēs adpropinquāre vidērētur, ad ea castra, quae suprā[7] dēmōnstrāvimus, contendit; eōdemque tempore equitātus ad campestrēs mūnītiōnēs accēdere et reliquae cōpiae prō castrīs sēsē ostendere coepērunt.

Vercingetorix coöperates. The Romans' difficulty.

84. Vercingetorīx ex arce[1] Alesiae suōs cōnspicātus ex oppidō ēgreditur; crātēs,[2] longuriōs, mūrālēs falcēs reliquaque, quae ēruptionis causā parāverat, prōfert. Pūgnātur ūnō tempore omnibus locīs atque omnia temptantur; quae minimē vīsa pars fīrma est, hūc concurritur. Rōmānōrum manus tantīs mūnītiōnibus distinētur nec facile plūribus locīs occurrit.[3] Multum ad terrendōs nostrōs valet[4] clāmor, quī post tergum pūgnantibus exsistit, quod suum perīculum in alienā vident virtūte cōnstāre; omnia enim plērumque, quae absunt, vehementius hominum mentēs perturbant.

Desperate fighting everywhere.

85. Caesar idōneum locum nactus, quid quāque in parte gerātur, cognoscit; labōrantibus subsidium submittit. Utrīsque ad animum occurrit[1] ūnum esse illud tempus, quō māximē contendī conveniat: Gallī, nisi perfrēgerint mūnītiōnēs, dē omnī salūte dēspērant; Rōmānī, sī rem[2] obtinuerint, fīnem labōrum omnium exspectant. Māximē ad superiōrēs mūnītiōnēs labōrātur, quō Vercassivellaunum missum dēmōnstrāvimus.[3]

83. [7] in line 579.

84. [1] *fortress.* [2] *fascines* (to fill or cover trenches). [3] sc. hostibus. [4] *tend.*

85. [1] *occurs.* [2] *the "day."* [3] in chap. 83.

Iniquum[4] locī ad dēclīvitātem fastīgium māgnum habet mōmentum. Aliī tēla coniciunt, aliī testūdine factā subeunt; dēfatīgātīs in vicem integrī succēdunt. Agger[5] ab ūniversīs in[6] mūnītiōnem coniectus et ascēnsum dat Gallīs, et ea,[7] quae in terrā occultāverant Rōmānī, contegit; nec iam arma nostrīs nec vīrēs suppetunt.

Caesar encourages his men.

86. Hīs rēbus cognitīs Caesar Labiēnum[1] cum cohortibus sex subsidiō labōrantibus mittit; imperat, sī sustinēre nōn possit, dēductīs cohortibus ēruptiōne pūgnet; id nisi necessāriō nē faciat. Ipse adit reliquōs; cohortātur, nē labōrī succumbant; omnium superiōrum dīmicātiōnum frūctum in eō diē atque hōrā docet cōnsistere. Interiōrēs,[2] dēspērātīs campestribus locīs propter māgnitūdinem mūnītiōnum, loca praerupta[3] ascēnsū temptant; hūc ea, quae parāverant, cōnferunt. Multitūdine tēlōrum ex turribus prōpūgnantēs[4] dēturbant, aggere et crātibus fossās explent, falcibus vāllum ac lōrīcam[5] rescindunt.

Caesar's active part in the battle.

87. Mittit prīmum Brūtum adulēscentem cum cohortibus Caesar, post cum aliīs C. Fabium lēgātum; postrēmō ipse, cum vehementius pūgnārētur, integrōs subsidiō addūcit. Restitūtō proeliō ac repulsīs hostibus

85. [4] **Iniquum . . . fastigium**: *the unfavorable downward slope of the ground.* [5] *earth* (and stones, etc.). [6] *upon.* [7] *i.e.* the **cippi, lilia**, and **stimuli** described in chap. 73.

86. [1] He was on the heights of Bussy. [2] cf. l. 567. [3] *steep.* [4] *defenders* (Roman). [5] *breastworks.*

eō, quō Labiēnum mīserat, contendit; cohortēs quattuor ex proximō castellō dēdūcit, equitum partem sē sequī, partem circumīre exteriōrēs mūnītiōnēs et ā tergō hostēs adorīrī iubet. Labiēnus, postquam neque aggerēs neque fossae[1] vim hostium sustinēre poterant, coāctīs undecim cohortibus, quās ex proximīs praesidiīs dēductās fors obtulit, Caesarem per nūntiōs facit certiōrem, quid faciendum exīstimet. Accelerat Caesar, ut proeliō intersit.

Defeat of the Gauls.

88. Eius adventū ex colōre[1] vestītūs cognitō, quō īnsīgnī[2] in proeliīs ūtī cōnsuēverat, turmīsque equitum et cohortibus vīsīs, quās sē sequī iusserat, ut dē locīs superiōribus haec dēclīvia[3] et dēvexa cernēbantur, hostēs proelium committunt. Utrimque clāmōre sublātō excipit[4] rursus ex vāllō atque omnibus mūnītiōnibus clāmor. Nostrī, ēmissīs pīlīs, gladīīs rem gerunt.

Repente post tergum equitātus cernitur; cohortēs aliae adpropinquant. Hostēs terga vertunt; fugientibus equitēs occurrunt. Fit māgna caedēs. Sedulius, dux et prīnceps Lemovīcum, occīditur; Vercassivellaunus Arvernus vīvus in fugā comprehenditur; sīgna mīlitāria septuāgintā quattuor ad Caesarem referuntur; paucī ex tantō numerō sē incolumēs in castra recipiunt. Cōnspicātī ex oppidō caedem et fugam suōrum dēspērātā salūte cōpiās ā mūnītiōnibus redūcunt. Fit prō-

87. [1] nom. case.

88. [1] The purple or scarlet of the general's cloak. [2] *as a distinction.* [3] **declivia et devexa**: *steep declivities.* [4] *follows.*

tinus hāc rē audītā ex castrīs Gallōrum fuga. Quod [5] nisi crēbrīs subsidiīs [6] ac tōtīus diēī labōre mīlitēs essent dēfessī, omnēs hostium cōpiae dēlērī potuissent. Dē mediā nocte missus equitātus novissimum agmen cōnsequitur: māgnus numerus capitur atque interficitur, reliquī ex fugā in cīvitātēs discēdunt.

Vercingetorix surrenders.

89. Posterō diē Vercingetorīx conciliō convocātō id bellum sē suscēpisse nōn suārum necessitātum, sed commūnis lībertātis causā dēmōnstrat, et [1] quoniam sit fortūnae cēdendum, ad utramque rem [2] sē illīs offerre, seu morte suā Rōmānīs satisfacere seu vīvum trādere velint. Mittuntur dē hīs rēbus ad Caesarem lēgātī. Iubet arma trādī, prīncipēs prōdūcī. Ipse in mūnītiōne prō castrīs cōnsīdit; eō ducēs prōdūcuntur. Vercingetorīx deditur, arma prōiciuntur. Reservātīs Haeduīs atque Arvernīs, sī [3] per eōs cīvitātēs recuperāre posset, ex reliquīs captīvīs tōtī exercituī capita singula [4] praedae nōmine distribuit.

The army divided for the winter. Thanksgiving at Rome.

90. Hīs rēbus cōnfectīs in Haeduōs proficīscitur; cīvitātem recipit.[1] Eō lēgātī ab Arvernīs missī, quae imperāret, sē factūrōs pollicentur. Imperat māgnum numerum obsidum. Legiōnēs in hīberna mittit. Captīvōrum circiter vīgintī mīlia Haeduīs Arvernīsque reddit.

88. [5] *and.* [6] *services of relief.*

89. [1] *and (says).* [2] **utramque rem**: *either fate.* [3] *to see whether.* [4] **capita singula**: *one captive to each (soldier).*

90. [1] *recovers* (the loyalty of).

T. Labiēnum cum duābus legiōnibus et equitātū in Sēquanōs proficīscī iubet; huic M. Semprōnium Rutilum attribuit. C. Fabium lēgātum et L. Minucium Basilum cum legiōnibus duābus in Rēmīs conlocat, nē quam ā fīnitimīs Bellovacīs calamitātem accipiant. C. Antistium Rēgīnum in Ambivaretōs, T. Sextium in Bitumīgēs, C. Canīnium Rebilum in Rutēnōs cum singulīs legiōnibus mittit. Q. Tullium Cicerōnem et P. Sulpicium Cavilōnī[2] et Matiscōne[3] in Haeduīs ad Ararim reī frūmentāriae causā conlocat. Ipse Bibracte hiemāre cōnstituit.

Hīs rēbus ex Caesaris litterīs cognitīs Rōmae diērum vīgintī supplicātiō redditur.

"Vercingetorix, who was the chief author of all the war, putting on his best armor, came out of the gate (of Alesia), and rode round Caesar as he sat (on the tribunal), then dismounted from his horse, threw off his armor, and remained sitting quietly at Caesar's feet until he was led away to be reserved for the triumph." — PLUTARCH.

This heroic chieftain, "who embodied all the finest qualities of his race, and added to them a steadiness of purpose and a power of organization rare among the Gallic peoples," was kept in chains for six years; was then exhibited in Caesar's triumphal procession at Rome, and put to death in the dungeon at the foot of the Capitol. Nineteen centuries later Napoleon III., whose excavations revealed much to corroborate Caesar's account of the siege of Alesia, erected on its site a colossal statue of Vercingetorix in honor of his patriotic countryman.

"The siege of Alesia exhibits the greatest art in Caesar and equal courage and endurance on the part of his troops. The

90. [2] locative. [3] loc. abl.

inaction of the bulk of the barbarians in the last battle had been his salvation, as well as led to the loss of Gallic independence. Though there were, thereafter, isolated cases of insurrection, the country never again rose *en masse*. In a year Gaul was practically a Roman province. Her spirit of resistance had been finally crushed." — COLONEL DODGE.

Copyright, 1899, by Braun, Clement and Company

Lionel Royer.

THE SURRENDER OF VERCINGETORIX TO CAESAR

SELECTIONS FOR SIGHT READING

CAESAR'S CIVIL WAR, BOOK III.
CHAPTERS 84–99; 102–107

SUMMARY OF THE CIVIL WAR BETWEEN CAESAR AND POMPEY

The triumvirate formed (60 B.C.) by Caesar, Pompey, and Crassus was dissolved by the death of Crassus (53 B.C.). Between the two surviving generals distrust took the place of former friendship. Having allied himself with the senatorial party, Pompey was made "consul without a colleague," and was given the province of Spain for five more years.

The time had come for Caesar to claim the consulship after his absence in Gaul (58–49 B.C.). But to do so he must give up his army, by command of the senate, and appear in Rome as a private citizen. Knowing that without the army he would be helpless against his personal enemies, he refused to comply with the condition. With a faithful legion he crossed the Rubicon, the river dividing his province from Italy, and by this act began war between himself and the senatorial party, with Pompey as leader. Alarmed by this sudden move, Pompey withdrew to Brundisium, thence to Greece, leaving Caesar master of Italy. Before starting in pursuit, Caesar proceeded to Spain and there defeated Pompey's lieutenants. At Rome he was appointed dictator. Crossing the Adriatic early in 48 B.C., he met the forces of Pompey. In the first conflict at Dyrrachium, on the west coast of Macedonia, Caesar was defeated. Retiring eastward to Thessaly, he took a position at Pharsálus, where, on August 9, with about 20,000 men he won a decisive victory over Pompey's army of more than 40,000. Pompey fled to Egypt, and there was treacherously assassinated. Short campaigns in Asia Minor, northern Africa, and Spain established Caesar's supremacy (45 B.C.).

Caesar's own account of this war, *Commentarii de Bello Civili*, is divided into three books. Bk. I.: the beginning of the war, the expulsion of Pompey from Italy and the hostilities in Spain. Bk. II.: the siege of Massilia and the unsuccessful campaign of Curio, Caesar's lieutenant, in Africa. Bk. III.: Caesar in Greece, the battles of Dyrrachium and Pharsalus and the beginning of war at Alexandria. The narrative ends abruptly with chapter 112 of Bk. III., the author probably intending to add the events of the years 47–45 B.C.

THE BATTLE OF PHARSALUS, AUG. 9, 48 B.C.

Cavalry skirmishes.

84. Rē frūmentāriā praeparātā cōnfīrmātīsque mīlitibus et satis longō spatiō temporis ā Dyrrachīnīs [1] procliīs intermissō, quō [2] satis perspectum habēre mīlitum animum vidērētur, temptandum Caesar exīstimāvit, quidnam Pompēius prōpositī [3] aut voluntātis ad dīmicandum habēret. Itaque ex castrīs exercitum ēdūxit aciemque īnstrūxit, prīmō suīs [4] locīs paulōque ā castrīs Pompēī longius, continentibus [5] vērō diēbus ut prōgrederētur ā castrīs suīs collibusque Pompēiānīs [6] aciem subiceret.[7] Quae rēs in diēs cōnfīrmātiōrem [8] ēius exercitum efficiēbat. Superius tamen īnstitūtum [9] in equitibus, quod dēmōnstrāvimus, servābat, ut, quoniam numerō multīs partibus [10] esset īnferior, adulēscentēs atque expedītōs ex antesignānīs [11] ēlēctōs, mūtātīs [12] ad perniciātātem [13] armīs, inter equitēs procliārī iubēret,

84. [1] *of Dyrrachium*, a coast town of Macedonia. [2] **quō vidērētur**, *for him to think.* [3] *plan.* [4] *favorable.* [5] *successive.* [6] *occupied by Pompey.* [7] *bring up to.* [8] *more confident.* [9] acc. *practice.* [10] **multīs partibus**, *far.* [11] *skirmishers.* [12] *having changed.* [13] *for the sake of speed.*

quī cotīdiānā cōnsuētūdine ūsum quoque ēius generis proeliōrum percēperant. Hīs erat rēbus effectum, ut equitum mīlle etiam apertīōribus locīs VII mīlium Pompēiānōrum impetum, cum esset ūsus, sustinēre audērent neque mūltopere cōrum multitūdine terrērentur. Itaque etiam per cōs diēs proelium secundum equestre fēcit atque ūnum Allobrogem ex duōbus, quōs perfūgisse ad Pompēium suprā docuimus, cum quibusdam interfēcit.

An unexpected movement of Pompey's army.

85. Pompēius, quī castra in colle habēbat, ad īmāmās rādīcēs montis aciem īnstruēbat, semper, ut vidēbātur, exspectāns, sī inīquīs locīs Caesar sē subiceret.[1] Ille nūllā ratiōne ad pūgnam ēlicī[2] posse Pompēium exīstimāns hanc sibi commodissimam bellī ratiōnem iūdicāvit, ut castra ex eō locō movēret semperque esset in itineribus, haec spectāns, ut movendīs castrīs plūribusque adeundīs locīs commodiōre frūmentātiōne[3] ūterētur, simulque in itinere ut aliquam occāsiōnem dīmicandī nancīscerētur et īnsolitum[4] ad labōrem Pompēī exercitum cotīdiānīs itineribus dēfatīgāret. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus, sīgnō iam profectiōnis datō tabernāculīsque dētēnsīs,[5] animadversum est paulō ante iter extrā[6] cotīdiānam cōnsuētūdinem longius ā vāllō esse aciem Pompēī prōgressam, ut nōn inīquō[7] locō posse dīmicārī vidērētur. Tum Caesar apud suōs, cum[8] iam esset agmen in portīs, "Differendum[9] est," inquit, "iter in praesentiā nōbīs

85. [1] **sē subiceret**, *would advance to.* [2] *to be enticed.* [3] *foraging.* [4] *unaccustomed.* [5] *having been struck.* [6] *contrary to.* [7] **nōn inīquō = aequō.** [8] *although.* [9] *postponed.*

et dē proeliō cōgitandum, sīcut semper dēpoposcimus. Animō sīmus[10] ad dīmicandum parātī; nōn facile occāsiōnem posteā reperiēmus"; cōnfestimque expedītās cōpiās ēdūcit.

Pompey addresses his men.

86. Pompēius quoque, ut posteā cognitum est, suōrum omnium hortātū[1] statuerat proeliō dēcertāre. Atque in cōnsiliō superiōris diēī dīxerat, priusquam concurrerent aciēs, fore utī exercitus Caesaris pellerētur. Id cum essent plērīque admīrātī, "Sciō mē," inquit, "paene incrēdibilem rem pollicērī; sed ratiōnem cōnsilī meī accipite, quō fīrmiōre animō in proelium prōdeātis. Persuāsī equitibus nostrīs, idque mihi factūrōs cōnfīrmāvērunt, ut, cum propius esset accessum,[2] dextrum Caesaris cornū ab latere apertō adgrederentur, et circumventā ab tergō aciē prius perturbātum exercitum pellerent, quam ā nōbīs tēlum in hostem iacerētur. Ita sine perīculō legiōnum et paene sine vulnere bellum cōnficiēmus. Id autem difficile nōn est, cum tantum equitātū valeāmus." Simul dēnūntiāvit, ut essent[3] animō parātī in posterum diem et, cum iam fieret dīmicandī potestās, ut[4] saepe rogitāvissent,[5] nē suam neu[6] reliquōrum opīniōnem fallerent.

The speech and oath of Labienus.

87. Hunc Labiēnus[1] excēpit[2] et, cum[3] Caesaris cōpiās dēspiceret, Pompēī cōnsilium summīs laudibus

85. [10] *let us be.*

86. [1] *urging.* [2] impers., *they should approach.* [3] *should be.* [4] *as.* [5] *they had asked for.* [6] *nor.*

87. [1] Caesar's chief lieutenant in Gaul had deserted to Pompey's side. [2] *followed.* [3] *while.*

efferret,[4] "Nōlī," inquit, "exīstimāre, Pompēī,[5] hunc esse exercitum, quī Galliam Germāniamque dēvīcerit. Omnibus interīnī proeliīs, neque temerē incognitam rem prōnūntiō. Perexigua[6] pars illīus exercitūs superest; māgna pars dēperiit, quod accidere tot proeliīs fuit necesse, multōs autumnī[7] pestilentia in Italiā cōnsūmpsit, multī domum discessērunt, multī sunt relictī in continentī. An nōn audīstis, ex iīs quī per causam valētūdinis remānsērunt, cohortēs esse Brundisī[8] factās? Hae cōpiae, quās videtis, ex dilectibus[9] hōrum annōrum[10] in citeriōre Galliā sunt refectae[11] et plērīque sunt ex colōniis Trānspadānīs.[12] Ac tamen, quod fuit rōboris, duōbus proeliīs Dyrrachīnīs interiit." Haec cum dīxisset, iūrāvit, sē nisi victōrem in castra nōn reversūrum, reliquōsque, ut idem facerent, hortātus est. Hunc sē laudāns Pompēius idem iūrāvit; nec vērō ex reliquīs fuit quisquam, quī iūrāre dubitāret. Haec cum ācta essent in cōnsiliō, māgnā spē et laetitiā omnium discessum est; ac iam animō victōriam praecipiēbant,[13] quod dē rē tantā et ā tam perītō imperātōre nihil frūstrā cōnfīrmārī vidēbātur.

The arrangement of Pompey's army.

88. Caesar, cum Pompēī castrīs adpropinquāsset, ad hunc modum aciem ēius īnstructam animadvertit. Erant in sinistrō cornū legiōnēs duae trāditae[1] ā Caesare

87. [4] (*and*) *extolled.* [5] vocative. [6] *very small.* [7] *of autumn.* [8] *at Brindisi* (loc. of **Brindisium**). [9] *the levies.* [10] *i.e.* the years 49, 48, B.C. [11] *recruited.* [12] *beyond the Po.* [13] *anticipated.*

88. [1] In 50 B.C. the senate had required Caesar to give up one legion for the Parthian war. At the same time Caesar returned to Pompey a legion previously borrowed from him

initiō dissēnsiōnis ex senātūs cōnsultō, quārum ūna prīma, altera tertia appellābātur. In eō locō ipse erat Pompēius. Mediam aciem Scīpiō cum legiōnibus Syriacīs [2] tenēbat. Ciliciēnsis [3] legiō coniūncta cum cohortibus Hispānīs, quās trāductās ab Afrāniō [4] docuimus, in dextrō cornū erant conlocātae. Hās fīrmissimās sē habēre [5] Pompēius exīstimābat. Reliquās inter aciem mediam cornuaque interiēcerat numerumque cohortium CX explēverat. Haec erant numerō mīlia XLV. Evocātōrum circiter duo mīlia, quae ex beneficiāriīs [6] superiōrum exercituum ad eum convēnerant, tōtā aciē dispertierat.[7] Reliquās cohortēs VII in castrīs propinquīsque castellīs praesidiō disposuerat. Dextrum cornū ēius rīvus [8] quīdam impedītīs [9] rīpīs mūniēbat; quam ob causam cūnctum equitātum, sagittāriōs funditōrēsque omnēs sinistrō cornū adiēcerat.

The arrangement of Caesar's army.

89. Caesar superius īnstitūtum servāns decimam legiōnem in dextrō cornū, nōnam in sinistrō conlocāverat, tametsī erat Dyrrachīnīs proeliīs vehementer attenuāta,[1] et huic sīc adiūnxerat octāvam, ut paene ūnam ex duābus efficeret, atque alteram alterī praesidiō esse iusserat. Cohortēs in aciē LXXX cōnstitūtās habēbat, quārum summa erat mīlium XXII; cohortēs VII castrīs praesidiō relīquerat. Sinistrō cornū Antōnium, dextrō P. Sullam, mediā aciē Cn. Domitium praeposuerat;

88. [2] *Syrian.* [3] *Cilician;* Caesar means the Roman soldiers stationed in Syria and Cilicia. [4] *Afranius,* one of Pompey's generals. [5] *that these were the strongest he had.* [6] *favorites* (of the commander). [7] *had distributed.* [8] *stream,* nom. [9] *obstructed.*

89. [1] *reduced.* [2] *depended* (on)

ipse contrā Pompēium cōnstitit. Simul iīs rēbus ani- 115
madversīs, quās dēmōnstrāvimus, timēns, nē ā multi-
tūdine equitum dextrum cornū circumvenīrētur, celeriter
ex tertiā aciē sagittāriōs cohortēs dētrāxit atque ex hīs
quārtam īnstituit equitātuīque opposuit, et quid fierī
vellet ostendit, nōnnūllōsque ēius dīcī victōriam in eārum 120
cohortium virtūte cōnstāre.[2] Simul tertiae aciēī quārtae-
que imperāvit, nē inūssū suō concurreret: sē, cum id
fierī vellet, vēxillō sīgnum datūrum.

Caesar gives the signal for battle.

90. Exercitum cum mīlitārī mōre ad pūgnam cohor- 125
tārētur simulque in eum perpetuī temporis officia[1] praedi-
cāret, imperātīs[2] commūnicāvit testibus sē mīlitibus
ūtī posse, quandō studiō pācem petīsset; quae per
Vatīnium[3] in colloquiīs, quae per Aulum Clōdium[4]
cum Scīpiōne[5] ēgisset, quibus modīs ad Ōricum[6] cum 130
Libōne[7] dē mittendīs lēgātīs contendisset. Neque sē
unquam abūtī[8] mīlitum sanguine[9] neque rem pūblicam
alterutrō[10] exercitū prīvāre[11] voluisse. Hāc habitā
ōrātiōne exposcentibus[12] mīlitibus et studiō pūgnae
ardentibus[13] tubā sīgnum dedit.

A centurion's promise.

91. Erat Crāstinus ēvocātus in exercitū Caesaris, quī 135
superiōre annō apud eum prīmum pīlum[1] in legiōne

90. [1] **sua . . . officia,** *his constant services to it.* [2] *especially.* [3] *Vatinius,* a lieutenant of Caesar. [4] *Clodius,* a friend of Caesar. [5] *Scipio,* a general with Pompey. [6] *Oricum,* a coast town of Epirus. [7] *Libo,* commander in Pompey's fleet. [8] *to waste* (**ab** + **ūtor**). [9] *blood,* abl. w. **abūtī.** [10] *either,* abl. [11] *to deprive* (of). [12] *demanding.* [13] *burning.*

91. [1] formerly the head-centurion. [2] *maniple.*

decimā dūxerat, vir singulārī virtūte. Hīc sīgnō datō, "Sequiminī[3] mē," inquit, "manipulārēs[4] meī quī fuistis, et vestrō imperātōrī, quam īnstituistis, operam[5] date. Unum hōc proelium superest; quō cōnfectō et ille suam dīgnitātem et nōs nostram lībertātem recuperābimus." Simul respiciēns[6] Caesarem, "Faciam," inquit, "hodiē,[7] imperātor, ut aut vīvō mihi aut mortuō grātiās agās." Haec cum dīxisset, prīmus ex dextrō cornū prōcucurrit, atque cum laetī[8] mīlitēs circiter CXX voluntāriī[9] ēiusdem centuriae sunt prōsecūtī.

Pompey's army awaits the enemy's charge.

92. Inter duās aciēs tantum erat relictum spatī, ut satis esset ad concursum utrīusque exercitūs. Sed Pompēius suīs praedīxerat,[1] ut Caesaris impetum excīperent neque sē locō movērent aciemque ēius distrahī[2] paterentur; idque admonitū[3] C. Triārī[4] fēcisse dīcēbātur, ut prīmus incursus vīsque mīlitum īnfringerētur[5] aciēsque distenderētur,[6] atque in suīs ōrdinibus dispositī dispersōs adorīrentur; leviusque[7] cāsūra[8] pīla spērābat in locō retentīs mīlitibus, quam sī ipsī immissīs pīlīs occurrissent; simul fore[9] ut duplicātō cursū Caesaris mīlitēs exanimārentur[10] et lassitūdine cōnficerentur. Quod nōbīs quidem nūllā ratiōne factum ā Pompēiō vidētur, propterea quod est quaedam animī incitātiō[11] atque alacritās nātūrāliter inūita omnibus, quae studiō

91. [3] imperative. [4] *comrades.* [5] *service.* [6] *looking at.* [7] *to-day.* [8] *gladly.* [9] *volunteers.*

92. [1] *had directed.* [2] *to be broken.* [3] *upon the advice.* [4] *Triarius,* one of Pompey's officers. [5] *might be broken.* [6] *might be separated.* [7] *more lightly.* [8] sc. **esse**. [9] *the result would be.* [10] *would be exhausted.* [11] *excitement,* nom.

pūgnae incenditur. Hanc nōn reprimere, sed augēre imperātōrēs dēbent: neque frūstrā antīquitus īnstitūtum est ut sīgna undique concinerent[12] clāmōremque ūniversī tollerent: quibus rēbus et hostēs terrērī et suōs incitārī exīstimāvērunt.

The battle is joined.

93. Sed nostrī mīlitēs datō sīgnō cum īnfēstīs[1] pīlīs prōcucurrissent atque animadvertissent, nōn concurrī ā Pompēiānīs,[2] ūsū perītī ac superiōribus pūgnīs exercitātī suā sponte cursum repressērunt et ad medium ferē spatium cōnstitērunt, nē cōnfūsīs vīribus adpropinquārent: parvōque intermissō temporis spatiō ac rūrsus renovātō cursū pīla mīsērunt celeriterque, ut erat praeceptum ā Caesare, gladiōs strīnxērunt.[3] Neque vērō Pompēiānī huic rei dēfuērunt. Nam et pīla missa excēpērunt et impetum legiōnum tulērunt et ōrdinēs suōs cōnservārunt[4] pīlīsque missīs ad gladiōs rediērunt. Eōdem tempore equitēs ab sinistrō Pompēī cornū, ut erat imperātum, ūniversī prōcucurrērunt, omnisque multitūdō sagittāriōrum sē profūdit.[5] Quōrum impetum noster equitātus nōn tulit, sed paulātim locō mōtus cessit, equitesque Pompēī hōc ācrius īnstāre et sē turmātim[6] explicāre[7] aciemque nostram ā latere apertō circumīre coepērunt. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, quārtae aciēī, quam īnstituerat VIII cohortium numerō, dedit sīgnum. Illae celeriter prōcucurrērunt īnfēstīsque sīgnīs[8] tantā vī in Pompēī equitēs impetum fēcērunt, ut

92. [12] *should sound together.*

93. [1] *threatening.* [2] *the followers of Pompey.* [3] *drew.* [4] *preserved.* [5] *rushed forth.* [6] *by squadrons.* [7] *to spread out, deploy.* [8] **īnfēstīs sīgnīs**, *in battle array.*

eōrum nēmō cōnsisteret, omnēsque conversī nōn sōlum locō cēderent, sed prōtinus incitātī fugā montēs altissimōs peterent. Quibus submōtīs omnēs sagittāriī funditōrēsque dēstitūtī suō praesidiō interfectī sunt. Eōdem impetū cohortēs sinistrum cornū, pūgnantibus etiam tum ac resistentibus in aciē Pompēiānīs, circumiērunt eōsque ā tergō sunt adortae.

The generalship of the opposing leaders.

94. Eōdem tempore tertiam aciem Caesar, quae quiēta fuerat et sē ad id tempus locō tenuerat, prōcurrere iussit. Ita cum recentēs atque integrī dēfessīs successissent, aliī autem ā tergō adorīrentur, sustinēre Pompēiānī nōn potuērunt atque ūniversī terga vertērunt. Neque vērō Caesarem fefellit, quīn ab iīs cohortibus, quae contrā equitātum in quārta aciē conlocātae essent, initium victōriae orīrētur, ut ipse in cohortandīs mīlitibus prōnūntiāverat. Ab hīs enim prīmum equitātus est pulsus, ab īsdem factae [1] caedēs sagittāriōrum ac funditōrum, ab īsdem aciēs Pompēiāna ā sinistrā parte circumita [2] atque initium fugae factum. Sed Pompēius, ut equitātum suum pulsum vīdit atque eam partem, cui māximē cōnfīdēbat, perterritam animadvertit, aliīs quoque diffīsus [3] aciē excessit prōtinusque sē in castra equō contulit et iīs centuriōnibus, quōs in statiōne ad praetōriam portam posuerat, clārē,[4] ut mīlitēs exaudīrent, "Tuēminī," inquit, "castra et dēfendite dīligenter, sī quid dūrius acciderit. Ego reliquās portās circumeō et castrōrum praesidia cōnfīrmō." Haec cum dīxisset, sē

94. [1] sc. **sunt**. [2] sc. **est**, *was surrounded*. [3] *distrusting*, w. dative. [4] *clearly*.

in praetōrium [5] contulit, summae reī [6] diffīdēns [7] et tamen ēventum exspectāns.

Pompey's forces are routed.

95. Caesar Pompēiānīs ex fugā intrā vāllum [1] compulsīs nūllam spatium perterritīs dare oportēre exīstimāns mīlitēs cohortātus est, ut beneficiō fortūnae ūterentur castraque oppūgnārent. Quī, etsī māgnō aestū [2] (nam ad merīdiem rēs erat perducta), tamen ad omnem labōrem animō parātī imperiō pāruērunt. Castra ā cohortibus, quae ibi praesidiō erant relictae, industriē [3] dēfendēbantur, multō etiam ācriŭs ā Thrācibus [4] barbarīsque auxiliīs. Nam, quī ex aciē refūgerant mīlitēs, et animō perterritī et lassitūdine cōnfectī, dīmissīs [5] plērīque armīs sīgnīsque mīlitāribus magis dē relictā fugā quam dē castrōrum dēfēnsiōne cōgitābant. Neque vērō diūtius, quī in vāllō cōnstiterant, multitūdinem tēlōrum sustinēre potuērunt, sed cōnfectī vulneribus locum relīquērunt, prōtinusque omnēs ducibus ūnīs centuriōnibus tribūnīsque mīlitum in altissimōs montēs, quī ad castra pertinēbant, cōnfūgērunt.

The luxury of Pompey's camp. His escape.

96. In castrīs Pompēī vidēre licuit trichilās [1] strūctās,[2] māgnum argentī pondus expositum, recentibus caespitibus tabernācula cōnstrāta. Lūcī etiam Lentulī [3] et nōn

94. [5] *the general's tent.* [6] *the situation.* [7] *despairing of.*

95. [1] *i.e.* of their own camp. [2] abl. abs., *although the heat was intense.* [3] *diligently.* [4] *the Thracians.* [5] *lost.*

96. [1] *summer-houses, bowers,* acc. [2] *built.* [3] *Lentulus,* an ex-consul, a follower of Pompey.

nūllōrum tabernācula prōtēcta hederā,[4] multaque praeterea, quae nimiam[5] lūxuriam et victōriae fīdūciam[6] dēsīgnārent; ut facile exīstimārī posset, nihil eōs dē ēventū ēius diēī timuisse, quī nōn necessāriās conquīrerent voluptātēs. At hī miserrimō ac patientissimō exercituī Caesaris lūxuriam obiciēbant,[7] cui semper omnia ad necessārium ūsum dēfuissent. Pompēius, cum iam intrā vāllum nostrī versārentur, equum nactus dētractīs īnsīgnibus imperātoriīs[8] decumānā portā sē ex castrīs ēiēcit prōtinusque equō citātō[9] Lārīsam[10] contendit. Neque ibi cōnstitit, sed eādem celeritāte paucōs suōs ex fugā nactus, nocturnō itinere nōn intermissō, comitātū[11] equitum XXX ad mare pervēnit nāvemque frūmentāriam cōnscendit, saepe, ut dīcēbātur, querēns, tantum sē opīniōnem fefellisse, ut, ā quō genere hominum victōriam spērāsset, ab eō initiō fugae factō paene prōditus vidērētur.

Caesar pursues.

97. Caesar castrīs potītus ā mīlitibus contendit,[1] nē in praedā occupātī reliquī[2] negōtī gerendī facultātem dīmitterent. Quā rē impetrātā montem opere circummūnīre īnstituit. Pompēiānī, quod is mōns erat sine aquā, diffīsī[3] eī locō, relictō monte ūniversī[4] iugīs ēius[5] Lārīsam versus[6] sē recipere coepērunt. Quā rē animadversā Caesar cōpiās suās dīvīsit partemque legiōnum in castrīs Pompēī remanēre iussit, partem in sua castra remīsit, IIII sēcum legiōnēs dūxit commodiōreque itinere

96. [4] *with ivy.* [5] *excessive.* [6] *confidence.* [7] *used to taunt with* (cast in the teeth). [8] *of a general.* [9] *at full speed.* [10] *Larissa,* in Thessaly. [11] *with an escort.*

97. [1] *demanded.* [2] agrees w. **negōtī**. [3] *distrusting.* [4] nom. [5] **iugīs ēius**, *along its ridges.* [6] this preposition follows its noun.

Pompēiānīs occurrere coepit et prōgressus mīlia passuum vi aciem īnstrūxit. Quā rē animadversā Pompēiānī in quōdam monte cōnstitērunt. Hunc montem flūmen subluēbat.[7] Caesar mīlitēs cohortātus, etsī tōtīus diēī continentī labore erant cōnfectī noxque iam suberat, tamen mūnītiōne flūmen ā monte sēclūsit,[8] nē noctū aquārī[9] Pompēiānī possent. Quō perfectō opere illī dē dēditiōne missīs lēgātīs agere coepērunt. Paucī ōrdinis senātōriī, quī sē cum iīs cōnfūxerant, nocte fugā salūtem petīvērunt.

The leniency of Caesar.

98. Caesar prīmā lūce omnēs eōs, quī in monte cōnsēderant, ex superiōribus locīs in plānitiem dēscendere atque arma prōicere iussit. Quod ubi sine recūsātiōne[1] fēcērunt passusque palmīs prōiectī ad terram flentēs ab eō salūtem petīvērunt, cōnsōlātus cōnsurgere iussit, et pauca apud eōs dē lēnitāte[2] suā locūtus, quō minōre essent timōre, omnēs cōnservāvit, mīlitibusque suīs commendāvit,[3] nē quī[4] eōrum violārētur, neu quid suī dēsīderārent. Hāc adhibitā dīligentiā, ex castrīs sibi legiōnēs aliās occurrere et eās, quās sēcum dūxerat, in vicem requiēscere[5] atque in castra revertī iussit, eodemque diē Lārīsam pervēnit.

The promise of Crastinus is fulfilled.

99. In eō proeliō nōn amplius ce mīlitēs dēsīderāvit,[1] sed centuriōnēs, fortēs virōs, circiter xxx āmīsit. Inter-

97. [7] *washed the base of.* [8] *shut off.* [9] *to get water.*

98. [1] *declining.* [2] *leniency.* [3] *recommended.* [4] **nē quī**, *that no one.* [5] *lose.* [6] *to rest.*

99. [1] *lost.*

fectus est etiam fortissimō pūgnāns Crāstinus, cūius mortiōnem suprā dīximus, gladiō in ōs adversum[3] coniectō. Neque id nōn falsum, quod ille in pūgnam profīcīscēns dīxerat. Sīc enim Caesar exīstimābat, eō proeliō excellentissimam virtūtem Crāstinī fuisse, optimēque eum dē sē meritum iūdicābat. Ex Pompēiānō exercitū circiter mīlia XV cecidisse vidēbantur, sed in dēditiōnem vēnērunt amplius mīlia XXIIII (namque etiam cohortēs, quae praesidio in castellīs fuerant, sēsē Sullae dēdidērunt), signa praeterea relātā CLXXX et aquilae VIIII. L. Domitius ex castrīs in montem refugiēns, cum vīrēs eum lassitūdine dēfēcissent, ab equitibus est interfectus.

THE FLIGHT AND DEATH OF POMPEY, 48 B.C.

He seeks refuge in Amphipolis, Cilicia, Cyprus.

102. Caesar omnibus rēbus relictīs persequendum sibi Pompēium exīstimāvit, quāscumque in partēs sē ex fugā recēpisset, nē rūrsus cōpiās comparāre aliās et bellum renovāre posset. Ita quantumcumque itineris[1] equitātū cōficere poterat, cotīdiē prōgrediebātur legiōnemque ūnam minōribus itineribus subsequī iussit. Erat dictum[2] Pompēī nōmine Amphipolī[3] prōpositum,[4] ut omnēs ēius prōvinciae iūdicēs,[5] Graecī cīvēsque Rōmānī, iūrandī causā convenīrent. Id utrum āvertendae suspīciōnis causā Pompēius prōposuisset, ut quam dūtis-

99. [2] in chap. 91. [3] **in ōs adversum**, *right in the face.* [4] *having been thrust.* [5] *false.*

102. [1] **quantumcumque itineris**, *as long a march as.* [2] *a proclamation.* [3] *at Amphipolis*, a town of Macedonia. [4] *issued.* [5] *the young men, i.e.* between 17 and 45 years of age.

sine longiōris fugae cōnsilium occultāret, an novīs dīlēctibus,[6] sī nēmō premeret, Macedoniam tenēre cōnārētur, exīstimārī nōn poterat. Ipse ad ancoram ūnam noctem cōnstitit, et vocātīs ad sē Amphipoli hospitibus et pecūniā ad necessāriōs sūmptūs corrogātā,[7] cognitō Caesaris adventū ex eō locō discessit et Mytilēnās[8] paucīs diēbus vēnit. Bīduum tempestāte retentus nāvibus additīs[9] actuāriīs[10] in Ciliciam atque inde Cyprum pervēnit. Ibi cognōscit, cōnsēnsū omnium Antiochēnsium[11] cīviumque Rōmānōrum, quī illīc negōtiārentur,[12] arcem[13] captam esse excludendī sui causā nuntiōsque dīmissōs ad eōs, quī sē ex fugā in finitimās cīvitātēs recēpisse dīcerentur, nē Antiochiam[14] adīrent: id sī fēcissent, māgnō eōrum capitis[15] perīculō futūrum. Idem hōc L. Lentulō, quī superiōre anno cōnsul fuerat, et P. Lentulō cōnsulārī[16] ac nōn nūllīs aliīs accidērat Rhodī;[17] quī cum ex fugā Pompeium sequerentur atque in īnsulam vēnissent, oppidō ac portū receptī nōn erant, missīsque ad eōs nūntiīs ex hīs locīs discēderent,[18] contrā voluntātem suam nāvēs solverant. Iamque dē Caesaris adventū fāma ad cīvitātēs perferēbātur.

In Egypt Pompey seeks aid of the young king.

103. Quibus cognitīs rēbus, Pompēius dēpositō adeundae Syriae cōnsiliō, pecūniā ā societātibus[1] sublātā et ā quibusdam prīvātīs sūmptā, et aeris māgnō pondere ad mīlitārem ūsum in nāvēs impositō duōbusque mīlibus

102. [6] *by levies.* [7] *collected.* [8] *to Mytilenae*, a city of Lesbos. [9] *having added.* [10] *swift-sailing.* [11] *the people of Antioch.* [12] *did business.* [13] *citadel*, acc. [14] *Antioch.* [15] *of life.* [16] an *ex-consul.* [17] *at Rhodes.* [18] *directing them to depart.*

103. [1] *tax-collecting companies.*

hominum armātīs, quōs partim ex familiīs[2] societātum dēlēgerat, partim ā negōtiātōribus[3] coēgerat, quōs ex suīs quisque ad hanc rem idōneōs exīstimābat, Pēlūsium[4] pervēnit. Ibi cāsū rēx erat Ptolomaeus, puer aetāte, māgnīs cōpiīs cum sorōre Cleopatrā bellum gerēns, quam paucīs ante mēnsibus per suōs propinquōs atque amīcōs rēgnō expulerat; castraque Cleopatrae nōn longō spatiō ab ēius castrīs distābant. Ad eum Pompēius mīsit, ut prō hospitiō atque amīcitiā patris Alexandrīam[5] reciperētur atque illīus opibus in calamitāte tegerētur.[6] Sed quī ab eō missī erant, cōnfectō lēgātiōnis officiō, līberius cum mīlitibus rēgiīs[7] conloquī coepērunt eōsque hortārī, ut suum officium[8] Pompēiō praestārent nēve ēius fortūnam dēspicerent. In hōc erant numerō complūrēs Pompēī mīlitēs, quōs ex ēius exercitū acceptōs in Syriā Gabīnius Alexandrīam trādūxerat bellōque cōnfectō apud Ptolomaeum, patrem puerī, relīquerat.

Pompey is slain by the king's officers.

104. Hīs tum cognitīs rēbus amīcī rēgis, quī propter aetātem ēius in prōcūrātiōne[1] erant rēgnī, sīve timōre adductī, ut posteā praedicābant, sollicitātō exercitū rēgiō, nē Pompēius Alexandrīam Aegyptumque[2] occuparet, sīve dēspectā ēius fortūnā (ut plērumque in calamitāte ex amīcīs inimīcī exsistunt), iīs, quī erant ab eō missī, palam līberāliter respondērunt eumque ad rēgem venīre iussērunt; ipsī clam cōnsiliō initō Achillam[3]

103. [2] *slaves.* [3] *business men.* [4] *to Pelusium,* a city of Egypt. [5] *into Alexandria.* [6] *might be protected.* [7] *of the king.* [8] *their duty by.*

104. [1] *charge.* [2] *Egypt.* [3] *Achillas,* commander of the Egyptian army.

praefectum rēgium, singulārī hominem audāciā, et L. Septimium tribūnum mīlitum ad interficiendum Pompēium mīsērunt. Ab hīs līberāliter ipse appellātus et quādam nōtitiā Septimī prōductus,[4] quod bellō praedōnum[5] apud eum ōrdinem duxerat, nāviculam parvulam cōnscendit cum paucīs suīs; ibi ab Achillā et Septimiō interficitur. Item L. Lentulus comprehenditur ab rēge et in custōdiā[6] necātur.

CAESAR IN ASIA AND EGYPT, AUTUMN, 48 B.C.

At Ephesus.

105. Caesar, cum in Asiam vēnisset, reperiēbat T. Ampium[1] cōnātum esse pecūniās tollere Ephesō[2] ex fānō[3] Diānae cīrcumque reī causā senātōrēs omnēs ex prōvinciā ēvocāsse, ut hīs testibus in sūmendā pecūniā ūterētur, sed interpellātum adventū Caesaris profūgisse. Ita duōbus tamporibus Ephesiae[4] pecūniae Caesar auxilium tulit. . . . Item cōnstābat Ēlide[5] in templō Minervae, repetītīs atque numerātīs diēbus,[6] quō[7] diē proelium secundum Caesar fēcisset, simulācrum Victōriae, quod ante ipsam Minervam conlocātum esset et ante ad simulācrum Minervae spectāvisset, ad valvās[8] sē templī līmenque[9] convertisse. Eōdemque diē Antiochiae in Syriā bis tantus exercitūs clāmor et sīgnōrum sonus[10] exaudītus est, ut in mūrīs armāta cīvitās[11]

104. [4] *drawn on.* [5] *of pirates.* [6] *prison.*

105. [1] *Ampius,* a friend of Pompey. [2] *at* (lit. from) *Ephesus.* [3] *the temple.* [4] *Ephesian.* [5] *at Elis,* a city of Greece. [6] **repetītīs . . . diēbus**, *by reckoning and counting the days.* W. **cōnstābat** (*it was clear*). [7] sc. as antecedent, **eō diē**. [8] *doors.* [9] *entrance.* [10] *sound.* [11] *the citizens.*

discurreret.[12] Hōc idem Ptolomāide[13] accidit, Pergamīque[14] in occultīs locīs ac reconditīs[15] templī, quō praeter sacerdōtēs[16] adīre fās nūllī est, quae Graecī adyta[17] appellant, tympana[18] sonuērunt.[19] Item Trallibus[20] in templō Victōriae, ubi Caesaris statuam cōnsecrāverant, palmam per eōs diēs inter coagmenta[21] lapidum ex pavīmentō[22] exstitisse ostendēbātur.

At Alexandria.

106. Caesar paucōs diēs in Asiā morātus, cum audīsset Pompēium Cyprī[1] vīsum, coniectāns,[2] cum in Aegyptum iter habēre propter necessitūdinēs[3] rēgum reliquāsque ēius locī opportūnitātēs, cum legiōne ūnā, quam sē ex Thessaliā sequī iusserat, et alterā, quam ex Achāiā ā Q. Fūfiō lēgātō ēvocāverat, equitibusque DCCC et nāvibus longīs Rhodiīs X et Asiāticīs paucīs Alexandrīam pervēnit. In hīs erant legiōnibus hominum mīlia tria CC; reliquī vulneribus ex proeliīs et labōre ac māgnitūdine itineris cōnfectī cōnsequī nōn potuerant. Sed Caesar cōnfīsus fāmā rērum gestārum īnfīrmīs auxiliīs proficīscī nōn dubitāverat, acquē omnem sibi locum tūtum fore exīstimāns. Alexandrīae[4] dē Pompēī morte cognōsceit; atque ibi prīmum ē nāvī ēgrediēns clāmōrem mīlitum audit, quōs rēx in oppidō praesidī causā relīquerat, et concursum ad sē fierī videt, quod fascēs[5]

105. [12] *ran to and fro.* [13] *at Ptolomais,* a city of Phoenicia. [14] *at Pergamum,* a city in Asia Minor. [15] *hidden.* [16] *the priests.* [17] *the holiest place.* [18] *the drums.* [19] *sounded.* [20] *at Tralles,* a city of Asia Minor. [21] *crevices.* [22] *pavement.*

106. [1] *at Cyprus.* [2] *inferring.* [3] *his friendship with the rulers, i.e.* with Ptolemy and Cleopatra. [4] locative. [5] *the fasces,* the bundle of rods carried before a Roman magistrate, as a symbol of power.

anteferrentur. In hōc omnis multitūdō māiestātem [6] rēgiam minuī praedicābat. Hōc sēdātō [7] tumultū crē- 405
brae continentibus diēbus ex concursū multitūdinis concitātiōnēs [8] fīēbant complūrēsque mīlitēs hūius urbis omnibus partibus interficiēbantur.

The quarrel of Ptolemy and Cleopatra.

107. Quibus rēbus animadversīs legiōnēs sibi duās ex Asiā addūcī iussit, quās ex Pompēiānīs mīlitibus 410
cōnfēcerat. Ipse enim necessāriō etēsiīs [1] tenēbātur, quī nāvigantibus Alexandriā illaut adversissimī ventī. Interim contrōversiās rēgum ad populum Rōmānum et ad sē, quod esset cōnsul, pertinēre exīstimāns, atque eō magis, quod superiōre cōnsulātū cum patre Ptolomaeō 415
et lēge et senātūs cōnsultō [2] societās [3] erat facta, ostendit sibi placēre, rēgem Ptolomaeum atque ēius sorōrem Cleopatram exercitūs, quōs habērent, dīmittere et dē contrōversiīs iūre apud sē potius quam inter sē armīs disceptāre.[4]

420

106. [6] *majesty.* [7] *quieted.* [8] *riots.*

107. [1] *by the etesian winds*, blowing from the north in summer. [2] *by decree.* [3] *alliance.* [4] *to settle.*

SELECTIONS FROM CORNELIUS NEPOS

Cornelius Nepos was a Roman writer, who lived in the last century B.C. We know little about his life. He was born in northern Italy, early in the century, and died about 25 B.C. In his youth he removed to Rome, where he became a friend of Cicero the orator, and of Atticus the scholar. As a writer, his style of Latin is similar to that of Caesar and Cicero, his contemporaries. His works, chiefly on historical subjects, have been lost, except the lives of two Romans, Cato and Atticus, a short composition on kings, and a book, *De Excellentibus Ducibus Exterarum Gentium*, containing twenty-two brief accounts of eminent foreign leaders. The following selections include Miltíades, Themístocles and Arístides, famous in the war of Greece against Persia; Hannibal, the great Carthaginian who fought against Rome; and Cato, the stern Roman censor and patriot.

MILTIADES

In the first two chapters of this biography Nepos confuses two leaders of the same name, Miltiades the colonist of the Chersonese, and his nephew, the hero of Marathon. The remaining chapters (3–8) treat of the latter, who was one of the greatest generals of Greece.

The Persians enter Europe, 510 B.C.

3. Eīsdem temporibus Persārum rēx Dārēus,[1] ex Asiā in Eurōpam exercitū trāiectō,[2] Scythīs[3] bellum īnferre dēcrēvit. Pontem fēcit in Histrō[4] flūmine, quā cōpiās trādūceret. Eius pontis, dum ipse abesset, custōdēs

3. [1] *Darius* reigned 521–485 B.C. [2] *transported*. [3] *the Scythians*. [4] *the Hister* (the lower Danube).

relīquit prīncipēs, quōs sēcum ex Iōniā et Aeolide[3] dūxerat; quibus singulārum urbium perpetua dederat imperia. Sīc enim facillimē putāvit sē Graecā linguā loquentēs, quī Asiam incolerent, sub suā retentūrum potestāte, sī amīcīs suīs oppida tuenda trādidisset, quibus sē oppressō nūlla spēs salūtis relinquerētur. In hōc fuit tum numerō Miltiadēs. Hīc, cum crēbrī adferrent nūntiī male[4] rem gerere Dārēum premīque ā Scythīs, hortātus est pontis custōdēs nē ā fortūnā datam occāsiōnem līberandae Graeciae dīmitterent. Nam sī cum eīs cōpiīs, quās sēcum trānsportārat, interīsset Dārēus, nōn sōlum Eurōpam fore tūtam, sed etiam eōs quī Asiam incolerent, Graecī generis, līberōs ā Persārum futūrōs dominātiōne.[5] Sine perīculō id et facile effīcī posse; ponte enim rescissō, rēgem vel hostium ferrō[6] vel inopiā[7] paucīs diēbus interitūrum. Ad hōc cōnsilium cum plērīque accēderent,[8] Histiaeus Mīlēsius[9] nē rēs cōnficerētur obstitit,[10] dīcēns nōn idem ipsīs, quī summās imperī tenērent, expedīre[11] et multitūdinī, quod Dārēī rēgnō ipsōrum nīterētur[12] dominātiō; quō exstīnctō[13] ipsōs potestāte expulsōs cīvibus suīs poenās datūrōs.[14] Itaque adeō sē abhorrēre ā[15] cēterōrum cōnsiliō, ut nihil putet ipsīs ūtilius quam cōnfīrmārī rēgnum Persārum. Hūius cum sententiam plūriānī essent secūtī, Miltiadēs, nōn dubitāns tam multīs cōnsceīs[16] ad rēgis aurēs cōnsilia sua perventūra, Chersonēsum relīquit ac rūrsus

3. [3] *Aeolis*, a country of Asia Minor. [4] **male rem gerere**, *was meeting with misfortune.* [5] abl. [6] *mastery.* [7] *by the sword.* [8] *hunger.* [9] *entered into.* [10] *of Milétus*, a city of Ionia. [11] *opposed.* [12] *was expedient.* [13] **ipsōrum nīterētur dominātiō**, *their mastery depended on.* [14] *being destroyed*, abl. abs. [15] *would pay.* [16] **adeō abhorrēre ā**, *so much disapproved of.* [17] abl. abs.

Athēnās dēmigrāvit. Cūius ratiō etsī nōn valuit, tamen māgnopere est laudanda, cum amīcior omnium lībertātī quam suae fuerit dominātiōnī.

The battle of Márathon, 490 B.C.

4. Dārēus autem, cum ex Eurōpā in Asiam redīsset, hortantibus amīcīs, ut Graeciam [1] redigeret in suam potestātem, classem quīngentārum nāvium comparāvit eīque Dātim [2] praefēcit et Artaphernem,[2] eīsque ducenta peditum, decem equitum mīlia dedit, causam interserēns [3] sē hostem esse Athēniēnsibus, quod eōrum auxiliō Iōnēs [4] Sardīs [5] expūgnāssent suaque praesidia interfēcissent. Illī praefectī rēgiī,[6] classe ad Euboeam [7] adpulsā, celeriter Eretriam [8] cēpērunt omnēsque ēius gentis cīvēs abreptōs [9] in Asiam ad rēgem mīsērunt. Inde ad Atticam [10] accessērunt ac suās cōpiās in campum Marathōna [11] dēdūxērunt. Is abest ab oppidō circiter mīlia passuum decem. Hōc tumultū [12] Athēniēnsēs tam propinquō tamque māgnō permōtī, auxilium nūsquam [13] nisi ā Lacedaemoniīs petīvērunt, Phīdippumque,[14] cursōrem [15] ēius generis quī hēmerodromoe [16] vocantur, Lacedaemonem [17] mīsērunt, ut nūntiāret quam celerrimō opus esse auxiliō. Domī autem creant decem praetōrēs, quī exercituī praecessent, in eīs Miltiadem. Inter quōs māgna fuit contentiō, utrum moenibus sē dēfenderent, an obviam [18]

4. [1] *Greece.* [2] *Datis, Artaphérnes,* Persian generals. [3] *alleging.* [4] *the Ionians.* [5] *Sardis* (acc. pl.), a city in Asia Minor. *of the king.* [7] *Euboéa,* an island east of Greece. [8] *Erétria,* a city of Euboéa. [9] *carried off.* [10] a state of Greece. [11] **Marathōn**, acc. **-ōna**, *Marathon,* a town of Attica. [12] *sudden danger.* [13] *nowhere.* [14] *Phidippus.* [15] *a runner.* [16] a Greek word, *day-runners.* [17] *to Lacedaémon,* or *Sparta.* [18] *to meet,* w. **hostibus** (dat.).

irent hostibus aciēque dēcernerent.[19] Ūnus Miltiadēs māximē nitēbātur,[20] ut prīmō quōque tempore[21] castra fierent; id si factum esset, et cīvibus animum accessūrum, cum vidērent dē eōrum virtūte nōn dēspērārī, et hostes eādem rē fore tardiōrēs, sī animadverterent audērī[22] adversus sē tam exiguīs cōpiīs dīmicārī.[23]

5. Hōc in tempore nūlla cīvitās Athēniēnsibus auxiliō fuit praeter Plataeēnsēs.[1] Ea mille mīsit mīlitum. Itaque hōrum adventū decem mīlia armātōrum complēta sunt, quae manus mīrābilī flagrābat[2] pūgnandī cupiditāte. Quō factum est ut plūs quam conlēgae[3] Miltiadēs valēret. Eius ergō auctōritāte impulsī Athēniēnsēs cōpiās ex urbe ēduxērunt locōque idōneō castra fēcērunt. Dein[4] posterō diē sub montis rādīcibus aciē regiōne[5] īnstrūctā non apertissimā (namque arborēs multīs locīs erant rārae) proelium commīsērunt hōc cōnsiliō, ut et montium altitūdine tegerentur[6] et arborum trāctū[7] equitātus hostium impedīrētur, nē multitūdine clauderentur.[8] Dātis etsī nōn aequum locum vidēbat suīs, tamen frētus numerō cōpiārum suārum cōnflīgere cupiēbat, eōque magis, quod, priusquam Lacedaemoniī subsidiō venīrent, dīmicāre ūtile arbitrābātur. Itaque in aciem peditum centum, equitum decem mīlia prōdūxit proeliumque commīsit. In quō tantō plūs virtūte valuērunt Athēniēnsēs, ut decemplicem[9] numerum hostium prōflīgārint, adeōque eōs perterruērunt, ut Persae[10] nōn castra, sed nāvēs petierint.

4. [19] *fight.* [20] *contended.* [21] prīmō quōque tempore, *at the first opportunity.* [22] impers.

5. [1] *the inhabitants of Plataea.* [2] *burned.* [3] *his colleagues.* [4] *then.* [5] *on ground,* w. apertissimā. [6] *might be protected.* [7] *by a line.* [8] *might be surrounded.* [9] *tenfold.* [10] *the Persians.*

Quā pūgnā nihil adhūc exstitit nōbilius; nūlla enim umquam tam exigua manus tantās opēs prōstrāvit.

Honors to Miltiades, as the victor.

6. Cūius victōriae [1] nōn aliēnum [2] vidētur quāle praemium Miltiadī sit tribūtum docēre,[3] quō facilius intellegī possit eandem omnium cīvitātum esse nātūram. Ut enim populī Rōmānī honōrēs quondam [4] fuērunt rārī et tenuēs [5] ob eamque causam glōriōsī,[6] nunc autem effūsī [7] atque obsolētī,[8] sīc ōlim [9] apud Athēniēnsēs fuisse reperīmus. Namque huic Miltiadī, quī Athēnās tōtamque Graeciam līberārat, tālis honōs tribūtus est, in porticū,[10] quae Poecilē [11] vocātur, cum pūgna dēpingerētur [12] Marathōnia, ut in decem praetōrum numerō prīma ēius imāgō [13] pōnerētur isque hortārētur mīlitēs proeliumque committeret. Īdem ille populus, posteāquam māius imperium est nactus et largītiōne magistrātuum corruptus [14] est, trecentās statuās Dēmētriō Phalēreō [15] dēcrēvit.

Miltiades attacks the island of Paros, 489 B.C., and is charged with treason.

7. Post hōc proelium classem septuāgintā nāvium Athēniēnsēs eīdem Miltiadī dedērunt, ut īnsulās, quae barbarōs adiūverant, bellō persequerētur. Quō in in-

6. [1] modifies **praemium**. [2] *out of place*. [3] **docēre** (**quāle . . . tribūtum**) is subj. of **vidētur**. [4] *once*. [5] *uncommon and trifling* (in themselves). [6] *creditable*. [7] *common*. [8] *worthless*. [9] *formerly*. [10] *portico*, a roofed colonnade. [11] *the Poecile*, a picture gallery in Athens. [12] *was painted*. [13] *picture*. [14] *bribed*. [15] *Demétrius of Phálerum*, a Greek statesman.

periō plērāsque ad officium redīre coēgit, nōmūllās vī expūgnāvit. Ex hīs Parum[1] īnsulam opibus ēlātam[2] cum ōrātiōne reconciliāre[3] nōn posset, cōpiās ē nāvibus ēdūxit urbem operibus[4] clausit omnīque commeātū prīvāvit:[5] dein vīneīs ac testūdinibus cōnstitūtīs pro- 105
pius mūrōs accessit. Cum iam in eō[6] esset, ut oppidō potīrētur, procul in continentī[7] lūcus,[8] quī ex īnsulā cōnspiciēbātur, nesciō quō cāsū[9] nocturnō tempore incēnsus est. Cūius flamma ut ab oppidānīs et oppūgnātōribus est vīsa, utrīsque vēnit in opīniōnem sīgnum 110
ā classiāriīs[10] rēgiīs datum. Quō factum est ut ei Parīī ā dēditiōne dēterrērentur et Miltiadēs, timēns nē classis rēgia adventāret,[11] incēnsīs operibus quae statuerat, cum totidem nāvibus atque[12] erat profectus, Athēnās māgnā cum offēnsiōne[13] cīvium suōrum redīret. 115

Accūsātus ergō est prōditiōnis,[14] quod, cum Parum expūgnāre posset, ā rēge corruptus īnfectīs[15] rēbus discessisset. Eō tempore aeger[16] erat vulneribus, quae in oppūgnandō oppidō accēperat. Itaque cum ipse prō sē dīcere nōn posset, verba fēcit frāter ēius Stēsagorās.[17] 120
Causā cognitā, capitis absolūtus[18] pecūniā multātus est,[19] eaque līs[20] quīnquāgintā talentīs aestimāta est, quantus in classem sūmptus factus erat. Hanc pecūniam quod solvere in praesentiā nōn poterat, in vincula pūblica coniectus est ibique diem obiit suprēmum.[21] 125

7. [1] *Paros*, an island in the Aegean Sea. [2] *proud.* [3] *to regain.* [4] *by military works.* [5] *deprived.* [6] **in eō ut**, *on the point of.* [7] *mainland.* [8] *a grove.* [9] **nesciō quō cāsū**, *by some accident.* [10] *fleet's own.* [11] *should approach.* [12] *as.* [13] *vexation.* [14] *of treason.* [15] *unfinished.* [16] *suffering.* [17] nom. [18] *acquitted of capital offense.* [19] *was fined.* [20] *fine.* [21] **diem . . . suprēmum**, *died.*

The cause of the downfall of Miltiades.

8. Hīc etsī crīmine Parīō [1] est accūsātus, tamen alia causa fuit damnātiōnis.[2] Namque Athēniēnsēs propter Pīsistratī tyrannidem,[3] quae paucīs annīs ante fuerat, nimiam [4] cīvium suōrum potentiam extimēscēbant. Miltiadēs, multum in imperiīs magistrātibusque versātus, nōn vidēbātur posse esse prīvātus, praesertim cum cōnsuētūdine ad imperī cupiditātem trahī vidērētur. Nam in Chersonēsō, omnēs illōs quōs habitārat [5] annōs, perpetuam obtinuerat dominātiōnem tyrannusque [6] fuerat appellātus, sed iūstus. Nōn erat enim vī cōnsecūtus, sed suōrum voluntāte, eamque potestātem bonitāte retinēbat. Omnēs autem et dīcuntur et habentur tyrannī, quī potestāte sunt perpetuā in eā cīvitāte, quae lībertāte ūsa est. Sed in Miltiade erat cum summa hūmānitās, tum mīra commūnitās,[7] ut nēmō tam humilis esset, cui nōn ad eum aditus patēret; māgna auctōritās apud omnēs cīvitātēs, nōbile [8] nōmen, laus reī mīlitāris māxima. Haec populus respiciēns māluit illum innoxium [9] plectī [10] quam sē diūtius esse in timōre.

THEMISTOCLES

His early life.

1. Themistoclēs [1] Neoclī [2] fīlius, Athēniēnsis. Hūius vitia [3] ineuntis adulēscentiae māgnīs sunt ēmendāta [4] vir-

8. [1] *on a charge relating to Paros.* [2] *of his condemnation.* [3] *rule of Pisistratus.* [4] *excessive.* [5] *had lived.* [6] *a tyrant.* [7] *courtesy.* [8] *honored.* [9] *though innocent.* [10] *be punished.*

1. [1] founder of the Athenian navy, a great soldier and statesman, born about 514 B.C. [2] **Neoclēs**, gen. **-is** or **-ī**. [3] *faults.* [4] *corrected, amended.*

tūtibus, adeō [5] ut anteferātur huic nēmō, paucī parēs putentur. Sed ab initiō est ōrdiendum.[6] Pater ēius Neoclēs generōsus [7] fuit. Is uxōrem Acarnānam [8] cīvem dūxit, ex quā nātus est Themistoclēs. Quī cum minus [9] esset probātus parentibus, quod et līberāliter vīvēbat et rem familiārem neglegēbat, ā patre exhērēdātus [10] est. Quae contumēlia nōn frēgit eum, sed ērēxit. Nam cum iūdicāsset sine summā industriā nōn posse eum [11] ex-stinguī,[12] tōtum sē dēdidit reī pūblicae dīligentius amīcīs fāmaeque serviēns. Multum in iūdiciīs prīvātīs versābātur, saepe in cōntiōnem populī prōdībat:[13] nūlla rēs māior sine eō gerēbātur; celeriter quae opus erant reperiēbat, facile eadem ōrātiōne explicābat.[14] Neque minus in rēbus gerendīs prōmptus quam excōgitandīs erat, quod et dē īnstantibus, ut ait [15] Thūcȳdidēs,[16] vērissimē iūdicābat et dē futūrīs callidissimē coniciebat.[17] Quō factum est ut brevī tempore inlūstrārētur.[18]

The navy of Athens. Xerxes attacks Greece. 480 B.C.

2. Prīmus autem gradus [1] fuit capessendae [2] reī pūblicae bellō Corcyraeō:[3] sed quod gerendum praetor ā populō factus, nōn sōlum praesentī bellō, sed etiam reliquō tempore ferōciōrem [4] reddidit cīvitātem. Nam cum pecūnia pūblica, quae ex metallīs [5] redībat, lar-

1. [5] *to such a degree.* [6] impers., *we must begin.* [7] *of noble birth.* [8] *a woman of Acarnania.* [9] **minus . . . probātus**, *found little favor with.* [10] *disinherited.* [11] *i.e.* **contumēliam.** [12] *to be wiped out.* [13] *i.e.* spoke in the popular assembly (**cōntiō**). [14] *explained.* [15] def. verb, *says.* [16] the Greek historian. [17] *conjectured.* [18] *became illustrious.*

2. [1] *step.* [2] *in political activity* (lit. in taking part in political affairs). [3] *of Corcyra.* [4] *more formidable.* [5] *the mines.*

gītiōne[6] magistrātuum quotannīs interīret,[7] ille persuāsit populō ut eā pecūniā classis centum nāvium aedificārētur. Quā celeriter effectā prīmum Corcȳraeōs frēgit, deinde maritimōs praedōnēs[8] cōnsectandō mare tūtum reddidit. In quō cum[9] dīvitiīs ōrnāvit, tum etiam perītissimōs bellī nāvālis fēcit Athēniēnsēs.

Id quantae salūtī fuerit ūniversae Graeciae, bellō cognitum est Persicō.[10] Nam cum Xerxēs[11] et marī et terrā bellum ūniversae īnferret Eurōpae cum tantīs cōpiīs, quantās neque ante nec posteā habuit quisquam: hūius enim classis mīlle et ducentārum nāvium longārum fuit, quam duo mīlia onerāriārum sequēbantur, terrestrēs[12] autem exercitūs septingenta peditum, equitum quadringenta mīlia fuērunt. Cūius dē adventū cum fāma in Graeciam esset perlāta et māximē Athēniēnsēs petī dīcerentur propter pūgnam Marathōniam, mīsērunt Delphōs[13] cōnsultum, quidnam facerent dē rēbus suīs. Dēlīberantibus Pȳthia respondit, ut moenibus līgneīs[14] sē mūnīrent. Id respōnsum quō valēret[15] cum intellegeret nēmō, Themistoclēs persuāsit[16] cōnsilium esse Apollinis, ut in nāvēs sē suaque cōnferrent; eum[17] enim ā deō sīgnificārī mūrum līgneum. Tālī cōnsiliō probātō, addunt ad superiōrēs[18] totidem nāvēs trirēmēs[19] suaque omnia, quae movērī poterant, partim Salamīna,[20] partim Troezēna[21] dēportant; arcem sacerdōtibus[22] paucīsque

2. [6] *by distribution.* [7] *was lost.* [8] *pirates.* [9] **cum . . . ōrnāvit,** *not only supplied with riches.* [10] *Persian.* [11] king of Persia. [12] adj., *land.* [13] *to Delphi,* a town in Phocis noted for its temple of Apollo. [14] *of wood.* [15] **quō valēret,** *what it meant.* [16] *convinced.* [17] refers to **mūrum**. [18] *former.* [19] w. **nāvēs**, *triremes.* [20] **Salamis**, acc. **-īna**, an island near Attica. [21] **Troezēn**, acc. **-ēna**, a city of Argolis. [22] *to the priests.*

māiōribus nātū ad sacra[23] prōcūranda trādunt, reliquum oppidum relinquunt.

The battle of Thermopylae, 480 B.C.

3 Hūius cōnsilium plērīsque cīvitātibus displicēbat[1] et in terrā dīmicārī magis placēbat. Itaque missī sunt dēlēctī cum Leōnidā,[2] Lacedaemoniōrum rēge, quī Thermopylās[3] occupārent longiusque barbarōs prōgredī nōn paterentur. Ī vīm hostium nōn sustinuērunt eōque locō omnēs interiērunt. At classis commūnis Graeciae trecentārum nāvium, in quā ducentae erant Athēniēnsium, prīmum apud Artemīsium[4] inter Euboeam continentemque terram cum classiāriīs[5] rēgiīs cōntlīxit. Angustiās enim Themistoclēs quaerēbat, nē multitūdine circumīrētur.[6] Hinc etsī parī[7] proeliō discesserant, tamen eōdem locō nōn sunt ausī manēre, quod erat perīculum, nē sī pars nāvium adversāriōrum[8] Euboeam superāsset, ancipitī praemerentur perīculō. Quō factum est ut ab Artemīsiō discēderent et exadversum[9] Athēnās apud Salamīna classem suam cōnstituerent.

The destruction of Athens. The battle of Salamis, 480 B.C.

4. At Xerxēs, Thermopylis expūgnātīs, prōtinus accessit astu[1] idque, nūllīs dēfendentibus, interfectīs sacerdōtibus, quōs in aree invēnerat, incendiō dēlēvit. Cūius

2. [23] *sacred rites.*

3. [1] **dis + placeō**. [2] *Leónidas*, the defender of Thermopylae. [3] a pass in Thessaly. [4] *Artemisium*, a promontory on the coast of Euboea. [5] *marines*. [6] *might be surrounded*. [7] *drawn, i.e.* even. [8] *opponents*. [9] prep., *over against*.

4. [1] a Greek word, *the city, i.e.* Athens.

flammā perterritī classiāriī [2] cum manēre nōn audērent et plūrimī hortārentur, ut domōs suās discēderent moenibusque sē dēfenderent, Themistoclēs ūnus restitit et ūniversōs parēs [3] esse posse aiēbat,[4] dispersōs tēstābātur [5] peritūrōs,[6] idque Eurybiadī,[7] rēgī Lacedaemoniōrum, quī tum summae imperī praecrat, fore adfīrmābat. Quem cum minus quam vellet movēret, noctū dē servīs suīs quem habuit fidēlissimum ad rēgem mīsit, ut eī nūntiāret, suīs verbīs, adversāriōs ēius in fugā esse; quī sī discessissent, māiōre cum labōre et longinquiōre tempore bellum cōnfectūrum, cum singulōs cōnsectārī cōgerētur;[8] quōs sī statim adgrederētur, brevī ūniversōs oppressūrum. Hōc [9] eō valēbat, ut ingrātiīs [10] ad dēpūgnandum omnēs cōgerentur. Hāc rē audītā barbarus, nihil dolī subesse crēdēns, postrīdiē aliēnissimō sibi locō,[11] contrā [12] opportūnissimō hostibus, adeō angustō marī [13] cōnflīxit, ut ēius multitūdō nāvium explicārī [14] nōn potuerit. Victus ergō est magis etiam cōnsiliō Themistoclī [15] quam armīs Gracciae.

The return of Xerxes to Asia.

5. Hīc et-ī male rem gesserat, tamen tantās habēbat reliquiās [1] cōpiārum, ut etiamtum iīs opprimere posset hostēs. Iterum ab eōdem [2] gradū [3] dēpulsus est. Nam Themistoclēs, verēns nē bellāre persevērāret, certiōrem eum fēcit id agī,[4] ut pōns, quem ille in Hellēspontō fēcerat, dissolverētur [5] ac reditū in Asiam exclūderētur, idque eī

4. [2] *the seamen.* [3] *equal* (to the task). [4] *said.* [5] *declared.* [6] *se.* esse. [7] *to Eurybiades.* [8] subj. is Xerxēs. [9] Hōc eō valēbat, *his intention in this was.* [10] *unwillingly.* [11] at Salamis. [12] adv., *on the contrary.* [13] *in a strait.* [14] *be maneuvered.* [15] gen.

5. [1] *a remnant.* [2] *i.e.* Themistocles. [3] *from his position.* [4] id agī, *it was proposed.* [5] *be destroyed.*

persuāsit. Itaque, quā sex mēnsibus iter fēcerat, eādem minus diēbus trīgintā in Asiam reversus est, sēque ā Themistocle nōn superātum, sed cōnservātum iūdicāvit. Sīc ūnīus virī prūdentiā Graecia līberāta est Eurōpaeque succubuit Asia. Haec est altera victōria, quae cum Marathōniō possit comparārī tropaeō.[6] Nam parī modō apud Salamīna parvō numerō nāvium māxima post hominum memoriam classis est dēvicta.

ARISTIDES

His banishment and recall, 485–479 B.C.

1. Aristīdēs,[1] Lȳsimachī fīlius, Athēniēnsis, aequālis[2] ferē fuit Themistoclī atque cum eō dē prīncipātū contendit; namque obtrēctārunt[3] inter sē. In hīs autem cognitum est, quantō antestāret ēloquentia innocentiae. Quamquam enim adeō[4] excellēbat Aristīdēs abstinentiā,[5] ut ūnus post hominum memoriam, quem quidem nōs audierimus, cognōmine Iūstus sit appellātus, tamen ā Themistocle conlabefactus[6] tēstulā[7] illā exsiliō[8] decem annōrum multātus[9] est. Quī quidem cum intellegeret reprimī concitātam multitūdinem nōn posse, cēdēnsque animadvertisset quendam scrībentem, ut patriā pellerētur,[10] quaesīsse ab eō dīcitur, quārē id faceret aut quid Aristīdēs commīsisset, cūr tantā poenā dignus[11] dūcerētur.

5. [6] *victory.*

1. [1] A statesman and general during the war with Persia; surnamed "The Just"; the constant opponent of Themistocles; died about 468 B.C. [2] *of the same age.* [3] *were rivals.* [4] *to such a degree.* [5] *in integrity.* [6] *supplanted.* [7] *by vote.* [8] *with exile.* [9] *punished.* [10] Aristides is subj.; the clause is obj. of scribentem *that he should be banished.* [11] *worthy,* governs abl.

Cui ille respondit sē ignōrāre Aristīdēn;[12] sed sibi nōn placēre, quod tam cupidē labōrāsset, ut praeter cēterōs Iūstus appellārētur. Hīc decem annōrum lēgitimam[13] poenam nōn pertulit. Nam postquam Xerxēs in Graeciam dēscendit, sextō ferē annō quam erat expulsus, populī scītō[14] in patriam restitūtus est.

His services to Athens, 479–473 B.C.

2. Interfuit autem pūgnae nāvālī apud Salamīna, quae facta est prius quam poenā līberārētur. Idem praetor fuit Athēniēnsium apud Plataeās[1] in proeliō, quō fūsus barbarōrum exercitus Mardoniusque[2] interfectus est. Neque aliud[3] est ūllum hūius in rē mīlitārī inlūstre factum[4] quam ēius imperī memoria, iūstitiae vērō et aequitātis et innocentiae multa;[5] in prīmīs, quod hūius aequitāte factum est, cum in commūnī classe esset Graeciae simul cum Pausaniā,[6] quō duce Mardonius erat fugātus,[7] ut summa imperī maritimī ab Lacedaemoniīs transferrētur ad Athēniēnsēs; namque ante id tempus et marī et terrā ducēs erant Lacedaemoniī. Tum autem et intemperantiā Pausaniae et iūstitiā factum est Aristīdis, ut omnēs ferē cīvitātēs Graeciae ad Athēniēnsium societātem sē adplicārent[8] et adversus barbarōs hōs ducēs dēligerent sibi.

His integrity.

3. Quōs quō facilius repellerent, sī forte bellum renovāre cōnārentur, ad classēs aedificandās exercitūs-

1. [12] Greek acc. for **-em**. [13] *legal.* [14] *by decree.*

2. [1] *Plataea,* a town of Boeotia. [2] a Persian general. [3] **aliud quam**, *except.* [4] noun. [5] *sc.* **facta**. [6] *Pausanias,* a Spartan general. [7] *put to flight.* [8] *attached.*

que comparandōs quantum[1] pecūniae quaeque cīvitās daret, Aristīdēs delectus est qui cōnstitueret,[2] ēiusque arbitriō quadringēna[3] et sexāgēna talenta[4] quotannīs Dēlum sunt conlāta; id enim commūne aerārium[5] esse voluērunt. Quae omnis pecūnia posterō tempore Athēnās trānslāta est. Hīc quā fuerit abstinentiā, nūllum est certius indicium[7] quam quod, cum tantīs rēbus praefuisset, in tantā paupertāte[8] decessit, ut quī efferrētur[9] vix relīquerit. Quō factum est ut fīliae ēius pūblicē[10] alerentur et dē commūnī aerāriō dōtibus datīs conlocārentur[11]. Dēcessit autem ferē post annum quārtum quam Themistoclēs Athēnīs erat expulsus.

HANNIBAL

His greatness as a general.

1. Hannibal,[1] Hamilcaris fīlius Karthāginiēnsis. Sī vērum est, quod nēmō dubitat, ut populus Rōmānus omnēs gentēs virtūte superārit, non est īnfitiandum[3] Hannibalem tantō[4] praestitisse ceterōs imperātorēs prūdentiā, quantō[5] populus Rōmānus antecedat fortitudine cūnctās nātiōnēs. Nam quotiēnscumque[6] cum eō[7] congressus est in Italiā, semper discessit superior. Quod nisi[8] domī cīvium suōrum invidiā dēbilitātus[9] esset,

3. [1] *how much.* [2] purpose clause. [3] 400. [4] a *talent* of silver was worth about $1200. [5] *to Delos*, an island in the Aegean Sea. [6] *treasury.* [7] *proof.* [8] *poverty.* [9] **quī** (adv.) **efferrētur**, *that wherewith he might be buried.* [10] *at the public expense.* [11] *married.*

1. [1] One of the greatest leaders in history, born in Carthage, 247 B.C. [2] *of Hamilcar.* [3] *to be denied.* [4] *so much.* [5] *as.* [6] *as often as.* [7] *i.e.* the Romans. [8] **quod nisi**, *and if . . . not.* [9] *weakened.*

Rōmānōs vidētur superāre potuisse. Sed multōrum obtrectātiō [10] dēvīcit [11] ūnius virtūtem.

His relentless hatred toward Rome.

Hīc autem velut [12] hērēditāte relictum odium [13] paternum ergā [14] Rōmānōs sīc cōnservāvit, ut prius [15] animam quam id dēposuerit; quī [16] quidem, cum patriā [17] pulsus esset et aliēnārum opum indigēret,[18] numquam dēstiterit animō bellāre cum Rōmānīs.

2. Nam ut omittam Philippum,[1] quem absēns hostem reddidit [2] Rōmānīs, omnium īs temporibus potentissimus rēx Antiochus [3] fuit. Hunc tantā cupiditāte incendit bellandī, ut ūsque ā rubrō [4] marī arma cōnātus sit īnferre Italiae. Ad quem cum lēgātī vēnissent Rōmānī, quī dē ēius voluntāte explōrārent darentque operam cōnsiliīs [5] clandestīnīs,[6] ut Hannibalem in sūspiciōnem rēgī addūcerent, tamquam [7] ab ipsīs corruptus [8] alia atque [9] anteā sentīret, neque id frūstrā fēcissent.[10] idque Hannibal comperisset, sēque ab interiōribus cōnsiliīs sēgregārī [11] vīdisset, tempore datō adiit ad rēgem, eīque cum multa dē fidē suā et odiō in Rōmānōs commemorāsset, hōc adiūnxit: "Pater meus" inquit "Hamilcar, puerulō [12] mē, utpote [13] nōn amplius novem annōs nātō, in Hispāniam imperātor profēcīscēns, Karthāgine [14] Iovī [15]

1. [10] *jealousy*, nom. [11] **dē + vincō**. [12] *as though*. [13] *hatred*, acc. [14] *towards*. [15] **prius . . . id**, *his life sooner than it*. [16] *for he*. [17] *native land*. [18] *needed*.

2. [1] *Philip*, king of Macedonia. [2] *made*. [3] king of Syria. [4] *red*. [5] abl. of means. [6] *secret*. [7] *as if*. [8] *corrupted*. [9] *than;* the king had changed his mind. [10] **fēcissent**, etc., after **cum**. [11] *excluded*. [12] *little boy*, abl. abs. [13] *since*. [14] *at Carthage*. [15] not really *to Jupiter*, but to Baal, the god of his own country.

optimō māximō hostiās[16] immolāvit. Quae dīvīna rēs dum cōnficiēbātur, quaesīvit ā mē vellemne sēcum in castra proficīscī. Id cum libenter accēpissem atque ab eō petere coepissem nē dubitāret dūcere, tum ille 'Faciam' inquit, 'sī mihi fidem, quam postulō, dederis.' Simul mē ad āram[17] addūxit, apud quam sacrificāre[18] īnstituerat, eamque cēterīs remōtīs tenentem iūrāre iussit numquam mē in amicitiā cum Rōmānīs fore. Id ego iūsiūrandum patrī datum ūsque ad hanc aetātem ita cōnservāvī, ut nēminī dubium esse dēbeat, quīn reliquō tempore eādem mente sim futūrus. Quārē sī quid amīcē[19] dē Rōmānīs cōgitābis, nōn imprūdenter fēceris, sī mē[20] cēlāris; cum quidem bellum parābis, tē ipsum frūstrāberis,[21] si nōn mē in eō prīncipem posueris."

Hannibal crosses the Alps and invades Italy, 218 B.C.

3. Hāc igitur quā dīximus aetāte cum patre in Hispāniam profectus est; cūius post obitum,[1] Hasdrubale[2] imperātōre suffectō,[3] equitātuī omnī praefuit. Hōc quoque interfectō, exercitus summam imperī ad eum dētulit. Id Karthāginem dēlātum pūblicē[4] comprobātum[5] est. Sīc Hannibal minor quīnque et vīgintī annīs nātus imperātor factus, proximō trienniō omnēs gentēs Hispāniae bellō subēgit; Saguntum,[6] foederātam[7] cīvitātem, vī expūgnāvit, trēs exercitūs māximōs comparāvit. Ex hīs ūnum in Āfricam mīsit, alterum cum Hasdrubale frātre in Hispāniā relīquit, tertium in Ītaliam sēcum

2. [16] *animals* (for sacrifice). [17] *the altar.* [18] *to sacrifice.* [19] adv. [20] *from me.* [21] *you will deceive.*

3. [1] *death.* [2] *Hasdrubal,* a Carthaginian. [3] *having been appointed.* [4] *by the state.* [5] *approved.* [6] *Saguntum,* a town in Spain. [7] *allied* w. the Romans.

dūxit. Ut saltum[8] Pȳrēnaeum[9] trānsiit, quācumque iter fēcit, cum omnibus incolīs cōnflīxit; nōminem nisi victum dīmīsit. Ad Alpēs posteāquam vēnit, quā Italiam ab Gallliā sēiungunt,[10] quās nēmō unquam cum exercitū ante eum praeter Herculem[11] Grāium[12] trānsierat (quō factō is hodiē[13] saltus Grāius appellātur), Alpicōs[14] cōnantēs prohibēre trānsitū conēidit, loca patefēcit, itinera mūniit,[15] effēcit ut eā elephantus ōrnātus[16] īre posset, quā anteā ūnus homō inermis vix poterat rēpere.[17] Hāc cōpiās trādūxit in Italiamque pervēnit.

Hannibal's victories, 217 B.C.

4. Cōnflīxerat apud Rhodanum cum P. Cornēliō Scīpiōne cōnsule eumque pepulerat. Cum hōc eōdem Clastidiī[1] apud Padum dēcernit[2] sauciumque inde ac fugātum[3] īmittit. Tertio īdem Scīpiō cum conlēgā Ti. Longō apud Trebiam[4] adversus eum vēnit. Cum eīs manum cōnseruit;[5] utrōsque prōflīgāvit. Inde per Ligurēs Appenninum[6] trānsiit, petēns Etrūriam. Hōc in itinere adeō gravī morbō adficitur oculōrum, ut posteā numquam dextrō aequē bene ūsus sit. Quā valētūdine cum elephantum[7] premerētur lectīcāque[8] ferrētur, C. Flāminium[9] cōnsulem apud Trasumennum[10] cum exercitū īnsidiīs circumventum occīdit, neque multō post C. Centenium praetōrem cum dēlēctā manū saltūs[11] occupan-

3. [8] *mountain pass,* or *chain,* acc. [9] *of the Pyrenees.* [10] *divide.* [11] *Hercules.* [12] *Grecian.* [13] *to-day.* [14] *inhabitants of the Alps.* [15] *built.* [16] *with trappings.* [17] *to creep, crawl.*

4. [1] *at Clastidium,* a fortress near the Po (**Padus**). [2] *fights.* [3] *defeated.* [4] *the Trebia,* a river in northern Italy. [5] *fought* (hand-to-hand). [6] *the Apennines.* [7] *still.* [8] *on a couch.* [9] *Flaminius.* [10] *Trasumennus,* a lake in Italy. [11] *the heights.*

tem. Hinc in pūliam Āpervēnit. Ibi obviam[12] eī vēnērunt duo cōnsulēs, C. Terentius et L. Aemilius. Utriusque exercitus unō proeliō fugāvit, Paulum cōnsulem occīdit et aliquot praetereā cōnsulārēs,[13] in eīs Cn. Servīlium Geminum, qui superiōre annō fuerat cōnsul.

Hannibal outwits Fabius.

5. Hāc pūgnā pugnātā, Rōmam profectus nūllō resistente in propinquīs urbī montibus morātus est. Cum aliquot ibi diēs castra habuisset et Capuam[1] reverterētur, Q. Fabius Māximus, dictātor Rōmānus, in agrō Falernō[2] eī sē obiēcit. Hic clausus locorum angustiis, noctū sine ūllō dētrīmentō exercitūs sē expedīvit. Fabiōque, callidissimo imperātōrī, dedit verba.[4] Namque obductā[5] nocte, sarmenta in cornibus iuvencōrum[6] dēligāta incendit, ēiusque generis multitūdinem māgnam dispālātam[7] immīsit.[8] Quō repentīnō vīsū[9] obiectō, tantum terrōrem iniēcit exercituī Rōmānōrum, ut ēgredī extrā vāllum nēmō sit ausus. Hanc post rem gestam nōn ita multīs diēbus M. Minucium Rūfum, magistrum[10] equitum parī ac dictātōrem imperiō, dolō prōductum in proelium fugāvit.[11] Tī. Semprōnium Gracchum, iterum cōnsulem in Lucānīs absens in īnsidiās inductum sustulit.[12] M. Claudium Mārcellum, quīnquiēns[13] cōnsulem, apud Venusiam[14] parī modō interfēcit. Longum est omnia ēnumerāre proelia. Quārē hoc ūnum satis erit dictum, ex quō intellegī possit, quantus ille fuerit:

4. [12] *against*, w. dat. [13] *ex-consuls.*

5. [1] *to Capua.* [2] *the Falernian district.* [3] *freed.* [4] dedit verba, *deceived.* [5] *being overcast.* [6] *of bullocks.* [7] *straggling.* [8] *let loose.* [9] *sight.* [10] *master.* [11] *put to flight.* [12] *killed.* [13] *five times.* [14] *Venusia*, in southern Italy.

quamdiū [15] in Italiā fuit, nēmō eī in aciē restitit. nēmō adversus eum post Cannēnsem[16] pūgnam in campō castra posuit.

Hannibal is defeated at Zama, 202 B.C.

6. Hinc invictus patriam dēfēnsum [1] revocātus bellum gessit adversus P. Scīpiōnem, fīlium ēius Scīpiōnis quem ipse prīmō apud Rhodanum, iterum apud Padum, tertiō apud Trebiam fugārat. Cum hōc, exhaustīs iam patriae facultātibus, capīvit impraesentiārum [2] bellum compōnere,[3] quō valentior posteā congrederētur. Inde conloquium convēnit, condiciōnēs nōn convēnērunt. Post id factum paucīs diēbus apud Zāmam [4] cum cōdem cōnflīxit; pulsus incrēdibile dictū bīduō et duōbus noctibus Hadrūmētum [5] pervēnit, quod abest ab Zāmā circiter mīlia passuum trecenta. In hāc fugā Numidae, quī simul cum eō ex aciē excesserant, īnsidiātī [6] sunt eī: quōs nōn sōlum effūgit, sed etiam ipsōs oppressit. Hadrūmētī reliquōs ē fugā conlēgit; novīs dīlēctibus [7] paucīs diēbus multōs contrāxit.

Hannibal is elected king at Carthage, 199 B.C.

7. Cum in apparandō [1] ācerrimē esset occupātus, Karthāginiēnsēs bellum cum Rōmānīs composuērunt. Ille nihilō sētius exercituī posteā praefuit rēsque in Africā gessit ūsque ad [2] P. Sulpicium C. Aurēlium cōnsulēs. Hīs enim magistrātibus lēgātī Karthāginiēnsēs Rōmam

5. [15] *as long as.* [16] *of Cannae.*

6. [1] supine. [2] adv., *for the time being.* [3] **bellum compōnere,** *make peace.* [4] *Zama,* in Africa. [5] *Hadrumetum,* in Africa. [6] *plotted against.* [7] *levies.*

7. [1] *preparing.* [2] *until the consulship of.*

vēnērunt, quī senātuī populōque Rōmānō grātiās agerent, quod cum eīs pācem fēcissent, ob eamque rem corōnā aureā eōs dōnārent, simulque peterent, ut obsidēs eōrum Fregellīs[3] essent captīvīque redderentur. Hīs ex senātūs cōnsultō respōnsum est: mūnus eōrum grātum acceptumque esse; obsidēs, quō locō rogārent, futūrōs; captīvōs nōn remissūrōs, quod Hannibalem, cūius operā[4] susceptum bellum foret,[5] inimīcissimum nōminī Rōmānō, etiamnunc[6] cum imperiō apud exercitum habērent itemque frātrem eius Māgōnem.[7] Hōc respōnsō Karthāginiēnsēs cognitō Hannibalem domum et Māgōnem revocārunt.

Hūc ut rediit, rēx factus est, postquam imperātor fuerat, annō secundō et vīcēsimō; ut enim Rōmae cōnsulēs, sīc Karthāgine quotannīs annuī bīnī rēgēs creābantur. In eō magistrātū parī dīligentiā sē Hannibal praebuit, ac fuerat in bellō. Namque effēcit ex novīs vectīgālibus nōn sōlum ut esset pecūnia, quae Rōmānīs ex foedere[8] penderētur,[9] sed etiam superesset, quae in aerāriō repōnerētur. Deinde, M. Claudiō L. Fūriō cōnsulibus, Rōmā lēgātī Karthāginem vēnērunt. Hōs Hannibal ratus[10] suī exposcendī grātiā[11] missōs, priusquam eīs senātus[12] darētur, nāvem ascendit clam atque in Syriam ad Antiochum perfūgit. Hāc rē palam factā, Poenī nāvēs duās, quae eum comprehenderent, sī possent cōnsequī, mīsērunt; bona eius pūblicārunt,[13] domum ā fundāmentīs[14] disiēcērunt, ipsum exsulem iūdicārunt.

7. [3] *at Fregellae,* in Latium. [4] *agency.* [5] *would be.* [6] *still.* [7] *Mago.* [8] *in accordance with the treaty.* [9] *paid.* [10] *thinking.* [11] *for the purpose of demanding.* [12] *a hearing before the senate.* [13] *confiscated.* [14] *foundations.*

Hannibal plans another invasion of Italy. 193 B.C.

S. At Hannibal annō quārtō, postquam domō profūgerat, L. Cornēliō Q. Minuciō cōnsulibus, cum quīnque nāvibus Africam accessit in fīnibus Cyrēnaeōrum, sī forte Karthāginiēnsēs ad bellum indūcere posset Antiochī spē fīdūciāque,[1] cui iam persuāserat ut cum exercitibus in Italiam proficīscerētur. Hūc Māgōnem frātrem exēgit.[2] Id ubi Poenī rēscīvērunt, Māgōnem eādem, quā frātrem, absentem adfēcērunt poenā. Illī dēspērātīs rēbus cum solvissent nāvēs ac vēla ventīs dedissent, Hannibal ad Antiochum pervēnit.

Dē Māgōnis interitū[3] duplex memoria prōdita est: namque aliī naufragiō,[4] aliī ā servulīs[5] ipsīus interfectum cum scrīptum relīquērunt. Antiochus autem, sī tam in gerendō bellō cōnsiliīs ēius pārēre[6] voluisset, quam in suscipiendō īnstituerat, propius Tiberī[7] quam Thermopylīs dē summā imperī dīmicāsset. Quem etsī multa stultē[8] cōnārī vidēbat, tamen nūllā dēseruit in rē. Praefuit paucīs nāvibus, quās ex Syriā iussus erat in Asiam dūcere, eīsque adversus Rhodiōrum classem in Pamphyliō marī cōnflīxit. In quō cum multitūdine adversāriōrum suī superārentur, ipse, quō cornū rem gessit, fuit superior.

Hannibal in Crete.

9. Antiochō fugātō, verēns nē dēderētur, quod sine dubiō[1] accidisset, sī suī fēcisset potestātem, Crētam ad Gortȳniōs[2] vēnit, ut ibi, quō sē cōnferret, cōnsīderāret.[3]

8. [1] *reliance* (upon). [2] *summoned.* [3] *death.* [4] *by shipwreck.* [5] *slaves.* [6] *to follow.* [7] *the Tiber*, dat. after **propius**. [8] *foolishly.*

9. [1] *doubt.* [2] *the Gortynians.* [3] *consider.*

Vīdit autem vir omnium callidissimus in māgnō sē fore perīculō, nisi quid prōvīdisset, propter avāritiam Crētēnsium; māgnam enim sēcum pecūniam portābat, dē quā sciēbat exīsse fāmam. Itaque capit tāle cōnsilium.[4] Amphorās[5] complūrēs complet plumbō, summās operit[6] aurō et argentō. Hās praesentibus prīncipibus, dēpōnit in templō Diānae, simulāns sē suās fortūnās illōrum fideī crēdere.[7] Hīs in errōrem inductīs, statuās aēneās,[8] quās sēcum portābat, omnī suā pecūniā complet eāsque in propatulō[9] domī abicit. Gortyniī templum māgnā cūrā custōdiunt, nōn tam ā cēterīs quam ab Hannibale nē ille, īnscientibus eīs, tolleret sua sēcumque dūceret.

Hannibal's plan to conquer the king of Pergamum.

10. Sīc cōnservātīs suīs rēbus omnibus Poenus, inlūsīs[1] Crētēnsibus, ad Prūsiam[2] in Pontum[3] pervēnit. Apud quem eōdem animō fuit ergā[4] Italiam, neque aliud quicquam ēgit quam rēgem armāvit et exacuit[5] adversus Rōmānōs. Quem cum vidēret domesticīs opibus minus esse rōbustum,[6] conciliābat cēterōs rēgēs, adiungēbat bellicōsās nātiōnēs. Dissidēbat[7] ab eō Pergamēnus[8] rēx Eumenēs, Rōmānīs amīcissimus, bellumque inter eōs gerēbātur et marī et terrā; sed utrobīque[9] Eumenēs plūs valēbat propter Rōmānōrum societātem. Quō magis cupiēbat eum Hannibal opprimī; quem sī remōvisset, faciliōra sibi cētera fore arbitrābātur. Ad hunc

9. [4] *the following.* [5] *jars.* [6] *covers the tops.* [7] *entrust.* [8] *bronze.* [9] *the court.*

10. [1] *deceived.* [2] *Prusias,* king of Bithynia. [3] *Pontus.* [4] *toward.* [5] *incited.* [6] *strong.* [7] *disagreed with* (**ab**). [8] *of Pergamum.* [9] *in both places.*

interficiendum tālem iniit ratiōnem. Classe paucīs
diēbus erant dēcertātūrī.[10] Superābātur nāvium multitū-
dine; dolō erat pūgnandum, cum pār nōn esset armīs. Imperāvit quam plūrimās venēnātās[11] serpentēs vīvās colligī eāsque in vāsa fictilia[12] conicī. Hārum cum effēcisset māgnum multitūdinem, diē ipsō, quō factūrus erat nāvāle proelium, classiāriōs convocat eōsque praecipit, omnēs ut in ūnam Eumenis rēgis concurrant nāvem, ā[13] cēterīs tantum[14] satis habeant[15] sē dēfendere; id illōs facile serpentium multitūdine cōnsecūtūrōs. Rēx autem in quā nāve vehērētur,[16] ut scīrent, sē factūrum; quem sī aut cēpissent aut interfēcissent, māgnō eīs pollicētur praemiō fore.

The success of the plan.

11. Tālī cohortātiōne mīlitum factā, classis ab utrīsque in proelium dēdūcitur. Quārum aciē cōnstitūta, prīnsquam sīgnum pūgnae darētur, Hannibal, ut palam faceret suīs, quō locō Eumenēs esset, tabellārium[1] in scaphā cum cādūceō[2] mittit. Quī ubi ad nāvēs adversāriōrum pervēnit epistulamque ostendēns sē rēgem profectus est quaerere, statim ad Eumenem dēductus est quod nēmō dubitābat quīn aliquid dē pāce esset scrīptum. Tabellārius, ducis nāve dēclārātā suīs, eōdem unde erat ēgressus sē recēpit. At Eumenēs, solūtā epistulā, nihil in eā repperit nisi quae ad[3] inrīdendum eum pertinēret. Cūius reī etsī causam mīrābātur

10. [10] *about to fight.* [11] *poisonous.* [12] *earthen jars.* [13] *against.* [14] *only.* [15] *should be content.* [16] *was sailing.*

11. [1] *a courier.* [2] *a herald's staff.* [3] **ad . . . pertinērent,** *served to make him ridiculous.*

neque reperiēbat, tamen proelium statim committere nōn dubitāvit. Hōrum in concursū Bithȳnī[4] Hannibalis praeceptō[5] ūniversī nāvem Eumenis adoriuntur. Quōrum vim rēx cum sustinēre nōn posset, fugā salūtem petiit; quam cōnsecūtus nōn esset, nisi intrā sua praesidia sē recēpisset, quae in proximō lītore erant conlocāta. Reliquae Pergamēnae nāvēs cum adversāriōs premerent ācrius, repente in eās vāsa fictilia, dē quibus suprā mentiōnem fēcimus, conicī coepta sunt. Quae iacta initiō rīsum[6] pūgnantibus concitārunt, neque quārē id fieret poterat intellegī. Postquam autem nāvēs suās opplētās[7] cōnspexērunt serpentibus, novā rē perterritī, cum quid potissimum[8] vītārent nōn vidērent, puppēs vertērunt sēque ad sua castra nautica rettulērunt. Sīc Hannibal cōnsiliō arma Pergamēnōrum superāvit neque tum sōlum, sed saepe aliās[9] pedestribus cōpiīs pārī prūdentiā pepulit adversāriōs.

Pursued by the Romans, Hannibal commits suicide.

12. Quae dum in Asiā geruntur, accidit cāsū ut lēgātī Prūsiae[1] Rōmae apud T. Quīnctium Flāminīnum cōnsulārem cēnārent,[2] atque ibi dē Hannibale mentiōne factā, ex eīs ūnus dīceret eum in Prūsiae rēgnō esse. Id posterō diē Flāminīnus senātuī dētulit. Patrēs cōnscrīptī,[3] quī Hannibale vīvō numquam sē sine īnsidiīs futūrōs exīstimārent, lēgātōs in Bithȳniam mīsērunt, in eīs Flāminīnum, quī ab rēge peterent, nē inimīcissimum suum sēcum habēret sibique dēderet. Hīs

11. [4] *the Bithynians.* [5] *by command.* [6] *laughter,* acc. [7] *filled.* [8] *most.* [9] adv.

12. [1] *of Prusias.* [2] *were dining.* [3] *i.e.* the senators.

Prūsiās negāre ausus nōn est; illud recūsāvit, nē id ā sē fierī postulārent, quod adversus iūs hospitī esset; ipsī, sī possent, comprehenderent; locum, ubi esset, facile inventūrōs. Hannibal enim ūnō locō sē tenēbat, in castellō quod eī ā rēge datum erat mūnerī, idque sīc aedificārat, ut in omnibus partibus aedificī exitūs [1] habēret, scīlicet [2] verēns nē ūsū venīret, [3] quod accidit. Hūc cum lēgātī Rōmānōrum vēnissent ac multitūdine domum ēius circumdedissent, puer ab iānuā [4] prōspiciēns Hannibalī dīxit plūrēs praeter cōnsuētūdinem armātōs appārēre. [5] Quī imperāvit eī, ut omnēs forēs [6] aedificī circumīret ac properē [7] sibi nūntiāret, num [8] eōdem modō undique obsidērētur. Puer cum celeriter, quid vīdisset, renūntiāsset omnēsque exitūs occupātōs ostendisset, sēnsit id nōn fortuītō [9] factum, sed sē petī neque sibi diūtius vītam esse retinendam. Quam nē aliēnō arbitriō dīmitteret, memor [10] prīstinārum virtūtum, venēnum, [11] quod semper sēcum habēre cōnsuērat, sūmpsit.

His writings.

13. Sīc vir fortissimus, multīs variīsque perfūnctus [1] laboribus, annō adquiēvit [2] septuāgēsimō. Quibus cōnsulibus interierit, nōn convenit. Namque Atticus M. Claudiō Mārcellō Q. Fabiō Labeōne cōnsulibus mortuum [3] in annālī [4] suō scrīptum relīquit, at Polybius L. Aemiliō Paulō Cn. Baebiō Tamphilō, Sulpicius autem Blithō [5] P. Cornēliō Cethēgō M. Baebiō Tamphilō. Atque hīc

12. [4] *exits.* [5] *of course.* [6] **ūsū venīret**, *should happen.* [7] *the door.* [8] *were in sight.* [9] *the doors.* [10] *quickly.* [11] *whether.* [12] *by chance.* [13] *mindful.* [14] *the poison.*

13. [1] *having performed.* [2] *died* (rested). [3] sc. **eum esse.** [4] *annals.* [5] *Blitho*, nom.

tantus vir tantīsque bellīs dīstrictus[6] nōnnihil[7] temporis tribuit litteris. Namque aliquot eius librī sunt,[8] Graecō sermōne cōnfectī, in eīs ad Rhodiōs[9] dē Cn. Manlī Vulsōnis in Asiā rēbus gestīs. Hūius bellī gesta multī[10] memoriae prōdidērunt, sed ex eīs duo, quī cum eō in castrīs fuērunt simulque vixērunt quamdiū[11] fortūna passa est, Sīlēnus et Sōsylus Lacedaemonius. Atque hōc Sōsylō Hannibal litterārum Graecārum ūsus est doctōre.[12]

Sed nōs tempus est hūius librī facere fīnem et Rōmānōrum explicāre[13] imperātōrēs, quō facilius, conlātīs utrōrumque factis, qui virī praeferendī sint possit iūdicārī.

CATO

His public services, 214–205 B.C.

1. M. Catō,[1] ortus mūnicipiō[2] Tusculō,[3] adulēscentulus, priusquam honōribus operam[4] daret, versātus est in Sabīnīs, quod ibi hēredium[6] ā patre relictum habēbat. Inde hortātū[7] L. Valerī Flaccī, quem in cōnsulātū cēnsūrāque[8] habuit conlegam, ut M. Perpenna censorius[9] nārrāre[10] solitus est, Rōmam dēmigrāvit in forōque[11] esse coepit. Prīmum stīpendium meruit[12] annōrum[13]

13. [6] *occupied.* [7] *a little.* [8] *are in existence.* [9] *a book addressed to the Rhodians.* [10] subj. [11] *as long as.* [12] *as a teacher.* [13] *to describe.*

1. [1] A Roman statesman, general, and writer, surnamed "The Censor." He sought to restore the simplicity of manners that prevailed in the early republic. As the enemy of Carthage, he is said to have closed his speeches in the senate with **Dēlenda est Karthāgō**. [2] *a free town* (having the right of Roman suffrage). [3] *Tusculum*, a town in Latium. [4] *attention.* [5] *the Sabines.* [6] (hereditary) *estate.* [7] *upon the advice.* [8] *censorship.* [9] *ex-censor.* [10] *to relate.* [11] *in the forum, i.e.* in public life. [12] **stīpendium meruit** (earned pay), *served.* [13] *at the age of.*

decem septemque. Q. Fabiō M. Claudiō cōnsulibus tribūnus mīlitum in Siciliā fuit. Inde ut rediit, castra secūtus est C. Claudī Nerōnis,[11] māgnīque opera ēius exīstimāta est in proeliō apud Sēnam[15] quō cecidit Hasdrubal, frāter Hannibalis. Quaestor obtigit[16] P. Āfricānō cōnsulī, cum quō nōn prō[17] sortis necessitūdine vīxit; namque ab eō perpetuā dissēnsit vītā. Aedilis[18] plēbēī factus est cum C. Helviō. Praetor prōvinciam obtinuit Sardiniam, ex quā quaestor superiōre tempore ex Āfricā dēcēdēns Q. Ennium poētam dēdūxerat; quod[19] nōn minōris aestimāmus quam quemlibet[20] amplissimum Sardiniēnsem triūmphum.[21]

Cato as consul, 195 B.C.; *as censor*, 184 B.C.

2. Cōnsulātum gessit cum L. Valeriō Flaccō; sorte prōvinciam nactus Hispāniam citeriōrem ex eā triumphum dēportāvit. Ibi cum diūtius morārētur, P. Scīpiō Āfricānus cōnsul iterum, cūius in priōre cōnsulātū quaestor fuerat, voluit eum dē prōvinciā dēpellere et ipse eī succēdere, neque hōc per senātum efficere potuit, cum quidem Scīpiō prīncipātum in cīvitāte obtinēret, quod tum nōn potentiā sed iūre rēs pūblica administrābātur. Quā ex rē īrātus[1] senātuī, cōnsulātū perāctō,[2] privātus in urbe mānsit. At Catō, cēnsor cum eōdem Flaccō factus, sevērē[3] praefuit eī potestātī.[4] Nam et in complūrēs nōbilēs animadvertit, et multās[5] rēs novās in ēdictum addidit, quā rē lūxuria reprimerētur, quae iam tum

1. [14] *of Nero.* [15] *Sena*, a town in northern Italy. [16] *he was appointed by lot.* [17] **prō . . . necessitūdine**, *in accordance with their official relation.* [18] *aedile.* [19] *this fact.* [20] *any.* [21] *triumph.*

2. [1] *angry* (at). [2] *completed.* [3] *with rigor.* [4] *office.* [5] **multās . . . addidit**, *introduced many new plans in his proclamation* (ēdictum).

incipiēbant pullulāre.[6] Circiter annōs octōgintā, ūsque ad extrēmam aetātem ab adulēscentiā, reī pūblicae causā suscipere inimīcitiās nōn dēstitit. Ā multīs temptātus[7] nōn modo nūllum dētrīmentum exīstimātiōnis[8] fēcit, sed, quoad vīxit, virtūtum laude crēvit.

His attainments. His writings.

3. In omnibus rēbus singulārī fuit industriā: nam et agricola sollers[1] et perītus iūris cōnsultus[2] et māgnus imperātor et probābilis[3] ōrātor et cupidissimus litterārum fuit. Quārum studium etsī senior[4] arripuerat,[5] tamen tantum prōgressum fēcit ut nōn facile reperīrī possit, neque dē Graecīs neque dē Italicīs rēbus, quod eī fuerit incognitum. Ab adulēscentiā cōnfēcit ōrātiōnēs. Senex historiās scrībere īnstituit. Eārum sunt librī[6] septem. Prīmus continet rēs gestās rēgum populī Rōmānī, secundus et tertius unde quaeque cīvitās orta sit Italica, ob quam rem omnēs Orīginēs[7] vidētur appellāsse. In quārtō autem bellum Poenicum[8] est prīmum, in quīntō secundum. Atque haec omnia capitulātim[9] sunt dicta. Reliqua quoque bella parī[10] modō persecūtus est ūsque ad praetūram[11] Servī Galbae, quī dīripuit Lūsitānōs;[12] atque hōrum bellōrum ducēs nōn nōmināvit, sed sine nōminibus rēs notāvit.[13] In eīsdem exposuit quae in Ītaliā Hispāniīsque aut fierent aut vidērentur admīranda; in quibus multa industria et dīligentia compāret,[14] nūlla doctrīna.[15]

2. [6] *to spring up.* [7] *attacked.* [8] *of reputation.*

3. [1] *expert.* [2] **iūris cōnsultus**, *a lawyer.* [3] *pleasing.* [4] *when quite old;* he is said to have begun the study of Greek at the age of eighty. [5] *eagerly engaged in.* [6] *books.* [7] *Origins,* the title of the work. [8] *Punic,* or *Carthaginian.* [9] *briefly.* [10] *the same.* [11] *praetorship.* [12] *the Lusitani.* [13] *recorded.* [14] *appears.* [15] *learning.*

NOTES, GRAMMATICAL APPENDIX AND LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION

ABBREVIATIONS

abbr.	abbreviated	*intr.*	intransitive
Ab., abl.	ablative	*Introd.*	Introduction
abs.	absolute	*irr.*	irregular
Ac., acc.	accusative	*l.*	line
adj.	adjective	*lit.*	literally
adv.	adverb	*loc.*	locative
App.	Appendix	*M., masc.*	masculine
appos.	appositive / apposition	*N., neut.*	neuter
		neg.	negative
cf. (*confer*)	compare	*N., nom.*	nominative
cl.	clause	*num.*	numeral
comp.	comparative	*obj.*	object
conj.	conjunction	*p.*	page
cons.	consonant	*part.*	participle
D., dat.	dative	*pass.*	passive
def.	defective	*perf.*	perfect
dem.	demonstrative	*pl., plur.*	plural
dep.	deponent	*plup.*	pluperfect
dir. disc.	direct discourse	*poss.*	possessive
dist.	distributive	*pred.*	predicate
F., fem.	feminine	*prep.*	preposition
ff.	following	*pres.*	present
freq.	frequentative	*pron.*	pronoun
fut.	future	*rel.*	relative
F. P.	future perfect	*sc.* (*scilicet*)	supply
G., gen.	genitive	*sing.*	singular
i.e. (*id est*)	that is	*subj.*	subject
impers.	impersonal	*subjunct.*	subjunctive
impf.	imperfect	*sup.*	superlative
indecl.	indeclinable	*tr.*	transitive
indef.	indefinite	*trans.*	translate / translation
indic.	indicative		
interrog.	interrogative	*w.*	with

NOTES

(The references are to the Grammatical Appendix, unless "Introd." precedes.)

BOOK I

Chapter 1

1. **Gallia**: see Introd. 14 and 22. **omnis**: *as a whole.* **divisa**: pred. adj. w. **est**; *is divided.* **quarum**: 63, *e.*

2. **unam, aliam, tertiam** sc **partem** w. each. **qui**: sc. an antecedent **ei**, *they*, as subj. of **incolunt**, *they inhabit the third part who*, etc. It is best to translate the sentence by a passive verb: *one part is inhabited by the Belgae*, etc., *the third part by those who*, etc.

3. **ipsorum**: 114, *b.* **Celtae, Galli**: 62, *b.* **nostra**: sc. **lingua**, *i.e.* the Roman.

4. **lingua**: 97. **legibus**: 174. **inter se**: *from one another.*

5. **ab Aquitanis**: 83.

6. **dividit**: 118, *c.*

7. **Horum**: 63, note.

8. **cultu**: *civilization*, seen in customs, dress, etc.; **humanitate**: mental and moral *refinement* **provinciae**: see Introd. 14.

9. **minime**: modifies **saepe**: see Vocab. **mercatores**: nom. case; they came from the Mediterranean coast, probably from Marseilles, bringing wine, etc.

10. **ea**: *those things*, obj. of **important**. **effeminandos**: 164, *c.*

11. **Germanis**: 73.

12. **quibuscum**: 94, *b.* **Qua de causa**: 115, *f*, and 171, *b.*

13. **quoque**: *i.e.* the Helvetii are brave for the same reason as the Belgae. **virtute**: 97.

15. **cum aut . . . prohibent**: cum here = et tum. **suis** and **ipsi** refer to the Helvetii: **eos** and **eorum** to the Germans, 112, *a.* **suis finibus**: 83.

17. **quam**: obj. of **obtinere**. **Gallos obtinere**: 149.

19. **ab (Sequanis)**: *on the side of.*

21. **ab (extremis finibus)**: *at.* **Galliae**: *i.e.* central Gaul, which has just been bounded.

25. **ad (Hispaniam)**: *near.*

CHAPTER 2

28. **is**: 113. **Messala (et) Pisone**: 99, *b*, 1 and 172; the year was 61 B.C.

29. **regni**: 63, *c*. There was no king in Helvetia at this time. The former monarchy had given place to a government by chiefs or nobles, constituting the "**nobilitas.**" Orgetorix, the most powerful of these, aimed at restoring the monarchy, with himself as king. **inductus**: agrees w. **is.**

30. **civitati**: 67, *b*. **ut . . . exirent**: obj. of **persuasit**, 143 and 145, *a*.

31. **copiis**: 94. **exirent**: pl. because **civitas**, the implied subject is collective, 118, *d*. **perfacile esse**: *(he said) it was very easy*, depending upon the idea of saying implied in **persuasit**, 151. **cum . . . praestarent**: 138, *b*. **omnibus**: 67, *c*. and 104.

32. **imperio potiri**: 88.

33. **Id . . . persuasit**: *he persuaded them of this the more easily on this account.* **id**: direct obj. of **persuasit**; lit. persuaded it to them. **hoc**: 90.

34. **una ex parte**: *on one side*, 171, *b*. **latissimo**, 107.

37. **tertia**: sc. ex parte.

39. **rebus**: 90. **ut . . . vagarentur**: 145, *c*. **et . . . et**: *both* (omit in translation) . . . *and*

40. **finitimis**: 67, *c*. **qua ex parte**: *and for that reason.*

41. **homines**: appositive, *being men.* **bellandi**: 64 and 165, *a*.

42. **Pro**: *considering.* **multitudine**: 263,000 persons, as stated in chap. 29. **autem**: 171, *c*. **belli atque fortitudinis**: 173.

43. **se**: 77.

44. **milia**: modified by the following numerals; case, 80. **passuum**: 63, *e*. **CCXL**=**ducenta (et) quadraginta.**

45. **CLXXX**=**centum (et) octoginta.**

CHAPTER 3

46. **His rebus**: *by these considerations, facts*, 87.

47. **ea**: obj. of **comparare**, 113, *c*. **ad proficiscendum**: 165, *c*. **pertinerent**: 134.

48. **comparare**: w. **constituerunt**, 150.

49. **quam maximum, quam maximas**: 107, *a*.

50. **ut . . . suppeteret**: 135. **frumenti**: 63, *e*.

52. **conficiendas**: 164, *c*, note.

53. **in tertium annum**: *for the third year*. **confirmant, deligitur**. 120, *a*.

54. **sibi**: 67, *c*.

56. **filio**: 52. **cuius**: 63, *a*.

57. **regnum**: the government of the Sequani was like that of the Helvetii; see note, chap. 2, l. 29. **annos**: 80.

58. **amicus**: 62, *b*. **ut . . . occuparet**: 145, *a*.

59. **quod**: relative. **ante**: adv.

60. **Dumnorigi**: w. **persuadet** (l. 62).

61. **tempore**: 100.

62. **plebi**: 73. **acceptus**: pred. adj. w. **erat**, *was popular*. **ei**: 67, *a*.

64. **factu**: 166, *b*. **esse**: the subj. is **conata perficere**; *that it is easy to accomplish the undertakings*. **illis**: dat. w. **probat**, 67, *a*.

65. **obtenturus esset**: 162 and 138, *a*.

66. **non esse dubium**: *[illegible] there was no doubt*, depending on the idea of *saying* in **probat**, 153, 154. **quin . . . possent**: 145, *e*. **plurimum**: see Vocab. and 82.

67. **se**: subj. of **conciliaturum (esse)**. **copiis**: 87. **illis**: *for them*.

68. **inter se**: *to one another*.

69. **fidem . . . iurandum**: 173. **regno**: 99, *a*, 1. **tres**: *i.e.* the Helvetii, Haedui, and Sequani.

70. **Galliae**: 65, *d*.

CHAPTER 4

72. **Ea res**: *this [illegible]*, *i.e.* of Orgetorix, Casticus, and Dumnorix. **est**: w. **enuntiata**.

73. **Moribus**: 92. **causam**: Orgetorix was to be tried for seeking to become a king (chap. 3, l. 65), not for the plan of chap. 2, which the Helvetii had already accepted.

74. **damnatum**: (*if*) *found guilty*, agreeing w. **eum**, *him* understood as obj. of **sequi**. **poenam**: subj. of **sequi**. **oportebat**: 119, *a*. **ut . . . cremaretur**: in appos. w. **poenam**, 143 and 145, *d*.

76. **Die**: 100. **causae dictionis**: *for the trial* (lit. of the pleading of the case).

77. **familiam**: *vassals*, including kinsmen and dependents. **ad**: adv. *about*, modifying **decem**. **hominum**: 63, note.

78. **clientes**: *i.e.*, free retainers. **obaeratos**: in Gaul debtors became slaves of the creditor.

80. **ne . . . diceret**: 135. **Cum . . . conaretur**: 137, *b*.

81. **armis**: 87.

83. **ut**: *as*, 130, *f*.

84. **quin**: 145, *e*.

CHAPTER 5

86. **facere**. 150. **finibus**: 83, *a*. **ut . . . exeant**: 145, *d*.

87. **Ubi . . . sunt**: 137, *a*. **se**: 77. **ad eam rem paratos**: *ready for this undertaking*.

88. **oppida**: these were fortified; a **vicus** was not. **numero**: 97. **ad**: adv., *about*.

90. **praeter**: the obj. may be the clause following, or **id** supplied as antecedent of **quod**. **portaturi**: 162.

91. **domum**: 79, *a*. **spe sublata**: 99, *a*, 1.

92. **subeunda**: 164, *c*. **mensium**: 63, *d*.

93. **sibi**: 70. **domo**: 83, *b*. **quemque efferre**: 77.

94. **finitimis**: 52; these tribes lived north of the Helvetii.

95. **uti**: w. **proficiscantur**. **usi consilio**: 88.

96. **Boios**: obj. of **adsciscunt**; see Vocab.

98. **receptos**: w. **Boios**; translate *having received into their number* (**ad se**) *the Boii, who*, etc., *they unite with them as allies*.

CHAPTER 6

99. **itineribus**: omit in translation, 115, *d*.

100. **possent**: 134. **unum**: sc. **iter**; along the north bank of the Rhone, and through a pass now called Pas de l'Écluse.

101. **qua**: rel. adv., see Vocab.

102. **ducerentur**: 134, *a*. **autem**: 171, *e*.

103. **ut . . . possent**: 136. **alterum**: sc. **iter**; south of the Rhone.

104. **provinciam nostram**: see Introd. 14. **multo**: 95.

106. **nuper**: though conquered by the Romans in 121, the Allobroges had revolted in 61 B.C., and were then subdued by Pomptinus.

107. **locis**: 101.

109. **Genava**: 171, *c*.

110. sese: subj. of persuasuros (esse) and coacturos (esse); *they thought they would either persuade the Allobroges, or,* etc.

111. quod . . . viderentur: *because they did not seem,* 154, *b.* bono animo: 96.

113. rebus comparatis: 99, *b*, 1.

114. qua die . . . conveniant: 135.

115. a. d. V. Kal. Apr., = ante diem quintum Kalendas Apriles: *March* 28; see 172, *b*, *c*.

116. Pisone . . . consulibus: *i.e.* the year 58 B.C.

CHAPTER 7

117. Caesari: case, 67; position, 171, *c*.; see also Introd. 15. eos . . . conari: in appos. w. id, 149.

118. maturat: 120, *a*. ab urbe: *i.e.* from the vicinity of the city (Rome). Caesar was not in Rome, for as proconsul he could not exercise his power (imperium) within the city.

119. quam . . . itineribus: 107, *b*. ulteriorem: *i.e.* west of the Alps. See Gallia in Vocab.

120. contendit: Plutarch says that Caesar made this journey in eight days. ad: 79, *a*. Provinciae: 67, *a*.

122. legio: the legion which had been assigned to protect the province. It was the tenth legion of the Roman army, which later became famous and the favorite of Caesar's forces.

125. nobilissimos: 104.

127. qui . . . dicerent: 135. sibi (72) esse in animo: *they have it in mind, they intend* (lit. it is to them in mind).

129. rogare: depending on dicerent; sc. se as subj. ut . . . liceat: 145, *a*.

132. occisum, pulsum, missum: sc. esse w. each; the year was 107 B.C. sub iugum: to indicate submission; cf. "subjugation."

133. concedendum: sc. esse sibi, 163, *a*.

134. homines: subj. of temperaturos (esse). animo: 96. data facultate: 99, *b*, 3.

136. spatium: sc. temporis.

137. dum . . . convenirent: 137, *e*.

138. diem: *time*, not day. deliberandum: 165, *c*.

139. ad: *on*. reverterentur: the speaker used an imperative, 154, *c*.

CHAPTER 8

140. **legione**: 87; the tenth legion mentioned in chap. 7 **secum**: 91, *b*. **militibus**: the levy mentioned in chap. 7, l. 121. **quam . . . habebat, qui . . . convenerant**: 133, *a*.

142. **qui . . . influit**: 133, *b*.

143. **passuum**: sc. **in longitudinem**.

144. **murum**: this wall from Geneva to Pas de l'Écluse was not continuous, but was built wherever necessary to supplement the natural fortifications. The space thus artificially fortified covered only about three miles. **pedum**: 63, *d*.

145. **opere perfecto**: 99, *c*. **praesidia**: the garrisons of the **castella**.

146. **quo . . . possit**: 135, *a*. **se invito**: 99, *a*, 2.

148. **dies**: see chap. 7, l. 139.

149. **se**: subj. of **posse**. **more**: 92.

150. **ulli**: case?

151. **prohibiturum**: sc. **se** as subj. **eos** as obj.

152. **ea spe** (83) **deiecti**: *disappointed in this hope.*

153. **alii**: *others.* **vadis**: 87. **qua**: adv.

154. **si . . . possent**: (*to see*) *if they could*, 141.

155. **conati, repulsi**: like **deiecti**, these participles agree w. **Helvetii**.

156. **conatu**: 83.

CHAPTER 9

157. **Relinquebatur**: 171, *c*. **Sequanis invitis**: 99, *b*, 3.

158. **His**: w. **persuadere**.

159. **cum**: 138, *b*.

160. **eo deprecatore**: 99, *a*, 3.

162. **gratia**: 90. **plurimum**: see Vocab. and 82.

163. **amicus**: adj., 73.

164. **filiam**: see chap. 3, l. 63.

165. **novis rebus**: 67, *b*.

166. **civitates**: obj. of **habere**, which is the complement of **volebat**. **beneficio**: 90.

167. **rem**: *mission.* **ut . . . patiantur**: obj. of **impetrat**.

168. **obsides**: acc. Hostages were often children of prominent men. They were in danger of punishment in case their nation violated its agreement. **obsidesque . . . dent**: obj. of **perficit**, 145, *a*.

169. **Sequani, Helvetii**: sc. **dant obsides**. **itinere**: 83.

Chapter 10

171. **renuntiatur**: the subj. is the clause **Helvetiis . . . facere**, 149. **Helvetiis**: 72. **esse**: the subj. is **iter . . . facere**, 149.

174. **quae civitas**: 115, *b*, and 133, *b*. **Id**: 171, *c*. **fieret**: the mood and tense depend on **intellegebat**: 154, *b*, and 128.

175. **futurum (esse)**: subj. is **ut . . . haberet**: translate, *that it would be attended with great danger to* (lit. of) *the Province to have*, etc.

176. **locis patentibus**: abl. abs.

177. **finitimos**: pred. acc., *as neighbors*.

178. **munitioni**: 67, *c*. This was the **murus fossaque** of chap. 8. **Labienum**: see Vocab.

179. **legatum**: see Introd. 34. **ipse**: *i.e.* Caesar. **Italiam**: the northern part, called Cisalpine Gaul, was one of Caesar's three provinces.

180. **duas**: the eleventh and twelfth. **tres**: the seventh, eighth, and ninth. Thus Caesar's army consisted of six legions, numbered seventh to twelfth, inclusive.

182. **proximum iter**: by Mt. Genèvre, a pass in the Cottian Alps.

186. **compluribus . . . pulsis**: 171, *d*.

187. **citerioris provinciae**: *i.e.* east of the Alps, Cisalpine Gaul. **Vocontiorum**: sc. an appositive, **civitatis**, *a tribe* of the province west of the Alps (**ulterioris provinciæ**).

188. **die septimo**: marching at the rate of about sixteen miles a day.

Chapter 11

192. **iam**: it was probably June, two months after Caesar's first arrival, mentioned in chap. 7. **angustias**: the Pas de l'Ecluse, where Mt. Jura meets the Rhone; see chaps. 6 and 9.

193. **traduxerant . . . populabantur**: notice the change of tense, 124 and 121.

194. **Haedui**: see Vocab. **cum . . . possent**: expressing time and also cause, 137, *b*, 138, *b*.

196. **rogatum**: 166, *a*. **Ita . . . debuerint**: a quotation depending on the idea of saying implied in **rogatum**. **se . . . meritos**: 151 and 154. The speaker said **meriti sumus**

198. **vastari, abduci, expugnari**: complements of **debuerint**, 150.

201. **depopulatis**: to be translated as passive, though the verb in other forms is deponent.

202. **ab oppidis**: 83.

205. **sibi**: w. esse, 72. **reliqui**: gen. w. **nihil**, 63, *e*.

206. **exspectandum (esse)**: 163, *a*. **sibi**: 71.

207. **dum . . . pervenirent**: 137, *e*.

CHAPTER 12

209. **Arar**: appositive, 52; *there is a river, the Arar.*

210. **lenitate**: 91.

211. **ut . . . possit**: 136 and note. **fluat**: 141.

212. **ratibus**: 87. **transibant**: note the force of the tense, 121.

214. **partes, flumen**: objects of **traduxisse**, 75, *b*.

215. **fere**: generally modifies the word before it, as here. **citra**: *i.e.* the side as viewed from Rome.

216. **tertia vigilia**: the third watch began at midnight; see Vocab. **cum legionibus**: 94. **castris**: see Introd. 43. The place of this camp is now called Sathonay. The battle of the Arar was fought about twelve miles north of the camp.

219. **reliqui**: 104. **mandarunt = mandaverunt.**

224. **memoria**: 100. **Cassium**: see chap. 7, l. 131.

225. **casu**: 90.

226. **quae pars** (115, *c*) **. . . persolvit = ea pars civitatis Helvetiae, quae . . . intulerat, princeps . . . persolvit** (*was the first to pay*).

227. **populo**: 67, *c*.

228. **Qua in re**: 115, *f*.

229. **quod . . . Tigurini . . . interfecerant**: the obj. is **Pisonem**, a lieutenant of Cassius.

230. **avum**: in appos. w. **Pisonem**, grandfather of Caesar's (**eius**) father-in-law.

231. **quo Cassium**: sc. **interfecerant**; (*in the same battle*) *in which*, etc.

CHAPTER 13

232. **proelio**: 99, *b*, 1. **reliquas**: position, 171, *c*.

233. **ut posset**: 135. **in**: *over*, though the Romans said a bridge was *in* a river. **faciendum curat**: 164, *c*.

235. cum . . . intellegerent: expressing time and cause, 137, *b*, and 138, *b*. id: obj. of fecisse (*had done*).

236. aegerrime: they were migrating with their families and with supplies for three months. ut . . . transirent: in appos. w. id. illum: *i.e.* Caesar.

238. Divico: new an old man, for the date of the war with Crassus was 107 B.C.

240. Si pacem . . . proderet: this is an indirect quotation. In the direct quotation, *i.e.* the exact language of the speaker, the words would be the same, except chiefly the *verbs*, their *subjects*, and *pronouns* referring to persons. The direct forms of this passage are given below. See also 153, 154, *a*, *b*, and note.

241. partem: sc. Galliae. ituros: sc. esse.

243. reminisceretur: *he should remember*, 154, *c*.

244. et (veteris): *both*. incommodi: 65, *a*.

245. Quod: *as to the fact that*. unum pagum: chap. 12, l. 220.

246. suis: 67 *a*, and 104.

247. ne (adv.) tribueret: *he should not attribute* (*it*).

248. Se: *they*, referring to the Helvetians.

249. virtute: 87.

251. ne committeret: *he should not allow*.

Direct forms: —

Si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faciet (154, *b*, and 155, *a*), in eam partem ibunt (154, *c*) atque ibi erunt Helvetii, ubi eos tu, Caesar, constitueris (fut. perf.) atque esse volueris; sin bello persequi perseverabis, reminiscere (imperative, 154, *c*) et veteris incommodi populi Romani et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum. Quod improviso unum pagum adortus es, cum ei, qui flumen transierant, suis auxilium ferre non possent noli ob eam rem aut tuae magnopere virtuti tribuere, aut nos despicere (147, *a*); nos (156) ita a patribus maioribusque nostris didicimus ut magis virtute contendamus, quam dolo aut insidiis nitamur. Qua re noli committere ut is locus, ubi constitimus, ex calamitate . . . nomen capiat aut memoriam prodat.

Chapter 14

254. His: sc. legatis, 67. Eo sibi, etc.: indirect discourse. Review, 153-156, and see direct forms below. Eo: *for this reason*, 90. sibi . . . dari: (lit. less hesitation was given to him), *he had less hesitation*. dubitationis: 63, note.

255. commemorassent = commemoravissent.

256. eo gravius . . . accidissent: *he was the more displeased in that they had not happened through the fault of the Roman people.* eo, quo: 95.

257. qui si: *for if they*, referring to populus, 115, *f*.

258. non fuisse: *it would not have been.*

259. eo deceptum (esse): sc. populum as subj., *they had been deceived on this account.* commissum (esse): sc. quicquam as subj., *that anything had been done.*

260. timendum (esse) sibi: 163, *a*.

261. Quod si: *now if.*

262. vellet: *he should be willing.* num . . . posse: *could he*, etc., 154, *d*. eo invito: 99, *a*, 2.

266. Quod: *the fact that.* victoria: 90; see chap. 7, l. 131.

268. eodem: adv., explained by the next sentence. pertinere: the subjects are the two quod-clauses preceding. Consuesse . . . concedere: the English order is, enim immortales deos consuesse interdum concedere secundiores res et . . . his (dative), quos . . . velint, quo doleant. quo: 135, *a*.

269. ex: *as a result of.*

271. Cum sint: 139, *b*.

272. sibi: *i.e.* Caesar.

273. facturos (esse): sc. eos as subj. Haeduis: dat. w. satisfaciant, 67.

274. ipsis sociisque: 67, *c*.

277. uti . . . consuerint: 136.

Direct forms: —

Eo mihi minus dubitationis datur, quod eas res, quas vos, legati Helvetii, commemorastis, memoria teneo, atque eo gravius fero, quo minus merito populi Romani acciderunt; qui si alicuius iniuriae sibi conscius fuisset, non fuit difficile cavere; sed eo deceptus est quod neque commissum a se intellegebat quare timeret neque sine causa timendum putabat. Quod si veteris contumeliae oblivisci velim, num etiam recentium iniuriarum, quod me invito iter per provinciam per vim temptastis, quod Haeduos, quod Ambarros, quod Allobrogas vexastis, memoriam deponere possum? Quod vestra victoria tam insolenter gloriamini, quodque tam diu vos impune tulisse iniurias admiramini eodem pertinet. Consuerunt enim di immortales quo gravius homines ex commutatione rerum doleant, quos pro scelere eorum ulcisci volunt, his secundiores interdum res et diuturni-

orem impunitatem concedere. Cum haec ita sint, tamen si [illegible] vobis mihi dabuntur, [illegible] pollicemini, [illegible] intellegam [illegible] Haeduis [illegible] intulistis, [illegible] satisfacietis ego vobiscum pacem faciam.

CHAPTER 15

280. die: 100. castra: [illegible] of the camp, see Introd. 43. Idem: position, 171, [illegible]

281. equitatum: [illegible] the Haeduan, according to chap. 15, l. 304. Notice that [illegible] not composed of Romans; see Introd. 30.

283. qui videant: 135.

284. quas in partes: [illegible] faciant 141. Qui: *and they*, 115, *f*. cupidius: *too eagerly*, 107.

285. loco: 101.

286. de nostris = nostrorum.

287. Quo proelio: 90. equitibus: 87.

289. novissimo agmine: *in the rear*, 101.

290. suos: sc. milites. a proelio, rapinis: 83.

292. dies: 80.

294. amplius: [illegible] of interesset.

295. milibus: 86.

CHAPTER 16

296. Haeduos, frumentum: 75, *a*. quod essent [illegible] (as he said [illegible] in implicit indirect discourse), 154, *b*.

297. flagitare: 61 and 152.

298. ante: in chap. 1, l. 20.

300. ne-quidem: [illegible] pabuli. pabuli: [illegible] copia, 63, *e*.

301. eo frumento: [illegible] uti, 88. autem: 171, [illegible] quod: rel. pron.

302. propterea: translate after poterat [illegible] quod: [illegible] *able to use, for the reason that.* minus = non.

303. Diem (80) . . . Haedui: *the Haeduan [illegible] putting him off day after day.*

304. ducere, dicere: 152. (id) conferri, comportari: *that it was being gathered, that it was being brought to one place.*

306. diutius: *too long.* quo die: 115, *d*.

307. **frumentum metiri**: see Introd. 39. **oporteret**: subjunct. in indirect discourse.

309. **Diviciaco, Lisco**: in appos. w. **principibus. magistratui**: 67, *c.*

310. **vergobretum**: 76, *a.*

313. **possit**: sc. **frumentum** as subj. **tempore, hostibus**: 99.

314. **sublevetur**: we should expect the indicative, but Caesar, the writer, is here quoting Caesar, the soldier, as if another person, 138, *a.* So with **sit destitutus**, l. 316.

315. **magna ex parte**: *in great measure.*

CHAPTER 17

319. **quod**: pron., obj. of **tacuerat. Esse**: 154, *a*, and note. **quorum**: *whose.*

320. **valeat, possint**: subjunct. also in direct discourse, 134.

321. **Hos**: 77, and 113, *a.*

322. **ne . . . conferant**: 145, *e.*

323. **quod debeant**: *which they ought*, 154, *b.* **praestare**: *it was better* (they said).

325. **neque — et . . . non. dubitare**: complement of **debere.**

326. **debere**: sc. **eos** as subj. **quin . . . sint erepturi**: 145, *e*, and 162. **superaverint**: perf. subjunct., 127, *c.* **una**: adv.

327. **Haeduis**: dat., 68.

328. **quaeque = et ea quae.**

330. **coactus**: *under compulsion.*

331. **fecerit**: 141.

CHAPTER 18

334. **sentiebat**: 121. **pluribus praesentibus**: *in the presence of many persons*, 99.

335. **dimittit, retinet**: 174.

336. **ex solo**: *from him alone.*

339. **Ipsum**: 76, *b*, and 114, *a.* **audacia**: 96. **magna**: w. **gratia**, 96.

340. **rerum**: 64.

341. **annos**: 80. **portoria**: see Vocab.

342. **pretio**: 98. **redempta habere = redemisse.** According to the custom, Dumnorix had bought the privilege of collecting the taxes, paying to the state the amount bid, but retaining what he collected above that amount.

343. **illo licente**: *when he bid*, 99, *b*, 1.

344. **His rebus**: 87. **auxisse**: the subj. of this and the following infinitives is eum understood, referring to Dumnorix.

345. **ad largiendum**: 165, *c*. **comparasse** = **comparavisse**.

347. **neque** = **et non**. **domi**: 102.

350. **uxorem**: the daughter of Orgetorix, chap. 3, l. 63.

351. **nuptum**: a supine used w. **conlocasse**; see Vocab. and 166, *a*.

352. **Helvetiis**: case, 67, *b*.

353. **odisse**: the perf. tense of this verb has the meaning of the pres., 47. **suo nomine**: *on his own account.*

354. **adventu**: 100. **deminuta**: sc. **sit**.

356. **spem**: see Vocab.

357. **regni obtinendi**: 164, *a*. **imperio**: 93.

358. **ea**: w. **gratia**.

359. **habeat**: 154, *b*.

360. **quaerendo**: 165, *d*. **quod . . . factum est**: translate freely, *with regard to the unfavorable cavalry battle which had been fought*, etc.

363. **equitatui**: w. **praeerat**, 67, *b*. **auxilio Caesari**: 69 and 70.

CHAPTER 19

366. **cum accederent**: 138, *b*.

367. **res**: *facts*. **accederent**: *were added.*

368. **traduxisset, curasset**: etc., 142. **dandos curasset**: 164, *c*; see chap. 9, l. 168.

369. **suo**: *i.e.* Caesar's.

370. **civitatis**: *i.e.* of the Haedui. **inscientibus ipsis**: *without their knowledge.*

371. **magistratu**: Who is meant? See chap. 16, l. 309. **satis causae**: 63, note.

372. **animadverteret**: 134, *d*.

374. **rebus**: indirect obj. of **repugnabat**, 67, *b*. **unum**: *one consideration.*

375. **summum**: w. **studium**.

377. **ne offenderet**: 145, *b*.

378. **priusquam conaretur**: 137, *f*.

382. **cui**: *in whom*. **omnium rerum**: *in all matters.*

383. **quae sint dicta**: 141. **ipso praesente**: *in his own* (*i.e.* Caesar's) *presence.*

386. **sine . . . animi**: *without offence to his own feelings.* **eius** refers to Diviciacus, **ipse** to Caesar.

387. **ut statuat**: 145, *a.* **civitatem**: of the Haedui.

CHAPTER 20

390. **obsecrare**: 150. **gravius**: adj. w. **quid**, *too severe.* **in**: *against.*

391. **Scire**: the subj. follows. **nec** = **et non**.

392. **doloris**: w. **plus**, 63, *e.* **nec . . . capere**: *and no one was more grieved than he on account of it* (**ex eo**).

393. **ipse**, **se**, **suam**, **sese**, refer to Diviciacus; **ille**, to Dumnorix. **plurimum**: w. **posset**. **ille**: (*and*) *he*, 174.

395. **opibus ac nervis**: w. **uteretur** (88); *he was using.*

398. **Quod**: *and.*

400. **existimaturum, factum**: sc. **esse** w. each.

401. **futurum** (**esse**) **uti averterentur**: a phrase used instead of the fut. pass. infin. of **averto**; *the hearts of all the Gauls would be turned away from him* (lit. the result would be that, etc.).

404. **faciat**: subjunctive in a substantive cl. used without a connective. **tanti**: 65, *c.* **eius**: w. **gratiam**, referring to Diviciacus.

406. **condonet**: *pardons* (**iniuriam**) *for the sake of* (**voluntati**, indirect obj.).

407. **reprehendat, intellegat, queratur**: 141 and 145, *f.*

410. **praeterita fratri condonare**: *pardons the past for the sake of his brother.*

CHAPTER 21

413. **Eodem tempore**: continuing the account of chap. 15. **hostes . . . consedisse**: depending on the idea of saying in **certior factus**, 151.

414. **milia**: 80. **passuum**: 63, *e.* **ipsius**: 114, *b.*

415. **qualis . . . esset**: 141. **in circuitu**: *i.e.* by ascending from another part of the mountain.

416. **qui**: supply an antecedent, 115, *e.* **cognoscerent**: 135.

417. **esse**: sc. a subj. **ascensum**. **Labienum**: first mentioned in chap. 10. For a full sketch of Labienus, see Smith's Dict. of Greek and Roman Biography.

418. **praetore**: see Vocab. **ducibus**: (*os*) *guides*, 52.

420. **quid sui consili** (63, note) **sit** (141): *what his plan is.*

Ipse. 414. de quarta vigilia: *i.e.* between two and four o'clock A.M., for the sun rose about four at this time of the year.

423. rei peritissimus: 64.

424. Sullae, etc.: Sulla had fought against Mithridates, king of Pontus, 88–84 B.C.; Crassus, against Spartacus and the slaves, 71 B.C. in M. Crassi: sc. exercitu.

Chapter 22

426. cum teneretur: 137, *b*. summus: 106.

428. passibus: 86. ut . . . comperit: 130, *f*.

429. cognitus esset: after cum.

432. se: *i.e.* Considius. insignibus: *i.e.* standards and decorations.

433. subducit, instruit: 174.

434. ut: *just as*.

435. ne . . . committeret: 145. ipsius = Caesaris.

438. proelio: 83. Multo die: *late in the day*.

439. et: omit, 175.

441. quod . . . non vidisset: clause obj. of renuntiasse. pro viso: *as if seen* (lit. as a thing seen); viso, used as a noun. sibi: *i.e.* Caesar.

442. quo . . . intervallo: *at the usual distance*, five or six miles; case, 93. consuerat = consueverat.

Chapter 23

445. diei: depending on postridie: see Vocab. super-erat.

446. cum (*before the time*) *when*. frumentum: object of metiri; see Introd. 39. oporteret: subjunct. denoting an expected event.

449. rei: 67, *c*. prospiciendum (esse sibi): 163, *a*.

450. Bibracte ire: 79, *a*.

452. hostibus: 67, *a*.

453. existimarent, commisissent: if Caesar had known the reason, he would have used the indic., 138, *a*.

454. eo (90) magis: *all the more* (lit. more on account of this). locis occupatis: 99, *b*, 4.

455. eo: *for this reason*, 90. re frumentaria: 83.

456. posse: sc. eos as subj.

CHAPTER 24

459. **animum advertit** = animadvertit; id is the obj.

460. **qui sustineret**: 135.

461. **in colle medio**: 106.

462. **triplicem aciem**: see Introd. 47. **legionum quattuor**: *consisting of four legions*, 63, *d*. **quattuor**: including one mentioned in chap. 7, and three from Aquileia (chap. 10).

463. **duas legiones**: see chap. 10.

465. **auxilia**: see Introd. 29. **hominibus**: 87. "Caesar had from 30,000 to 36,000 legionaries, perhaps 20,000 auxiliaries, and 4000 horse." Dodge, p. 75.

466. **sarcinas**: the *packs* carried by the soldiers themselves; **impedimenta**, the *heavy baggage*, tents, etc., carried in carts; see Introd. 32 and 42. **eum**: sc. **locum**.

468. **cum carris**: the Helvetii went to the battle with their families and baggage.

470. **phalange**: see Vocab. **sub**: *up to*, because the Romans were on higher ground.

CHAPTER 25

472. **suo**: sc. **equo remoto**. **omnium**: *i.e.* of the officers.

473. **aequato periculo**: *by equalizing the danger.*

475. **pilis**: see Introd. 41.

477. **Gallis, impedimento**: 70, 69. **erat**: the subj. is **quod neque evellere . . . poterant.**

478. **pluribus**: *several.*

479. **ferrum**: the iron point of a spear might pierce, from above, the overlapping shields of the phalanx.

481. **multi ut** = **ut multi**: *so that many*; order, 171, *c*. **iactato**: *i.e.* in trying to remove the left arm, to which the shield was attached.

483. **vulneribus**: 90. **et (pedem)**: *both* or omit.

484. **circiter**: adv. **passus**, 80. **eo**: adv.

485. **Boii et Tulingi**: see chap. 5.

487. **novissimis, praesidio**: 70, 69.

488. **circumvenire**: complement of **coeperunt.**

491. **conversa . . . intulerunt**: *faced about and charged in two divisions.*

491. **bipertito**: see battle-plan.

492. **victis** (*i.e.* the Helvetii) **resisteret**: 67, *b*.

493. **venientes**: i.e. the Boii and Tulingi.

For good descriptions of the battle, see Dodge's "Caesar," p. 72 ff., and Holmes; "Conquest of Gaul," p. 32, ff.

CHAPTER 26

494. **pugnatum est**: 119, *b*.

495. **alteri**: i.e. the Helvetii; see Vocab. and 117.

497. **alteri**: i.e. the allies.

498. **proelio**: 100. **cum pugnatum sit**: 139, *b*. **hora septima**: beginning at noon.

499. **Ad multam noctem**: *till late at night.*

501. **obiecerant**: **coniciebant**: note the tenses, 124 and 121. **loco superiore**: i.e. the barricade of wagons.

502. **venientes**: w. **nostros**.

503. **subiciebant**: note three compounds of iacio in lines 501-503.

505. **impedimentis castrisque**: 88

506. **captus est**: 103, *b*.

509. **in fines Lingonum**: about seventy miles north of Bibracte.

511. **triduum**: 86

512. **Lingonas**: a Greek ending; see Vocab.

513. **ne . . . iuvarent**: *directing that they should not*, etc.

514. **qui si**: 115, *f*. **loco**: *position, light.*

CHAPTER 27

515. **Qui cum**: *and when they*, 115, *f*.

519. **ad pedes**: sc. Caesaris.

520. **petissent** = **petivissent**.

521. **essent**: subj., attr. by attraction, 142. **paruerunt**: the only word in the independent part of the sentence.

522. **Eo**: adv.

523. **perfugissent**: subjunct. because quoted from the words used by Caesar in making the demand; the direct form is **perfugerunt**. 154, *b*.

524. **Dum conquiruntur**: 137, *c*.

[illegible] **arma** [illegible], 99, *b*.

527. **adficerentur**: 145, *b*.

528. **occultari**: i.e. concealed from Caesar.

CHAPTER 28

532. **Quod** = **id**. **quorum**: refers to **his** (l. 533).

533. **his imperavit**: 67, *b*. **uti . . . reducerent**: 145, *a*. **sibi**: *in his sight*, 70.

534. **in hostium numero habuit**: a mild way of saying that he put them to death.

537. **unde**: rel. adv. = **e quibus**.

538. **quo tolerarent**: 135.

540. **ipsos**: the Helvetii.

546. Boios (171, *c*): obj. of **conlocarent**. **petentibus Haeduis concessit**: *to the Haedui, at their request, he granted* (**ut . . . conlocarent**).

547. **virtute**: 96.

549. **parem atque ipsi erant**: *equal with themselves*. The Boii had been a wandering tribe before they formed an alliance with the Helvetii. See chap. 5.

CHAPTER 29

551. **tabulae**: thin boards covered with wax, in shape like a double slate.

552. **litteris Graecis**: having no alphabet of their own, the Gauls used for their language Greek letters, which they had learned from a Greek colony at Marseilles.

553. **quibus tabulis**: 115, *d*. **qui numerus**: (*showing*) *what number*.

554. **domo**: 83, *b*. **exisset**: 141. **possent**: 134.

555. **pueri**, etc.: supply a verb.

556. **CCLXIII** = **ducentorum sexaginta trium**.

558. **XXXII** = **triginta duorum**.

559. **ad**: adv., *about*. **XCII** = **nonaginta duo**.

560. **CCCLXVIII** = **trecenta sexaginta octo**.

CHAPTER 30

564. **gratulatum**: 166, *a*.

565. **sese**: subj. of **intellegere**, (*saying that*) *they knew*. Review 153 and 154. The direct forms of the passage, ll. 565–573, would be the same as the indirect, except that **intellegere sese**, **repetisset**, and **reliquissent** would be **intellegimus**, **repetisti**, and **reliquerunt**. **tametsi . . . repetisset**: 139, *a*, and 154, *b*.

566. **Helvetiorum, populi**: *done by the Helvetians to the people*, 63, *b* and *c*. **iniuriis**: referring to the defeat of Cassius by the Helvetians, mentioned in chap. 7. **ab his**: *on* (lit. *from*) *them*, 83.

569. **florentissimis rebus**: *under flourishing circumstances*, 93.

571. **domicilio**: dat., 69.

572. **opportunissimum, stipendiarias**: pred. adj., 103.

575. **uti . . . liceret**: 145, *a*. This request for permission was unnecessary, but was made because of Caesar's standing. **in diem**: *for a day*.

576. **voluntate**: 93.

579. **ne . . . enuntiaret**: 145, *a*. **quis**: 116.

580. **quibus** (dat.): sc. antecedent **ei**.

Chapter 31

582. **idem**: nom. pl.

583. **fuerant**: sc. **apud eum**.

585. **Caesari**: 70, *a*.

586. **Non minus**, etc.: the rest of this chapter is indirect discourse. For ll. 586-590 the direct forms would be: —

Non minus id contendimus et laboramus, ne ea, quae dixerimus, enuntientur, quam uti ea, quae volumus, impetremus, propterea quod, si enuntiatum erit, summum in cruciatum nos venturos videmus.

The changes for ll. 591-647 are according to 154, note.

587. **quam**: *than*.

591. **pro**: *in behalf of*. **Diviciacus**: the man best fitted to act as spokesman. Why? See Vocab. **Galliae totius**: what was actually meant was central or Celtic Gaul, and perhaps only the eastern part of it.

593. **Hi**: *i.e.* the Averni, 113, *a*.

594. **factum esse**: the subj. is **uti . . . arcesserentur**; trans. *it came to pass that*, etc.

595. **mercede**: 98.

598. **adamassent** = **adamavissent**.

599. **traductos**: sc. **esse**. **esse**: sc. **Germanos** as subj. **ad**: prep. w. **numerum**.

602. **omnem nobilitatem**, etc.: not *all*, for at least the speaker himself and his brother Dumnorix were surviving nobles.

604. **Quibus**: 115, *f*. **fractos**: agreeing w. **eos** (*i.e.* Haeduos), to be supplied as antecedent of **qui**, 115, *e*.

605. **virtute**, etc.: *because of their bravery*, 90.

607. **obsides**: *as hostages.* **nobilissimos**: *the chief nobles.*

610. **quominus essent**: (*refuse*) *to be*, 145, *e.*

611. **unum se esse**: *he was the only one.*

612. **qui . . . potuerit**: 134.

614. **Romam**: 79, *a.*

615. **postulatum**: 166, *a.*

617. **peius**: used as a noun, *a worse fate*, **104.**

622. **mensibus**: 95.

623. **quibus . . . pararentur**: *for whom a place and settlements were to be prepared*, 135.

624. **annis**: 100. **uti . . . transirent**: subj. of **futurum esse.**

626. **conferendum Gallicum** (sc. **agrum**): 163.

629. **semel**: see Vocab.

630. **quod proelium**: 115, *d.* The year of this battle was 60 B.C.

631. **nobilissimi cuiusque**: *of all the noblest.*

632. **exempla cruciatusque**: *forms of torture*, 173.

637. **auxili**: w. **quid**; *some aid*, 63, *e.*

638. **Gallis**: 71.

642. **dubitare**: the subj. is **se**, referring to Diviciacus.

645. **ne . . . traducatur**: 145, *e.*

CHAPTER 32

651. **tristes**: used as adv., *sadly, in sadness*, 105.

653. **quae esset**: 141, depending on **miratus. Sequani respondere**: 152.

657. **Hoc**: *on this account*, 90. **esse**: **fortunam** is the subj., see 153 and 154, *a.*

658. **reliquorum**: 86, *a.*

659. **absentis**: *though absent.*

662. **Sequanis**: dat. w. **perferendi**, 71. **vero**: 171, *e.*

CHAPTER 33

665. **His rebus cognitis**: 99, *c.*

666. **sibi** (70) **. . . curae** (69) **futuram**: *he would attend to this matter* (lit. this matter would be for a care to him).

667. **et** (**beneficio**): *both.* **beneficio**: in Caesar's consulship, 59 B.C., the senate had conferred on Ariovistus the title "amicus populi Romani."

668. **facturum**: sc. **esse**.

669. **secundum**: prep., see Vocab.

670. **quare . . . putaret**: 134. **cogitandam**: sc. **esse**.

675. **quod**: rel., *a fact which*.

677. **Paulatim . . . consuescere**: *that the Germans should gradually become accustomed*, 146.

679. **periculosum**: sc. esse. **sibi** (67, *b*) **. . . temperaturos . . . quin exirent** (145, *c*): *would refrain from going out.*

681. **ut**: *as*.

684. **Rhodanus**: *only the Rhone*. **quibus rebus**: 67, *c*.

685. **quam maturrime**: 107, *a*. **occurrendum (esse sibi)**: 163, *a*.

CHAPTER 34

688. **placuit ei**: *he decided* (lit. it pleased him), 67, *b*. **ad Ariovistum**: "Ariovistus was probably on the Rhine somewhere about modern Strasburg." Dodge.

689. **qui postularent**: 135.

690. **conloquio**: dat., 69. **velle**, etc.: depending on the idea of saying in **postularent**.

692. **Si quid . . . opus esset**: *if he needed anything* (lit. if there was any need to himself). **ipsi**: 72. Direct: **Si quid mihi a Caesare (te, opus esset, ego ad eum (te) venissem.**

693. **venturum fuisse**: 157, *b*.

quid, se (l. 694): two objects of **velit**, *wanted anything of him* (*i.e.* Ariovistus), 75, *a*. **ille**: *he, i.e.* Caesar.

698. **quid Caesari** (72) **negoti** (63, note) **esset** (141): *what business Caesar had.*

CHAPTER 35

702. **Quoniam**: w. **referret**. **tanto . . . adfectus**: *after being treated with so great kindness on his own part and that of the Roman people.*

703. **cum . . . esset**: explains **beneficio**.

705. **hanc gratiam referret**: *he rendered such gratitude.*

706. **invitatus**: *when invited*. **neque dicendum** (163, *a*) **sibi putaret**: *he thought he ought not to speak.*

707. **haec . . . postularet**: *the following were the demands that he made.*

708. **ne** (adv. not conj.) **quam traduceret**: *he should not lead over any*, etc.

710 **traduceret, redderet** etc.: quoted commands, 154, *c*, and 147.

711. **ut illis liceret**: redundant, omit in trans. **eius**: *i.e.* of Ariovistus.

715. **sibi . . . futuram**: *he* (Caesar), etc., *would have*

717. **sese**: w. **neglecturum**.

719. **quod**: *so far as*. **commodo**: *with advantage*, 93.

721. **se**: repeats **sese** of l. 717.

Caesar's position at this time is clearly stated by Holmes, "Conquest of Gaul," p. 37.

CHAPTER 36

722. **Ius esse**, etc.: see direct forms below. **ut . . . imperarent**: clause explaining **ius**, 143.

723. **qui**: sc. antecedent **ei** as subj. of **imperarent**. **eis**: w. **imperarent**, 67, *b*.

724. **victis**: w. **imperare**, 160 and 67, *b*.

725. **ad**: *according to*.

726. **consuesse consuevisse**. **praescriberet**: *did not direct*.

727. **uteretur**: 141, *a*.

728. **se**: subj. of **impediri**, but translate *he ought*, etc., 119, *a*.

730. **stipendiarios**: pred. adj.

731. **Magnam**: position, 171, *c*. **qui . . . faceret**: 134, *c*, and 138, *b*.

732. **adventu**: denoting time and cause. **deteriora**: pred. adj.

734. **in eo manerent**: *abide by the terms*.

735. **convenisset**: see Vocab.

736. **long . afuturum**: *would be far from* (*aiding*).

737. **Quod**: *as to the fact that*.

739. **congrederetur**: *let him come on*, 154, *c*.

740. (**eum**) **intellecturum** (**esse**). **quid** (82) **virtute** (97) **possent**: *how powerful they were*.

Direct forms: —

Ius est belli ut qui **vicerunt** eis quos **vicerunt** quem ad modum **velint imperent**: item **populus Romanus** victis non ad alterius praescriptum . . . imperare **consuevit**. Si ego populo Romano non **praescribo** quem ad modum suo iure **utatur**, non **oportet me** . . . in meo iure **impediri**. **Haedui mihi**, quoniam belli fortunam

temptaverunt et . . . superati sunt, stipendiarii sunt facti. Magnam Caesar illi iniuriam facit qui sua adventu vectigalia mihi deteriora faciat. Haeduis (ego obsides non reddam, neque his . . . bellum inferam, si in eo manebunt quod convenit stipendiumque . . . pendent, si id non fecerint, longe eis frater um nomen populi Romani aberit. Quod mihi Caesar denuntiat se Haeduorum iniurias non sine gravamine, nemo mecum sine sua pernicie contendit. Cum volet, congrediatur: intelleget quid invicti Germani . . . qui inter annos quattuordecim tectum non subierunt (subierint) virtute possint.

Chapter 37

745. **Haedui**: sc. **veniebant**. **questum**: 166, *a*.

746. **sese**: (*saying*) *that they*.

747. **obsidibus**: 99, *b*, 5.

748. **Treveri** . . . **veniebant questum**. **Sueborum**: the largest and most powerful of the German nations. In Bk. IV, chaps. 1–3, Caesar writes of their customs and importance.

750. **Quibus rebus**: w. **commotus**, 87.

751. **maturandum**: 163, *a*

754. **resisti** (119, *b*) **posset**: *resistance could be made*. **quam . . potuit**: 107, *b*. Caesar's last-mentioned location was among the Lingones, chap. 26.

Chapter 38

757. **tridui**: 63, *d*. **viam**: 81.

758. **ad occupandum**, etc.: 164, *c*, note.

760. **suis finibus** . . . his part of the country of the Sequani, between the Vosges and the Rhine, now upper Alsace.

762. **Namque**: see Vocab.

763. **usui**: 69.

764. **ducendum**: gerundive, 165, note.

766. **ut**: *as if*.

767. **amplius**: 86, *b*. **pedum**: 63, *d*.

768. **qua . . . intermittit**: *where the river stops;* the river does not complete its circular course because of the mountain.

769. **magna altitudine**: 96. **radices**: acc.

770. **ripae**: subj. of **contingant**. **Hunc**: *i.e.* the mountain. obj. of **efficit**.

771. **arcem**: pred. acc., 76, *a*.

CHAPTER 39

774. **Dum**: 137, *c.* **ad**: 79, *a.*

777. **magnitudine, virtute**: 96. **Germanos**: subj. of **esse.**

784. **Hic**: sc. **timor.** **tribunis, praefectis**: see Introd. 36.

785. **reliquisque**: friends of Caesar who had come for the pleasure, and perhaps profit, of military life. **urbe**: *i.e.* Rome.

787. **alius alia**: 117, *b.* **quam . . . diceret**: *which he said made it necessary for him to go.*

788. **ut . . . liceret**: 145, *a.*

789. **ut . . . vitarent**: 135.

793. **Vulgo**: adv.

795. **vocibus**: means or cause.

797. **quique**: *and those who.* **(ei) Qui . . . ex his . . . dicebant**: *those of this number who wished . . . said.*

801. **ut . . . posset**: 145, *b.*

803. **iussisset**: 155, *b.*

804. **fore**: **milites** is the subj. **dicto**: see Vocab.

CHAPTER 40

Caesar was an orator (Introd. 3 and 6). That he was a master of his art is seen in this inspiring address to the timid soldiers.

807. **centurionibus**: see Introd. 37.

808. **quam in partem**: *in what direction.*

809. **ducerentur**: *were to be led*, 141.

810. **se consule**: 99, *b*, 1. Caesar was consul in 59 B.C.

813. **Sibi persuaderi**: *he was persuaded*, or *he believed*, 67 *b*, and 119, *b.*

815. **Quod si**: *but if.*

817. **sua**: *their own.* **ipsius**: *his.*

818. **Factum (esse)**: emphatic by position, 171, *c*, *a test had been (actually) made.*

819. **Cimbris . . . pulsis**: in the battles of 102 and 101 B.C.

821. **factum**: sc. **esse periculum.**

822. **servili tumultu**: under the leadership of Spartacus 73–71 B.C. **quos . . . usus . . . sublevarent**: translate as if passive, *who were helped by the skill*, etc. **aliquid**: adverbial acc., *somewhat.*

824. **iudicari posse**: *one could judge* (lit. it could be judged). **quantum . . . constantia**: *how much advantage* (lit. good) *firmness had* (omit **in se**). **boni**: w. **quantum**, 63, *e.*

825. **inermes**: acc. w. **quos**.

828. **Germanos . . . superassent**: cf. chap. 1, l. 14.

830. **illorum**: 112, *a*.

831. **exercitui**: 73. **Si . . . commoveret**: translate as if passive, *if any were disturbed by*, etc.

832. **adversum proelium**: the defeat of the Gauls by Ariovistus, chap. 31, l. 602.

835. **sui** (63, *c*) **potestatem**: *i.e.* a chance to attack him.

838. **Cui rationi . . . hac** = **hac ratione cui**: *by that strategy for which there had been*, etc.

839. **ipsum**: Ariovistus.

841. **Qui . . . conferrent**: *those who attributed their fear to a pretended concern about*, etc.

844. **Haec . . . curae**: cf. note on chap 33, l. 666.

848. **Quod . . . dicantur**: *as to its being said that they*, etc.

849. **nihil**: adv. **quibuscumque** (72 . . . **convictam**: *whoever did not have obedient armies (it was) either because fortune had failed (the commanders) on account of bad management, or because avarice had been proved (against them) by the discovery of some misdeed.*

854. **quod . . . fuisset**: *what he had intended to put off till a later day.*

856. **quam primum**: see Vocab. **primum**.

858. **Quod si**: *and if.*

860. **legioni**: 67, *b*. This was the oldest legion in his service; see chap. 7.

CHAPTER 41

865. **inlata est**: 118, *a*. **princeps gratias egit**: *was the first to thank.*

866. **de se**: *i.e.* the legion.

867. **iudicium**: see Vocab. **se esse**: *that it was.*

868. **cum tribunis egerunt**: *arranged with the tribunes.*

870. **uti . . . satisfacerent**: clause obj. of **egerunt**. **se**: (*saying that*) *they.*

871. **suum . . . esse**: *the decision was not theirs, but the commander's* (66).

874. **ei**: *in him.*

875. **ut . . . duceret**· may be taken as a purpose clause, construed with **profectus est**. **milium** (*sc.* **passuum**) **amplius**:

86, *b*. **circuitu**: from Vesontio northward and eastward into the plain of the Rhine.

878. **Ariovisti**: the German army was twenty-four miles farther north, between the Vosges and the Rhine.

CHAPTER 42

881. **Quod**: the antecedent is **id**. **postulasset**: sc. Caesar.

882. **per se**: *as far as he was concerned*. **fieri licere**: *might be granted*.

885. **petenti**: 159.

886. **spem**: see Vocab. **pro**: *considering*.

888. **fore uti desisteret**: *that he would desist* (lit. it would be that he would, etc.).

893. **uterque veniret**: *each should come*, 154, *c*.

897. **omnibus equis**: w. **detractis**, 99.

898. **Gallis equitibus**: 68. **eo** = **in eos**, *upon them*.

899. **cui**: 67, *b*. **imponere**: subj. of **esse**, l. 897.

900. **quam**: 107, *a*. **quid**: 82. **facto**: 89.

901. **Quod cum** = **et cum id**.

903. **pollicitum**: part. w. the implied subj. of **rescribere**.

904. **ad equum rescribere**: (*he*) *was enrolling* (*them*) *as knights* (or **equites**, the great order of wealthy Romans). The phrase may also mean "enroll as horsemen"; hence the wit of the remark.

CHAPTER 43

907. **aequo spatio**: 95.

908. **ut erat dictum**: 130, *f*.

909. **equis**: abl. of means, but translate *on horseback*.

910. **passibus**: 95.

911. **intervallo**: 93.

912. **ut conloquerentur**: 145, *a*.

914. **ventum est**: 119, *b*, and Vocab. **initio**: 100.

915. **rex, amicus**: Caesar makes as much as possible of this honor conferred on Ariovistus.

917. **missa**: sc. **essent**. **pro**: *in return for*.

922. **quam-que**.

923. **ipsis cum . . . intercederent**: *existed between themselves and . . .*.

925. **ut**: *how*.

926. **prius . . . quam** = priusquam.

928. **ut . . . vellet**: in appos. w. **consuetudinem**, 143. **sui**: *of their (standing)*.

929. **gratia**, etc.: 97.

930. **id**: antecedent of **quod**. **eis**: 68.

932. **ne**: adv. w. **inferret**, *that he should not make war;* cf. chap. 35, l. 708, ff., and notes thereon.

Chapter 44

Though without the mental training and advantages of his Roman foe, Ariovistus was ready to make a strong and logical reply.

937. **multa**: 104. **Transisse**, etc.: indirect discourse.

938. **sese**: subj. of **transisse** and following infinitives. **rogatum**: cf. the statement of Diviciacus, chap. 31, l. 595.

939. **praemiis** = praemiorum, limiting **spe**, 173.

941. **concessas, datos**: 159. **ipsorum**: 114, *b*.

942. **iure**: 92.

947. **decertare**: w. **paratus** we might have **ad decertandum**, instead of the infinitive, as here. See 165, *c*.

948. **de stipendio recusare**: *refuse to pay the tribute* (lit. make objection about the tribute).

950. **sibi ornamento**: 70, 69.

954. **quam**: conj.

955. **Quod traducat**: *as to his leading.*

956. **sui muniendi**: w. **causa**, 164, *a*.

959. **prius . . . quam** = priusquam.

963. **hanc, illam**: 113, *a*. **Ut** (*as*) **. . . sic**: 130, *g*.

967. **Quod diceret**: *as to his saying.*

968. **imperitum rerum**: 64.

969. **ut non sciret**: *as not to know*, 136. **bello proximo**: the Allobroges had revolted in 61 B.C.

973. **simulata amicitia**: *under the pretence of friendship* **quem exercitum** = **exercitum quem**, 115, *c*.

974. **habere**: the obj. is **exercitum**.

975. **Qui nisi**: 115, *f*.

977. **multis gratum**: *a (thing) pleasing to many.* Caesar was head of the so-called popular party in the Roman government. His opponents, members of the aristocratic party, would not have objected to the removal of a leader so formidable.

CHAPTER 45

986. **quare**: (*showing*) *why*. **negotio**: 83.

987. **consuetudinem**: subj. of **pati**.

989. **Ariovisti**: 63, *a*, and 66. **superatos esse**: position, **171, *c***. The date of the war was 121 B.C.

990. **quibus**: 67, *b*.

991. **neque**: *and not*.

992. **neque**: *nor*. **Quod si**: *and if*. **antiquissimum quodque tempus**: *priority in time*.

996. **suis legibus**: *its own laws*, w. **uti**. **voluisset**: sc. **senatus**.

CHAPTER 46

997. **Dum geruntur**: 137, *c*.

998. **propius tumulum**: 78, *a*.

1001. **quod telum**: *any javelin*, 116.

1002. **etsi . . . videbat**: 139, *a*. **periculo legionis**: *danger to the legion*.

1004. **committendum . . . posset**: *he thought he ought not to permit the possibility of its being said, after the enemy had been defeated*. **ut . . . posset**: subj. of **committendum**.

1006. **qua arrogantia usus**: *with what arrogance*.

1007. **omni Gallia**. 83. **Romanis**: **67, *c***.

1008. **ut**: *how*, 141.

CHAPTER 47

1012. **Biduo**: 95. **post**: adv.

1013. **coeptae essent**: **coepi** takes a passive form with a complementary pass. infin. (**agi**).

1014. **agere**: complement of **velle**. **uti . . . constitueret**: noun cl. depending upon **velle**.

1017. **causa visa non est**: *there did not seem (to be) a reason*.

1019. **quin conicerent**: *from hurling*, 145, *e*.

1021. **visum est**: w. **mittere**, l. 1028.

1023. **virtute**: 96.

1024. **Flacco**: Flaccus, the Roman governor of Gaul, 83 B.C. He had honored certain Gauls with Roman citizenship, who then according to custom assumed his name, C. Valerius.

1025. **multa**: agreeing w. **qua**, but to be translated *readily, fluently*.

1027. **in eo**: *in his case.* **peccandi Germanis . . . esset**: *the Germans had no reason for offence, i.e.* by harming him. **Germanis**: 72.

1028. **hospitio**: a sacred tie of *friendship.*

1032. **Quid venirent**: 154, *d.*

1033. **(eos) conantes**: 159.

CHAPTER 48

1034. **milibus**: 95.

1035. **monte**: the Vosges.

1038. **frumento**: 83, w. **intercluderet.**

1039. **supportaretur**: 142.

1046. **numero**: 97, omit in trans.

1047. **singuli singulos**: *one each.*

1048. **his, hi**: *i.e.* **pedites. versabantur**, etc.: 121, *b.*

1050. **durius**: *more difficult (than usual)*, 107.

1051. **quo**: adv.

1052. **prodeundum**: 163, *a.* "By these peculiar tactics (ll. 1045–1054), the Germans puzzled the Gallic squadrons, though it was really nothing new, but an ancient device to be found among many peoples." Dodge.

CHAPTER 49

1056. **quo in loco**: 115, *d.*

1057. **passus**: 80.

1058. **castris**: 73. **acie triplici**: see Introd. 47.

1060. **castra munire**: see Introd. 43.

1063. **quae terrerent**: 135.

1068. **castra maiora**: the larger Roman camp was two miles from the German camp; the smaller (**minora**), about half a mile.

CHAPTER 50

1069. **instituto suo**: 92.

1072. **ne tum quidem**, *not even then.*

1074. **quae oppugnaret**: 135.

1079. **quam ob rem**: see Vocab.

1080. **decertaret**: 141.

1081. **ut . . . declararent**: in appos. w. **consuetudo**, 143.

1083. **proelium**: subj. acc

1085. **lunam**: the ancients of different lands believed the heavenly bodies had an influence upon human affairs.

CHAPTER 51

1086. **praesidio castris**: 69 and 70.

1087. **quod visum est**: *what seemed.*

1089. minus = non. **multitudine**: 97. **pro**: *in comparison with.*

1093. **paribus intervallis**: 93.

1096. **qua**: indef. adj., see Vocab. **quis** and 116.

1097. **Eo** (adv.) = **eis**: *on them, i.e.* the carts and wagons.

1098. **proficiscentes**: acc. w. **eos** understood. **passis**: from **pando**. **flentes**: w. **quae**.

CHAPTER 52

1100. **singulis . . . singulos**: the five lieutenants and the quaestor were now put in charge of the six legions, one man to each.

1101. **quaestorem**: see Introd. 35.

1102. **a dextro cornu**: *on the right wing.* **eam partem**: the German left wing opposite the Roman right.

1104. **Ita**: w. **acriter**.

1105. **itaque** = **et ita**: not the conj. **itaque**.

1106. **ut daretur**: 136. **pila coniciendi**: 165, note.

1108. **phalange**: see Vocab.; cf. the way the Helvetii attacked, chap. 24.

1110. **qui insilirent**, etc.: 134.

1112. **a**: *on.*

1115. **P. Crassus adulescens**: *the younger*, distinguished from his father M. Crassus, the triumvir.

1117. **laborantibus**: 159. **subsidio**: 69. "If young Crassus had not acted with unusual intelligence and promptness, Caesar might have forfeited the victory, for his success on the right in no wise demoralized the enemy's flank." Dodge.

CHAPTER 53

1120. **prius** w. **quam**: 137, *f.*

1121. **Rhenum**: the exact site of the battle is uncertain **milia**: 80.

1122. **viribus**: loc. abl. w. **confisi**.

1124. **Ariovistus**: his death is mentioned in Bk. V, chap. 29.

1125. **reliquos omnes**: Plutarch says there were 80,000. The recollection of this defeat kept the Germans from crossing the Rhine four years later (Bk. V, chap. 55).

1127. **natione**: 97.

1129. **in Gallia duxerat**: sc. **in matrimonium**.

1130. **filiae**: we might have expected **fuerunt**, as in l. 1127.

1132. **Procillus**: see chap. 47.

1134. **insequentem = qui insequebatur (hostes)**: 159.

1140. **ter**: cf. our "best out of three." **consultum (esse)**: *they had consulted*, impers. 119.

1141. **utrum . . . necaretur an . . . reservaretur**: a double indirect question.

1143. **Metius**: cf. chap. 47. "It is not often that Caesar in his Commentaries alludes to his own personal feelings: he appears in them rather as a great governing force, than as a human being with feelings and affections." Fowler.

Chapter 54

1146. **Ubii**: Germans, but enemies of the Suebi (Bk. IV, chap. 3). **proximi Rhenum**: 78, *a*.

1150. **in Sequanos**: probably in Vesontio (chap. 38). **hibernis**: 67, *c*. **Labienum**: he had been in command of the original legion in Gaul (chap. 10).

1151. **citeriorem Galliam**: Where was this? **conventus**: as governor of Gaul Caesar had to hold the provincial courts, which he did during the winter season. But he was also one of the famous triumvirate, with Pompey and Crassus, and therefore needed to be nearer Rome for political reasons.

"The results of the campaign which Caesar had just concluded may be summed up in a single sentence: he had secured, at least for a time, the virtual submission of central Gaul, and he had paved the way for the conquest by destroying or expelling the barbarian hordes who threatened to anticipate him."

Holmes.

BOOK II

CHAPTER 1

1. **esset**: 137, *b*. **citeriore Gallia**: east of the Alps; see Introd. 14, and Vocab. **supra**: in Bk. I, chap. 54.

3. **Labieni**: Bk. I, chap. 54. **Belgas coniurare**: *that the Belgae were combining*, 77.

4. **quam**: agreement, 115, *b*. **dixeramus**: referring to himself as a writer, Caesar uses the first person, singular or plural.

5. **inter se dare**: *were giving to one another.*

6. **esse causas**: 77. **vererentur**: 138, *a*.

7. **pacata Gallia**: *if Gaul were subdued*, 99, *b*, 3. **Gallia**: here Celtic or central Gaul, not the whole country.

8. Order: **partim** (sc. **ab eis**) **qui moleste ferebant exercitum hiemare . . . in Gallia, ita ut** (*just as*) **noluerant Germanos . . . versari.**

9. **ut . . . noluerant**: 130, *g*.

11. **partim** (sc. **ab eis**) **qui. mobilitate**: 90.

12. **ab nonnullis**: sc. **sollicitabantur.**

13. **quod**: w. **regna occupabantur. ad conducendos homines**: *i.e.* as mercenaries; see 164, *c*.

14. **vulgo**: adv.

15. **imperio nostro**: *under our government*, 93.

The Belgae combined, therefore, for the following reasons: —

1. They feared that the Roman army might advance against them.

2. They were incited by certain Gauls,

   a. Those who objected to the present location of the Roman army.

   b. Revolutionists.

   c. Men who now found it easy to seize the supreme power.

CHAPTER 2

17. **nuntiis**: abl. of means or cause.

18. **novas**: How many legions did Caesar have in 58 B.C.? see Introd. 28. **inita aestate**: see 99 and Vocab.

19. **ulteriorem Galliam**: west of the Alps. **qui deduceret**: 135.

20. **Ipse**: 114. **cum primum**: *as soon as*, here followed by the subjunct., but usually by the indic., 137, *a*. **pabuli**: 65, *c*.

22. **Belgis**: 73. **uti . . . cognoscant**: 143, 145, *d*.

23. **quae gerantur**: *what is going on*, 142.

25. **cogi, exercitum**: 174.

26. **dubitandum** (163, *a*) **non quin proficisceretur**: *he ought not to hesitate to set out.*

27. **castra movet**: from Vesontio, where the army had wintered. Cf. Bk. I, chaps. 38 and 54. **diebus**: 100. The distance Caesar traveled has been estimated to be one hundred and forty-five miles.

CHAPTER 3

29. **Eo**: referring to fines Belgarum, chap. 2, l. 28. **opinione**: 86.

30. **venisset**: 137, *b*. **Galliae**: 73. **ex Belgis** = Belgarum.

31. **legatos**: *as envoys*, 76, *a*.

32. **dicerent** (not dicebant): 135. **Se**: obj. of **permittere**: supply another **se** as subj. **suaque**: *and their property*, 104.

33. **permittere**: 154, note. The rest of the chapter is an indirect quotation, in which the main infinitives stand for direct indicatives, and the subordinate subjunctives stand for direct indicatives or subjunctives. Review App. 153–156. For the direct forms, see below.

35. **et**: omit in translating, 175.

36. **dare**, etc.: 150, *a*. **imperata facere**: *do his bidding*. **recipere**: sc. **eos** as obj. (= **Romanos**).

37. **frumento**: 87.

40. **ut**: w. **potuerint**, 136. **ne** w. **quidem**: see Vocab. **quidem**. **Suessiones**: obj. of **deterrere**.

41. **iure**: the principles of *justice*: **legibus**: special *laws*.

43. **quin sentirent**: *from uniting*, 145, *e*.

"The Remi discerned in the invasion of the Romans an opportunity to shake off the rule which their neighbors, the Suessiones, exercised over them." Mommsen.

Direct forms: —

Nos nostraque omnia in fidem atque in potestatem populi Romani **permittimus** neque (nos) cum Belgis reliquis **consensimus** neque contra populum Romanum **coniuravimus**, paratique **sumus** et obsides dare et imperata facere et oppidis recipere et frumento ceterisque rebus iuvare; **reliqui omnes Belgae** in armis

sunt, Germaniique, qui cis Rhenum **incolunt**, sese cum his **coniunxerunt**, tantusque est eorum omnium **furor** ut ne Suessiones quidem, fratres consanguineosque **nostros**, qui eodem iure et isdem legibus **utuntur**, unum imperium unumque magistratum **nobiscum habent**, deterrere **potuerimus** quin cum his **consentiant**.

CHAPTER 4

45. **quae . . . essent** (141): *what tribes were in arms and how large they were.*

46. **quid**: 82.

47. **Plerosque . . . Germanis**: the Belgae were descended from a people east of the Rhine, but they were Celtic rather than German. **a Germanis**: 84. **Rhenum**: 75, note.

49. **Gallos**: obj. of **expulisse**. **incolerent**: subjunct. standing for a direct indic., 154, *b*.

50. **memoria**, etc.: the Teutoni and Cimbri were conquered by the Romans in 102 and 101 B.C.

51. **Gallia vexata**: abl. abs. denoting time.

52. **ingredi**: *from entering*. **prohibuerint**: 134. **qua ex re fieri**: *and from this fact it came about*. **uti . . . sumerent**: 143.

55. **habere explorata** = **exploravisse**.

56. **propterea quod**: w. **cognoverint**.

57. **quantam . . . pollicitus sit**: 141.

59. **Plurimum**: adv. w. **valere**, 82. **Bellovacos**: subj. of **valere**. **et . . . et . . . et**: 175. **virtute**: 90.

61. **armata**: see Vocab.

65. **Diviciacum**: not the Haeduan chief of Bk. I.

66. **cum . . . tum etiam**: see **cum**, Vocab.

69. **summam**: noun.

70. **habere**: sc. **Suessiones** as subj. **numero**: 97.

71. **Nervios**: sc. **polliceri** with this and the following proper names.

72. **habeantur**: *are considered*.

77. **arbitrari**: sc. **se** (= **Remos**) as subj. used parenthetically, *the Condrusi*, etc., *promised about* 40,000 (*they, i.e.* the Remi, *thought*).

Direct forms of chap. 4: —

Plerique Belgae sunt orti ab Germanis, Rhenumque . . . **traducti** propter loci fertilitatem ibi **consederunt**, Gallosque, qui ea loca **incolebant**, **expulerunt**, **solique sunt**, qui patrum nostrorum

memoria, . . . Teutonos Cimbrosque intra suos fines ingredi prohibuerint ; qua ex re fit uti . . . magnam sibi auctoritatem . . . sumant.

De numero eorum omnia habemus explorata . . . propterea quod propinquitatibus . . . coniuncti, quantam quisque multitudinem . . . ad id bellum polliceatur sit cognovimus. Plurimum inter eos Bellovaci . . . valent. hi possunt conficere armata milia centum, polliciti ex eo numero electa milia sexaginta, totiusque belli imperium sibi postulant. Suessiones nostri sunt finitimi, fines latissimos feracissimosque agros possident. Apud eos fuit rex nostra etiam memoria Diviciacus, totius Galliae potentissimus, qui cum magnae partis harum regionum tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuit, nunc est rex Galba: ad hunc . . . summa totius belli . . . defertur; oppida habent numero duodecim, pollicentur milia armata quinquaginta; totidem Nervii, qui maxime feri inter ipsos habentur, longissimeque absunt: . . . Atrebates, Ambiani, Morini, etc. . . . Condrusos, Eburones, etc. qui . . . Germani appellantur, arbitramur ad quadraginta milia

Chapter 5

80. obsides: *as hostages*. adduci iussit: 151. Quae: 115, *f*.

83. rei publicae: w. intersit, 65, *c*. intersit: 141.

85. confligendum: 163. id fieri posse: *that this could be done*, depending on docet, l. 82.

89. Postquam vidit: 137.

90. neque . . . abesse, cognovit: *and learned that by this time they were not far distant.*

91. ab eis exploratoribus: w. cognovit.

92. flumen: w. traducere, 75, *b*. quod: agreeing in gender w. flumen.

94. castra: remains of this fortification are still found at Berry-au-Bac. Quae res: *this manœuvre*, subj. of muniebat, reddebat, efficiebat. et . . . et . . . et: 175. ripis: 87.

95. post eum quae erant: *the rear*, obj. of reddebat. ab: *from*.

96. commeatus . . . efficiebat: *made it possible for supplies to be brought* (lit. caused that supplies could be brought).

99. altera: *i.e.* the south side.

101. pedum: 63, *d*. fossa: eighteen feet wide at the top; see Introd. 44.

CHAPTER 6

103. **nomine**: 97.

104. **ex itinere**: *i.e.* without besieging it. See Introd. 51. **impetu**: 91.

105. **sustentatum est**: impers., *they made a defense.*

106. **eadem atque Belgarum**: *the same as that of the Belgae.*

107. **circumiecta multitudine**: *after a great number had been stationed about.*

108. **moenibus**: dat. w. **circumiecta**: 67, *c.*

109. **defensoribus**: 83.

112. **conicerent**: on the plur. form, see 118, *d.* **nulli**: 72.

114. **nobilitate**: 96. **oppido**: 67, *c.*

115. **ex eis = eorum.**: the abl. w. **ex** or **de** is often used for the gen. especially after numerals. **legati**: *as envoys*, a pred. noun.

116. **nisi**: (*saying that*) *unless.*

CHAPTER 7

118. **Eo**: referring to Bibrax. **isdem**: sc. **viris.** **ducibus**: *as guides.*

119. **Numidas, Cretas**: translate as adj. w. **sagittarios**, though grammatically objects of the verb. The troops referred to were mercenaries, coming from countries noted for their archers and slingers.

120. **subsidio oppidanis**: 69, 70.

121. **Quorum adventu** (100): *upon whose arrival.* **et**: omit. **Remis** (67, *c*) **accessit**: *was inspired in the Remi.*

122. **hostibus** (68) **discessit**: *forsook the enemy.* **eadem de causa = de eadem causa**, 171, *b.*

125. **quo** (adv.) = **ad quae.**

126. **copiis**: 94. **a**: adv., *away.* **milibus**: 95.

128. **ut**: 130, *f.*

129. **milibus**: 86.

CHAPTER 8

130. **et**: *both.*

131. **opinione virtutis**: *reputation for bravery.* **proelio**: 83.

132. **proeliis**: 87. **quid . . . posset**: *how brave the enemy was*, 82 and 141.

135. **loco opportuno**: *the position being suitable.* 99, *b*, 2.

136. **instruendam**: 164, *c.*

138. tantum quantum loci: *over as much space as.* tantum: 80.

139. quantum: obj. of occupare. loci: 63, note.

140. ex utraque parte: *on each side.*

142. transversam: *i.e.* at right angles to the length of the hill. See plan.

143. passuum: 63, *d.* extremas: 106.

144. tormenta: see Introd. 56.

145. tantum poterant: *had so much strength,* 82.

148. Hoc facto: 99, *b,* 1. proxime: cf. Bk. II. chap. 2.

149. quo: *anywhere.* opus: indeclinable, see Vocab. subsidio: 69.

151. eductas = eduxerant.

Chapter 9

153. nostrum: w. exercitum.

154. Hanc, 171, *c.* si transirent: *to see whether,* etc., 141. exspectabant: 121.

156. ut . . . adgrederentur: w. parati.

157. contendebatur: impers., see Vocab.

158. secundiore . . . proelio nostris (70): *though the cavalry skirmish was more favorable for our men.*

161. demonstratum est: cf. Bk. II. 1. 95.

162. vadis repertis: 99, *c.*

163. eo consilio (92) ut expugnarent: *with the design of capturing.* cui: 67, *c.*

165. minus = non. popularentur: after ut.

166. nobis usui: 70, 69. gerendum: 164, *c.*

167. commeatu: 83.

Chapter 10

Read Colonel Dodge's description of the battle of the Axona p. 108.

169. armaturae: 63, *d.*

170. ponte: 87.

171. Hostes: obj. of adgressi; emphatic position, 171, *c.*

172. per: *over.*

173. reliquos: obj. of reppulerunt. conantes: w. reliquos.

175. circumventos = circumvenerunt.

176. **et . . . et**: *both . . . and.* **expugnando**: 164, *d.*

177. **spem se fefellisse**: *they had been disappointed in the hope* (lit. hope had deceived them). **fefellisse**: when the perfect tense repeats the initial consonant, it is called a *reduplicated* perfect; cf. the perfect of **cado, caedo, do, pello,** etc. **neque** = **et non.**

178. **pugnandi causa**: 165, *a*, and 171, *a.* **viderunt**: repeat **ubi.**

180. **domum . . . reverti**: *for each to return to his own home.*

181. **quorum in fines**: *into whose country.*

182. **defendendos**: 164, note.

186. **deduxit**: it is often best to translate by an English passive, as here, *they were led to this decision*, etc., *by this consideration.*

187. **His persuaderi** (67, *b*, and note) **non poterat**: *they could not be persuaded* (lit. it could not be persuaded to them).

188. **neque** (= **et non**) **. . . ferrent**: *i.e.* if they delayed.

CHAPTER 11

190. **re**: *plan.* Note the force of the seven ablatives in ll. 190–192.

192. **cum peteret, properaret**: 138.

193. **domum**: 79, *a.* **fecerunt ut . . . videretur**: *made their departure look*, etc.

194. **fugae**: 73.

195. **speculatores**: probably referring to individual *spies*, while **exploratoribus** (l. 198) refers to bands of *scouts.*

196. **discederent**: 141.

198. **re**: *the fact*, that the Belgae had retreated. **qui moraretur**: 135.

200. **His**: w. **praefecit**, 67, *c.*

202. **milia**: 80.

203. **fugientium**: *as they fled.*

204. **cum (ei) . . . consisterent**: *since those in the rear . . . halted*, 138.

205. **ventum erat**: see Vocab.

206. **priores praesidium ponerent**: *(while) those in front sought refuge.*

210. **quantum . . . spatium**: *as the length of the day allowed.*

Chapter 12

213. priusquam reciperent: *before they could recover*, 137, *f.*

216. ex itinere: cf. Bk. II. chap. 6, l. 104.

217. ab defensoribus: 83.

219. paucis defendentibus: *though the defenders were few*, 99 *b*, 4.

220. vineas: for a description, see Introd. 53, agere: see Vocab. quaeque = et ea quae.

223. iacto: *constructed.* aggere, turribus: see Introd. 52, 54.

224. constitutis: *set up.*

225. ante: adv. audierant: *had heard of.*

227. petentibus Remis: *at the request of the Remi.* ut conservarentur: 145, *a.*

Chapter 13

228. obsidibus: *as hostages.* primis: *the chief men;* abl. abs. w. acceptis.

229. Galbae: cf. chap. 4, l. 68.

230. deditionem: see Vocab.

231. Qui cum = cum ei, *i.e.* the Bellovaci.

235. voce: their language was Celtic, not Latin, of course.

236. sese . . . venire: *put themselves under his protection*, etc.

238. accessisset, poneret, petierunt. note the difference of tense. pueri: *children.*

239. more: 92.

Chapter 14

243. Bellovacos: the direct forms of this quotation are given below. in fide . . . fuisse: *had been on terms of loyalty and friendship with.*

244. impulsos (Bellovacos): w. defecisse et intulisse.

245. qui dicerent: *who said*, 154, *b*, not an expression of purpose.

246. perferre: *were suffering.* et: omit.

248. Qui: supply antecedent eos as subject of profugisse, 115, *e.*

250. petere: pred. of Bellovacos and Haeduos.

251. sua: *his (characteristic).*

252. Quod si = et si id.

253. auxiliis: 87. si qua bella: *whatever wars.*

Direct Forms:—

Bellovaci omni tempore in fide atque amicitia civitatis Haeduae **fuerunt**; **impulsi** ab suis principibus, qui **dicebant** Haeduos a Caesare in servitutem redactos omnes indignitates . . . perferre, et ab Haeduis **defecerunt** et populo Romano bellum **intulerunt**. Qui eius consili principes **fuerant**, quod **intellegebant** quantam calamitatem civitati intulissent in Britanniam **profugerunt**. **Petunt** non solum **Bellovaci** sed, etiam pro his **Haedui** ut **tua** clementia ac mansuetudine in eos **utaris**. Quod si **feceris**, Haeduorum auctoritatem apud omnes Belgas **amplificabis**, quorum auxiliis atque opibus, si qua bella **inciderunt**, sustentare **consuerunt**.

CHAPTER 15

256. **honoris causa**: see Vocab. **Diviciaci**: 63, *c*.

258. **magna auctoritate**: 96.

259. **multitudine**: 97.

263. **Nervii**: "The people, whom of all his enemies Caesar most respected and of whom he wrote with one of those rare touches of enthusiasm that here and there relieve the severity of his narrative, were the Nervii." Holmes.

265. **esse mercatoribus**: 72. **pati**: (*they*) *allow*.

267. **quod . . . existimarent**: 138, *a*. For the same thought, cf. Bk. I. chap. 1, l. 10.

268. **magnae virtutis**: 63, *d*.

269. **qui dedidissent**: 138, *b*.

CHAPTER 16

273. **triduum**: 80.

275. **amplius milia**: 86, *b*. **abesse**, **151**.

277. **finitimis**: 52.

280. **mulieres**: obj. of **coniecisse**.

281. **quique** = **et eos qui**.

282. **quo**: adv. **exercitui esset**: *the army had*, **72**.

CHAPTER 17

285. **qui deligant**: 135. **castris**: 73.

286. **ex Belgis** = **Belgarum**: w. **complures**.

287. **una**: *along with him*. **ex his** = **horum**.

288. eorum . . . perspecta: *having noticed the usual marching order of our army at that time* (lit. the custom of march of those days).

290. inter singulas legiones. *between the several legions.*

291. numerum: *amount.*

292. quicquam negoti: *any difficulty,* 63, *e.*

293. spatium: 80.

294. sub sarcinis: see Introd. 42.

295. futurum (esse): *the result would be.*

297. Adiuvabat, etc.: the sub.j. is the clause beginning w. quod, and the obj. is consilium, but translate as if passive, *the plan of those who,* etc., *was supported by the fact that,* etc.

298. quod Nervii: w. effecerant (l. 304). cum: causal. nihil possent: *had no power.*

299. quicquid . . . copiis: *whatever strength they have consists in infantry.*

300. quo impedirent: 135, *a.*

302. teneris . . . inflexis: *by cutting into and bending over young trees.*

303. in latitudinem enatis. *by letting grow sidewise.*

305. quo: adv. intrari posset: impers., *one could enter.*

Chapter 18

309. castris: 69.

311. supra: chap. 16.

312. acclivitate: 91.

313. huic: 73. passus: 80.

314. ab: *at.*

316. secundum: prep.

318. pedum: 63, *d.*

Chapter 19

320. aliter . . . ac: *was different from what* (lit. had itself otherwise than).

322. consuetudine: 92.

324. conlocarat = conlocaverat.

325. praesidio: 69.

330. neque: = et cum . . . non. longius . . . finem . . . pertinebant: *farther than the open places reached* (lit. than the limit to which the open places lay extended).

331. **cedentes** (sc. **eos**): *them as they retreated.*

335. **quod tempus** = **tempus quod**.

337. **sese confirmaverant**: *had resolved to do.*

341. **et . . . et . . . et**: 175.

343. **adverso**: see Vocab.

CHAPTER 20

345. **Caesari**: 71. **erant agenda**: 39 and 163. **vexillum**: a large red flag showing that there was to be a battle; the **tuba** (l. 347) sounded the call to fall into line.

346. **proponendum**: sc. **erat** (or **erant**) with this and following verbs, 163. **quod**: rel.

347. **opere**: *i.e.* the fortifying of the camp, chap. 19, l. 334.

349. **qui**: sc. antecedent **ei**, as subj. of **arcessendi**. **aggeris**: *material for the rampart* (of the camp). **petendi causa**: 164, *a*.

353. **difficultatibus**: 70. **subsidio**: 69.

355. **quid oporteret**: depending on **praescribere** and **doceri**, 141.

357. **singulis**: *respective.* **singulos**: *the several.*

359. **nihil iam**: *no longer.*

360. **videbantur**: *seemed best.*

CHAPTER 21

362. **necessariis . . . imperatis**: *having given the necessary commands.* **cohortandos**: note the number and use of the gerundives in this chapter; see 164.

363. **quam in partem**: *to whatever part* (of the camp).

364. **non longiore . . . quam**: *no longer than* (*to say*).

368. **quam . . . posset**: *a spear's throw;* cf. our "a stone's throw."

370. **pugnantibus**: sc. **eis**, 67, *c*.

371. **insignia**: *i.e.* crests of the shields and other ornaments.

372. **scutis**: 83. The shields were covered with leather when not in use.

374. **Quam . . . in partem . . . devenit**: *to whatever position each man happened to come.*

375. **quaeque**: *and whatever.*

376. **ad**: *by.*

CHAPTER 22

379. **quam**: *than.*

381. **aliae alia**: 117. **saepibus**: 87.

383. **neque certa . . poterant**: this is the independent clause. **conlocari**: w. **poterant**. **neque quid . . provideri poterat**; *nor could it be foreseen what need there was in each position.*

CHAPTER 23

388. **ut**: *just as.*

389. **acie** = **aciei**. Order: **pilis emissis celeriter compulerunt ex superiore loco in flumen Atrebates exanimatos**, etc.

391. **ea pars**: *i.e.* of the Roman army.

392. **conantes**: sc. **eos**.

393. **Ipsi**: the Roman soldiers.

395. **resistentes**: acc. agreeing w. **hostes**.

399. **ipsis**: 114, *a*.

400. **fere**: 171, *f*.

402. **non magno intervallo**: *at no great distance*, 95, *b*.

403. **duce Boduognato**: 99. *a*, 3.

406. **summum castrorum locum** *the height occupied by the camp.*

CHAPTER 24

407. **levis armaturae**: 63, *d*, and Introd. 29.

409. **pulsos**: sc. **esse**. **dixeram**: chap. 19, l. 340.

411. **calones**: w. **mandabant** (l. 415).

412. **nostros victores**: *our victorious troops.*

417. **alii aliam**: 117, *b*. **ferebantur**: see Vocab.

418. **Treveri**: used as adj., *of the Treveri.*

419. **quorum opinio**, *whose reputation.*

421. **cum**: conj. w. **vidissent** (l. 424). **compleri**: *was filling*, 151.

424. **desperatis nostris rebus**: *despairing of our situation.* **domum**: 79, *a*.

425. **Romanos pulsos (esse)**: w. **renuntiaverunt**, 151. **castris**: 88.

CHAPTER 25

428. **Caesar . . . possent** (l. 445): in this long sentence of eighteen lines, notice the verbs expressing the action of Caesar: **profectus**, (ubi) **vidit**, (scuto) **detracto**, **processit** (main verb),

(centurionibus) appellatis, cohortatus, iussit. **cohortatione**: cf. chap. 21, l. 364.

429. **signis conlatis**: *i.e.* instead of being placed at regular intervals.

431. **sibi esse impedimento, e c.**: *hindered one another* (lit. were for a hindrance to themselves) *in fighting.*

432. For **centurio, signifer, primipilus, manipulus**, see Vocab. and Introd. 37 and 49.

435. **Baculo**: distinguished for bravery also in Bk. III. chap. 5, and Bk. VI. chap. 38.

437. **tardiores**: *rather slack.* **ab novissimis**: *in the rear.*

440. **vidit**: repeated from l. 431. **rem**: *matters.*

441. **quod . . . posset**: 134.

442. **scuto militi** (68) **detracto**: *snatching a shield from a soldier.*

445. **quo possent**: 135, *a.*

448. **in extremis suis rebus**: *in his own extreme peril.*

Chapter 26

452. **ut . . . coniungerent . . . inferrent**: secondary obj. of **monuit**, 145, *a.*

453. **conversa . . . inferrent**: *face about and advance* (lit bear the standards turned). **aliis alii**: *to one another*, 117.

459. **summo**: 106.

460. **Labienus**: Caesar's chief lieutenant, who was in command of legions IX and X.

461. **gererentur**: 141.

462. **subsidio nostris**: 69, 70. **Qui cum** (115, *f*): w. **cognovissent** (l. 465).

463. **quo . . . esset**: *what the situation was.*

465. **nihil . . . fecerunt**: *made all possible haste* (lit. made nothing (of) left (63, *e*) for speed).

Chapter 27

468. **procubuissent**: 142, depending on **redintegrarent.**

469. **scutis**: abl. w. **innixi. calones**: (*and*) *the camp followers*, nom. case.

470. **inermes**: w. **calones. armatis**: 67, *c.*

471. **vero**: 171, *e.* **fugae**: cf. chap. 24.

472. **se praeferrent**: w. **ut**, l. 468, *tried to surpass*; tense, 121, *b*; mood, 136.

474. **spe**: see Vocab.

476. **iacentibus**: *upon the fallen*, 160.

478. qui superessent: *the survivors*. **ut**: *as if*. **conicerent, remitterent**: w. **ut** in l. 475.

479. **ut . . . transire**. *so that it ought not to be supposed that men of such bravery dared cross*, etc., *without reason*.

482. **facilia**: pred. adj. **ex**: *instead of*.

"So ended this wild fight . . . a soldier's battle, and withal the battle of a great man. Within an hour it was over, fought and well nigh lost and won." Read Holmes, Dodge, or Froude, on this battle with the Nervii.

Chapter 28

487. **dixeramus**: cf. chap. 16. **cum**: *since*. **victoribus**, etc.: *they thought that nothing was difficult for the victors*, 70.

488. **omnium**: w. **consensu**.

492. **vix**: modifies **quingentos**.

493. **possent**: 134.

494. **usus**: sc. **esse**. **videretur**: *might be seen*.

Chapter 29

498. **supra**: chap. 16.

502. **Quod cum**: *while this* (*town*). **ex . . . partibus**: *round about*.

505. **amplius pedum**: 86, *b*.

507. **conlocabant**: note the tense.

508 **Ipsi . . . prognati**: cf. chap. 4, l. 47. **ex Cimbris**: 84.

510. **agere**: *drive*, referring to the animals included in the **impedimenta** (*possessions*).

511. **citra**: *i.e.* the west side. **custodiam**: *as a guard*.

512. **una**: *with it*.

513. **Hi**: *i.e.* the 6000. **obitum**: the Teutoni were defeated by Marius at the battle of Aquae Sextiae, 102 B.C.; the Cimbri, in 101 B.C., by Marius and Catulus in the battle of Vercellae.

514. **cum . . . defenderent**: *i.e.* they carried on offensive and defensive warfare.

CHAPTER 30

516. **primo**: adv. *at first.* **adventu**: 100.

519. **pedum duodecim**: *i.e.* in height, 63, *d.*

520. **milium**: sc. **pedum**, rather than **passuum.**

523. **inridere, increpitare**: 152.

524. a (adv.) **tanto spatio** (95): *so far away.* **quibusnam**: implying derision.

525. **homines**: w. **confiderent.**

526. Translate the parenthesis last in the sentence. **Gallis** (70): *in the eyes of the Gauls.* **prae**: *in comparison with.*

528. **in**: *upon.*

529. **confiderent**: a quoted question, 154, *d.*

CHAPTER 31

530. **vero**: *but,* 171, *e.* **moveri**: sc. **turrim.**

532. **qui**: w. **dixerunt** (l. 536). **locuti**: *speaking.*

533. **qui . . . possent**: 134, *c.*

536. **Unum**: obj.

537. **pro**: *in accordance with.*

538. **ne . . . despoliaret**: in appos. w. **unum,** 145, *a.*

539. **armis**: 83.

540. **invidere**: 67, *b.*

541. **traditis armis**: 99, *b,* 3. **Sibi praestare**: impers., *it was better for them.*

543. **per cruciatum interfici**: *to be tortured to death.*

CHAPTER 32

545. **consuetudine**: 92.

546. **merito**: 90.

547. **attigisset**: *should touch.* What would be the form of this verb in dir. disc., see 155, *b.*

549. **in**: *in the case of.*

550. **ne . . . inferrent**: *not to do any harm,* etc. **quam**: 116.

552. **facere**: sc. **sē** as subj. *i.e.* they *would* do; the present tense is used here to express the future action more vividly.

554. **iacta**: w. **multitudine. prope**: adv. w. **adaequarent.**

555. **summam**: *top.*

Chapter 33

560. **quam**: 116.

561. **Illi**: translate w. **fecerunt** (l. 569). **ante inito consilio**: *according to a plan previously formed.*

564. **cum eis**: w. **armis**.

565. **ex cortice, (ex) viminibus**: abl. of material, 84.

567. **qua**: adv., *where.*

571. **eo**: adv. **concursum est**: impers., *they rushed.*

572. **ut a viris fortibus . . . debuit**: translate actively, *as brave men were bound to fight*, etc.

573. **spe**: see Vocab. **qui iacerent**: 134.

575. **una**: *alone.*

579. **sectionem**: *booty*, including the people as well as their property.

581. **capitum**: gen. pl. of **caput**, *persons.* **milium**: pred. gen., 66.

Chapter 34

583. **Crasso**: w. **certior factus est**. He is mentioned also in Bk. I. chap. 52, and Bk. III. chaps. 7, 8, 9, etc.

584. **Venetos**: a war with this tribe occurred the following year; see Bk. III. chaps. 9–16.

Chapter 35

590. **barbaros**: the Romans applied this term to all outside their national boundaries.

591. **incolerent**: 142.

593. **pollicerentur**: 135. **Quas** = **eas**. **Italiam**: *i.e.* north of the Rubicon. For the extent of Caesar's province, see Introd. 14.

596. **quaeque** = **et eas . . . quae**.

599. **ex**: *in accordance with.* **supplicatio**: decreed by the senate. The longest thanksgiving previously observed was for twelve days in honor of Pompey's victory over Mithridates.

BOOK III

CHAPTER 1

The events of chaps. 1-6 occurred before the close of 57 B.C., and might therefore have been included in the narrative of Bk. II. The campaign of 56 B.C. begins in chap. 7.

1. **in Italiam**: emphatic by position, 171, *c*. **Galbam**: twelve years later he is said to have been one of Caesar's assassins.

4. **summas**: *the tops of*, 106.

5. **iter per Alpes**: now the Great St. Bernard Pass.

7. **mercatores**: Caesar knew of the commercial advantages which his conquest would gain for the Romans. **Huic**: *i.e.* Galba, 67, *a*.

8. **uti . . . conlocaret**: obj. clause w. **permisit.**

9. **hiemandi causa**: cf. **causa mittendi** (l. 5).

14. **vico**: not a walled town, which was called an **oppidum.**

17. **Cum**: causal.

19. **vacuam**: pred. adj. w. **relictam,** *left vacant.*

CHAPTER 2

25. **impenderent**: 154, *b*.

27. **ut . . . caperent**: noun cl. in appos. w. **id**, 145, *d*.

29. **legionem**: w. **despiciebant** (l. 32). **neque eam plenissimam**: *and that indeed not very full.* The twelfth legion was reduced not only by the withdrawal of two cohorts and the absence of individuals, but by the severe losses in the battle with the Nervii, Bk. II. chap. 23.

35. **accedebat**: see Vocab.

36. **quod . . . habebant**: 141. **ab se**: 83. **abstractos**: sc. **esse. obsidum nomine**: *as hostages.*

39. **sibi persuasum habebant**: *they believed* (lit. had it persuaded to themselves).

CHAPTER 3

41. **acceptis**: 99, *c*.

42. **perfectae**: agreeing with the nearest subject, 103, *a*, *b*. **neque satis esset provisum**: impers., *and sufficient provision had not been made.*

44. **nihil timendum (esse)**: *there should be no fear.*

45. **consilio**: *i.e.* of the officers.

47. **tantum**: 104. **periculi**: 63, *e*.

49. **neque subsidio veniri**: sc. **posset**, *and (since) reinforcements could not come.*

54. **maiori parti placuit**: *the majority decided*, 67, *b*.

CHAPTER 4

57. **vix**: w. **daretur**, 171, *c*. **eis rebus conlocandis**: dat. of purpose, 164, *b*.

59. **decurrere** and six following inf.: 152.

62. **ex loco superiore**: *i.e.* the top of the fortifications.

64. **hoc**: *on this account*, 90.

66. **quarum rerum**: w. **nihil**.

67. **non modo** (= non modo non) . . . **dabatur**: *not only was no chance given the wearied man*, etc.

69. **sui recipiendi**: 164, *a*.

CHAPTER 5

71. **iam pugnaretur**: *they had fought.*

74. **res . . . casum**: *the conflict had been prolonged to a critical situation.*

76. **Baculus**: the brave centurion of Bk. II. chap. 25.

77. **diximus**: "we," the writer.

80. **extremum auxilium**: *last resource.*

82. **certiores facit**: here = *commands.* **intermitterent** and following verbs are subjunctive, instead of imperative which they would be in direct discourse, 154, *c*.

CHAPTER 6

86. **Quod** (rel.): supply antecedent **id** as obj. of **faciunt**. **omnibus portis**: there were four gates. See Introd. 43.

87. **quid fieret**: 141.

88. **sui colligendi**: sing. form of the gerundive to agree w. the sing. form of **sui**, which of course is pl. here in meaning.

89. **spem**: see Vocab.

95. **fusis armisque exutis**: *routed and deprived of their arms.* **armis**: 83.

97. **saepius**: *too often.*

98. **alio consilio**: *with one design*, to open the way for the merchants.

99. **aliis rebus**: *other difficulties*, the conflict with the mountain tribes.

CHAPTER 7

105. **cum**: *although*.

106. **superatis Belgis**: 57 B.C.

107. **Germanis**: under Ariovistus, 58 B.C.

108. **Illyricum**: one of Caesar's provinces. **eas quoque nationes**: *i.e.* as well as those of Gaul.

111. **P. Crassus**: cf. Bk. I. chap. 52, and Bk. II. chap. 34. **proximus mare**: 78, *a*.

112. **hiemabat**: note the tense, 121.

114. **complures**: w. **civitates**.

CHAPTER 8

118. **civitatis**: w. **auctoritas**. **amplissima**: pred. adj.

119. **orae**: 63, *c*. **et**: 175.

120. **consuerunt**: *are accustomed*.

121. **scientia**: 97.

122. **in . . . aperti**: *on the boisterous, vast, and open sea* (lit. in the great force of, etc.).

123. **omnes**, obj., **vectigales**, pred. adj., w. **habent**.

124. **ab his . . . retinendi**: *they begin by arresting* (lit. a beginning of arresting is made, etc.).

126. **dedissent**: 154, *b*.

131. **principes**: acc. w. **per**. **nihil acturos (esse)**: *that they would do nothing*.

138. **remittat**: subjunct. for a direct imperative, **remitte**, 154, *c*.

CHAPTER 9

140. **aberat longius**: during his absence Caesar had held a conference at Luca, in Etruria, with the other triumvirs, Pompey and Crassus, by which his term as governor of Gaul was extended to 49 B.C. **naves longas**: *ships of war:* see Introd. 57.

143. **cum . . . potuit**: cf. Bk. II. chap. 2, l. 20.

145. **cognito adventu**: causal.

146. **simul quod**: *and also because*. **admisissent**: see Vocab.

147. **legatos . . . coniectos**: explaining **facinus**, *in arresting envoys*, etc. **quod nomen**: *a name which*, referring to **legatos**.

151. **instituunt**: *begin*. **hoc**: *on this account*, 90. **maiore spe**: abl. abs., but translate *with greater hope*.

152. **natura**: 90. **esse concisa**: depending on **sciebant**.

156. **ut**: *although*, 139.

157. **posse**: this and following inf. depend on **perspiciebant** (l. 162).

158. **neque**: w. **novisse**.

160. **longe aliam atque**: *very different from what it was*.

166. **Socios**: *as allies*.

168. **Britannia**: "Caesar had already planned to invade Britain, and to reduce the Veneti was a necessary first step, for while he might push his way between their fleets, they could seriously threaten his rear during his absence." Dodge.

CHAPTER 10

172. **iniuria retentorum equitum**: *the crime of arresting knights;* namely, Silius, Velanius, etc., members of the great Roman social class, the **equites**.

173. **datis obsidibus**: *after hostages had been given*.

174. **ne . . . arbitrarentur**: the fifth reason for the war. **hac parte . . . natione neglecta**: *if this tribe were let go unpunished*.

178. **autem**: *furthermore*, 171, *e*.

179. **priusquam conspirarent**: 137, *f*.

180. **partiendum**: the gerundive of a dep. verb is pass. in meaning.

CHAPTER 11

183. **proximi flumini**: 73. **Huic**: *him*, 67, *b*.

184. **adeat, contineat, prohibeat**: *that he should go*, etc. The clauses are used without a connective as obj. of **mandat**. What mood would be used in dir. disc.? 154, *c*. **officio**: *allegiance*.

185. **auxilio**: 69.

187. **cohortibus legionariis**: *i.e.* of regular soldiers. The allied forces were in cohorts, but not in legions.

192. **qui . . . curet**: *to see that this force be kept apart*, 135.

193. **Brutum**: this lieutenant, as well as Labienus, was among Caesar's assassins in 43 B.C.; see Introd. 19.

CHAPTER 12

198. **eius modi fere ut**: *generally such that.* **posita**: sc. **oppida.**

199. **extremis**: 106. **pedibus, navibus** (l. 202): 87.

200. **cum**: *whenever.* **quod**: rel.

203. **utraque re**: *in either case, i.e.* approach by foot or by boat.

204. **operis**: *i.e.* the fortifications which the enemy of the Veneti might construct.

205. **extruso mari**: abl. abs. **his**: (*i.e.* **aggere et molibus**), abl. abs. w. **adaequatis.**

206. **moenibus**: dat., 67, *c.* **fortunis**: dat. w. **desperare.**

207. **cuius rei**: referring to **navium.**

210. **eo**: *on this account,* 90.

212. **summa**: w. **difficultas.**

213. **raris ac prope nullis**: *few and far apart.*

CHAPTER 13

215. **namque**: (and the Veneti did not have these difficulties) *for.*

216. **carinae**: sc. **erant** with this and following nominatives, **prorae,** etc.

220. **totae**: *entirely,* 105. **ad . . . perferendam**: 164, *c.*

221. **ex trabibus**: 84. **pedalibus in altitudinem**: *a foot thick.*

223. **crassitudine**: *of* (or *having*) *the thickness,* 96. **ferreis**: w. **catenis.**

225. **eius**: *of it, i.e.* **lini.**

226. **eo**: *on this account,* 90.

228. **tanta onera navium = naves tanti oneris.**

230. **nostrae classi**: dat. of possessor, *our fleet had.*

231. **una**: adv., *only.*

232. **reliqua**: *everything else.* **pro**: *considering.* **essent**: w. **ut,** 136.

233. **enim**: 171, *e.* **eis**: 67, *b.* **nostrae**: sc. **naves.**

234. **rostro**: this was made of bronze, for ramming the enemy's vessels.

237. **accedebat**: *another advantage was.* **se vento dedissent**: *ran before the wind.*

238. **et . . . et . . . et**: 175. **ferrent**: w. **ut,** 145, *c.*

240. **navibus**: 71.

Chapter 14

244. captis oppidis: 99, *b*, 5. neque eis noceri (impers., 67, note). posse: *no injury could be done to them.*

245. exspectandam: sc. esse.

248. nostris: dat. w. adversae, 73.

249. satis Bruto: w. constabat, *it was not very clear to Brutus.*

251. quid agerent: 141, *a*.

252. Rostro: 87.

253. turribus excitatis: concessive, *though*, etc.

254. ex: *on.*

258. non absimili forma: *having a form not unlike (that).*

259. muralium falcium: see Introd. 55. His: abl. of means, emphatic position.

263. navibus: dat., 70.

267. res: *conflict, action.*

268. paulo fortius: *unusually brave.*

Chapter 15

271. cum circumsteterant. 137, note. singulas (naves): *i.e.* of the enemy.

272. binae ac ternae: *two or three* Roman ships.

273. Quod postquam = et postquam id.

277. quo = in quam. ferebat: sc. eas as obj.

279. ad negotium conficiendum: *for ending the fight.*

283. cum: concessive.

This was the first recorded fight on the Atlantic Ocean. Read Dodge, pp. 131–139, and Holmes, pp. 62–66.

Chapter 16

285. orae maritimae: cf. Bk. III. chap. 8, l. 119.

286. cum . . . tum (l. 288): *not only . . . but.*

288. navium quod: *what ships*, 63, *e*.

290. neque quo . . . reciperent neque . . . defenderent: *no place to retreat and no means of defense* (lit. whither they might retreat, etc.), 135.

292. vindicandum: impers., *punishment must be inflicted.*

295. sub corona: captives were crowned with a wreath when they were to be sold into slavery.

CHAPTER 17

296. **Dum geruntur**: 137, *c*. **Sabinus**: cf. chap. **11.**

301. **diebus**: time within which, 100.

305. **ex Gallia = Galliae**: w. **undique**.

308. **omnibus rebus**: *in all respects.*

309. **cum**: *although.* **spatio**: 95.

311. **hostibus**: 70.

317. **teneret**: subjunct. in indir. disc., depending on **existimabat.**

318. **legato dimicandum**: *a lieutenant ought to fight*, 71 and 163.

CHAPTER 18

324. **quibus . . . prematur**: 141, obj. of **docet.**

325. **neque longius . . . educat**: *and not later than the next night Sabinus will lead out*, etc.

329. **negoti bene gerendi**: *of success.*

330. **iri oportere**: impers., (*but that*) *they ought to go.*

337. **sit concessum**: 137, *f*. **uti capiant . . . contendant**: noun clauses, subj. of **sit concessum.**

339. **ut explorata victoria**: *as though victory were assured.*

340. **quibus compleant**: 135.

CHAPTER 19

343. **circiter**: adv. modifying **mille** (adj.).

344. **quam minimum spati**: *as little time as possible.*

346. **cupientibus**: dat.

348. **Factum est**: translate the ablatives first, 90.

352. **Quos**: obj. of **consecuti.**

354. **equites**: nom.

358. **ut**, *though:* **sic**, *yet.* **animus**, *spirit:* **mens**, *will.*

CHAPTER 20

362. **Crassus**: cf. Bk. I. chap. 52, Bk. II. chap. 34, Bk. III. chap. 11.

363. **ante**: Bk. I. chap. 1. **et**: *both.*

364. **ex tertia parte**: *as the third part.*

366. **paucis ante annis**: in 78 B.C., in the war with Sertorius.

372. **Tolosa**: etc., 83, *b*. **Narbone**: Narbo was the capital of the Roman province which was called Narbonensis.

374. **finitimae**: agrees w. **civitates** and governs **regionibus**, 73. **evocatis**: see Vocab.

CHAPTER 21

384. **victoriis**: abl. governed by **freti**.

385. **quid . . . possent**: subj. of **perspici** (l. 387).

386. **imperatore**: referring to Caesar. **adulescentulo duce**: referring to Crassus, 99, *a*, 3.

391. **Illi**: subj. of **mittunt**, l. 396.

392. **cuniculis**: so named from their resemblance to rabbits' burrows. **cuius rei**: w. **peritissimi**, 64.

394. **diligentia**: 90.

398. **faciunt**: *they do so.*

CHAPTER 22

402. **uti . . . fruantur**: noun clause.

403. **commeatus**: w. **fruantur**. 88. **quorum amicitiae**: *to whose friendship.*

404. **si** (*and if*) **. . . accidat**: 140.

405. **ferant**: w. **uti** (l. 402).

408. **recusaret**: 134. **cum his**: *i.e.*, **sexcentis devotis**, repeated from l. 401.

412. **impetravit**: the mercy of Crassus is notable.

CHAPTER 23

416. **munitum**: part. **diebus**: time within which, w. **expugnatum** (esse).

420. **citerioris Hispaniae**: north of the Ebro. Spain had become a Roman province 150 years before this time: case, 66. **finitimae**: nom. pl.

424. **Duces**: *as guides*, 62. **Sertorius**: a partisan of Marius, who, after the death of that general, continued in Spain the struggle of the Marian or popular faction against the government at Rome.

425. **omnes annos**: 82–72 B.C.

427. **loca capere**: *to choose positions.*

428. **Quod**: *this;* the following clauses are in appos.

433. **cunctandum**: 119, *d*. **quin decertaret**: *to fight*, 145, *c*.

CHAPTER 24

436. **duplici**: owing to the small number of men, they were stationed two cohorts deep instead of three. See Introd. 47.

437. **in mediam aciem**: the auxiliaries were ordinarily stationed on the wings.

438. **expectabat**: *waited to see.*

443. **coepissent**: 155, *b*.

444. **sub sarcinis**: see Introd. 42. **infirmiores animo**: *discouraged.*

448. **hostes**: nom. **alacriores**: pred. adj.

CHAPTER 25

454. **vallo**: 83.

455. **quibus**: dat. w. **confidebat**, 67.

456. **lapidibus subministrandis**: *by supplying stones*, 87.

457. **speciem atque opinionem**: *appearance and impression.*

462. **ab** (*at*) **decumana porta**: see Introd. 43.

CHAPTER 26

467. **praesidio castris**: 69, 70. **ab labore**: w. an abstract noun personified, **ab** may be used as w. a personal agent, 85.

472. **videri**: sc. **possent.**

473. **quid rei**: *what*, 63, *e.*

474. **quod**: rel., *as.*

477. **per**: *over.*

CHAPTER 27

487. **tempore confisae**: confido generally takes the abl. when used of *things*, the dat. when used of *persons.*

CHAPTER 28

"The whole of Gaul had now been reduced save only the land of the Morini and Menapii, which extended along the coast southerly from the mouth of the Rhine to modern Boulogne, the land which the Dutch have since so laboriously rescued from the ocean. These peoples had never sent ambassadors to Caesar, and when he approached their territory, taught by defeat of other Gauls, they retired into their forests and morasses of the coast and bade him defiance." Dodge.

490. **omni Gallia**: *i.e.* the rest of Gaul.

491. **qui essent, misissent**: 134. **neque**: *and . . . not.*

492. **arbitratus**: *thinking*, perf. part. as pres.

494. **alia . . . ac**: *other than.*

504. **longius**: *too far.* **impeditioribus**: *too much obstructed.* **locis**: 101.

CHAPTER 29

507. **quis**: w. **impetus. inermibus . . . militibus**: 99.

511. **spatio confecto**: *i.e.* cleared of timber.

512. **extrema**: *the rear of.*

513. **ipsi**: *(and when) they themselves.* **eius modi**: see Vocab.

BOOK IV

CHAPTER 1

1. **qui**: agreeing w. **annus**, in gender, though we should expect **quae** in agreement w. **hieme**, 115 *b*.

2. **Pompeio, Crasso**: consuls, 55 B.C. They were also Caesar's colleagues in the triumvirate; see Introd. 12. **Germani**: in appos. w. **Usipetes** and **Tencteri**.

5. **Suebis**: mentioned first in Bk. I. chaps. 37 and 54.

10. **singula milia**: *a thousand each.*

12. **hi, illi**: 113, *b*.

14. **ratio atque usus**: *theory and practice.*

15. **agri**: 63, *c*; land was common property, tilled each year by an alternate section of the people.

18. **maximam partem**: *to a great extent*, adverbial acc.

19. **multum . . . venationibus**: *they are great hunters.* Order: **quae res vires alit et . . . efficit, cibi genere . . . vitae, quod . . . faciunt.**

20. **officio adsuefacti**: *accustomed to no duty.*

24. **vestitus**: w. **quicquam**, 63, *e*.

CHAPTER 2

27. **Mercatoribus est**: 72. **aditus**: *sc.* **ad eos**, *i.e.* the Suebi. Order: **ut habeant (eos) quibus vendant** (135) **quae ceperint** (142).

28. **quam quo**: *than because*, used w. implied negative. The Germans desired to sell to the traders, rather than buy from them.

29. **iumentis . . . importatis utuntur**: *they import for use.*

33. **summi . . . efficiunt**: *render (capable) of greatest labor*, 66, 136.

39. **quamvis pauci**: *however few they are.*

40. **vinum**: cf. the Nervii, Bk. II. chap. 15.

CHAPTER 3

43. **maximam laudem**; *a sign of greatest glory.*

44. **agros**: subj. of **vacare**; **vacare** is intrans.

46. **a Suebis**: *of the Suebi* (lit. away from the Suebi).

49. **captus**: noun, *standard.*

53. **adsuefacti**: *used to.* **cum**: concessive.

CHAPTER 4

57. **In eadem causa**: they were subject to the Suebi, just as the Ubii were.

64. **trans flumen**: *i.e.* on the German side.

65. **cis Rhenum**: *i.e.* on the Gallic side.

67. **vi contendere**: *to force a passage.*

70. **viam**: 81.

75. **His, eorum**: referring to the Menapii. **priusquam . . . fieret**: 137 *f.*

CHAPTER 5

82. **nihil his** (dat.) **committendum**: *no confidence should be placed in them.*

83. **Est hoc consuetudinis**: *there is this custom* (lit. of custom, 66).

84. **uti**: w. **cogant, quaerant, circumsistat, cogat**, forming noun clauses in appos. w. **hoc**.

87. **quibusque** = **et quibus**. **quasque** = **et quas**.

90. **quorum**: 65, *b*. **eos**: obj. of **paenitere**, but trans., *they must repent.*

91. **ad . . . respondeant**: *give answers made to suit their* (*i.e.* the questioners') *wish.*

CHAPTER 6

93. **graviori bello**: which would result if the Gauls and Germans would combine against him.

95. **Eo**: Where was the army? Cf. Bk. III. chap. 29.

96. **facta**: sc. **esse**. **missas**: sc. **esse**.

97. **Germanos**: the Usipetes and Tencteri, who were requested to leave the Rhine and enter farther into Gaul.

98. **postulassent**: *should demand*, 155, *b*.

Chapter 7

108. **a quibus**: referring to **locis**.

109. **iter**: 80.

110. **priores inferre**: *were the first to make*, etc. (lit. made first).

111. **quin . . . contendant**: *to fight*.

113. **resistere**, etc.: in appos. w. **consuetudo**.

114. **Haec**: explained by (se) **venisse**, etc. **dicere**: sc. **se** as subj.

116. **attribuant**: *let them assign;* a quoted command, 154, *c*.

117. **unis**: *alone*. **concedere**: *i.e.* were inferior to.

118. **quibus pares**: 73.

119. **in terris**: *on earth*.

Chapter 8

121. **quae**: obj. of **respondere**, which is to be supplied w. **visum est**.

122. **Sibi esse**: 72.

124. **qui**: sc. antecedent **eos** as subj. of **occupare**.

129. **hoc**: obj. of **imperaturum**, *he would give this command*.

Chapter 9

130. **relaturos (esse)**: *would report*.

131. **post diem tertium**; *the second day after*, as we should say. The Romans said the *third* day, counting the parts of the three days involved.

132. **propius se**: 78, *a*.

136. **hos**: w. **equites**.

Chapter 10

139. **parte**: *branch*.

141. **milibus**: 86.

142. **ex (Lepontiis)**: *in the country of* (lit. from the L.).

145. **Oceano**: 67, *c*.

146. **ingentibusque**: omit **-que**.

148. **ex quibus sunt qui**: *among whom are those who*.

CHAPTER 11

152. **ut erat constitutum**: see chap. 9.
155. **antecessissent**: 142.
156. **praemitteret**: *send word.* **pugna**: 83.
157. **legatos mittendi**: 165, note. **quorum si**: *and if their.*
158. **fecisset**: 118, *a*, and 155, *b*.
161. **daret**: *he should give*, 154, *c*.
162. **eodem illo pertinere**: *tended to the same end.*
166. **quam frequentissimi**: *in as great numbers as possible.* **convenirent**: *they should assemble* (let them assemble), 154, *c*.
168. **mittit qui nuntiarent**: *sends men to direct.*

CHAPTER 12

172. **hostes**: w. **perturbaverunt** (l. 178). **ubi primum**: see Vocab.
173. **cum**: concessive.
174. **amplius . . . equites**: 86, *b*.
177. **indutiis**: 69.
183. **venissent**: 142.
184. **ex equitibus**: w. cardinal numerals the abl. is commonly used instead of the gen. of the whole.
186. **genere natus**: 84.
188. **intercluso = qui interclusus erat, 159.**

CHAPTER 13

194. **iam**: see Vocab.
197. **exspectare**: subj. of esse, 149. **dum augerentur**, 137, *e*.
198. **summae dementiae**: 63, *d*, and 66.
199. **quantum**: w. **auctoritatis**.
203. **cum legatis**: *to the lieutenants* (lit. with, etc.).
209. **purgandi sui**: **sui** is plur.; the sing. form of **purgandi** is due to the apparently sing. form of **sui**.
211. **de indutiis**: *terms of truce.*
212. **Quos**: subj. of **oblatos (esse)**.

CHAPTER 14

216. **Acie triplici**: *i.e.* the army marched in battle array.
219. **et celeritate et discessu**: explaining **omnibus rebus**.
220. **habendi, capiendi**, 165, note.

221. perturbantur: the subj. is qui. copiasne . . . praestaret: see Vocab. and 141.

223. Quorum cum = et cum eorum.

229. cum omnibus suis excesserant: like the Helvetii, Bk. I.

Chapter 15

232. clamore: of the warriors' families attacked by the Roman cavalry.

233. signis: probably the figures of animals, attached to poles.

238. ad unum omnes: *all to a man.*

239. ex timore: *after the fear.*

245. libertatem: *permission,* not liberty.

"The whole nation was exterminated save only the absent cavalry, and but few Romans were wounded. . . . This awful act in the Gallic drama has uniformly received the severest condemnation of thinking men." Dodge.

Plutarch says that in the senate at Rome Caesar's enemies, like Cato, even proposed that he be given up to the Germans. The excuse for the wholesale slaughter could only be that it was necessary to establish the Rhine as the boundary of Gaul and Germany.

Chapter 16

247. sibi: 71. illa: sc. causa.

249. suis rebus: *for their own interests.*

251. Accessit: see Vocab.

253. quam: subj. of transisse, etc. supra: chap. 9.

258. intulissent: 142. dederent: *that they surrender,* obj. cl.

259. Rhenum: subject.

261. cur . . . postularet: *why did he demand that any control,* etc., *should belong to him;* sui: 66; imperi: 63, *e.*

266. id facere: *from doing this.* occupationibus rei publicae: *by public duties.*

Chapter 17

276. transire: subj. of esse.

277. suae dignitatis: *consistent with his dignity,* 63, *d,* and 66.

279. latitudinem: about a quarter of a mile. The place where the bridge was built cannot be exactly fixed. It is thought, with good authority, to have been between Andernach and Coblenz. "The Roman engineers were accustomed to bridge

rivers; but this was an undertaking of unprecedented difficulty." Holmes.

283. **tigna bina**: *pairs of logs* or piles; obj. of **iungebat**.

284. **dimensa . . . fluminis**: the depth of the river varied, of course.

285. **intervallo**: *i.e.* the space between the logs of each pair.

286. **Haec cum . . . defixerat** (137, note): *when (ever), by means of machines, he had let down these (pairs of logs) and had planted them firmly.*

287. **non sublicae . . . perpendiculum**: *not quite vertically like a pile.*

289. **secundum naturam**: *in the direction of the current, i.e.* slanting down stream. **eis contraria**: *opposite to these* (pairs of logs).

290. **duo**: sc. **tigna**, obj. of **statuebat**.

291. **quadragenum**: gen. pl. = **-orum**. The dist. is used because the measure is for each pier. **ab inferiore parte**: *lower down* (the river).

293. **Haec utraque . . . distinebantur**: *these two pairs, after beams had been laid on them two feet thick (as large as was the space between the logs), were kept apart at the ends by two braces, one on each side.*

297. **rerum**: *structure.* **quo maior . . . teneretur**: *the greater the force of the water became, the more closely they were bound and held.*

The description so far is of a single pier or trestle. See plan.

299. **Haec**: *i.e.* the cross-beams.

301. **et** (omit) **ad inferiorem partem**: *down the stream.* **agebantur**: *were driven in.*

303. **exciperent**: 135. **aliae**: sc. **sublicae agebantur**.

Chapter 18

308. **coepta erat, coeptus est** (l. 315): see **Vocab.**

312. **quibus**: dat. w. **respondet**.

314. **quo**: *when*, 133, *a*.

315. **hortantibus eis**: *upon the urgent advice of those.*

Chapter 19

325. **uti demigrarent**: *directing that they should*, etc.; noun clause depending on **nuntios dimisisse**.

327. **possent**: 134.

329. **hic**: adv.
330. **ibi**: refers to the same place as **hic**.
333. **ut . . . iniceret**, etc.: noun clauses explaining **rebus**.
334. **obsidione**: 83.
336. **profectum (esse)**: from **proficio**.

Chapter 20

340. **Britanniam**. this expedition to Britain is the first that history records.
342. **submunistrata esse auxilia**: whether a fact or not, this was a good enough pretext. **si deficeret**: 155, *a*.
344. **si adisset**: 155, *b*.
346. **Gallis**: dat.
347. **illo**: adv.
349. **Gallias**: pl. referring to the divisions, Belgic and Celtic.
352. **usum belli**: *skill in war*.
353. **qui**: w. **portus**. **maiorem**: *rather large*.

Chapter 21

355. **priusquam faceret**: 137, *f*.
356. **idoneum**: pred. adj. referring to Volusenus, cf. Bk. III. chap. 5.
357. **ut . . . revertatur**: 145, *a*.
360. **traiectus**: *i.e.* across the Strait of Dover.
362. **classem**: antecedent of **quam** and subj. of **convenire**.
370. **ibi**: among the Atrebates.
372. **magni**: *of great value*, 65, *e*.
373. **adeat, hortetur, nuntiet**: subjunct. in noun clauses.
374. **se**: *i.e.* Caesar.
376. **quantum . . . potuit**: *as far as there was opportunity for one* (**ei**), *who*, etc.

Chapter 22

382. **de consilio**: *for their conduct*, cf. Bk. III. chap. 28.
383. **homines barbari**: *being barbarian men*.
385. **imperasset**: fut. perf. in the dir. disc., 155, *b*. **pollicerentur**: connected by **-que** w. **excusarent**.
389. **has . . . occupationes**: *engaging in such trivial matters*.
390. **anteponendas**: *i.e.* take precedence of the invasion.

394. **quod navium**: *what ships*, 63, *e.*

396. **a**: adv. *away*. **milibus**: 95.

397. **quo minus possent**: *so that they could not.*

401. **ducendum**: w. **exercitum**, *to be led.*

CHAPTER 23

405. **solvit**: the infantry sailed from the Portus Itius, the location of which is not known, but was probably modern Wissant. The cavalry sailed from another port, unnamed, eight miles farther east (**ulterior**, l. 406).

409. **Britanniam attigit**: off the cliffs of Dover, as it is supposed.

411. **haec**: *such.*

416. **et**: *both.*

418. **monuit . . . administrarentur**: *he admonished (them) that they should do everything at his bidding and promptly* ("on time,") *as the principles of warfare and especially as navigation demanded, since it involved quick and unsteady motion* (lit. as things which had, etc.).

419. **postularent**: subjunct. by attraction, 142. **ut quae . . . haberent**: rel. causal clause, 134, *e.*

421. **administrarentur**: subjunct. in a noun clause, depending on **monuit.**

424. **aperto . . . litore**: "the low shore of Romney Marsh." Fowler.

CHAPTER 24

426. **quo genere**: *a kind* (of fighters) *which*, 88.

427. **copiis**: 94, *a.*

428. **navibus egredi**: *from disembarking.*

430. **militibus**: dat. w. **desiliendum erat** (71), *the soldiers had to jump down.*

434. **cum**: *while.*

437. **omnino**: w. **imperiti.**

438. **pugnae**: 64.

CHAPTER 25

441. **barbaris inusitatior**: *less familiar to*, etc.

442. **ad usum expeditior**: *more easily controlled;* compared with the transports. The galleys were propelled chiefly by oars.

444. **fundis**: 87. **tormentis**: see Introd. 56.

450. **qui**: *he who*, 115, *e*.

451. **legioni**: 70.

452. **Desilite**: 147. **commilitones**: 62, note. **aquilam**: the chief standard of the legion.

454. **praestitero**: 125. **cum**: conj.

456. **inter se**: *one another*.

457. **dedecus**: *i.e.* the disgrace of losing the standard.

458. Order: cum ei ex proximis navibus conspexissent hos.

CHAPTER 26

462. **alius alia . . . adgregabat**: *the men from the different ships gathered around whatever standards they had met.*

466. **plures**: *and many*, 174.

467. **alii**: *while others*, 174.

468. **Quod cum** = **et cum id**, 115, *f*.

470. **quos**: the antecedent is **his** (l. 471).

474. **equites**: cf. chap. 23, l. 405.

475. **Hoc . . . defuit**: *this one thing was wanting to Caesar's usual good fortune.*

CHAPTER 27

479. **quaeque** = **et ea quae**.

480. **Commius, supra**: see chap. 21.

482. **illi**: subj. of **comprehenderant**. **e navi egressum**: *when he had landed.*

483. **cum**: concessive.

487. **ut ignosceretur**: *that they be pardoned*; lit. that it be pardoned (to them), 67, note, and 145, *a*.

489. **sine causa**: it could hardly have seemed so to the Britons.

490. **ignoscere**: supply **se** as subj.

CHAPTER 28

496. **post**: w. **quam** = **postquam**. **diem quartum**: we should say *three days after*. The acc. or abl. may be used of the interval between two events.

498. **supra**: chap. 22.

499. **superiore portu**: called **ulterior portus** in chap. 23.

502. **eodem**: adv.

503. **referrentur, deicerentur**: w. **ut**, l. 501.

505. **quae tamen . . . complerentur**: *which, however, after having cast anchor, when they began to fill with the waves*, 121, *b*.

506. **adversa nocte**: *though night was coming on* (lit. in the face of the night).

CHAPTER 29

508. **luna plena**: August 30, 55 B.C. **qui dies**: *a period which.*

509. **aestus maximos**: the tides in the Strait of Dover are twenty-five feet high; in the Mediterranean they are very slight.

513. **complebat**, etc.: note the tense of incomplete action.

515. **administrandi**: *of managing them, i.e.* the ships.

516. **essent**: w. **inutiles**.

517. **amissis**: *lost.*

520. **quibus possent**: 134.

CHAPTER 30

524. **principes**: w. **duxerunt**, l. 530.

528. **hoc**: *on this account*, 90.

530. **optimum factu**: 166, *b*.

531. **rem**: *the conflict.*

532. **his superatis**: conditional. **reditu**: 83.

535. **castris**: Caesar's. **ex agris deducere**: *i.e.* to muster an army.

CHAPTER 31

538. **ex eo quod**: *from the fact that.*

539. **fore . . . accidit**: *that would happen which actually did.*

540. **subsidia comparabat**: *made provision.*

542. Order: **materia earum (navium) quae adflictae erant**, etc. **naves**: 115, *c*.

543. **quae**: *whatever.*

545. **cum**: causal. **administraretur**: *the work was done.*

546. **navigari posset effecit**: *made it possible to sail.*

CHAPTER 32

549. **frumentatum**: 166.

553. **quam consuetudo ferret**: *than usual.*

554. **parte**: *direction.*

556. **initum**: sc. **esse**. **cohortes proficisci**: w. **iussit**.

558. **in stationem succedere**: *take their place on guard.*

560. **paulo longius**: *some little distance.*

564. **hostes**: nom.

565. **dispersos**: referring to the Romans.

567. **simul**: *and at the same time.*

Chapter 33

571. **terrore equorum**: *i.e.* caused by the horses, 63, *b*.

573. **Aurigae**: a British war-chariot carried several fighters (**essedarii**) and a driver (**auriga**); it was drawn by two horses.

580. **brevi**: sc. **tempore**, *quickly.*

581. **iugo**: a bar of wood that rested on the necks of the horses attached to a chariot.

Chapter 34

583. **rebus**: 87. **perturbatis nostris**: dat. w. **tulit**. **novitate**: 90.

585. **nostri** = **et nostri**.

588. **suo**: *favorable*, contrasted w. **alienus**.

590. **qui . . . reliqui**: referring to the Britons.

591. **dies**: 80.

592. **quae continerent**: 134.

596. **sui liberandi**: see note on **sui purgandi**, Bk. IV. chap. 13.

Chapter 35

600. **idem**: explained by **ut . . . effugerent**.

601. **celeritate**: 87.

607. **tanto spatio**: 95. **secuti**: sc. **nostri**. **quantum**: 74. **Quos . . . potuerunt**, *pursuing them as far as they had strength to run.*

609. **longe lateque**: *far and wide.*

Chapter 36

612. **His**: dat., 70.

614. **propinqua die**: 99. **aequinocti**: it is thought that Caesar remained in Britain about three weeks, returning to Gaul about September 11. Cf. chap. 29, l. 508, and note.

615. **navibus**: abl.

Chapter 37

621. **Quibus ex navibus**: *i.e.* the two just mentioned.

623. **proficiscens**: (*when*) *setting out.*

625. **circumsteterunt**: sc. **eos**, the three hundred.

626. **orbe facto**: with the men facing outward, of course.

632. **Postea**: w. **quam** = **posteaquam**.

Chapter 38

639. **quo (= locum ad quem) reciperent**: 134, *b*.

640. **perfugio**: *i.e.* the marshes. **superiore anno**: cf. Bk. III. chap. 28.

649. **supplicatio**: cf. Bk. II. chap. 35.

Although there were no immediate results of the two expeditions of this year, yet Caesar probably accomplished all that he intended in crossing the Rhine, and in going to Britain he had gained information for a more important invasion of that country the next year. Read Dodge, pp. 162, 174; Fowler, pp. 194, 199; Froude, p. 233.

GRAMMATICAL APPENDIX

A. INFLECTION

NOUNS

FIRST DECLENSION

1.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
N.	porta[1]	portae
G.	portae	portārum
D.	portae	portīs
Ac.	portam	portās
Ab.	portā	portīs

SECOND DECLENSION

2.

	SINGULAR				
N.	amīcus	puer	ager	vir	bellum
G.	amīcī	puerī	agrī	virī	bellī
D. Ab.	amicō	puerō	agrō	virō	bellō
Ac.	amīcum	puerum	agrum	virum	bellum
	PLURAL				
N.	amīcī	puerī	agri	virī	bella
G.	amīcōrum	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	bellōrum
D. Ab.	amīcīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	bellīs
Ac.	amīcōs	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	bella

THIRD DECLENSION

3.

	SINGULAR			
N.	cōnsul	mercātor	pater	legiō
G.	cōnsulis	mercātōris	patris	legiōnis
D.	cōnsulī	mercātōrī	patrī	legiōnī
Ac.	cōnsulem	mercātōrem	patrem	legiōnem
Ab.	cōnsule	mercātōre	patre	legiōne

[1] The *base* of a noun is found, in any declension, by dropping the ending of the genitive singular; the *stem*, by dropping **-rum** of the genitive plural in the first, second, and fifth declensions, **-um** in the third and fourth: base, **port-**, stem, **portā-**.

PLURAL

N. Ac.	cōnsulēs	mercātōrēs	patrēs	legiōnēs
G.	cōnsulum	mercātōrum	patrum	legiōnum
D. Ab.	cōnsulibus	mercātōribus	patribus	legiōnibus

4.

SINGULAR

N.	lēx	prīnceps	mīles	cīvitās
G.	lēgis	prīncipis	mīlitis	cīvitātis
D.	lēgī	prīncipī	mīlitī	cīvitātī
Ac.	lēgem	prīncipem	mīlitem	cīvitātem
Ab.	lēge	prīncipe	mīlite	cīvitāte

PLURAL

N. Ac.	lēgēs	prīncipēs	mīlitēs	cīvitātēs
G.	lēgum	prīncipum	mīlitum	cīvitātum
D. Ab.	lēgibus	prīncipibus	mīlitibus	cīvitātibus

5.

SINGULAR

N. Ac.	flūmen	opus	tempus	caput
G.	flūminis	operis	temporis	capitis
D.	flūminī	operī	temporī	capitī
Ab.	flūmine	opere	tempore	capite

PLURAL

N. Ac.	flūmina	opera	tempora	capita
G.	flūminum	operum	temporum	capitum
D. Ab.	flūminibus	operibus	temporibus	capitibus

6.

SINGULAR

N.	saepēs	turris	hostis	mōns	nox
G.	saepis	turris	hostis	montis	noctis
D.	saepī	turrī	hostī	montī	noctī
Ac.	saepem	turrim (-em)[1]	hostem	montem	noctem
Ab.	saepe	turrī (-e)[2]	hoste	monte	nocte

[1] Acc. sing. **-im** or **-em** is found in **nāvis** (usually **-em**), **puppis** (usually **-im**), **sēmentis, turris.**

[2] Abl. sing. **-ī** or **-e** is found in **avis, cīvis, classis, collis, fīnis, īgnis, nāvis, orbis, puppis, sēmentis, turris, imber.**

PLURAL

N.	saepēs	turrēs	hostēs	montēs	noctēs
G.	saepium[1]	turrium[1]	hostium[1]	montium[1]	noctium[1]
D. Ab.	saepibus	turribus	hostibus	montibus	noctibus
Ac.	saepīs (-ēs)[1]	turrīs (-ēs)[1]	hostīs (-ēs)[1]	montīs (-ēs)[1]	noctīs (-ēs)[1]

7.

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N. Ac.	cubīle	cubīlia[2]	animal	animālia[2]
G.	cubīlis	cubīlium[2]	animālis	animālium
D. Ab.	cubīlī[3]	cubīlibus	animālī[3]	animālibus

FOURTH DECLENSION

8.

SINGULAR

N.	manus	lacus	domus	cornū
G.	manūs	lacūs	domūs	cornūs
D.	manuī (-ū)	lacuī (-ū)	domuī	cornū
Ac.	manum	lacum	domum	cornū
Ab.	manū	lacū	domō (-ū)	cornū

Locative sing. domi, *at home.*

PLURAL

N.	manūs	lacūs	domūs	cornua
G.	manuum	lacuum	domuum	cornuum
D. Ab.	manibus	lacubus	domibus	cornibus
Ac.	manūs	lacūs	domōs (-ūs)	cornua

[1] Gen. plur. **-ium** and acc. plur. **-īs** or **-ēs** are found in, —

a. Nouns in **-ēs** or **is** (having the same number of syllables in nom and gen.).

b. Polysyllables in **-ns** or **-rs**, and sometimes **-tās**; also proper names in **-ās.**

c. Monosyllables in **-s** or **-x**, following a consonant.

d. **imber, linter,** and **nox.**

[2] Gen. plur. **-ium,** nom. and acc. plur. **-ia,** are found in neuters with nom. in **-e, -al, -ar.**

[3] Abl. sing. **-ī** is found in neuters with nom. sing. in **-e, -al, -ar.**

FIFTH DECLENSION

9.

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
G.	diēī	diērum	reī	rērum
D.	diēī	diēbus	reī	rēbus
Ac.	diem	diēs	rem	rēs
Ab.	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

SPECIAL NOUNS

10.

	SINGULAR			
N.	deus	senex	vīs	iter
G.	deī	senis	vīs	itineris
D.	deō	senī	vī	itineri
Ac.	deum	senem	vim	iter
Ab.	deō	sene	vī	itinere

	PLURAL			
N.	deī, diī, dī	senēs	vīrēs	itinera
G.	deōrum, deum	senum	vīrium	itinerum
D. Ab.	deīs, diīs, dīs	senibus	vīribus	itineribus
Ac.	deōs	senēs	vīrēs	itinera

ADJECTIVES

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

11.

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N.	bonus	bona	bonum	bonī	bonae	bona
G.	bonī	bonae	bonī	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
D.	bonō	bonae	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
Ac.	bonum	bonam	bonum	bonōs	bonās	bona
Ab.	bonō	bonā	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N.	līber	lībera	līberum	līberī	līberae	lībera
G.	līberī	līberae	līberī	līberōrum	līberārum	līberōrum
D.	līberō	līberae	līberō	līberīs	līberīs	līberīs
Ac.	līberum	liberam	līberum	līberōs	līberās	lībera
Ab.	līberō	līberā	līberō	līberīs	līberīs	līberīs

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N.	noster[1]	nostra	nostrum	nostrī	nostrae	nostra
G.	nostrī	nostrae	nostrī	nostrōrum	nostrārum	nostrōrum
D.	nostrō	nostrae	nostrō	nostrīs	nostrīs	nostrīs
Ac.	nostrum	nostram	nostrum	nostrōs	nostrās	nostra
Ab.	nostrō	nostrā	nostrō	nostrīs	nostrīs	nostrīs

12

	SINGULAR					
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N.	alius	alia	aliud	alter	altera	alterum
G.	alīus	alīus	alīus	alterĭus	alterĭus	alterĭus
D.	aliī	aliī	aliī	alterī	alterī	alterī
Ac.	alium	aliam	aliud	alterum	alteram	alterum
Ab.	aliō	aliā	aliō	alterō	alterā	alterō

	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N.	neuter[2]	neutra	neutrum	ūnus[3]	ūna	ūnum
G.	neutrīus	neutrīus	neutrīus	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus
D.	neutrī	neutrī	neutrī	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī
Ac.	neutrum	neutram	neutrum	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum
Ab.	neutrō	neutrā	neutrō	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō

THIRD DECLENSION

13. Adjectives of Three Endings

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
G.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
D. Ab.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Ac.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrīs (-ēs)	ācrīs (-ēs)	ācria

[1] Possessive pronoun, used as an adjective.

[2] So also **uter.**

[3] So also **nūllus, sōlus, tōtus, ūllus.**

14. Adjectives of Two Endings

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. & F.	*N.*	*M. & F.*	*N.*
N.	fortis	forte	fortēs	fortia
G.	fortis	fortis	fortium	fortium
D. Ab.	forti	fortī	fortibus	fortibus
Ac.	fortem	forte	fortīs (-ēs)	fortia

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. & F.	*N.*	*M. & F.*	*N.*
N.	longior	longius	longiōrēs	longiōra
G.	longiōris	longiōris	longiōrum	longiōrum
D.	longiōrī	longiōrī	longiōribus	longiōribus
Ac.	longiōrem	longius	longiōrēs	longiōra
Ab.	longiōre	longiōre	longiōribus	longiōribus

15. Adjectives of One Ending

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. & F.	*N.*	*M. & F.*	*N.*
N.	potēns	potēns	potentēs	potentia
G.	potentis	potentis	potentium	potentium
D.	potentī	potentī	potentibus	potentibus
Ac.	potentem	potēns	potentīs (-ēs)	potentia
Ab.	potentī (-e)	potentī (e)	potentibus	potentibus

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. & F.	*N.*	*M. & F.*	*N.*
N.	vēlōx	vēlōx	vēlōcēs	vēlōcia
G.	vēlōcis	vēlōcis	vēlōcium	vēlōcium
D.	vēlōcī	vēlōcī	vēlōcibus	vēlōcibus
Ac.	vēlōcem	vēlōx	vēlōcīs (-ēs)	vēlōcia
Ab.	vēlōcī (-e)	vēlōcī (-e)	vēlōcibus	vēlōcibus

16. SPECIAL ADJECTIVES

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. & F.	*N.*	*M. & F.*	*N.*
N.	vetus	vetus	veterēs	vetera
G.	veteris	veteris	veterum	veterum
D.	veterī	veterī	veteribus	veteribus
Ac.	veterem	vetus	veterēs	vetera
Ab.	vetere (-ī)	vetere (-ī)	veteribus	veteribus

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. & F.	*N.*	*M. & F.*	*N.*
N.	——	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
G.	——	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
D.	——	——	plūribus	plūribus
Ac.	——	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
Ab.	——	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M. & F.*	*N.*
N.	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
G.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium
D. Ab.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
Ac.	duōs	duās	duo	trīs, trēs	tria

17. REGULAR COMPARISON

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
lātus, -a, -um, *broad*	lātior, -ius	lātissimus, -a, -um
fortis, -e, *brave*	fortior, -ius	fortissimus, -a, -um
potēns, *powerful*	potentior, -ius	potentissimus, -a, -um
vēlōx, *swift*	vēlōcior, -ius	vēlōcissimus, -a, -um
ācer, ācris, ācre, *sharp*	ācrior, -ius	ācerrimus, -a, -um
līber, -era, -erum, *free*	līberior, -ius	līberrimus, -a, -um
facilis, -e, *easy*	facilior, -ius	facillimus, -a, -um[1]

18. IRREGULAR COMPARISON

bonus, -a, -um, *good*	melior, melius	optimus, -a, -um
malus, -a, -um, *bad*	pēior, pēius	pessimus, -a, -um
māgnus, -a, -um, *great*	māior, māius	māximus, -a, -um
multus, -a, -um, *much*	—— —, plūs	plūrimus, -a, -um
parvus, -a, -um, *small*	minor, minus	minimus, -a, -um
senex, *old*	senior	māximus nātū
iuvenis, -e, *young*	iūnior	minimus nātū
vetus, *old*	vetustior, -ius	veterrimus, -a, -um
(exterus, *outward*)	exterior, *outer, exterior*	extrēmus, extimus } *outermost, last*
(īnferus, *below*)	īnferior, *lower*	īnfimus, īmus } *lowest*
(posterus, *following*)	posterior, *later*	postrēmus, postumus } *last*

[1] So also difficilis, similis, dissimilis, gracilis, humilis.

IRREGULAR COMPARISON

(superus, *above*)	superior, *higher*	suprēmus summus	*highest*
[cis, citrā, *on this side*]	citerior, *hither*	citimus, *hithermost*	
[in, intrā, *in, within*]	interior, *inner*	intimus, *inmost*	
[prae, prō, *before*]	prior, *former*	prīmus, *first*	
[prope, *near*]	propior, *nearer*	proximus, *next*	
[ultrā, *beyond*]	ulterior, *farther*	ultimus, *farthest*	

19. COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
lātē,[1] *widely*	lātius	lātissimē
līberē, *freely*	līberius	līberrimē
facile, *easily*	facilius	facillimē
ācriter,[1] *sharply*	ācrius	ācerrimē
fortiter, *bravely*	fortius	fortissimē
bene, *well*	melius, *better*	optimē, *best*
male, *ill*	pēius, *worse*	pessimē, *worst*
māgnopere, *much*	magis, *more*	māximē, *most*
multum, *much*	plūs, *more*	plūrimum, *most*
parum, *little*	minus, *less*	minimē, *least*
prope, *near*	propius	proximē
diū, *long*	diūtius	diūtissimē

20. CARDINAL[2] NUMERAL ADJECTIVES

1. ūnus, -a, -um
2. duo, -ae, -o
3. trēs, tria
4. quattuor
5. quīnque
6. sex
7. septem
8. octō
9. novem
10. decem
11. ūndecim
12. duodecim
13. tredecim
14. quattuordecim
15. quīndecim
16. sēdecim
17. septendecim
18. duodēvīgintī
19. ūndēvīgintī
20. vīgintī
21. vīgintī ūnus (ūnus et vīgintī)

[1] Some adverbs are formed from adjectives by adding -ē (-e) or -ter (-iter) to the base; others in -ā, -ō, -am, -um, -im, etc., are case forms of nouns or adjectives.

[2] Meaning *one, two, three,* etc.

30. trīgintā
40. quadrāgintā
50. quīnquāgintā
60. sexāgintā
70. septuāgintā
80. octōgintā
90. nōnāgintā
100. centum
200. ducentī, -ae, -a
300. trecentī, -ae, -a
400. quadringentī, -ae, -a
500. quīngentī, -ae, -a
600. sescentī, -ae, -a
700. septingentī, -ae, -a
800. octingentī, -ae, -a
900. nōngentī, -ae, -a
1000. mīlle

ORDINAL[1] NUMERAL ADJECTIVES

1. prīmus
2. secundus
3. tertius
4. quārtus
5. quīntus
6. sextus
7. septimus
8. octāvus
9. nōnus
10. decimus
11. ūndecimus
12. duodecimus
13. tertius decimus
14. quārtus decimus
15. quīntus decimus
16. sextus decimus
17. septimus decimus
18. duodēvīcēsimus
19. ūndēvīcēsimus
20. vīcēsimus
21. vīcēsimus prīmus
30. trīcēsimus
40. quadrāgēsimus
50. quīnquāgēsimus
60. sexāgēsimus
70. septuāgēsimus
80. octōgēsimus
90. nōnāgēsimus
100. centēsimus
200. ducentēsimus
300. trecentēsimus
400. quadringentēsimus
500. quīngentēsimus
600. sescentēsimus
700. septingentēsimus
800. octingentēsimus
900. nōngentēsimus
1000. mīllēsimus

21. PRONOUNS

	PERSONAL				REFLEXIVE	
	SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.
N.	ego	nōs	tū	vōs	-	-
G.	meī	nostrum, -trī	tuī	vestrum, -trī	suī	suī
D.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs	sibi	sibi
Ac.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs	sē, sēsē	sē, sēsē
Ab.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs	sē, sēsē	sē, sēsē

[1] Meaning *first, second, third,* etc.

22. POSSESSIVE

Meus, *my;* tuus, *thy;* suus, *his, her, its, their;* noster, *our;* vester, *your,* are used and declined like adjectives.

23. DEMONSTRATIVE

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N.	hīc	hacc	hōc	hī	hae	haec
G.	hūius	hūius	hūius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
D.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
Ac.	hunc	hanc	hōc	hōs	hās	haec
Ab.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N.	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
G.	illīus	illīus	illīus	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
D.	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
Ac.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
Ab.	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N.	is	ea	id	eī, iī	eae	ea
G.	ēius	ēius	ēius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
D.	eī	eī	eī	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
Ac.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Ab.	eō	eā	eō	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N.	īdem	eadem	idem	eīdem[1]	eaedem	eadem
G.	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
D.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	eīsdem[2]	eīsdem	eīsdem
Ac.	eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Ab.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	eīsdem[2]	eīsdem	eīsdem

[1] Or īdem.

[2] Or īsdem.

24. INTENSIVE

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
G.	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
D.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsis	ipsīs	ipsīs
Ac.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Ab.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

25. RELATIVE

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
G.	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Ac.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Ab.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

26. INTERROGATIVE

	SINGULAR	
	M. & *F.*	*N.*
N.	quis	quid
G.	cūius	cūius
D.	cui	cui
Ac.	quem	quid
Ab.	quō	quō

The plural of the interrogative **quis** is like that of the relative **quī**. When used as an adjective, the singular also is like that of the relative.

27. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

1. **quis**, *any (one), anything*
2. **aliquis**, *some (one), some thing*
3. **quispiam**, *any (one) at all*
4. **quisquam**, *any (one) at all* (chiefly in negative sentences)
5. **quīlibet**, *any (one) you please*
6. **quīvīs**, *any (one) you will*
7. **quisque**, *each (one), every (one)*
8. **quīdam**, *a certain (one)*

The indefinite **quis** is declined like the interrogative **quis** (26). As an adjective it may have **qua** as well as **quae** in the nominative feminine singular and in the neuter plural.

Only the pronominal part of the compounds is declined. **Aliquis** has **aliqua** instead of **aliquae** in the nominative feminine singular and in the neuter plural. **Quīdam** has **n** instead of **m** before **d** in **quendam, quandam, quōrundam, quārundam. Quisquam** has **c** for **d** in the neuter: **quicquam.**

28. VERBS

FIRST CONJUGATION

Active Voice

Principal parts: laudō, laudāre, laudāvī, laudātum

Indicative

Present

singular	plural
I praise	
laudō	laudāmus
laudās	laudātis
laudat	laudant

Imperfect

I was praising, I praised	
laudābam	laudābāmus
laudābās	laudābātis
laudābat	laudābant

Future

I shall praise	
laudābō	laudābimus
laudābis	laudābitis
laudābit	laudābunt

Perfect

I have praised, I praised	
laudāvī	laudāvimus
laudāvistī	laudāvistis
laudāvit	laudāvērunt (-ēre)

Subjunctive

Present

singular	plural
I may[1] *praise*	
laudem	laudēmus
laudēs	laudētis
laudet	laudent

Imperfect

I might[1] *praise*	
laudārem	laudārēmus
laudārēs	laudārētis
laudāret	laudārent

Perfect

I may have[1] *praised*	
laudāverim	laudāverimus
laudāveris	laudāveritis
laudāverit	laudāverint

[1] The translation of the subjunctive varies.

PLUPERFECT
I had praised

laudāveram	laudāverāmus
laudāverās	laudāverātis
laudāverat	laudāverant

FUTURE PERFECT
I shall have praised

laudāverō	laudāverimus
laudāveris	laudāveritis
laudāverit	laudāverint

PLUPERFECT
I might have[1] *praised*

laudāvissem	laudāvissēmus
laudāvissēs	laudāvissētis
laudāvisset	laudāvissent

Imperative
praise thou

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
PRES.	laudā	laudāte
FUT.	laudātō	laudātōte
	laudātō	laudantō

Infinitive

PRES. laudāre, *to praise*
PERF. laudāvisse, *to have praised*
FUT. laudātūrus esse, *to be about to praise*

Participle

PRES. laudāns, *praising.*
FUT. laudātūrus, *about to praise*

Gerund

G. laudandī, *of praising*
D. Ab. laudandō
Ac. laudandum

Supine

Ac. laudātum, *to praise*
Ab. laudātū, *to praise*

29. PASSIVE VOICE

PRINCIPAL PARTS: laudor, laudāri, laudātus sum

Indicative

PRESENT
I am praised

SINGULAR	PLURAL
laudor	laudāmur
laudāris (-re)	laudāminī
laudātur	laudantur

IMPERFECT
I was praised

laudābar	laudābāmur
laudābāris (-re)	laudābāminī
laudābātur	laudābantur

Subjunctive

PRESENT
I may be[1] *praised*

SINGULAR	PLURAL
lauder	laudēmur
laudēris (-re)	laudēminī
laudētur	laudentur

IMPERFECT
I might be[1] *praised*

laudārer	laudārēmur
laudārēris (-re)	laudārēminī
laudārētur	laudārentur

[1] The translation of the subjunctive varies.

FUTURE

I shall be praised

laudābor	laudābimur
laudāberis(-re)	laudābiminī
laudābitur	laudābuntur

PERFECT

I have been (or *I was*) *praised*

laudātus sum	laudātī sumus
laudātus es	laudātī estis
laudātus est	laudātī sunt

PERFECT

I may have been[1] *praised*

laudātus sim	laudātī sīmus
laudātus sīs	laudātī sītis
laudātus sit	laudātī sint

PLUPERFECT

I had been praised

laudātus eram	laudātī erāmus
laudātus erās	laudātī erātis
laudātus erat	laudātī erant

PLUPERFECT

I might have been[1] *praised*

laudātus essem	laudātī essēmus
laudātus essēs	laudātī essētis
laudātus esset	laudātī essent

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have been praised

laudātus erō	laudātī erimus
laudātus eris	laudātī eritis
laudātus erit	laudātī erunt

Infinitive

PRES. laudārī, *to be praised*

PERF. laudātus esse, *to have been praised*

FUT. laudātum īrī, *to be about to be praised*

Imperative

be thou praised

PRES.	laudāre	laudāminī
FUT.	laudātor	
	laudātor	laudantor

Participle

PERF. laudātus, *having been praised*

FUT. laudandus (*Gerundive*) *to be praised*

30. SECOND CONJUGATION

ACTIVE VOICE

PRINCIPAL PARTS: moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum.

Indicative

PRES. moneō, monēs, monet, monēmus, monētis, monent

Subjunctive

PRES. moneam, moneās, moneat, *etc.*

[1] The translation of the subjunctive varies.

IMPF. monēbam [1]	IMPF. monērem
FUT. monēbō [1]	
PERF. monuī	PERF. monuerim
PLUP. monueram	PLUP. monuissem
F. P. monuerō	

Imperative

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
PRES.	monē	monēte
FUT.	monētō	monētōte
	monētō	monentō

Participle

PRES. monēns
FUT. monitūrus

Gerund

monendī, *etc.*

Infinitive

PRES. monēre
PERF. monuisse
FUT. monitūrus esse

Supine

monitum, -ū

31. PASSIVE VOICE

PRINCIPAL PARTS: moneor, monērī, monitus sum

Indicative	Subjunctive
PRES. moneor, monēris, monētur, monēmur, monēminī, monentur	PRES. monear, moneāris, *etc.*
IMPF. monēbar [1]	IMPF. monērer
FUT. monēbor [1]	
PERF. monitus sum	PERF. monitus sim
PLUP. monitus eram	PLUP. monitus essem
F. P. monitus erō	

Imperative

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
PRES.	monēre	monēminī
FUT.	monētor	
	monētor	monentor

Infinitive

PRES. monērī
PERF. monitus esse
FUT. monitum īrī

Participle

PERF. monitus
FUT. monendus (*Gerundive*)

[1] Omitted forms are like those of laudō.

32. THIRD CONJUGATION

Active Voice

Principal parts: regō, regere, rēxī, rēctum

Indicative		Subjunctive	
Pres.	regō, regis, regit regimus, regitis, regunt	Pres.	regam, regās, *etc.*
Impf.	regēbam	Impf.	regerem
Fut.	regam, regēs, reget, *etc.*		
Perf.	rēxī	Perf.	rēxerim
Plup.	rēxeram	Plup.	rēxissem
F. P.	rēxerō		

Imperative			Participle	
	Singular	Plural		
Pres.	rege	regite	Pres.	regēns
Fut.	regitō	regitōte	Fut.	rēctūrus
	regitō	reguntō		

Infinitive		Gerund	
Pres.	regere		regendī, *etc.*
Perf.	rēxisse	Supine	
Fut.	rēctūrus esse		rēctum, -ū

33. Passive Voice

Principal parts: regor, regī, rēctus sum

Indicative		Subjunctive	
Pres.	regor, regeris, regitur regimur, regiminī, reguntur	Pres.	regar, regāris, *etc.*
Impf.	regēbar	Impf.	regerer
Fut.	regar, regēris, regētur, *etc.*		
Perf.	rēctus sum	Perf.	rēctus sim
Plup.	rēctus eram	Plup.	rēctus essem
F. P.	rēctus erō		

Imperative

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
PRES.	regere	regiminī
FUT.	regitor	
	regitor	reguntor

Infinitive

PRES. regī
PERF. rēctus esse
FUT. rēctum īrī

Participle

PERF. rēctus
FUT. regendus (*Gerundive*)

34. THIRD CONJUGATION IN -IŌ

ACTIVE VOICE

PRINCIPAL PARTS: capiō, capere, cēpī, captum

Indicative

PRES. capiō, capis, capit
capimus, capitis, capiunt
IMPF. capiēbam
FUT. capiam, capiēs, *etc.*
PERF. cēpī
PLUP. cēperam
F. P. cēperō

Subjunctive

PRES. capiam, capiās, *etc.*
IMPF. caperem
PERF. cēperim
PLUP. cēpissem

Imperative

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
PRES.	cape	capite
FUT.	capitō	capitōte
	capitō	capiuntō

Participle

PRES. capiēns
FUT. captūrus

Gerund

capiendī, *etc.*

Infinitive

PRES. capere
PERF. cēpisse
FUT. captūrus esse

Supine

captum, -ū

35. Passive Voice

Principal parts: capior, capī, captus sum

Indicative		Subjunctive	
Pres.	capior, caperis, capitur capimur, capiminī, capiuntur	Pres.	capiar, capiāris, *etc.*
Impf.	capiēbar	Impf.	caperer
Fut.	capiar, capiēris, *etc*		
Perf.	captus sum	Perf.	captus sim
Plup.	captus eram	Plup.	captus essem
F. P.	captus erō		

Imperative			Infinitive
	singular	plural	
Pres.	capere	capiminī	Pres. capī
Fut.	capitor		Perf. captus esse
	capitor	capiuntor	Fut. captum īrī

Participle

Perf. captus
Fut. capiendus (*Gerundive*)

36. FOURTH CONJUGATION

Active Voice

Principal parts: audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītum

Indicative		Subjunctive	
Pres.	audiō, audīs, audit audīmus, audītis, audiunt	Pres.	audiam, audiās, *etc.*
Impf.	audiēbam	Impf.	audīrem
Fut.	audiam, audiēs, *etc.*		
Perf.	audīvī	Perf.	audīverim
Plup.	audīveram	Plup.	audīvissem
F. P.	audīverō		

Imperative			Participle
	singular	plural	
Pres.	audī	audīte	Pres. audiēns
Fut.	audītō	audītōte	Fut. audītūrus
	audītō	audiuntō	

Infinitive	Gerund
PRES. audīre	audiendī, *etc.*
PERF. audīvisse	
FUT. audītūrus esse	Supine
	audītum, -ū

PASSIVE VOICE

37.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: audior, audīrī, audītus sum

Indicative	Subjunctive
PRES. audior, audīris, audītur audīmur, audīminī, audiuntur	PRES. audiar, audiāris, *etc.*
IMPF. audiēbar	IMPF. audīrer
FUT. audiar, audiēris, *etc.*	
PERF. audītus sum	PERF. audītus sim
PLUP. audītus eram	PLUP. audītus essem
F. P. audītus erō	

Imperative		Infinitive
SINGULAR	PLURAL	
PRES. audīre	audīminī	PRES. audīrī
FUT. audītor		PERF. audītus esse
audītor	audiuntor	FUT. audītum īrī

Participle

PERF. audītus

FUT. audiendus (*Gerundive*)

38. ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

Indicative	Subjunctive
PRES. laudātūrus sum, *I am about to praise*	PRES. laudātūrus sim
IMPF. laudātūrus eram	IMPF. laudātūrus essem
FUT. laudātūrus erō	
PERF. laudātūrus fuī	PERF. laudātūrus fuerim
PLUP. laudātūrus fueram	PLUP. laudātūrus fuissem
F. P. laudātūrus fuerō	

Infinitive

PRES. laudātūrus esse

PERF. laudātūrus fuisse

39. PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

Indicative		Subjunctive	
Pres.	laudandus sum, *I am to be praised*	Pres.	laudandus sim
Impf.	laudandus eram	Impf.	laudandus essem
Fut.	laudandus erō		
Perf.	laudandus fuī	Perf.	laudandus fuerim
Plup.	laudandus fueram	Plup.	laudandus fuissem
F. P.	laudandus fuerō		

Infinitive

Pres. laudandus esse
Perf. laudandus fuisse

40. DEPONENT VERBS

Principal parts

Conj. I. hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum, *exhort*
Conj. II. vereor, verērī, veritus sum, *fear*
Conj. III. sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *follow*
Conj. IV. potior, potīrī, potītus sum, *become master of*

Indicative

	I	II	III	IV
Pres.	hortor	vereor	sequor	potior
	hortāris	verēris	sequeris	potīris
	hortātur	verētur	sequitur	potītur
	hortāmur	verēmur	sequimur	potīmur
	hortāminī	verēminī	sequiminī	potīminī
	hortantur	verentur	sequuntur	potiuntur
Impf.	hortābar	verēbar	sequēbar	potiēbar
Fut.	hortābor	verēbor	sequar	potiar
Perf.	hortātus sum	veritus sum	secūtus sum	potītus sum
Plup.	hortātus eram	veritus eram	secūtus eram	potītus eram
F. P.	hortātus erō	veritus erō	secūtus erō	potītus erō

Subjunctive

Pres.	horter	verear	sequar	potiar
Impf.	hortārer	verērer	sequerer	potīrer
Perf.	hortātus sim	veritus sim	secūtus sim	potītus sim
Plup.	hortātus essem	veritus essem	secūtus essem	potītus essem

	Imperative			
PRES.	hortāre	verēre	sequere	potīre
FUT.	hortātor	verētor	sequitor	potītor

	Infinitive			
PRES.	hortārī	verērī	sequī	potīrī
PERF.	hortātus esse	veritus esse	secūtus esse	potītus esse
FUT.	hortātūrus esse	veritūrus esse	secūtūrus esse	potītūrus esse

	Participles			
PRES.	hortāns	verēns	sequēns	potiēns
FUT.	hortātūrus	veritūrus	secūtūrus	potītūrus
PERF.	hortātus	veritus	secūtus	potītus
GER.	hortandus	verendus	sequendus	potiendus

Gerund			
hortandī	verendī	sequendī	potiendī

Supine			
hortātum	veritum	secūtum	potītum

NOTE. — There are four semi-deponent verbs, having the active form in the present system, but the passive in the perfect system, with the active meaning throughout: **audeō, audēre, ausus sum,** *dare;* **gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum,** *rejoice;* **soleō, solēre, solitus sum,** *be accustomed;* **fīdō, fīdere, fīsus sum,** *trust.*

41. IRREGULAR VERBS

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **sum, esse, fuī,**

Indicative		Subjunctive	
PRESENT		PRESENT	
I am		*I may be*	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
sum	sumus	sim	sīmus
es	estis	sīs	sītis
est	sunt	sit	sint
IMPERFECT		IMPERFECT	
I was		*I might be*	
eram	erāmus	essem	essēmus
erās	erātis	essēs	essētis
erat	erant	esset	essent

Future	
I shall be	
erō	erimus
eris	eritis
erit	erunt

Perfect		Perfect	
I have been, I was		*I may have been*	
fuī	fuimus	fuerim	fuerimus
fuistī	fuistis	fueris	fueritis
fuit	fuērunt (-ēre)	fuerit	fuerint

Pluperfect		Pluperfect	
I had been		*I might have been*	
fueram	fuerāmus	fuissem	fuissēmus
fuerās	fuerātis	fuissēs	fuissētis
fuerat	fuerant	fuisset	fuissent

Future Perfect	
I shall have been	
fuerō	fuerimus
fueris	fueritis
fuerit	fuerint

Imperative

	singular	plural
Pres.	es, *be thou*	este
Fut.	estō	estōte
	estō	suntō

Infinitive

Pres. esse, *to be*
Perf. fuisse, *to have been*
Fut. futūrus esse, *to be about to be*

Participle

futūrus, *about to be*

42. Principal parts: **possum, posse, potuī**

Indicative		Subjunctive	
Pres.	possum, potes, potest possumus, potestis, possunt	Pres.	possim, possīs, *etc.*
Impf.	poteram	Impf.	possem, possēs, *etc.*
Fut.	poterō		
Perf.	potuī	Perf.	potuerim
Plup.	potueram	Plup.	potuissem
F. P.	potuerō		

Infinitive	Participle
PRES. posse	PRES. potēns
PERF. potuisse	

43. PRINCIPAL PARTS: fīō, fierī, factus sum

Indicative	Subjunctive
PRES. fīō, fīs, fit fīmus, fītis, fīunt	PRES. fīam, fīas, *etc.*
IMPF. fiēbam	IMPF. fierem
FUT. fīam, fīēs, *etc.*	
PERF. factus sum	PERF. factus sim
PLUP. factus eram	PLUP. factus essem
F. P. factus erō	

Imperative	Participle
PRES. fī, fīte	PERF. factus
	FUT. faciendus (*Gerundive*)

Infinitive

PRES. fierī
PERF. factus esse
FUT. factum īrī

44. PRINCIPAL PARTS: eō, īre, īvī (iī), itum

Indicative	Subjunctive
PRES. eō, īs, it, īmus, ītis, eunt	PRES. eam
IMPF. ībam	IMPF. īrem
FUT. ībō	
PERF. īvī (iī)	PERF. īverim (ierim)
PLUP. īveram (ieram)	PLUP. īvissem (īssem)
F. P. īverō (ierō)	

Imperative	Participle
PRES. ī, īte	PRES. iēns (*Gen.* euntis)
FUT. ītō, ītōte ītō, euntō	FUT. itūrus

Infinitive	Gerund
PRES. īre	eundi, *etc.*
PERF. īvisse (īsse)	
FUT. itūrus esse	Supine
	itum, -ū

45. PRINCIPAL PARTS: **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum**

ACTIVE VOICE

Indicative	Subjunctive
PRES. ferō, fers, fert ferimus, fertis, ferunt	PRES. feram, ferās, *etc.*
IMPF. ferēbam	IMPF. ferrem
FUT. feram, ferēs, *etc.*	
PERF. tulī	PERF. tulerim
PLUP. tuleram	PLUP. tulissem
F. P. tulerō	

Imperative		Participle
PRES. fer	ferte	PRES. ferēns
FUT. fertō	fertōte	FUT. lātūrus
fertō	feruntō	
		Gerund
Infinitive		ferendī, *etc.*
PRES. ferre		
PERF. tulisse		Supine
FUT. lātūrus esse		lātum, -ū

PASSIVE VOICE

Indicative	Subjunctive
PRES. feror, ferris, fertur ferimur, feriminī, feruntur	PRES. ferar, ferāris, *etc.*
IMPF. ferēbar	IMPF. ferrer
FUT. ferar, ferēris, *etc.*	
PERF. lātus sum	PERF. lātus sim
PLUP. lātus eram	PLUP. lātus essem
F. P. lātus erō	

Imperative	Infinitive
PRES. ferre, feriminī	PRES. ferrī
FUT. fertor	PERF. lātus esse
fertor, feruntor	FUT. lātum īrī

Participle

PERF. lātus
FUT. ferendus (*Gerundive*)

48 PRINCIPAL PARTS: volō, velle, voluī
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī
mālō, mālle, māluī

Indicative

PRES.	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	vult (volt)	nōn vult	māvult
	volumus	nolumus	mālumus
	vultis (voltis)	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt	nolunt	mālunt
IMPF.	volēbam	nolēbam	mālēbam
FUT.	volam, volēs, *etc.*	nolam	mālam
PERF.	voluī	nōluī	māluī
PLUP.	voluēram	nōluēram	māluēram
F. P.	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

Subjunctive

PRES.	velim, velīs, *etc.*	nōlim	mālim
IMPF.	vellem, vellēs, *etc.*	nōllem	māllem
PERF.	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
PLUP.	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

Imperative

PRES.	nōlī	nōlīte
FUT.	nōlītō	nōlītōte
	nōlītō	noluntō

Infinitive

PRES.	velle	nōlle	mālle
PERF.	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

Participle

PRES. volēns nōlēns

47. DEFECTIVE VERBS

Indicative

PERF.	coepī	meminī	ōdī
PLUP.	coeperam	memineram	ōderam
F. P.	coeperō	meminerō	ōderō

Subjunctive

PERF.	coeperim	meminerim	ōderim
PLUP.	coepissem	meminissem	ōdissem

Imperative

SINGULAR	PLURAL
mementō	mementōte

Infinitive

PERF.	coepisse	meminisse	ōdisse
FUT.	coeptūrus esse		ōsūrus esse

Participle

PERF.	coeptus, *begun*	ōsus
FUT.	coeptūrus	ōsūrus

48. IMPERSONAL VERBS

	Indicative	Subjunctive
PRES.	licet	liceat
IMPF.	licēbat	licēret
FUT.	licēbit	
PERF.	licuit (licitum est)	licuerit (licitum sit)
PLUP.	licuerat (licitum erat)	licuisset (licitum esset)
F. P.	licuerit (licitum erit)	

Infinitive

licēre, licuisse, licitūrum esse

B. SYNTAX

The references to Latin Grammars are indicated as follows: A., Allen and Greenough; B., Bennett; Bur., Burton; G., Gildersleeve and Lodge; H., Harkness; HB., Hale and Buck; W., West.

49. Sentences. A sentence is a complete thought expressed in words. A sentence making a statement is called *declarative*; one that asks a question, *interrogative*; one that expresses a command, *imperative*: 1. **oppidum mūnītur**: *the town is fortified*; 2. **oppidumne mūnītur**: *is the town fortified?* 3. **mūnīte oppidum**: *fortify the town.*

A. 269; B. 161; Bur. 352, 362; G. 201; H. 377; HB. 220; W. 277.

50. Subject and Predicate.

a. Every sentence consists of a subject and a predicate. The subject is that which is spoken of. The predicate is that which is said of the subject.

b. In Latin the simple subject may be expressed by a noun, by some word or group of words used as a noun, or by the ending of the verb. The simple predicate may be a verb alone, or it may be a form of **sum** together with an adjective or noun used to describe or define the subject.

SUBJECT	PREDICATE
1. **Caesar**	**vēnit**: *Caesar came.*
2. **Caesarem vēnisse** . .	**dīcitur**: *it is said that Caesar came.*
3. (Ending of verb) . .	**vēnit**: *he came.*
4. **Helvētiī**	**erant fortēs**: *the Helvetians were brave.*
5. **Helvētiī**	**erant Gallī**: *the Helvetians were Gauls.*

A. 270; B. 163; Bur. 355, 356 ff; G. 201; H. 381; HB. 229; W. 277.

51. Object. The action of a verb may be exerted directly or indirectly on an object. In the sentence **mīlitibus sīgnum dedit**: *he gave the soldiers a signal*; **sīgnum** is the direct object, and **mīlitibus** the indirect.

A. 274; B. 173; G. 328; W. 308.

52. Appositive Noun. A noun *added to* another noun to explain or describe it, and meaning the same person or thing, is called an *appositive* noun: **Cassius cōnsul**: Cassius, *the consul.*

A. 282; B. 169; Bur. 380; G. 321; H. 383, 3; HB. 317; W. 291.

53. Predicate Noun. A noun *in the predicate* used with an intransitive verb, or a verb in the passive voice, and meaning the same person or thing as the subject, is a *predicate* noun. (62.) 1. **Cassius erat cōnsul**: Cassius *was consul;* 2. **Cassius cōnsul appellātus erat**: Cassius *had been called consul.*

A. 283; B. 167; Bur. 389; G. 211; H. 382, 2; HB. 230; W. 290.

54. Modifiers.

a. The simple subject may be modified by a noun in apposition, a noun in the genitive or ablative, or by an adjective or group of words used as an adjective: **rēx Germānōrum, Ariovistus nōmine, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerat, bellum gerēbat**: *the king of the Germans, Ariovistus by name, who had lived beyond the Rhine,* was carrying on war.

b. The simple predicate may be modified by a direct object, an indirect object, a noun in the ablative or genitive, or by an adverb or group of words used as an adverb: **tubā mīlitibus sīgnum dedit, ut parātī in armīs essent**: he *gave a signal to the soldiers with a trumpet, that they might be armed.*

A. 276; G. 288, 327; H. 383–384.

55. Phrases. A phrase is a group of words not containing subject and predicate, often used as a single part of speech: **māgnō cum perīculō**: *with great danger,* I. 10; **māgnae virtūtis**: *of great bravery,* II. 15.

A. 277; Bur. 361; HB. 224.

56. Sentences Classified. Sentences may be simple, compound, or complex.

a. A simple sentence contains a single statement, with one subject and one predicate: **pōns factus est**: *a bridge was built.*

b. A compound sentence consists of two or more simple statements of equal rank: **haec eōdem tempore mandāta referēbantur et lēgātī veniēbant**: *at the same time these messages were brought, and envoys came,* I. 37.

c. A complex sentence consists of a principal statement modified by one or more subordinate statements: pōns factus est, ut exercitus trādūcerētur: *a bridge was built, that the army might be led over.*

A. 278; B. 164; Bur. 354; H. 377; HB. 228; W. 279.

57. Clauses. The separate statements of a compound or complex sentence are called clauses. Clauses may be principal (independent) or subordinate (dependent).

a. Subordinate clauses may be used as adjectives, adverbs, or nouns: 1. pōns quī erat ad Genāvam: the bridge *that was near Geneva*, I. 7; 2. pūgnant ut sint līberī: they fight *that they may be free*: 3 accidit ut esset lūna plēna: it happened *that there was full moon*, IV. 29.

b. Adverbial clauses may be causal, conditional, concessive, temporal, final, consecutive. For illustrations see 135–140.

A. 279; Bur. 353; H. 386; HB. 224; W. 286, 498.

58 Connectives. In a compound sentence the connective is a coördinate conjunction (**170**). In a complex sentence the connective may be a subordinate conjunction, a relative pronoun, or a relative adverb.

NOUNS

59. Agreement. A noun used as an appositive or predicate of another noun or pronoun agrees with it in case: persuādet Casticō, Sēquanō: he persuades Casticus, *the Sequanian*, I. 3; **Casticus erat Sēquanus**: Casticus was *a Sequanian*.

A. 281; B. 169, 2; Bur. 381, 389; G. 321; H. 393; HB. 319; W. 291.

Nominative Case

A noun in the nominative case may be used as follows: —

60. Subject of a finite verb: Germānī trāns Rhēnum incolunt: *the Germans live* beyond the Rhine, I. 1.

A. 339; B. 166; Bur. 397; G. 293; H. 387, HB. 335; W. 289.

61. Subject of an "historical" infinitive (**152**): Caesar frūmentum flāgitāre: *Caesar kept demanding* grain, I. 16.

A. 463; B. 335; Bur. 397; G. 647; H. 610; HB. 595; W. 631.

62. Predicate nominative, after

a. The intransitive verbs *be, become, seem,* etc.: **Helvētiī erant Gallī**: the Helvetii *were Gauls.*

b. The passive verbs *be made, be called, be chosen,* etc.: **Gallī Celtae appellantur**: the Gauls *are called Celts.*

A. 284; B. 168; Bur. 358 ff.; G. 211; H. 393; HB. 319; W. 270.

Note. The person or thing *addressed* is put in the *vocative* case, which is spelled like the nominative except in the singular of -us nouns of the second declension, which have the vocative in -e: **quid dubitās, Vorēne?** Why do you hesitate, *Vorenus?*

A. 340; B. 171; Bur. 398; G. 201; H. 402; HB. 400; W. 307.

Genitive Case

The uses of the genitive case are as follows:—

63. Genitive with Nouns.

a. Possessive genitive, denoting the *possessor:* **exercitus Caesaris**: *Caesar's* army.

A. 343; B. 198; Bur. 401; G. 362; H. 440; HB. 339; W. 353.

b. Subjective genitive, denoting the *agent* or *subject* of an action or feeling implied by another noun: **prō Helvētiōrum iniūriīs**: for *the wrongs of* (*i.e.* done by) *the Helvetii,* I. 30.

A. 343, note 1; B. 199; Bur. 402; G. 363; H. 440, 1; HB. 344; W. 350.

c. Objective genitive, denoting the *object* of an action or feeling implied by another noun: **rēgnī cupiditās**: *the desire of royal power,* I. 2; **prō iniūriīs populī**: for *the wrongs of* (*i.e.* inflicted upon) *the people,* I. 30.

A. 348; B. 200; Bur. 425 ff.; G. 363; H. 440, 2; HB. 354; W. 351.

d. Descriptive genitive, used to *describe* another noun. In this use the genitive is modified by an adjective: **trium mēnsium cibāriā**: food *for three months,* I. 5; **mūrum pedum sēdecim**: a wall *of sixteen feet* (in height), I. 8; **hominēs māgnae virtūtis**: men *of great bravery,* II. 15.

A. 345; B. 203; Bur. 421 ff.; G. 365; H. 440, 3; HB. 355; W. 354.

e. Genitive of the whole, depending on a word denoting a part: **quārum ūnam (partem)**: *one part of which,* I. 1; **cōpia frūmentī**: *a supply of grain,* I. 3; **hominum decem mīlia**: *ten thousand*

(of) *men*, I. 4: nihil reliquī: *nothing* (of) *left*, I. 11; mīlia passuum: (thousands of paces) *miles*.

Note. The genitive of the whole is used not only with nouns, but also with pronouns (indefinite or interrogative), adjectives (chiefly numeral, comparative, or superlative), and adverbs denoting quantity or place: hōrum fortissimī: *the bravest of these*, I. 1; minus dubitātiōnis: *less* (of) *hesitation*, I. 14; satis causae: *enough* (of) *reason*, I. 19; plūs dolōris: *more* (of) *grief*, I. 20.

A. 346; B. 201; Bur. 412 ff.; G. 367; H. 441 ff.; HB. 346; W. 355.

64. Genitive with Adjectives. The objective genitive is used with adjectives, denoting *desire*, *knowledge*, *memory*, *fullness*, *power*, or their opposite: bellandī cupidus: *desirous of fighting*, I. 2; mīlitāris reī perītus: *skilled in warfare*, I. 21.

A. 349; B. 204; Bur. 425; G. 374; H. 450; HB. 354; W. 352.

65. Genitive with Verbs. The genitive is used with certain verbs: —

a. Of memory: reminīscerētur virtūtis: *he should remember the bravery*, I. 13; contumēliae oblīvīscī: *to forget the insult*, I. 14.

A. 350; B. 206; Bur. 438 ff.; G. 376; H. 454; HB. 350 W. 364.

b. Of feeling: quōrum eōs paenitēre necesse est: *of which* it is necessary for them *to repent*, IV. 5.

A. 354; B. 209; Bur. 445 ff., G. 377, H. 457; HB. 352 W. 368.

c. Of interest: reī pūblicae interest: *it concerns the public welfare*, II. 5.

A. 355; B. 210; Bur. 434; G. 381; H. 449; HB. 345; W. 369.

d. Sometimes with potior (88): tōtīus Galliae potīrī: *to get possession of all Gaul*, I. 3.

A. 410, *a*; B. 212, 2; Bur. 446; G. 407; H. 458, 3; HB. 353.

e. With est and verbs of value, the genitive adjectives māgnī, tantī, denote indefinite value: tantī ēius grātia est: his favor *is so great*, I. 20.

A. 417; B. 203, 3; Bur. 578; G. 380; H. 448, 1; HB. 356.

66. Predicate Genitive. A possessive or descriptive genitive may be used in the predicate: iūdicium imperātōris esse: the decision *is the commander's*, I. 41; est hōc Gallicae cōnsuētūdinis: this *is* (of) *a Gallic custom*, IV. 5.

A. 343, *b*; B. 203, 5; Bur. 408; G. 366; H. 447; HB. 340.

Dative Case

The uses of the dative case are as follows: —

67. Dative of *indirect object*,

a. With transitive verbs: **eī fīliam suam dat**: he *gives him his daughter*, I. 3; **Caesarī nūntiātur**: it *is reported to Caesar*, I. 7.

A. 362; B. 187; Bur. 450; G. 345; H. 424; HB. 365, *a*; W. 327.

b. With intransitive verbs meaning *favor, help, please, trust; believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist; envy, threaten, pardon, spare*: **cīvitātī persuāsit**: he *persuaded the tribe*, I. 2; **novīs rēbus studēbat**: he *was eager for a revolution*, I. 9; **favēre Helvētiīs**: *favor the Helvetii*, I. 18.

Note. In the passive these verbs are used only impersonally (119, *b*).

A. 367; B. 187; Bur. 456, 459; G. 346; H. 426; HB. 362; W. 330.

c. With many verbs compounded with **ad, ante, circum, con, dē, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super**: **omnibus praestārent**: they *excelled all*, I. 2; **sibi lēgātiōnem suscēpit**: he *undertook* the mission (took upon himself), I. 3; **mūnītiōnī praefēcit**: he *put in charge of the fortification*, I. 10; **calamitātem populō intulerat**: it *had brought* disaster *upon the people*, I. 12.

Note. Verbs of *motion* (accēdō, accurrō) take an accusative with **ad** or **in**: **ad eum accurrit**: *he runs up to him*, I. 22.

A. 370; B. 187; Bur. 464; G. 347; H. 429; HB. 376; W. 332.

68. Dative of *separation*, with verbs meaning *take away*: **Haeduīs lībertātem ēripere**: *take away* liberty *from the Haedui*, I. 17; **scūtō mīlitī dētrāctō**: *seizing* a shield *from a soldier*, II. 25.

A. 381; B. 188, *d*; Bur. 477; G. 345; H. 427; HB. 371; W. 337.

69. Dative of *purpose* or *tendency* denoting the purpose or object for which anything is or is done; **equitātum auxiliō mīserant**: they *had sent* the cavalry *as* (for) *an aid*, I. 18.

A. 382; B. 191; Bur. 483; G. 356; H. 433; HB. 360; W. 343.

70. Dative of *reference*, denoting the person or thing concerned by the action: **molita cibāria sibi efferre**: *take along* ground grain *for himself*, I. 5 **equitātum auxiliō Caesarī mīse-**

rant: they had sent the cavalry as an aid *to Caesar*, I. 18; **purgātī sibi**: blameless *in his sight*, I. 28.

a. The dative of reference may be equivalent to a possessive genitive: **Caesarī ad pedēs**: at *Caesar's* feet, I. 30.

A. 376; B. 188; Bur. 470; G. 356; H. 433; HB. 366; W. 335.

71. Dative of the *agent*, used with a passive periphrastic form: **exspectandum esse sibi statuit**: decided *he ought to wait* (lit. it ought to be waited *by him*), I. 11; **Caesarī omnia erant agenda**: *Caesar had to do everything* (lit. everything had to be done *by Caesar*), II. 20.

A. 374; B. 189; Bur. 480; G. 354; H. 431; HB. 373; W. 339.

72. Dative of the *possessor*, used with forms of **sum**: **sibi esse in animō**: *they had* it in mind (lit. it *was* in mind *to them*), I. 7; **potestās erat nūllī**: *no one had* the power (lit. the power *was to no one*), II. 6.

A. 373; B. 190; Bur. 479; G. 349; H. 430; HB. 374; W. 340.

73. Dative with adjectives meaning *near, like, fit, sufficient, friendly*, etc.: **proximī sunt Germānīs**: they are *next to the Germans*, I. 1; **cōnsimilis fugae**: *like a flight*, II. 11; **idōneum castrīs**: *suitable for a camp*, II. 17.

A. 384; B. 192; Bur. 487; G. 359; H. 434; HB. 362; W. 333.

Accusative Case

The uses of the accusative case are as follows: —

74. Direct object of a transitive verb: **bellum gerunt**: they *carry on war*, I. 1.

A. 387; B. 172; Bur. 493; G. 330; H. 401; HB. 390; W. 308.

75. Secondary Object.

a. Some verbs meaning *ask, demand,* or *teach* may take two objects, one of the person (direct object), the other of the thing (secondary object): **Caesar Haeduōs frūmentum flāgitāre** 152: Caesar *kept demanding grain of the Haedui*, I. 16.

A. 396; B. 178; Bur. 507; G. 339; H. 411; HB. 393; W. 318.

b. Some transitive verbs compounded with **trāns** or **circum** may take a direct and a secondary object: **trēs partēs cōpiārum**

flūmen trādūxerant: they *had led three fourths* of their troops *across the river* (secondary obj.), I. 12.

A. 395; B. 179; Bur. 511; G. 331; H. 413; HB. 386; W. 320.

Note. In the passive these verbs retain the secondary object: **Belgās Rhēnum trāductōs esse**: the Belgae *had been brought over the Rhine*, II. 4. — Bur. 509.

76. Predicate Accusative.

a. The verbs *make, call, choose, regard, show,* etc., may take two accusatives, one the direct object, the other a *predicate accusative*: **quem vergobretum appellant**: *whom* they *call vergobret*, I. 16.

A. 393; B. 177; Bur. 392; G. 340; H. 410; HB. 392; W. 317.

Note. In the passive these verbs take a predicate nominative (62, *b*): **Liscus appellātus est vergobretus**: Liscus *was called vergobret.*

b. Certain infinitives like **esse**, with a subject accusative, may take a predicate accusative in agreement with the subject: **(dīxit) populum Rōmānum esse testem**: (he said) the Romans *were a witness*, I. 14.

77. Subject of an Infinitive. An infinitive, with subject accusative, is used with verbs meaning *say, know, think, perceive,* etc.; also with **iubeō, vetō, prohibeō, sinō, cōgō** (*compel*), **cupiō, volō**, etc.: **sē habēre arbitrābantur**: they *thought they had*, I. 2; **quemque efferre iubent**: they *order each man to take along*, I. 5; **certior fīēbat Belgās coniūrāre**: he *was informed that the Belgae were conspiring.*

A. 397, *c*; B. 184; Bur. 526; G. 343, 2; H. 415; HB. 398; W. 322.

78. Object of Certain Prepositions. See 169, *a*.

a. An accusative may follow the adjectives **propior, proximus,** and the adverbs propius, proximē: **propius tumulum**: *nearer the mound*, I. 46; **proximī Rhēnum**: *next to the Rhine*, I. 54.

A. 220, *a*; B. 141; Bur. 1025; G. 416; H. 420; HB. 380; W. 242.

79. Accusative of *place to which*, with **ad, in,** or **sub**: **ad montem**: *to the mountain*, I. 8; **in prōvinciam**: *into the province*, I. 33; **sub iugum**: *under the yoke*, I. 7.

A. 426, 2; B. 182; Bur. 513; G. 337; H. 418; HB. 385, W. 325.

a. A preposition is not used with names of towns or **domum**, but the names of towns may take **ad** when it means *towards* or *near to*: **domum reditiōnis spēs**: the hope of returning *home*, I. 5; **ad Genāvam pervenit**: he arrives *near Geneva*, I. 7; **Bibracte īvit**: he went *to Bibracte*, I. 23. — Bur. 514.

80. Accusative denoting *duration of time* or *extent of space*: **rēgnum multōs annōs obtinuerat**: he had held the royal power *many years*, I. 3; **mīlia passuum octō ab castrīs**: *eight miles* from the camp, I. 21.

A. 423, 425; B. 181; Bur. 518 ff., G. 335, 336; H. 417; HB. 387; W. 324.

81. Cognate Accusative. A verb may take the accusative of a noun having a meaning similar to its own. Such an accusative is called *cognate*: **cum trīduī viam prōcessisset**: when he *had gone* forward a three days' *journey*, I. 38.

A. 390; B. 176, 4; Bur. 502; G. 333, 2; H. 409; HB. 396; W. 313.

82. Adverbial Accusative. An accusative, chiefly of neuter pronouns and adjectives, may be used as an adverb: **plūrimum posse**: *have greatest power, be most powerful*, I. 3; **aliquid sublevāre**: *help to some extent*, I. 40; **quid possent**: *what strength they had*, II. 4.

A. 397; B. 185; G. 333; H. 416, 2; HB. 387; W. 316.

Ablative Case

The uses of the ablative are as follows: —

83. Ablative of *separation*, with or without **ab**, **dē**, or **ex**: **Gallōs ab Aquītānīs dīvidit**: separates the Gauls *from the Aquitanians*, I. 1; **suīs fīnibus eōs prohibent**: keep them *from their own country*, I. 1; **ex māgnā cōpiā dēligere**: to choose *from a great number*, I. 30; **dē voluptāte dēminuerat**: had taken *from pleasure*, I. 53.

A. 400; B. 214; Bur. 528; G. 390; H. 461; HB. 408; W. 374.

a. This includes the ablative of *place from which*, generally used with **ab**, **dē**, or **ex**: **ē fīnibus suīs exeunt**: they go *out of their country*, I. 5; **dē nāvibus dēsilīte**: jump down *from the ships*, IV. 24. — Bur. 530.

b. With the ablative of the names of towns and **domō**, *from home*, the preposition is not used, except in the meaning *from the neighborhood of*: **domō efferre**, to take *from home*, I. 5; **ab Ocelō**: *from the neighborhood of Ocelum*, I. 10.

A. 426; B. 229; Bur. 530; G. 390; H. 491; HB. 409; W. 404.

84. Ablative of *source* or *material*, generally with **ab** or **ex**: **Belgās esse ortōs ā Germānīs**: the Belgians sprang *from the Germans*, II. 4; **scūtīs ex cortice factīs**: shields made *of bark*, II. 33.

A. 403; B. 215; Bur. 532; G. 395, 396; H. 467; HB. 413; W. 378.

85. Ablative of the *agent*, with **ab**: **sī obsidēs ab eīs dentur**: if hostages should be given *by them*, I. 14.

A. 405; B. 216; Bur. 535; G. 401; H. 468; HB. 406; W. 379.

86. Ablative of *comparison*, after a comparative without **quam**, *than*: **amplius quīnīs mīlibus passuum**: *more than five miles*, I. 15; **celerius omnium opīniōne**: *more quickly than any one would suppose* (lit. than the expectation of all), II. 3.

a. If **quam** is used, the two words compared are in the same case: **quī plūs possunt quam ipsī magistrātūs**: who have *more power than the officers themselves*, I. 17.

b. **Amplius**, **longius**, **plūs**, or **minus** may be used without affecting the case of the noun following: **amplius pedum mīlle sexcentōrum**: *more than* 1600 *feet*, I. 38.

A. 406; B. 217; Bur. 541; G. 296; H. 471; HB. 416; W. 380.

87. Ablative of *means* or *instrument*, without a preposition: **hīs rēbus adductī**: influenced *by these arguments*, I. 2; **suīs cōpiīs rēgnum conciliābit**: he will secure the royal power *by means of his forces*, I. 3; **gladiīs pūgnātum est**: the battle was fought *with swords*, I. 52.

A. 409; B. 218; Bur. 570; G. 401; H. 476; HB. 423; W. 386.

88. The ablative is used with the verbs **ūtor**, **fruor**, **fungor**, **potior**, and **vēscor**: **imperiō potīrī**: *to secure command*, I. 2: **eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō**: *using the same plan*, I. 5.

a. **Potior** may take the genitive (**65**, *d*).

A. 410; B. 218; Bur. 572, 446; G. 407; H. 477; HB. 429; W. 387.

89. The ablative is used with opus and ūsus, meaning *need*: sī quid 82. opus factō esset, if there should be any *need of action*, I. 42.

A. 411, B. 218, 2; Bur. 573; G. 406; H. 477; HB. 430; W. 389.

90. Ablative of *cause*, without a preposition: hīs rēbus fīēbat: *because of this situation* it came about, etc., I. 2; eō magis: *all the more* (lit. more because of this), I. 23.

A. 404; B. 219; Bur. 546; G. 408; H. 475; HB. 444; W. 384.

91. Ablative of *manner*, with or without cum: flūmen īnfluit incrēdibilī lēnitāte: *the river flows with incredible slowness*, I. 12; māgnō cum strepitū ēgressī: having gone out *with great uproar*, II. 11.

A. 412; B. 220; Bur. 554; G. 399; H. 473, 3; HB. 445; W. 390.

92. Ablative of *accordance*, denoting that in accordance with which something is done: mōribus suīs: *according to their customs*, I. 4; mōre et exemplō: *according to the custom and precedent*, I. 5.

A. 418, *a*; B. 220, 3; Bur. 534; G. 399; H. 475, 3; HB. 414; W. 391.

93. Ablative of *attendant circumstance*, expressing the situation or circumstance of an action: imperiō populī Rōmānī: *under the rule* of the Romans, I. 18; suā voluntāte: *with his consent*, I. 20; quō cōnsuērat intervāllō: *at the usual distance apart*, I. 22.

B. 221; Bur. 556; G. 399; H. 473, 3; HB. 422; W. 391.

94. Ablative of *accompaniment*, with cum: cum omnibus cōpiīs exīvērunt: they went out *with all their forces*, I. 2.

A. 413; B. 222; Bur. 550; G. 392; H. 473, 1; HB. 418; W. 392.

a. Cum may be omitted in military phrases, when the noun is modified by any adjective except a numeral: pedestribus cōpiīs: *with the infantry*, III. 11. — Bur. 551.

b. Cum is an enclitic with the ablative of the personal, reflexive, and relative pronouns: quibuscum, sēcum. — Bur. 1024.

95. Ablative of *degree of difference*, used (*a*) with comparatives and words implying comparison; (*b*) with absum, cōnsīdō, etc., to denote the interval of space: nihilō minus: (by nothing

less) *nevertheless*, I. 5; **multō facilius**: (more easily by much) *much more easily*, I. 6; **eō gravius . . . quō minus**: lit. *the more heavily . . . the less*, I. 14; **passibus ducentīs ab eō tumulō**: *two hundred paces* from that hill, I. 43; **ā mīlibus passuum duōbus**: *two miles* away, II. 7.

A. 414; B. 223; Bur. 582; G. 403; H. 479; HB. 424; W. 393.

96. Ablative of *description*. This ablative is always modified by an adjective or genitive: **bonō animō nōn vidērentur**: they did not seem (of good disposition) *well-disposed*, I. 6; **(vir) summā audāciā**: a man *of the greatest boldness*, I. 18.

A. 415; B. 224; Bur. 557; G. 400; H. 473, 2; HB. 443; W. 394.

97. Ablative of *specification*, denoting that in respect to which anything is or is done: **linguā inter sē differunt**: they differ from one another *in language*, I. 1; **oppidum nōmine Bibrax**: a town *named* Bibrax (lit. Bibrax *by name*).

A. 418; B. 226; Bur. 586; G. 397; H. 480; HB. 441; W. 396.

98. Ablative of *price*: **parvō pretiō**: *at a small price*, I. 18; **mercēde arcesserentur**: they were called in as mercenaries (lit. summoned *by pay*), I. 18.

A. 416; B. 225; Bur. 577; G. 404; H. 478; HB. 427; W. 395.

99. Ablative Absolute.

a. A phrase consisting of the following may form an ablative absolute: —

1. A noun or pronoun + a participle: **rēgnō occupātō**: (the royal power having been seized) *by seizing the royal power*, I. 3;

2. A noun or pronoun + an adjective: **sē invītō**: (he being unwilling) *against his will*, I. 8;

3. A noun or pronoun + a noun: **eō dēprecātōre**: (he being a mediator) *with him as mediator*, I. 9. — Bur. 558.

b. An ablative absolute may express: — Bur. 559 ff.

1. Time: **Messālā et Pīsōne cōnsulibus**: *during the consulship of Messala and Piso*, I. 2; **omnibus rēbus comparātīs**: *when all things were ready*, I. 6;

2. Cause: **male rē gestā**: *because of bad management*, I. 40;

3. Condition: **locō opportūnō**: *since the place was convenient*, II. 8; **datā facultāte**: *if an opportunity were given*, I. 7;

4. Concession: **paucīs dēfendentibus**: *though there were few defenders*, II. 12;

5. Means: **nāvibus iūnctīs**: *by joining boats*, I. 8.

c. When the agent of the action expressed by a passive participle is the same as the subject of the main verb, the ablative absolute is best translated by an active participle with an object: **eō opere perfectō praesidia dispōnit**: *having completed this work*, he stationed guards, I. 8. Otherwise the phrase may be translated by a clause; see 99, *b*.

A. 419; B. 227; G. 409; H. 489; HB. 421; W. 397.

100. Ablative denoting *time when* or *within which*: **diē cōnstitūtā**: *on the appointed day*, I. 4; **eōrum adventū**: *upon their arrival*, I. 18; **paucīs annīs**, *within a few years*, I. 31.

A. 423; B. 230; Bur. 599; G. 393; H. 486; HB. 439; W. 406.

101. Ablative of the *place in which*, with **in**: **Rhodanus nōnnūllīs locīs trānsītur**: the Rhone is crossed *in some places*, I. 6.

A. 426; B. 228; Bur. 588; G. 385. H. 483; HB. 433; W. 401.

102. The "locative" case is used instead of the ablative in the singular of the names of towns of the first, second, and sometimes third declension; also in **domī**, *at home*, **mīlitiae**, *in military service*, etc. The ending of the locative is **-ae** in the first declension, **-ī** in the second, and **-ī** or **-e** in the third.

A. 427, 3; B. 232; Bur. 606 ff.; G. 411; H. 483, HB. 449; W. 403.

ADJECTIVES

103. Agreement. An adjective or participle (**158**), whether attributive or predicate, agrees with noun in gender, number, and case: **Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs**, I. 1.

A. 286; B. 234; Bur. 629, G. 289; H. 394; HB. 320, W. 293.

a. With two or more nouns connected by **et**, **-que**, or **atque**, the adjective or participle is usually plural, but it may be singular if the nearest noun is singular: **fīlia atque ūnus ex fīliīs captus est**: *the daughter and one of the sons were taken captive*, I. 26. — Bur. 631.

b. With two or more nouns of different genders an attributive

adjective takes the gender of the nearest; a predicate adjective or participle is generally masculine if the nouns denote living things, neuter if they denote things without life: **eādem alacritāte ac studiō**: *with the same eagerness and zeal*, IV. 24; **fīlia atque ūnus ex fīliīs captus est** (103, *a*). — Bur. 632.

Note. An adjective is *attributive* when it describes the noun directly; *predicate*, when it forms part of the predicate with **sum**, or with a passive verb like *be named, be called*, etc. — Bur. 625 ff.

Uses of Adjectives

104. An adjective may be used as a noun, chiefly in the plural: **omnibus praestārent**: they excelled *all*, I. 2; **nōbilissimōs cīvitātis**: *the noblest (men)* of the tribe, I. 7; **suīs**: *to their (people)*, I. 13; **sua**: *their (property)*, II. 3; **pēius accidisse**: *a worse (fate)* had happened, I. 31.

A. 288; B. 236; Bur. 635 ff.; G. 204, note; H. 494 ff.; HB. 249; W. 409.

105. An adjective may be used with the force of an adverb: **trīstēs terram intuērī**: looked upon the ground *in sadness* (sadly), I. 32.

A. 290; B. 239; Bur. 641; H. 497; HB. 245; W. 412.

106. Some adjectives may denote a part of an object: **summus mōns**: *the top of* the hill, I. 22; **in colle mediō**: (in the middle of) *half way up* the hill, I. 24; **extrēmās fossās**: *the ends of* the trenches, II. 8.

A. 293; B. 241; Bur. 646; G. 291, 2; H. 497, 4; HB. 244; W. 416.

107. A superlative adjective or adverb may be best translated by *very*, a comparative by *too, rather, unusually*: **lātissimō**: *very wide*, I. 2; **fortius factum**: a deed *unusually brave*, III. 14; **ipse aberat longius**: he himself was *too far* away, III. 9.

a. A superlative with **quam** may be translated *as . . . as possible*: **quam māximum numerum**: *as great a number as possible*, I. 3; **quam mātūrrimē**: *as soon as possible*, I. 33.

b. **Potest** is sometimes used with **quam** and a superlative: **quam māximās potest itineribus**: *by the greatest possible* stages, I. 7.

A. 291; B. 240; Bur. 642, 644; H. 498; HB. 241; W. 414.

108. Adjective Clauses. A clause may be used as an adjective to modify a noun. It is then introduced by a relative pronoun or a relative adverb. **pōns, qui erat ad Genāvam**: the bridge *which was near Geneva*, I. 7.

PRONOUNS

109. When pronouns are used as nouns, the rules for the cases of nouns apply. When used as adjectives, they follow the rules for the agreement of adjectives (**103**).

A. 296, 1; H. 396; HB. 321 ff.

110. Personal Pronouns. There is no special pronoun of the third person, but a demonstrative pronoun may be so used: **ad eōs**: *to them*, I. 4; **in eōrum fīnibus**, *in their* territory, I. 1.

A. 295; B. 242; Bur. 661 ff.; G. 304; H. 500; HB. 254; W. 119.

111. Reflexive Pronouns. The reflexive **sē** and the possessive **suus** refer to the subject of the clause in which they stand (direct reflexive): **sē suaque dēdidērunt**, *they* surrendered *themselves* and *their property*, II. 15.

a. If **sē** or **suus** stands in a subordinate clause of an indirect quotation, it may refer to the subject of the verb upon which the quotation depends (indirect reflexive): **hīs mandāvit ut . . . ad sē referrent**: *he* ordered them to report *to him*, I. 47.

A. 299; B. 211; Bur. 666, 667; G. 309; H. 502; HB. 260; W. 121.

112. Possessive Pronouns. Possessive pronouns agree in gender, number, and case with the noun with which they are used, not with the noun denoting the possessor: **Orgetorīx fīliam suam dat**: Orgetorix gives *his* daughter, I. 3.

A. 302; B. 243; G. 312; H. 501; HB. 254; W. 424.

a. The possessive pronoun **suus** is used reflexively, that is, it refers to the subject of the sentence. When some other person or thing is meant *his, her, its,* or *their* is expressed by the genitive of a demonstrative, **ēius, eōrum**, etc.: **Helvētiī aut suīs fīnibus eōs prohibent aut in eōrum fīnibus bellum gerunt**: the Helvetii either keep them from *their own* boundaries or carry on war in *theirs* (*i.e.* the Germans'), I. 1. — Bur. 619 ff.

113. Demonstrative Pronouns. Demonstrative pronouns, when not used as adjectives, take the gender and number of the noun to which they refer: **is** (*i.e.* Orgetorix) **persuāsit**: *he* persuaded, I. 2. — Bur. 711.

a. **Hīc** refers to what is near in place, time, or thought; **ille** to what is remote: **hanc Galliam . . . illam (Galliam)**: *this* (part of) Gaul, *that* (part), I. 44. — Bur. 712.

b. **Hic . . . ille** may mean *the latter . . . the former*: **hīc cum auxilium ferret, illum ēripuit**: when *the latter* brought help, he rescued him (*the former*), IV. 12. — Bur. 715.

c. **Is** is frequently used as the antecedent of **quī**, or in agreement with the antecedent: **ea, quae pertinērent**: *those things which* had reference, I. 3; **eā legiōne, quam habēbat**: with *that legion which* he had, I. 8.

A. 296; B. 246; Bur. 716; G. 305; H. 505, 508; HB. 321, 271; W. 426.

114. Intensive Pronoun. The pronoun **ipse** emphasizes the word to which it refers: **ipse obtentūrus erat**: *he himself* was about to seize, I. 3. — Bur. 671.

a. **Ipse** may mean *very*: **ipsum esse Dumnorīgem**: Dumnorix was the *very* (man), I. 18; **in ipsīs rīpīs**, on the *very* banks, II. 23.

b. The genitives **ipsīus, ipsōrum**, may mean *his own, their own*: **ipsīus castra**: *his own* camp, I. 21; **ipsōrum lingua**: *their own* language, I. 1. — Bur. 673, 678.

c. **Ipse** may be used as a reflexive pronoun: **sī ipsī (= sibi) opus esset**: if *he* needed anything (lit. if any need was *to himself*), I. 34.

A. 298; B. 249; Bur. 675; G. 311; H. 509; HB. 267; W. 428.

115. Relative Pronoun. The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person; its case depends upon the structure of the clause in which it stands: **Germānīs, quī . . . incolunt, quibuscum bellum gerunt**: *to the Germans who . . .* dwell, *with whom* they fight, I. 1. — Bur. 703.

a. With two or more antecedents a relative pronoun may agree with the nearest or follow the rule for a predicate adjective (**103**, *b*): **ūsus atque disciplīna quam accēpissent**: *the experience* and *training which* they had received, I. 40. — Bur. 705.

b. The relative may not agree with its antecedent, but with an appositive or predicate noun in its own clause: **Belgās, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dīxerāmus**: the *Belgae who* were a third *part* of Gaul, as we had said, II. 1. — Bur. 707.

c. The antecedent may stand in the relative clause: **quae cīvitās est in prōvinciā** = **cīvitās, quae est**, etc., I. 10. — Bur. 698.

d. The antecedent may be repeated, standing in both clauses: **erant duo itinera, quibus itineribus**: there were *two roads by which*, I. 6. — Bur. 695.

e. The antecedent may be omitted: (sc. **eōs**) **quī cognōscerent, mīsit**: he sent *men to ascertain* (lit. those who should ascertain), I. 21. — Bur. 701.

f. A relative at the beginning of an independent clause may be equivalent to a demonstrative or a personal pronoun, with or without a preceding conjunction (**et, nam, sed**): **quā dē causā** = **et eā dē causā**: *and for this reason*, I. 1; **quā in rē** = **et in eā rē**: *and in this event*, I. 12; **quī sī** = **nam sī eī**: *for if they*, I. 14; **quī cum** = **et cum eī**: *and when they*, I. 27.

A. 305; B. 250; Bur. 710; G. 614; H. 399, 510; HB. 322; W. 299.

116. Indefinite Pronouns. For the distinction of meaning of indefinite pronouns, see 27. **Quis**, *any*, is used chiefly after **sī nisi, nē, num**: **nē quis ēnūntiāret**: that *no one* (lit. not any one) should report, I. 30.

A. 309; B. 252; Bur. 682 ff.; G. 313; H. 512 ff.; HB. 276.

117. Alius and Alter. **Alius** and **alter** may be adjectives or pronouns.

a. **Alter . . . alter** mean *the one . . . the other*, **alius . . . alius**, *one . . . another*, **aliī . . . aliī**, *some . . . others*: **hārum altera occīsa, altera capta est**: of these *one* was killed, *the other* taken prisoner, I. 53.

b. Two different cases of **alius** may be used in the same clauses with the meaning *one* (*some . . . one, another* (*others*) *. . . another*: **alius aliā causā inlātā**: *one* offering *one* excuse, *another* (offering) *another*, I. 39; **aliī aliam in partem**: *some* in *one* direction, *others* in *another* (or, *in different directions*), II. 24.

A. 315, *c*; B. 253, 2; Bur. 729; G. 319; H. 516, 1; HB. 279.

VERBS

118. Agreement. A finite verb agrees with its subject in number and person: **Gallia est dīvīsa**: *Gaul is divided*, I. 1: **erant itinera duo**: there *were two ways*, I. 6.

a. If there are two or more subjects, connected by **et, -que,** or **atque**, the verb may agree with the nearest or be plural: **sī prīncipēs ac senātus fidem fēcisset**: if *the chiefs and senate should give* a pledge, IV. 11.

b. If singular subjects are connected by words meaning *either, neither*, the verb is usually singular: **neque agrī cultūra nec ratiō atque ūsus bellī intermittitur**: *neither the cultivation* of the land *nor the theory and practice* of war *is interrupted*, IV. 1.

c. If two singular subjects form one idea, the verb is singular, **Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit**: *the Marne and Seine separate*, I. 1.

d. A collective noun generally takes a singular verb, but may take a plural: **ut (cīvitās) exīrent**: that *the tribe might go out*, I. 2; **cum multitūdō conicerent**: when *a large number threw*, etc., II. 6.

A. 316; B. 254; Bur. 736–738; G. 211; H. 388; HB. 328; W. 296.

119. Impersonal Verbs. Some verbs are used only in the third person singular and in the infinitive, without a personal subject. To this class belong: —

a. Verbs meaning *it happens, it is permitted, it is necessary*, etc. Such verbs take a phrase or a clause as the subject: **poenam sequī (eum) oportēbat**: *it was necessary for punishment to be inflicted upon him* (lit. follow him), I. 4.

b. Intransitive verbs used in the third person singular of the passive (**67**, *b*, note): **pūgnātum est**: *fighting went on, they fought*, I. 26; **(dīxit) sibi persuādērī**: *he said he was persuaded* (lit. it was persuaded to him), I. 40; **ventum est**: (it was come) *they came*, I. 43.

c. Verbs of feeling: **eōs paenitet**: (it repents them) *they repent.*

d. The passive periphrastic of deponent verbs: **nōn cunctandum (esse) exīstimāvit**: he thought there *must be no delay*, III. 23.

A. 208; B. 138; Bur. 346; G. 208; H. 302; HB. 287; W. 233.

Tenses of the Indicative

120. Present Indicative. The present indicative represents action as taking place at the time of speaking or writing: **Germānī trāns Rhēnum incolunt**: the Germans *dwell* beyond the Rhine, I. 1. — Bur. 745.

a. The present is often used instead of a past tense to describe an action more vividly. It is then called the *historical* present: **Orgetorix dēligitur**. Orgetorix *was chosen*, I. 3.

b. The historical present may be used with **dum**, *while*; see **137**, *c*.

A. 465; B. 259; Bur. 748; G. 227; H. 532; HB. 468; W. 445.

121. Imperfect Indicative. The imperfect indicative represents action as going on at a past time: **Helvētiī populābantur**: the Helvetii *were devastating*, I. 11.

a. The imperfect may be used in descriptions: **erant duo itinera**: *there were* two ways, I. 6.

b. The imperfect may represent an action as customary or attempted, or begun: **in proeliīs versābantur**: they *were accustomed to move* in battle, I. 18; **suspicābātur**: he *was beginning to suspect*, IV. 31.

A. 470; B. 260; Bur. 751, 752; G. 251; H. 534; HB. 468; W. 448.

122. Future Indicative. The future indicative represents action as taking place in time to come: **ībunt**: they *will go*.

A. 472; B. 261; Bur. 754; G. 242; H. 536; HB. 468; W. 450.

123. Perfect Indicative. The perfect indicative has two uses:

a. The present perfect, translated by *have*, representing an action as completed in the present time: **didicērunt**: they *have learned*.

b. The historical perfect (English past), representing the action as an historical fact: **coniūrātiōnem fēcit**: he *made* a conspiracy, I. 2.

A. 473; B. 262; Bur. 758; G. 236; H. 537; HB. 468; W. 452.

124. Pluperfect Indicative. The pluperfect indicative represents action as completed before some other past action: **iam trādūxerant**: they *had already led across*, I. 11.

A. 477; B. 263; Bur. 763; G. 241; H. 539; HB. 468; W. 457.

125. Future Perfect. The future perfect represents action which is to be completed before some other future action: **officium praestiterō**: I *shall have done* (my) duty, IV. 25.

A. 478; B. 264; Bur. 764; G. 244; H. 540; HB. 468; W. 459.

126. Primary and Secondary Tenses. The present, future, and future perfect are primary tenses; the imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect are secondary. The historical present (**120**, *a*) may be secondary, and the present perfect (**123**, *a*) may be primary.

A. 482; B. 258; Bur. 309; G. 225; H. 198; HB. 476; W. 161.

Tenses of the Subjunctive

127. The four tenses of the subjunctive may denote the same time as the corresponding tenses of the indicative.

A. 400; B. 266; Bur. 781; G. 277; H. 541; HB. 469; W. 461.

a. In subordinate clauses future time may be expressed by the present subjunctive after a primary tense; by the imperfect after a secondary tense: **custōdēs pōnit ut scīre possit**: he *sets* guards that he *may be able* to know, I. 20; **remōtīs equīs, ut spem fugae tolleret**: *having removed* the horses, that he *might take away* the hope of flight, I. 25.

b. In subordinate clauses future perfect time may be expressed by the perfect subjunctive after a primary tense; by the pluperfect after a secondary tense: **sē nōn dubitāre dēbēre, sī Helvētiōs superāverint**: they *ought* not to doubt, etc., if they *shall have conquered* the Helvetians, I. 17; for the pluperfect so used see **155**, *b*.

c. In both clauses of conditional sentences the present subjunctive may denote future time, and the imperfect, present time; see **140.**

128. Sequence of Tenses. In subordinate clauses the tense of the subjunctive depends on the following rule: The present (or perfect) subjunctive is used after a primary tense; the imperfect (or pluperfect) subjunctive after a secondary; see illustrations under **127**, *a*.

A. 483; B. 267; Bur. 781 ff.; G. 509; H. 543; HB. 476; W. 462.

Uses of the Indicative

129. In principal clauses the indicative is used to express direct statements of fact and questions of fact: **fortissimī sunt.**

Belgae: the Belgae *are* the bravest, I. 1; **Belgaene sunt fortissimī**: *are* the Belgae the bravest?

A. 437; B. 271; Bur. 743; G. 254; H. 523; HB. 545; W. 478.

130. The indicative is used in the following subordinate clauses: —

a. Relative clauses (**133**).

b. Temporal clauses (**137**).

c. Causal clauses (**138**).

d. Concessive clauses (**139**).

e. Conditional clauses (**140**).

f. Parenthetical clauses with ut, *as*: **neque abest suspiciō, ut Helvētiī arbitrantur**: suspicion is not lacking, *as the Helvetians think*, I. 4.

g. Clauses of comparison with **ut . . . sīc**, *as . . . so*: **ut mihi concēdī nōn oportet, sīc vōs estis iniquī**: *as I should not be allowed, so you are unjust*, etc., I. 44 (direct discourse).

Bur. 743, *d*; H. 524; HB. 547; W. 478.

Uses of the Subjunctive

131. In principal clauses the subjunctive may express: —

a. An exhortation, in the first person plural of the present tense: **fortēs sīmus**: *let us be brave*. — Bur. 768.

b. A command, in the third person of the present tense: **fortiter pūgnent**: *let them fight bravely*. — Bur. 768.

c. A negative command, in the second person of the present or perfect tense: **nē eās (īveris)**: *do not go*. — Bur. 768.

d. A wish or desire, generally with **utinam**: **utinam veniat**: *O that he would come*. — Bur. 773.

e. A possibility: **aliquis dīcat**: *some one may say*. — Bur. 777.

f. Deliberation (see **141**, *a*): **quid agam?** *what shall I do?* or *what am I to do?* — Bur. 771.

A. 438, *a*; B. 272; G. 255–264; H. 551; HB. 499; W. 480.

132. The subjunctive is used in the following subordinate clauses: —

a. Descriptive clauses (**134**).

b. Purpose clauses (**135**).

c. Result clauses (**136**).
d. Temporal clauses (**137**).
e. Causal clauses (**138**).
f. Concessive clauses (**139**).
g. Conditional clauses (**140**).
h. Indirect questions (**141**).
A. 438, *b*; B. 280 ff.; Bur. 795; G. 543 ff.; H. 562, HB. 499.

Relative Clauses

133. The indicative is used in the following relative clauses: —

a. Clauses that state *what person* or *thing* (determining clauses): **mīlitēs, quī convēnerant**: the soldiers *who had assembled*, I. 8.

b. Clauses that state a fact parenthetically, or that add a fact not necessary to the main statement (parenthetical clauses): **Santonum fīnēs, quī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium fīnibus absunt, quae cīvitās est in prōvinciā**, the country of the Santones, *which is not far from the country of the Tolosates, a tribe which is in the Province*, I. 10.

A. 535; B. 311; Bur. 797; G. 610–637; H. 589; HB. 499, 513; W. 580.

134. The subjunctive is used in relative clauses that state *what kind* of person or thing the antecedent is. Such clauses are called *descriptive* or *characteristic* clauses. The independent clause often contains a statement of existence like **est quī, sunt quī**: **ea, quae ad proficīscendum pertinērent**: those things *which* (or *such things as*) *had reference to their departure*, I. 3; **erant duo itinera, quibus itineribus exīre possent**: there were two ways, *by which they could go out*, I. 6.

a. The subjunctive is used in relative clauses that denote a *possible* action: **(iter) quā carrī dūcerentur**: (a road) *by which carts could be drawn*, I. 6.

b. The subjunctive is used in relative clauses that denote *purpose* or *result*: **diem dīcunt, quā diē conveniant**: they appoint a day *on which they should assemble*, I. 6. — Bur. 809 ff.

c. The subjunctive is used in relative clauses to denote *cause*: see 138, *b*. — Bur. 807.

d. The subjunctive is used in relative clauses to denote *object or aim*: satis causae quārē in eum animadverteret, enough reason *for which he should punish him*, I. 19.

A. 535; B. 283; Bur. 798; G. 631, 2; H. 591; HB. 521; W. 587.

Purpose Clauses

135. The subjunctive with **ut**, **nē**, or a relative may express *purpose*: sēmentēs facere, ut cōpia suppeteret: to sow grain *that a supply might be secured*, I. 3; nē causam diceret: *that he might not plead his cause*, I. 4; lēgātōs mittunt, quī dīcerent: they send ambassadors, *who were to say*, I. 7.

a. In clauses containing a comparative, **quō** (= **ut eō**) is used instead of **ut** to express purpose: castellō commūnit, quō facilius prohibēre possit: fortifies redoubts, *that he may be able to prevent more easily*, I. 8.

Note. Purpose may be expressed also by a gerund (**165**, *c*), a gerundive (**164**, *c*), or by a supine (**166**, *a*).

A. 531; B. 282; Bur. 810, 812; G. 545; H. 568; HB. 502; W. 506.

Result Clauses

136. The subjunctive with **ut** or **ut nōn** may express result: mōns impendēbat, ut perpaucī prohibēre possent: a mountain was overhanging, *so that a very few could prevent*, I. 6.

a. There is often in the principal clause a correlative word meaning *so, such, so great*, as **ita**, **sīc**, **tam**, **tālis**, **tantus**; see I. 11, 38, 39; II. 27.

A. 537; B. 284; Bur. 818; G. 552; H. 570; HB. 521, 2; W. 519.

Temporal Clauses

137. In temporal clauses —

a. **Ubi**, **ut** (*when*), **postquam**, **posteāquam**, **cum prīmum**, **simul atque** take the indicative, usually the perfect, sometimes the historical present: ubi sē parātos esse arbitrātī sunt: *when they thought they were ready*, I. 5. — Bur. 870.

b. **Cum** (*when*) takes the indicative to *define* the time of the action of the main verb; the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive

to *describe* the circumstances of the main action: **cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, prīncipēs erant Haeduī**: *when Caesar came into Gaul*, the Haedui were leaders, VI. 12; **cum cīvitās iūs suum cōnārētur, Orgetorīx mortuus est**: *when the tribe was attempting to enforce its right*, Orgetorix died, I. 4; **cum dē improvīsō vēnisset, Rēmī lēgātōs mīsērunt**: *when he had come unexpectedly*, the Remi sent envoys, II. 3. — Bur. 856 ff.

Note. **Cum**, *whenever*, introducing a repeated action, is generally used by Caesar with the indicative: **ad quōs sē, cum ūsus est, recipiunt**: to whom they retreat, *whenever it is necessary*, IV. 2. — Bur. 904.

c. **Dum**, meaning *while*, generally takes the indicative historical present (**120**, *a*): **dum ea conquīruntur**: *while these were* (lit. are) *brought together*, I. 27; **dum morātur**: *while he delayed* (lit. delays), I. 39. — Bur. 878.

d. **Dum**, **dōnec**, or **quoad**, meaning *as long as*, take the indicative: **quoad potuit**: *as long as he could*, IV. 12. — Bur. 876.

e. **Dum**, **dōnec**, or **quoad**, meaning *until*, take the indicative of an *actual* event, but the subjunctive of an *expected* event: **dum mīlitēs convenīrent**: *until the soldiers should assemble*, I. 7.

A. 541; B. 287; Bur. 881; G. 559-588; H. 600-605; HB. 524, 557 ff.; W. 529 ff.

f. **Antequam** and **priusquam** take the indicative to denote an *actual* event, but the subjunctive to denote an *expected* event: **priusquam pervēnērunt**: *before they arrived*, I. 53; **priusquam quicquam cōnārētur**: *before he should attempt anything*, I. 19. — Bur. 863.

Causal Clauses

138. In causal clauses —

a. **Quod**, **quia**, **quoniam**, and **quandō** take the indicative when the speaker or writer gives his own reason, but the subjunctive when he gives another's reason, or a reason not surely known by himself: **Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat**, etc.: Caesar, *because he remembered*, I. 7; **legiō eī grātiās ēgit, quod optimum iūdicium fēcisset**: the legion thanked him, *because he had expressed a very favorable opinion*, I. 41. — Bur. 886.

b. **Cum**, meaning *since* or *because*, and **quī** (= **cum is**) take

the subjunctive: **cum praestārent**: *since they surpassed*, I. 2; **Caesarem iniūriam facere, quī vectīgālia dēteriōra faceret**, Caesar did wrong (who) *because he was making the taxes less valuable*, I. 36.

A. 540; B. 286; Bur. 892; G. 538-542; H. 588, 598; HB. 523, 535, 555, 569; W. 541.

Concessive Clauses

139. In concessive clauses —

a. **Quamquam** and, in Caesar **etsī** and **tametsī** take the indicative: **quamquam sunt ēiusdem generis**: *although they are of the same race*, IV. 3; **etsī vidēbat**: *although he saw*, I. 46.

b. **Cum** or **ut**, meaning *although*, and **quamvīs** take the subjunctive: **cum ea ita sint**: *although these things are so*, I. 14; **ut omnia acciderent**: *although all things happened*, III. 9.

A. 527; B. 309; Bur. 894, 900; G. 603-609; H. 586, 598; HB. 525, 556, 569; W. 569.

Conditional Sentences

140. Conditional sentences are complex sentences, one clause of which (beginning with **sī**, **nisi**, **sīn** or a relative) expresses a condition, the other a conclusion. The condition may be of the following kinds: —

a. Present condition:
1. Stated as a fact: present indicative: **sī vincit, bene est**: *if he is conquering*, it is well.
2. Contrary to fact: imperfect subjunctive: **sī vinceret, bene esset**: *if he were conquering*, it would be well.

b. Past condition:
1. Stated as a fact; a past indicative: **sī vīcit, bene fuit**: *if he conquered*, it was well.
2. Contrary to fact: pluperfect subjunctive: **sī vīcisset, bene fuisset**: *if he had conquered*, it would have been well.

c. Future condition:

1. More probable (*shall, will*); future or future perfect: **sī vincet, bene erit**: *if he conquers* (shall conquer), it will be well.

2. Less probable (*should, would*); present or perfect subjunctive: **sī vincat, bene sit**: *if he should conquer*, it would be well.

Note. For conditional sentences in indirect discourse, see **157**.

A. 514; B. 301; Bur. 907, 911, 915, 919; G. 589; H. 571–583; HB. 573 ff.; W. 550 ff.

Indirect Questions

141. The verb in indirect questions is in the subjunctive: **in utram partem fluat, iūdicārī nōn potest**: it cannot be determined *in what direction it flows*, I. 12; **tribūnīs nōn cōnstābat quid agerent**: it was not clear to the tribunes *what they should do*, III. 14.

A. 574; B. 300; Bur. 846; G. 467; H. 649; HB. 537; W. 590.

a. The direct form of the question in the last illustration is *what shall we do?* Such a question involving perplexity is called *deliberative*, and takes its verb in the subjunctive: **quid agāmus?**

A. 591, 2; B. 324; Bur. 771; G. 629; HB. 539; W. 620.

Subjunctive by Attraction

142. In clauses depending on a subjunctive or on an infinitive, the verb may be put in the subjunctive by attraction, as **esset** in the following: **cum eōs in eō locō, quō tum essent, suum adventum exspectāre iussisset**: when he had ordered them to await his coming, in that place *in which they then were*, I. 27. — Bur. 905.

Noun Clauses

143. A clause may be used as the subject or object of a verb, or in some other case relation. It is then called a *noun clause* or substantive clause. Noun clauses may have the verb in the indicative, subjunctive, or infinitive.

A. 561; B. 294; Bur. 821; H. 564; HB. 238; W. 498.

144. Indicative Noun Clauses. A noun clause beginning with the conjunction quod, *that*, takes the indicative: accēdēbat quod dolēbant: an additional reason was (lit. it was added) *that they were grieved*, III. 2.

A. 572; B. 299; Bur. 822; G. 525; H. 588. 3; HB. 552; W. 549.

145. Subjunctive Noun Clauses. Subjunctive noun clauses may begin with ut, nē, quīn, quōminus, or an interrogative word.

a. Noun clauses with **ut** or **nē**, after verbs meaning *advise, command,*[1] *induce, permit,*[2] *persuade, request, urge, wish*[2]: cīvitātī persuāsit ut exīrent: he persuaded the tribe *to go out* (that they should go out), I. 2; obsidēs utī dent, perficit: causes *hostages to be given*, I. 9; nē quis ēnūntiāret sānxērunt: they ordained *that no one should tell*, I. 30.

Note. After verbs meaning *command* the subjunctive may be used without **ut**. The subjunctive then is a quoted imperative (**154**, *c*). — Bur. 826.

b. Noun clauses with **ut** or **nē** after verbs meaning *fear*. Here **nē** means *lest* or *that;* **ut** means *that . . . not:* verēbātur nē Dīviciācī animum offenderet: he feared *that he might hurt* the feelings of Diviciacus, I. 19; ut supportari posset, timēre: feared *that it could not be brought up*, I. 39. — Bur. 838.

c. Noun clauses with **ut** after verbs meaning *accomplish, cause*, etc., and with impersonal verbs meaning *it happens, it is necessary*, etc.: fīēbat ut vagārentur: it resulted *that they wandered*, I. 2. — Bur. 842.

d. Noun clauses with **ut**, forming a clause in apposition with a noun or pronoun: poenam, ut īgnī cremārētur: the penalty *that he be burned to death*, I. 4. — Bur. 828.

e. Noun clauses with **nē, quīn**, or **quōminus**, after verbs meaning *hinder, prevent, refuse*, and with **quīn** after words meaning *doubt* and sometimes *hinder:* nōn est dubium, quīn plūrimum possint: there is no doubt *that they are very powerful*, I. 3; deterrēre nē frūmentum cōnferant: prevent *from collecting grain*, I. 17. — Bur. 829.

[1] Except **iubeō**, which takes the infinitive (**77**).

[2] With verbs meaning *permit* or *wish* the infinitive may be used (**77**).

f. Noun clauses beginning with an interrogative word. These are indirect questions (**141**).

A. 563, 568; B. 295–298; Bur. 825, 846; G. 546, 553; H. 564–571; HB. 499; W. 510, 521.

146. Infinite Noun Clauses. An infinitive with subject accusative may be used in a noun clause, after verbs meaning *say*, etc.; see **154**.

A. 563, *a*, 579; B. 329; Bur. 954; G. 527; H. 613; HB. 589; W. 623, 625.

Use of the Imperative

147. The imperative is used to express *command* in the second person of the present tense, and in the second and third persons of the future: **dēsilīte**, *jump down*, IV. 25.

A. 448; B. 281; Bur. 931; G. 266 ff.; H. 560; HB. 496; W. 495.

a. Negative command is expressed by: 1. **Nōlī** (**nōlite**) + a present infinitive: **nōlī nōs dēspicere**, *do not despise us*, I. 13 (direct form). 2. **nē** + a present or perfect subjunctive: **nē eās**: *don't go.* — Bur. 934.

Tenses of the Infinitive

148. The present infinitive denotes the *same time* as that of the principal verb; the perfect, *time before*; the future, *time after* that of the principal verb: **perfacile esse probat**: *proves* that it *is very easy*, I. 3; **sē conciliātūrum cōnfīrmat**: *declares* he *will win*, I. 3; **intellēxit diem īnstāre**: *knew* the day *was approaching*, I. 16; **certior factus hostēs cōnsēdisse**: *having been informed* that the enemy *had encamped*, I. 21.

A. 486; B. 270; Bur. 939 ff.; G. 653; H. 617; HB. 472; W. 632.

Uses of the Infinitive

149. The infinitive with or without a subject may be used as the subject of a verb, in apposition with the subject, or as a predicate nominative: **quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est**: *which has been said to be held by the Gauls* (lit. which it has been said the Gauls hold), I. 1. Here **quam Gallōs obtinēre** is the subject of **dictum est**.

A. 452; B. 327, 330; Bur. 948 ff.; G. 422, 535; H. 609; HB. 595; W. 622.

150. The infinitive without a subject may be used as the *object* of transitive verbs, or the *complement* of verbs meaning *can, dare, begin, ought, seem, hesitate*, etc.: **cōnstituērunt comparāre**: *they decided to prepare*, I. 3; **facere cōnantur**: *they attempted* (120. *a*) *to do*, I. 5; **obsecrāre coepit**: *he began to implore*, I. 20.

A. 456; B. 328; Bur. 951; G. 423; H. 607; HB. 586; W. 626.

a. **Parātus** may take either a complementary infinitive, or **ad** with a gerund or gerundive: **parātōs obsidēs dare**, *ready to give hostages*, II. 3; see **164**, *c*.

A. 459; B. 331; G. 527; H. 613; HB. 589; W. 628.

151. The infinitive with subject accusative may be used after verbs meaning *say, know, think, perceive*, etc.; also with **iubeō, vetō, prohibeō, sinō, cōgō** (*compel*), **cupiō, patior**, and **volō**: **dīxit perfacile esse**: *said it was easy*, I. 2; **dīxērunt sē meritōs esse**: *said they had deserved*, I. 11; **līberōs addūcī iussit**: *ordered the children to be brought*, II. 5. — Bur. 954.

152. Historical Infinitive. The infinitive may be used with a subject nominative in lively narration. It is then called the *historical* infinitive, and is equivalent to an imperfect or perfect indicative: **Caesar frūmentum flāgitāre**: Caesar *kept demanding* grain, I. 16.

A. 463; B. 335; Bur. 963; G. 647; H. 610; HB. 595; W. 631.

Indirect Discourse

153. When a sentence is quoted in dependence upon a verb of *saying, knowing*, or the like, the quotation is said to be an indirect statement or indirect discourse: direct, **Ībimus**, *we shall go*; indirect, **dīxērunt sē itūrōs esse**: they said *they would go*, I. 13.

A. 577 ff.; B. 313 ff.; Bur. 964; G. 648–663; H. 641 ff.; HB. 533 ff.; W. 597 ff.

154. Moods in Indirect Discourse. When direct discourse is made indirect: —

a. A principal declarative verb in the indicative becomes infinitive: direct, **meritī sumus**: *we have deserved*; indirect, **dīxērunt sē meritōs esse**: they said *they had deserved*, I. 11. — Bur. 964.

b. A subordinate verb becomes or remains subjunctive: direct, **id sī fīet**: *if this happens* (shall happen); indirect, **intellegēbat id sī fieret**: he knew that *if this should happen*, I. 10.

c. An imperative verb becomes subjunctive: direct, **revertiminī** (imperative), *return;* indirect, **(dīxit) reverterentur**, he said *they should return*, I. 7. — Bur. 977.

d. Most interrogative verbs become subjunctive, but those in rhetorical[1] questions become infinitive with subject accusative: direct, **num memoriam dēpōnere possum?** *can I forget* (blot out memory)? indirect, **num . . . posse?** *could he forget?* I. 14; **quid venīrent**, for **quid venītis**: *why do you come?* I. 47. — Bur. 975.

Note. Briefly, in indirect discourse, a principal verb is generally in the *infinitive*, standing for a direct indicative; a subordinate verb is in the *subjunctive*, standing for a direct indicative or subjunctive.

A. 580 ff.; B. 311; Bur. 965; G. 650; H. 642; HB. 534 ff.

155. Tenses in Indirect Discourse. The tenses of the infinitive are used according to **148**; those of the subjunctive, according to the rule for sequence (**128**).

A. 584, 585; B. 317; Bur. 956; G. 653; H. 641; HB. 593; W. 608.

a. A future tense in a direct subordinate clause becomes present subjunctive in indirect discourse, if it depends on a verb in the present; imperfect, if it depends on a verb in a past tense: direct, **sī cōnābiminī**: *if you (shall) attempt;* indirect, **sī cōnentur**: *if they attempt*, I. 8; direct, **sī pācem populus faciet**: *if the people (shall) make peace;* indirect, **sī . . . faceret**: *if the people should make peace*, I. 13. — Bur. 794.

b. A future perfect tense in a direct subordinate clause becomes perfect subjunctive, depending on a verb in the present; pluperfect, depending on a verb in a past tense: direct, **sī superāverint** (fut. perf.): *if they shall have conquered;* indirect, **sī superāverint** (perf. subjunct.), I. 17; direct, **ubi eōs cōnstitueris**: where *you shall have stationed* them; indirect, **ubi eōs cōnstituisset**: where *he had stationed* them, I. 13. — Bur. 794.

[1] A rhetorical question is one that is asked for effect and implies its own answer.

156. Pronouns in Indirect Discourse. In changing from the first person to the third, ego becomes sē, meus or noster become suus. In changing from the second person to the third, tū becomes ille or is, tuus or vester becomes suus or the genitive of is: see notes on I. 13 and 14 for illustrations.

G. 660; H. 645; HB. 533; W. 609.

157. Conditions in Indirect Discourse. The verb of the conditional clause in indirect discourse is always in the subjunctive (154, *b*, the tense depending on the rule for sequence (128). The verb of the conclusion is generally in the infinitive (154, *a*, *c*, *d*), the subjunctive of a conclusion less probable (140) becoming future infinitive. — Bur. 979.

In conditions contrary to fact (140) note the following: —

a. The verb of the conditional clause remains unchanged.

b. The conclusion, if active, is expressed by an infinitive consisting of the participle in -ūrus + fuisse: direct, vēnissem, *I would have gone*; indirect, sēsē ventūrum fuisse, *he would have gone*, I. 34.

c. The conclusion, if passive, is expressed by futūrum fuisse ut with an imperfect subjunctive: direct, sī pūgnāvissent, victī essent; indirect, sī pūgnāvissent, futūrum fuisse ut vincerentur, *if they had fought, they would have been conquered*. — Bur. 981.

d. The conclusion, if indicative, is expressed by the perfect infinitive: direct, nōn fuit difficile; indirect, nōn fuisse difficile, *it would not have been difficult*, I. 14.

A. 589; B. 349; Bur. 982; G. 656; H. 646; HB. 536; W. 612.

Participles

158. Participles are verbal adjectives, and agree with nouns in gender, number, and case (103). The active participles are the present and future; the passive are the perfect and future (or gerundive).

A. 488; B. 336; Bur. 984; G. 282, 283; H. 636; HB. 509; W. 645.

159. The present and perfect participles are sometimes to be translated by a relative clause, or a clause expressing time, cause, condition, etc.: damnātum = sī damnātus esset; *if he should be found guilty*, I. 4; Caesarī petentī = cum peteret;

when he requested, I. 42; **rogātus = quod rogātus esset**: *because he had been asked,* I. 44; **(nostrīs) labōrantibus = quī labōrābant,** *who were hard pressed,* I. 52

A. 496; Bur. 991; G. 664 ff.; H. 637, 638; HB. 604; W. 651.

160. The present and perfect participles are sometimes used as nouns or adverbs: **victīs**: *the conquered,* I. 25; **venientēs,** *those who were advancing,* I. 25.

A. 494, *a;* Bur. 635 ff.; G. 437; H. 494; HB. 245, 249; W. 650.

161. The perfect participle is used in forming the compound tenses of the passive voice: **amīcus appellātus erat**: he *had been called* friend, I. 3.

162. The future active participle is used with the verb **sum** to form the active periphrastic conjugation, and denotes *future* or *intended action:* **imperium obtentūrus esset**: *he intended to seize* (was about to seize) the supreme power, I. 3.

A. 498, *a*; B. 337, 4; Bur. 998; G. 247; H. 531; HB. 600, 2.

163. The future passive participle is used with **sum** to form the passive periphrastic conjugation, and denotes *necessity* or *obligation:* **neque cōnferendum esse Gallicum cum Germānōrum agrō**: the land of the Gauls *must not be compared* with that of the Germans, I. 31; **Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda**: everything *had to be done* by Caesar at once.

a. The passive periphrastic forms of intransitive verbs are often used impersonally: **concēdendum (esse sibi) nōn putābat,** he thought *he ought not to make concession* (it ought not to be conceded), I. 7; **nōn exspectandum sibi statuit**: he decided *he ought not to wait* (lit. it ought not to be waited by him), I. 11; **nē cōnflīgendum sit**: that he *might not have to contend* (lit. that it might not have to be contended), II. 5; **dubitandum nōn exīstimāvit**: he thought he *ought not to hesitate* (lit. it ought not to be hesitated), II. 2.

A. 500, 2; B. 337, 7; Bur. 1000; G. 251; H. 621; HB. 600, 3.

The Gerundive

164. The future passive participle (**158**), when used in direct (attributive) agreement with a noun, is called the *gerundive.* It is so used in the following cases: —

a. Genitive: **facultās itineris faciundī**: an opportunity *of marching*, I. 7; **suī mūniendī causā**: for the purpose *of protecting himself*, I. 44. — Bur. 1006 ff.

b. Dative: **ut rēbus conlocandīs tempus darētur**: so that there was no time *for arranging things*, III. 4. — Bur. 1011.

c. Accusative: **ad effēminandōs animōs**: *to weaken the character*, I. 1; **ad perīcula subeunda**: *to undergo dangers*, I. 5; **pontem faciendum cūrat**: he causes a bridge *to be built*, I. 13; **obsidēs dandōs cūrāsset**: had caused hostages *to be given*, I. 19. — Bur. 1013.

Note. An accusative gerundive with **ad** may express purpose. **ad eās rēs cōnficiendās**: *to accomplish these undertakings*, I. 3.

d. Ablative: **dē expūgnandō oppidō**: *with regard to capturing* the town, II. 10; **lapidibus tēlīsque subministrandīs**: *by supplying* stones and weapons, III. 25. — Bur. 1014.

A. 503; B. 339; Bur. 1003; G. 425 ff.; H. 621 ff.; HB. 609; W. 638.

The Gerund

165. The gerund is a verbal *noun*, found in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular. The present infinitive is used for the nominative.

a. Genitive: **bellandī cupidus**: desirous *of carrying on war*, I. 2; **pugnandī causa**: for the purpose *of fighting*, II. 10. Bur. 1006 ff.

b. Dative: rare in classical Latin. — Bur. 1011.

c. Accusative: **ea quae ad proficīscendum pertinērent**: those things which belonged *to the departure*, I. 3; **diem ad dēlīberandum**: time *to deliberate*, I. 7. — Bur. 1013.

Note. An accusative gerund with **ad** may express purpose; see last example.

d. Ablative: **in quaerendō reperiēbat**: he found out *on inquiring*, I. 18. — Bur. 1014.

e. The gerund may take an object, but the equivalent gerundive construction is generally used instead: **spatium pīla coniciendī**: time *for hurling javelins*, I. 52.

A. 501; B. 338; Bur. 1004; G. 425 ff.; H. 624 ff.; HB. 611; W. 637.

The Supine

166. The supine is a verbal noun, found in the accusative and ablative cases.

a. The supine in **-um** is used with verbs of motion to express purpose: **lēgātōs mittunt rogātum auxilium**: they send envoys *to ask* for aid, I. 11. — Bur. 1015.

b. The supine in **-ū** is used to denote specification, with adjectives meaning *easy, good, strange*, or the opposite: **perfacile factū**: *very easy to do* (lit. in doing), I. 3.

A. 509; B. 349; Bur. 1017; G. 434; H. 632; HB. 618; W. 653.

ADVERBS

167. Adverbs modify verbs, adjectives, or other adverbs. They may express time, manner, degree, place, etc.

a. Negative adverbs. **Nōn** is the usual negative adverb; **nē** is used with subjunctives expressing will or desire (**135**, **145**).

A. 217; B. 140; Bur. 647, 657; G. 439; H. 654; HB. 295; W. 656.

168. **Adverbial Clauses.** A clause may be used as an adverb, chiefly to modify verbs; see **135–140.**

A. 279, *b*; HB. 239; W. 501.

PREPOSITIONS

169. A preposition shows a relation between a word in the accusative or ablative case and some other word.

a. The prepositions used with the accusative are **ad, adversus, ante, apud, circā, circum, circiter, cis, citrā, contrā, ergā, extrā, in, īnfrā, inter, intrā, iūxtā, ob, penes, per, post, praeter, prope, propter, secundum, sub, suprā, trāns, ultrā, versus** — Bur. 1019.

b. The prepositions used with the ablative are **ā, ab, abs, cum, dē, ē, ex, in, prae, prō, sine, sub.** — Bur. 1020.

c. With the accusative, **in** and **sub** denote *motion to* a place, with the ablative, *rest in* a place.

A. 220; B. 141; Bur. 1022; G. 412–418; H. 420, 490; HB. 303; W. 242 ff.

CONJUNCTIONS

170. Conjunctions connect words, phrases, or clauses of equal rank, or principal with subordinate clauses. — Bur. 1028.

a. Coördinate conjunctions connecting expressions of equal rank: et, -que, ac atque, etiam, quoque; aut, sīve, vel; nec, neque; at, autem, enim, nam, sed, tamen. — Bur. 1029 ff.

b. Subordinate conjunctions (connecting subordinate with principal constructions): 1. Temporal, denoting time: cum, ubi; dum, dōnec, quoad; antequam priusquam; postquam, posteāquam, simul. 2. Causal, denoting cause: cum; quod, quia, quoniam, quandō. 3. Conditional, denoting condition: sī, sīn, nisi. 4. Concessive, granting something: cum, etsī, tametsī, quamquam, quamvis. 5. Comparative, denoting comparison: ac, atque, quam, ut. 6. Final, denoting purpose: ut (utī), quō, nē. 7. Consecutive, denoting result: ut.

V. 223; B. 341; Bur. 1028; G. 474-503; H. 314 ff.; HB. 304; W. 248.

WORD ORDER

171. There is no fixed rule for the order of words in a Latin sentence. The common order is: 1. the subject with its modifiers, 2. the modifiers of the verb, 3. the verb: equitēs Ariovistī parī intervāllo cōnstitērunt *the horsemen of Ariovistus took their stand at an equal distance*, I. 43. — Bur. 1056.

a. Nouns in the genitive usually follow the words they modify but precede causā: *for the sake*, *for the purpose*: commeātūs causā: *for the sake of supplies*, I. 39; equitēs Ariovistī: *the horsemen of Ariovistus*, I. 43; demonstrative and intensive pronouns and adjectives of quantity usually precede; other adjectives precede or follow their nouns: eam partem: *that part*, I. 13; ipsīs rēbus: *on the very banks*, II. 23; multōs annōs: *many years*, I. 3. — Bur. 1057.

b. A preposition frequently stands between its object and an adjective modifier: quā dē causā: *for what reason*, I. 1: ūnā ex parte: *on one side*, I. 2. — Bur. 1062.

c. To produce emphasis, a word may be put at the beginning or end of a clause or sentence: extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est . . . Genāva: *the farthest town of the Allobroges is Geneva*, I. 6; Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset: when this had been reported *to Caesar*, I. 7; relinquēbātur ūna via: *one way remained*, I. 9; id sī fieret: if *this* should happen, I. 10. — Bur. 1064 ff.

d. In a phrase of four words, if the first agrees with the third, and the second with the fourth, the order is said to be interlocked: **complūribus hīs proeliīs pulsīs = hīs pulsīs** (**99**, *b*, 1) **complūribus proeliīs** (**87**): *after defeating these* (tribes) *in many battles*, I. 10.

e. The conjunctions **autem**, **enim**, and **verō** do not stand first in a sentence, but second or third: **prō multitūdine autem hominum**, etc.: *furthermore, considering the great number of men*, I. 2.

f. **Ferē**, *almost, nearly*, follows the word it modifies: **tōtīs ferē castrīs**: *nearly all* the camp, II. 23.

A. 598; B. 348; Bur. 1055 ff.; G. 671; H. 663 ff.; HB. 620; W. 664.

ROMAN CALENDAR

172. *a.* The Roman year was designated by the names of the two consuls for that year, as if we should say, "during the presidency of Washington." The names were in the ablative case with **cōnsulibus**, forming an ablative absolute (**99**): **M. Messālā** (et) **M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus**: *during the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso*, I. 2.

b. The Romans did not number the days of the month as we do, but called the first day the *Calends* (**Kalendae**), the fifth (seventh of Mar., May, July, and Oct.) the *Nones* (**Nōnae**), and the thirteenth (fifteenth of Mar., May, July, and Oct.) the *Ides* (**Īdūs**).

The days between the Calends and the Nones were reckoned as so many days each before the Nones; the days between the Nones and the Ides as so many days each before the Ides; the days after the Ides as so many days each before the Calends of the next month. But they counted both the day *from* which and the day *to* which they reckoned. Therefore, to determine a date falling before the Calends, add two to the number of days in the current month before subtracting the given ordinal.

Thus, the phrase **ante diem quīntum Kalendās Aprīlēs** (**a. d. v. Kal. Apr.**) means *March* 28, for $31 + 2 - 5 = 28$.

c. A phrase like **ante diem quīntum Kal. Apr.** is idiomatic, for which we should expect **diēs quīntus** (or **diē quīntō**) **ante Kal. Apr.**

A. 631; B. 371; Bur. 603, 604; G. App.; H. 754; HB. 660.

FIGURES OF SPEECH

173. Hendiadys. Two nouns in the same case connected by a conjunction are sometimes used when we should expect one noun to modify the other. This construction is called *hendiadys* ("one through two"): (glōria) bellī atque fortitūdinis: (*fame*) *for bravery in war*, I. 2; fidēs et iūsiūrandum: *a pledge* (*sealed*) *by an oath*, I. 3; spē māgnīsque praemiīs: *with hope of great reward*, I. 44. A. 640; B. 374; Bur. 107; G. 698; H. 751.

174. Asyndeton. The omission of a connective is called *asyndeton*: linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus (= et lēgibus), I. 1; concilium dīmittit, Liscum retinet (sed Liscum retinet), I. 18. A. 640; B. 341, 4; Bur. 1054; G. 473, Rem.; H. 657, 6.

175. Polysyndeton. Et is often repeated in connecting several words or clauses. This repetition is called *polysyndeton*: et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō: *in bravery, in influence, and in number of men*, II. 4. A. 640; B. 341, 4.

FORMATION OF WORDS

Noun Suffixes

176. The suffix -tor (-sor) denotes the agent or doer of an action: imperātor, *one who commands* (imperō); dēfēnsor, *one who defends* (dēfendō).

177. The suffixes iō, -siō, -tiō, -sus, -tus (Gen. tūs) -ium, -īna, -tūra, denote action: legiō, *a levying* (legō); excursiō, *a running out* (excurrō); ōrātiō, *a speaking* (ōrō); vīsus, *a looking* (videō); adventus, *a coming* (adveniō); studium, *zeal* (studeō); rapīna, *act of robbery* (rapiō); iactūra, *a throwing* (iaciō).

178. The suffixes -men, -mentum, -nus, -num, denote the means, or the result of action: agmen, *that which is led* (agō); impedīmentum, *that which hinders* (impediō); facinus, *that which is done* (faciō); dōnum, *that which is given* (dō).

179. The suffix -or denotes a mental state: timor, *fear* (timeō).

180. The suffixes -ulus, -ula, -culus, -cula, form diminutives: adulēscentulus, *a mere boy* (adulēscēns); nāvicula, *little boat* (nāvis).

181. The suffixes -ia, -tia, -tās, -tūs, -tūdō, form abstract nouns denoting quality or condition: audācia, *boldness* (audāx);

amīcitia, *friendship* (amīcus); bonitās, *goodness* (bonus), virtūs, *manliness* (vir); māgnitūdō, *greatness* (māgnus).

Adjective Suffixes

182. The suffixes -āx, -īcus (-icus), -idus, form adjectives with the meaning of the present active participle: ferāx, *fruit-bearing* (ferō); amīcus, *loving, friendly* (amō); timidus, *fearing, fearful* (timeō).

183. The suffixes -ilis, -bilis, -tīvus, form adjectives chiefly with a passive meaning: facilis, *that may be done* (faciō); crēdibilis *that may be believed* (crēdo); captīvus, *captured* (capiō).

184. The suffixes -cus, -icus, -ius, -nus, -ānus, -ēnus, -ālis, -ēlis, -īlis, -āris, -ārius, -timus, -ester, form adjectives meaning *belonging to, relating to, derived from:* bellicus, *of war* (bellum); patrius, *fatherly* (pater); frāternus, *brotherly* (frāter); hūmānus, *of man* (homō); terrēnus, *of earth* (terra); nāvālis, *of ships* (nāvis); fidēlis, *trustworthy* (fidēs); cīvīlis, *belonging to citizens* (cīvis); mīlitāris, *of a soldier* (mīles); frūmentārius, *of grain* (frūmentum); maritimus, *of the sea* (mare); pedester, *on foot* (pēs).

185. The suffix -ōsus forms an adjective meaning *full of;* -eus, an adjective denoting material: perīculōsus, *full of danger* (perīculum); aureus, *golden* (aurum).

Derivation of Verbs

186. Verbs derived from nouns or adjectives are called *denominatives:* līberō, *set free* (līber); nōminō, *name* (nōmen).

187. Frequentative or intensive verbs, denoting repeated or intense action, are derived from other verbs, and end in -tō, -itō, -titō: iactō, *hurl* (iaciō); territō, *put in terror* (terreō); ventitō, *come often* (veniō).

188. Inceptive or inchoative verbs, denoting the beginning of an action, end in -scō: inveterāscō, *grow old* (vetus).

Prefixes

189. Besides the prepositions which are used as prefixes, the following inseparable prefixes are used: con- (com-, co-), *together;* dī- (dis-), *apart;* im- (in-), *not;* re- (red-), *back.*

LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION

INTRODUCTORY NOTE

No attempt has been made in the following exercises to give a complete view of Latin syntax. It is hoped, however, that the constructions presented will be found sufficiently numerous and comprehensive to give the pupil a command of most of the essentials of Caesarian usage.

Exercise 1 of each lesson has been made primarily to give practice in writing sentences involving the grammatical principles set forth in the references and notes of the lesson immediately concerned, and, secondarily, to give a review of the principles already considered. Exercise 2 of each lesson supplements Exercise 1 in both these particulars, but more especially in the latter.

It is probable that in many schools there will be time for the writing of only the sentences of Exercise 1. This section, though covering all the constructions dealt with in any lesson, has been made short in order to render it possible to finish it in one recitation period. Exercise 2 has been added to accommodate such classes as may have time to write more than Exercise 1, which is thought to be the minimum requirement.

Though Exercise 2 has regularly been based on the text of Caesar, the prescribed portion of which should be reviewed preparatory to writing the sentences based thereon, yet the English-Latin vocabulary will give adequate help for all the sentences.

Proper names and proper adjectives have not, except

in a few cases, been put into the English-Latin vocabulary, as they can readily be found in the Latin-English vocabulary.

In view of the great frequency with which the ablative absolute and indirect discourse occur in Caesar, and in all Latin literature, emphasis has been placed on these two constructions by bringing them in early and giving practice on both of them in every subsequent lesson.

LESSON I

(References are to the Grammatical Appendix.)

1. Case of Subject: 60.
2. Case of Direct Object: 74.
3. Agreement of Adjectives and Participles: 103, *a*, *b*, and note; 158.
4. Agreement of Appositive and Predicate Nouns: 52, 53, 59, 62.
5. Agreement of Finite Verbs: 118, *a*, *b*.
6. Adjectives used as Nouns: 104.

VOCABULARY

always, *semper*.
away, be (be distant), *absum, -esse, -fuī* (*āfuī*), *-futūrus*.
baggage-animals, *iūmenta, -ōrum*, n.
both . . . and, *et . . . et*.
boy, *puer, puerī*, m.
capture, seize, *capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum*.
certain, sure, *certus, certior, certissimus*.
danger, *perīculum, -ī*, n.
daughter, *fīlia, -ae*, f.
endure, *perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum*.
general, *imperātor, -ōris*, m.
girl, *puella, -ae*, f.
good, *bonus, melior, optimus*.
hostage, *obses, -idis*, m. *or* f.
informed, be, *certior fīō, fierī, factus sum*.
labor, *labor, -ōris*, m.
lieutenant, ambassador, envoy, *lēgātus, -ī*, m.
lose, *āmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum*.
pledge, faith, *fidēs, -eī*, f.
quickly, *celeriter*.

EXERCISE 1

1. The soldiers quickly seized arms. 2. The enemy captured twenty baggage-animals. 3. The Gauls gave many hostages. 4. The general sent Titus Labienus, the lieutenant. 5. Caesar was quickly informed of (*de*) the victory. 6. Dumnorix, the Haeduan, gives a pledge. 7. Good boys and girls have always been loved. 8. Both ships and sailors were lost. 9. Many have come as hostages. 10. Great labor and danger have often been endured. 11. Neither the son nor the daughter was found. 12. The brave are the best soldiers.

EXERCISE 2 (B. G. I. 1)

1. The Belgians inhabited one part. 2. Merchants very seldom visited them. 3. The Gallic country touches the Rhine River. 4. The Garonne and the Seine were very deep rivers. 5. The Pyrenees mountains are between Aquitania and Spain. 6. The very brave will wage war. 7. Daily battles do not enfeeble courage. 8. The rivers and mountains were very far away. 9. All the Gauls have prevented the Germans. 10. All have been called Gauls.

LESSON II

1. Pronouns: Demonstrative, Relative, Intensive; 109, 110, 113, *a*, *c*; 114, 115, *a*, *b*.

2. Genitive of Possession: 63, *a*.

3. Perfect and Imperfect Tenses: 121, *a*, *b*; 123, *a*, *b*.

Note 1. Adjectives and participles agree with their substantives in *three* points — gender, number, and case; pronouns with their antecedents in *two* of these points — gender and number; and appositives and predicate nouns with the words which they modify in *one* point — case.

Note 2. While both the perfect and the imperfect tense are alike in expressing past action, the imperfect carries the further notion of action in progress or action repeated. Thus *iit* and *ībat* both signify a *going* in past time, but *iit* says simply, *he went*, while *ībat* adds the notion of action in progress, *he was going*, or of action repeated, *he was accustomed to go*. The perfect definite, *e.g.*, *iī*, *I have gone*, is not so apt to be confused with the imperfect.

VOCABULARY

already, now, *iam.*
bear, carry, *gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum.*
buy, *emō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptum.*
dangerous, *perīculōsus, -a, -um.*
depart, *discēdō,-ere,-cessī,-cessum.*
do, make, *faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum.*
forest, *silva, -ae,* **f.**
heavy, *gravis, -e.*
hereafter, *posteā.*
hill, *collis, -is,* **m.**
I, *ego, meī.*
javelin, *pīlum, -ī,* **n.**
king, *rēx, rēgis,* **m.**
marsh, *palūs, -ūdis,* **f.**
our, *noster, -tra, -trum.*
sword, *gladius, -ī,* **m.**
tribe, nation, *nātiō, -ōnis,* **f.**
warlike, *bellicōsus, -a, -um.*
wooded, *silvestris, -e.*

EXERCISE 1

1. This hill is not high. 2. We have already done these things, those we shall do hereafter. 3. The marsh which was between our men and the enemy was not large. 4. The marsh which you see is dangerous. 5. Here are the very fields and forests which we bought. 6. The sword and javelin which that soldier was-accustomed-to-carry were heavy. 7. The king's son and daughter, who came into the camp, have departed. 8. The Belgians, who are a very warlike tribe, were collecting an army. 9. The tenth legion itself was captured. 10. That which prevents us does not prevent them. 11. Their mountains were wooded.

EXERCISE 2 (B. G. I. 2)

1. This man is very noble, that man is very rich. 2. Between the Helvetians and the Sequanians there is a

lofty mountain. 3. The hope of the Helvetians who went forth was very great. 4. One part of this river is very deep. 5. He who was making that conspiracy was high-born. 6. Those troops had gone forth, these were going. 7. The Helvetians themselves will roam less widely. 8. That which they have done is not easy. 9. The Helvetians, who were a neighboring tribe, were waging war. 10. Orgetorix himself had not easily made the conspiracy.

LESSON III

1. Indirect Object: 67, *a*.
2. Accusative of Place to Which: 79, *a*.
3. Ablative of Place from Which, or Separation: 83, *a*, *b*.
4. Complementary Infinitive: 150.

Note. A phrase like *to the soldiers* cannot be translated into Latin with certainty unless considered in connection with the word which it modifies. One may say, *he gave money to the soldiers*, in which case the dative (*mīlitibus*) of indirect object would be employed; or one may say, *he came to the soldiers*, in which case the accusative would be used with a preposition (*ad mīlitēs*). The idea of motion in the verb *came* (*vēnit*) demands the accusative of the place (person) to which (whom). This accusative is also called the accusative of limit of motion, or the terminal accusative.

VOCABULARY

aid, help, *auxilium, -ī*, n.
attack, *impetus, -ūs*, m.
be far distant, *longē absum*.
beautiful, *pulcher, -bra, -brum*.
bring, bear, *ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum*.
end, limit, border, *fīnis, -is*, m. (pl., borders, territory).
father, *pater, patris*, m.
from there, thence, *inde*.
go, *eō, īre, īvī (iī), itum*.
help, to, *auxilium ferre*.
journey, march, *iter, itineris*, n.
make a journey, march, *iter faciō*.
set out, proceed, depart, *proficīscor, -ī, -fectus sum*.
shield, *scūtum, -ī*, n.
small, *parvus, minor, minimus*.
sustain, *sustineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum*.
try, attempt, *cōnor, -ārī, cōnātus sum*.
with difficulty, hardly, *vix*.

EXERCISE 1

1. I gave my father (not acc.) the letter which you gave me. 2. The general hastened to the tenth legion, which was sustaining the attack with difficulty. 3. We came [as][1] ambassadors from our tribe to him. 4. Our land extends from this hill to the forest yonder. 5. Caesar's camp was far distant from the borders of the Belgians. 6. The sword and shield which (App. 115, *a*) were smallest he gave to me. 7. This son and daughter whom you praise are trying to help everybody (all). 8. My father brought home beautiful (App. 103, *b*) swords and shields. 9. The legion, having set out from Rome, was marching (App. 121) to the army. 10. We shall try to go to Capua and from there to Brundusium.

EXERCISE 2 (B. G. I. 3)

1. They decided to make peace and to buy baggage-animals and carts. 2. The father of Casticus the Sequanian was holding the royal power. 3. Orgetorix was willing to give his daughter in marriage to Dumnorix the Haeduan. 4. Three very powerful men gave pledge and oath to each other. 5. His father had been called friend. 6. Being influenced (perf. part.) by these considerations (*rēs*), he had made peace. 7. Both the father and the son were attempting the same thing. 8. He set out for the nearest state (not dat.). 9. He who has seized the royal power will not be acceptable. 10. Those who had come from that people to the senate obtained the leadership.

LESSON IV

1. Pronouns, Reflexive and Possessive: 111; 112, *a*.
2. Genitive of the Whole: 63, *e*, Note.
3. Dative with Certain Intransitive Verbs: 67, *b*.
4. Dative with Compound Verbs: 67, *c*.

[1] English words in parentheses are explanatory; those in brackets are not to be translated.

Note. Observe how possession is indicated in each of the following instances: —

Labienus praises Caesar's soldiers. *Labiēnus Caesaris mīlitēs laudat.*

Labienus praises his (*e.g.*, Caesar's) soldiers, *Labiēnus ēius mīlitēs laudat.*

Labienus praises his (own) soldiers, *Labiēnus suōs* (not the genitive *suī*, of himself) *mīlitēs laudat.*

Labienus praises my soldiers, *Labiēnus meōs* (not the genitive *meī*, of me) *mīlitēs laudat.*

A possessive adjective pronoun is used wherever possible; the genitive of possession, only where no possessive will do.

VOCABULARY

able, am, *possum, posse, potuī.*
afraid, am, fear, *timeō, -ēre, timuī.*
brave, *fortis, -e.*
collect, gather, *cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctum.*
conquer, *vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum.*
defeat, *superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.*
defend, *dēfendō, -ere, dēfendī, dēfēnsum.*
enough, sufficiently, *satis,* adv., often used as a noun.
fleet, *classis, -is,* **f.**
go out, *exeō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itum.*
levy, *imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.*
make war on, *bellum īnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum,* with dative.
persuade, *persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsum.*
put in command, *praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.*
resist, *resistō, -ere, -stitī.*
surrender, *sē dēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.*
valor, *virtūs, -tūtis,* **f.**

EXERCISE 1

1. The warlike tribes of Gaul defended themselves and all their [possessions]. 2. Caesar himself, who had conquered the Gauls, was-accustomed-to-praise their valor. 3. Being defeated, the Gauls gave themselves up (surrendered themselves) to Caesar. 4. All the Helvetians had gone out of their own territory. 5. The bravest of the foot-soldiers were not afraid. 6. Our men have not collected enough ships (enough of ships). 7. These tribes, which are attempting to go away from home, will not be

able to resist the Romans. 8. Caesar had put a very brave man in command of the fleet. 9. The general has sent into Gaul the soldiers whom he levied on (commanded to) this tribe. 10. The Romans made war upon those who were trying to go through the province

EXERCISE 2 (B. G. I. 4 and 5)

1. Orgetorix rescued himself. 2. All his household had been gathered to the trial. 3. He had brought together to-the-same-place a large number of his retainers. 4. Many magistrates have committed suicide. 5. The Helvetians, the people from which Orgetorix had come to the Sequanians, were aroused. 6. A multitude of men will be ready to-set-fire-to (complementary infinitive) the buildings (not dative). 7. They will carry meal (ground provisions) from home. 8. The great number of the dangers does not take away hope. 9. Many of those who had been magistrates were undergoing peril. 10. He persuaded his retainers and debtors.

LESSON V

1. Ablative of Place Where, and Time When or Within Which: 100, 101, 102.
2. Accusative of Extent of Space and Duration of Time: 80.
3. Ablative of Degree of Difference: 95.
4. Ablative after a Comparative without *quam*: 86, *a*.

Note 1. Observe that location in space and location in time are expressed by the same case, the ablative. Thus, whether we say *in that place* (*in eō locō*) or *in* (*at*) *that time* (*eō tempore*) we use the ablative. The preposition is apt to be used with expressions of place where, and apt to be omitted in expressions of time when.

Note 2. Observe that *space through which* and *time through* (*during*) *which* are expressed by the same case, the accusative. Thus, whether we say, *the soldiers followed for four miles* (*mīlitēs*

mīlia passuum quattuor sequēbantur) or *the soldiers followed for four days* (*mīlitēs quattuor diēs sequēbantur*), we use the accusative.

VOCABULARY

abundance, *cōpia, -ae,* **f.** In pl., forces or supplies.
arrive, *perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum.* Used with prep. *ad* or *in.*
build, *aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.*
camp, *castra, -ōrum,* **n.** In sing., fortress.
daybreak, *prīma lūx.*
earth, *terra, -ae,* **f.**
grain, *frūmentum, -ī,* **n.**
happen, *accidō, ere, -cidī.*
hasten, strive, contend, *contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum.*
high, deep, *altus, -a, -um.*
month, *mēnsis, -is,* **m.**
remain, *maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsum.*
retreat, *recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum,* w. reflexive.
see, *videō, -ēre, vidī, vīsum.*
there, *ibi.*
tower, *turris, -is,* **f.**
wine, *vīnum, -ī,* **n.**
year, *annus, -ī,* **m.**

EXERCISE 1

1. In the enemy's camp there was a great abundance of grain and wine. 2. On the seventh day we shall arrive in (come through into) the territory of the Belgians. 3. At daybreak we shall be able to see those mountains. 4. These animals remain on the mountains [for] a large part of the year. 5. On that night they retreated twenty miles (order: thousands of paces twenty). 6. The Romans had thrown up here an agger eighty feet high. 7. This month is one day longer (longer by one day). 8. The sun is larger than the earth. 9. The tower is ten feet higher than the agger. 10. Crassus was hastening into Aquitania, whose borders were thirty miles away. 11. Within one year all these things happened.

EXERCISE 2 (B. G. I. 6)

1. This way is much easier than that. 2. In those places very high mountains overhung. 3. On that day

all will come together into the town. 4. During all that day they were taking (leading) the wagons in single file (one by one) between the mountain and the river. 5. They will with difficulty be able to cross the river at that place. 6. Some of those mountains are higher than Mt. Jura 7. Not yet had the Helvetians persuaded the Allobroges. 8. Very few roads are more practicable than this. 9. With ease (adverb) will they go through their own territory, but with difficulty through the territory of the Sequanians. 10. Within those days they had prepared everything.

LESSON VI

1. Ablative of Cause: 90.
2. Ablative of Means or Instrument: 87.
3. Ablative of Manner: 91.
4. Ablative of Accompaniment: 94, *a*.
5. Ablative of Attendant Circumstance: 93.

Note 1. The English *with* conveys a variety of ideas which are variously expressed in Latin; *e.g.*,—

They crossed with (by means of) boats, *nāvibus* — means.

They crossed with great swiftness, *māgnā cum celeritāte* — manner.

They crossed with (in company with) others, *cum aliīs* — accompaniment.

They crossed with the consent of their leader, *voluntāte ducis* — attendant circumstance.

Note 2. Instead of an ablative of means, *per* with the accusative is freely used; *e.g.*, *per vim*, by (lit., through) violence; *per crucIātum*, by (lit., through) torture.

Note 3. Instead of the ablative of cause, the prepositions *ob* and *propter* with the accusative are frequently used; *e.g.*, instead of *quā rē* (lit., on account of which thing) we may use *quam ob rem* (lit., on account of which thing). So one finds such expressions as *ob eās causās*, for these reasons, and *propter timōrem*, on account of fear.

Note 1. The ablative *causā* preceded by its genitive expresses cause; *e.g.*, *commeatūs causā* (lit. for the sake of supplies).

VOCABULARY

abandon, *relinquō, -ere, -liqui, -lictum.*
bank, *rīpa, -ae,* f.
break up (move camp, *castra moveō.*
disturb, *perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.*
ditch, *fossa, -ae,* f.
fear, *timor, -ōris,* m.
fortify, *mūniō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -ītum.*
hour, *hōra, -ae,* f.
neighbors, *fīnitimī, -ōrum,* m.
peril, *perīculum, -ī,* n.
scarcity, *inopia, -ae,* f.
sovereignty, *imperium, -ī,* n.
speed, *celeritās, -tātis,* f.
talk, *colloquor, -ī, -locūtus sum.*
there (thither), *eō.*
tumult, *tumultus, -ūs,* m.
wall rampart, *vāllum, -ī,* n.
watch, *vigilia, -ae,* f.
wife, *uxor, -ōris,* f.

EXERCISE 1

1. This camp was abandoned on-account-of the scarcity of grain. 2. Caesar fortified the bank of the Rhone with a wall and a ditch. 3. In the third watch the Belgians broke up camp with great tumult. 4. The lieutenant had wintered there with two legions. 5. During the whole day Caesar talked with the ambassadors. 6. Under our sovereignty, those tribes will never make war on their neighbors. 7. Within one hour they forced a passage through the river (crossed the river by violence). 8. Disturbed by the peril of the lieutenant, Caesar set out with great speed. 9. For these reasons Ariovistus had brought (led) his wife from home with him. 10. On account of fear the soldiers were unwilling to go there to secure grain (lit., for the sake of grain).

EXERCISE 2 (B. G. I. 7)

1. The legion which was in farther Gaul hastened to Geneva by a forced march. 2. The Helvetians will not

march through the province with Caesar's consent. 3. On account of this march of the Helvetians, Caesar will levy a legion on the province. 4. By reason of the hostile spirit of these men, Caesar broke down the bridge. 5. Nammeius, being informed of the arrival of Caesar, set out with Veruclocetius. 6. Lucius Cassius the consul was slain and his army sent under the yoke. 7. The soldiers whom he has levied will come together on that day. 8. The ambassadors who were sent to him will remember that day. 9. They will inform the noblest men of the state with respect to the number of our soldiers. 10. The army will not be willing to refrain from mischief.

LESSON VII

The Ablative Absolute: 99, *a*, *b*.

Note. The frequency with which the ablative absolute occurs in Latin, and the variety of ideas which it expresses, make it necessary to study this construction with especial care. It is not often obvious to the beginner when to use the ablative absolute, because the English phraseology seldom plainly suggests it, the equivalent nominative absolute of the English being ordinarily avoided. We may say in English, —

1. After this had been done (*hōc factō*), we were ready.
2. Because this had been done (*hōc factō*), they were afraid.
3. Although this had been done (*hōc factō*), they were not afraid.
4. If we shall have done this (*hōc factō*), we shall be safe.
5. By doing this (*hōc factō*), we shall win the victory.
6. Having done this (*hōc factō*), we shall win the victory.

The introductory clause or phrase in all these sentences may be rendered, as indicated, by the same Latin expression, *hōc factō*, lit., *this having been done.*

Conversely, if one finds in Latin the combination *hōc factō*, one may render it by clauses introduced by *after* (time), *because* (cause), *although* (concession), *if* (condition), or by phrases beginning with *by* (means) or *having* (non-committal), and one must judge by the context which mode of translation is most suitable.

Caution: The ablative absolute should be avoided when its

governing substantive would mean the same person or thing as the subject or object of the sentence. Thus, in translating, *the cavalryman, being wounded, was thrown from his horse,* we must not use *equite vulnerātō,* because *equite,* the substantive which would govern *vulnerātō* in the ablative absolute, would mean the same as the subject of the verb for *was thrown.* In such cases the participle is regularly made to agree with the subject, as, *eques vulnerātus equō dēiectus est.*

Likewise, for *having led out his forces, he drew them up,* we should write *cōpiās ēductās īnstrūxit,* not *cōpiīs ēductīs* (abl. abs.) *eās īnstrūxit.* In this latter mode of translation *cōpiīs* would mean the same as the object *eās,* hence the ablative absolute should be avoided.

VOCABULARY

call together, *convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.*
conspiracy, *coniūrātiō, -ōnis,* f.
consul, *cōnsul, -is,* m.
go away, *abeō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itum.*
join, *iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūnctum.*
magistrate, *magistrātus, -ūs,* m.
nevertheless, *tamen.*
no (adj.), *nūllus, -a, -um.*
peace, *pāx, pācis,* f.
report, *nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.*
return, *redeō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itum.*
sad, be, *doleō, -ēre, doluī, dolitum.*
subdue, *pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.*
surrender, *trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.*
through, *per,* prep. with accus.

In the following exercises, employ the ablative absolute whenever possible. In some of the sentences, however, as is frequently the case in writing Latin, one really has a choice between the ablative absolute and some other construction.

EXERCISE 1

1. After peace had been made, the Helvetians returned home. 2. Ariovistus was sad at losing his wives. 3. If this tribe shall be subdued, the other tribes will not form (make) a conspiracy. 4. Although these things had been reported, nevertheless the magistrates did not see the danger. 5. By joining our forces we shall be able to capture the town. 6. In the consulship of Caesar, Ariovistus had been a friend of the Roman people. 7. They will not

be able to go through the province without Caesar's consent (Caesar being unwilling). 8. Being disturbed by this message, Caesar called together the lieutenants. 9. The Gauls, having surrendered their arms, went away. 10. As no enemy prevented (no enemy preventing), he led his troops back into the province.

EXERCISE 2 (B. G. I. 8)

1. By reason of having constructed this ditch (abl. abs.) he more easily prevented them. 2. Having stationed the guards, the lieutenants will return to him. 3. They will not be able to break through against his will. 4. By day and by night they-kept-constructing the wall and the ditch. 5. The depth of the lake is greater than (*quam*) [that] of the river. 6. Those who had come together to the river, having built rafts, attempted to cross. 7. Being disappointed in (lit., thrown down from) this hope, he will cease from the attempt. 8. Javelins will repel the Helvetians who are joining together those boats. 9. Caesar did not give boats to the legion which drove back the Helvetians. 10. With this legion Caesar had finished the work on that day.

LESSON VIII

Simple Declarative Sentences in Indirect Discourse: 154, *a*; 148.

Note. Indirect discourse is, as is the ablative absolute, an exceedingly important matter in the reading or writing of Latin. A due understanding of the essential features of this construction will be, by reason of the frequency of its occurrence, of inestimable service to every student of Latin. Fortunately, these essential features, if properly approached, are not difficult to master. The only feature to be taken up here is the most common and most simple one, the behavior of simple declarative sentences after verbs that may introduce indirect discourse; viz., verbs of saying and

thinking. Luckily, all these simple declarative sentences after verbs of saying and thinking behave alike, so far as the mood of their verb is concerned. Take *the night is long* (*nox est longa*). We may quote it in two ways. First, we may quote it directly, using the exact words of the original speaker, as, *the captive said, 'the night is long'*; *captīvus dixit*, nox est longa. Here no change occurs, for, if any did occur, there would be no direct quotation. Caesar very seldom uses direct quotation like this. Second, we may quote indirectly, keeping the general sense, but altering the form, as, *the captive said* that the night was long (*captīvus dixit* noctem esse longam). Here there is no pretense of giving the captive's exact words either in English or in Latin. Only his meaning is conveyed. Such indirect quotation is the plainest kind of indirect discourse. The same changes would be made in this sentence if it stood after any other appropriate verb of saying or any verb of thinking; *e.g.*:—

the captive replied that the night was long,	*captīvus respondit* noctem esse longam.
the captive reported that the night was long,	*captīvus nuntiāvit* noctem esse longam.
the captive suggested that the night was long,	*captīvus suāsit* noctem esse longam.
the captive called out that the night was long,	*captīvus exclāmāvit* noctem esse longam.
the captive thought that the night was long,	*captīvus putāvit* noctem esse longam.
the captive learned that the night was long,	*captīvus cognōvit* noctem esse longam.
the captive supposed that the night was long,	*captīvus fingit* noctem esse longam.
the captive dreamed that the night was long,	*captīvus somniāvit* noctem esse longam.

Be on the watch, therefore, for words which in any way convey the idea of speaking or of mental activity. If a declarative sentence follows one of these, its main verb must be in the **infinitive** form.

To get at the proper tense of the infinitive, a good way is to recast the English sentence so as to employ an English infinitive, and then translate accordingly; *e.g.*:—

Change,—
the captive thinks that the night **is** *long*
to *the captive thinks the night* **to be** *long* (*captīvus putat noctem* **esse** *longam*).

Change,—
the captive thinks that the night **was** *long*
to *the captive thinks the night* **to have been** *long* (*captīvus putat noctem* **fuisse** *longam*).

VOCABULARY

hear, *audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.*
know, *intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum.*
learn, *cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum.*
memory, *memoria, -ae,* **f.**
remember, *memoriā teneō, -ēre, tenuī, tentum* (lit., **hold in memory**).
say, tell, *dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum.*

EXERCISE 1

1. You say that the general has sent Titus Labienus, the lieutenant. 2. We all know that the brave are the best soldiers. 3. He heard that both ships and sailors had been lost. 4. You told us that those mountains were far away. 5. We have learned that the tenth legion itself has been captured. 6. You see that one part of this river is very deep. 7. Caesar has been informed that they will come as ambassadors from that tribe to him. 8. You remember that the Gauls, having surrendered their arms, went away. 9. The messenger said that in the third watch the Belgians would break up camp with great tumult. 10. The consul reports that the camp was abandoned on account of the scarcity of grain.

EXERCISE 2 (B. G. I. 9)

1. With Dumnorix as intercessor (Dumnorix being intercessor), they-will-obtain-their-request. 2. He has put very many Helvetians under obligation (has very many

Helvetians bound) [to him] by his bribery. 3. They said that they wished to marry daughters of Helvetians. 4. We saw that they would not undertake the matter, if Caesar were unwilling (Caesar being unwilling). 5. Friends of Orgetorix reported that Dumnorix was very powerful. 6. We thought that they could not go by this route (way) on account of the narrowness of the passage. 7. The Helvetians learned that Orgetorix had sent very many ambassadors to Dumnorix. 8. He knew that he would prevent them from [leaving] the journey. 9. They reported that he had been influenced by the kindness of friends. 10. His daughters know that they cannot go against his will (he being unwilling).

LESSON IX

1. Review of Ablative of Separation: 83, *a*.
2. Ablative of Source or Material: 84.
3. Ablative of Agent: 85.
4. Dative of Agent with Passive Periphrastic: 71.

Note 1. Carefully review passive periphrastic forms and meanings: (38, 39, 162, 163).

Note 2. It is of interest to note the close relationship which the ablatives of separation, source, and material bear to one another. Compare, —

he was driven from the city (*ex urbe*) — separation.

the Rhine rises in (from) [the country of] the Lepontii (*ex Lepontiīs*) — source.

the ships were made of (from) oak (*ex rōbore*) — material.

odors are breathed from flowers (*ē flōribus*) — source, but close to separation.

they were bringing grain into camp from those regions (*ex cīs regiōnibus*) — separation, but close to source.

Note 3. Ablatives of agent and datives of agent regularly denote persons and modify passive verbs. The preposition *ab* must go with ablatives of agent. Examples: —

haec omnia ab eīs facta sunt, all these things have been done by them.

haec omnia eīs (dat.) *facienda sunt*, all these things must be done by them.

VOCABULARY

attack (storm), *oppūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.*
bad, *malus, -a, -um.*
children, *līberī, -ōrum*, m.
country (field), *ager, agrī*, m.
cross, *trānseō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itum.*
decide, *statuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum.*
enemy, *hostis, -is*, m.
immediately, *statim.*
man, *homō, -inis*, m. and f.; *vir, virī*, m.
messenger, *nūntius, -ī*, m.
mountain, *mōns, montis*, m.
next (following), *posterus, -a, -um.*
same, *īdem, eadem, idem.*
scout, *explōrātor, -ōris*, m.
send, *mittō, -ere, mīsī, missum.*
short, *brevis, -e.*
slavery, *servitūs, -tūtis*, f.
spring from (in sense of originate), *orior, -īrī, ortus sum.*

EXERCISE 1

1. The magistrates will collect men from the country (fields). 2. These Gauls are descendants of (have sprung from) the Germans who crossed the Rhine. 3. The scouts whom he had sent were not far distant from the enemy. 4. Those short swords are always made of (from, *ex*) the best iron. 5. Good men are sometimes made from bad boys. 6. The same mountain was held the next day by the enemy. 7. All these things must be announced (reported) by messengers at daybreak. 8. The Haedui said that their children had been enslaved (led away into slavery) by the Helvetians. 9. Having received this information (these things having been learned), Caesar decided that he ought to attack the town (the town ought to be attacked by him) immediately. 10. Everybody knows (all know) that boys learn very much (very-many-things) from their fathers.

EXERCISE 2 (B. G. I. 10)

1. The march of the Helvetians must be reported. 2. Two legions have been enrolled in Italy by Caesar. 3. He knew that those warlike men would not be far away from the province. 4. For this reason Titus Labienus himself was wintering there. 5. This must be done by the Sequanians. 6. Having led the legions from winter quarters, he will try to prevent the Caturiges from their march. 7. The Ceutrones, being beaten (not abl. abs.), hurried through the Alps by forced marches. 8. The Roman people had put Caesar in command of a large army. 9. It was reported that for three days the Helvetians had been marching. 10. Farther Gaul is larger than the nearer province (86, *a*).

LESSON X

1. Genitive of Description (Quality or Characteristic): 63, *d*; 66.

2. Ablative of Description (Quality or Characteristic): 96.

3. Ablative of Specification (Respect): 97.

Note. Phrases of Description.

I. Genitive of Description.

1. **māgnī ponderis** *saxa dēvolvuntur*, rocks *of great weight* are rolled down.
2. *hominēs erant ferī* **māgnaeque virtūis**, the men were warlike and *of great courage.*

II. Ablatives of Description.

1. *Iccius Rēmus* **summā nōbilitāte** *nūntiāvit*, Iccius, a Roman *of the most aristocratic lineage*, reported.
2. *Germānī sunt* **ingentī magnitūdine** *corporum*, the Germans are [men] *of huge physical proportions.*

III. Ablatives of Specification.

1. *Helvētiī reliquōs Gallōs* **virtūte** *praecēdunt*, the Helvetians excel the rest of the Gauls *in* (*in respect to*) *valor.*
2. *oppida sua* **numerō** *ad duodecim incendunt*, they set fire to their towns, about twelve *in number.*

Genitives of description and ablatives of description are adjectives in use, *i.e.*, they modify nouns. They are, indeed, sometimes connected with adjectives by coördinating conjunctions, as in I, 2, above (*fore magnaeque virtūtis*). These descriptive phrases may be used, as are ordinary adjectives, either attributively (I, 1; II, 1, above) or in the predicate (I, 2; II, 2, above).

While the genitive of description and the ablative of description are frequently interchangeable, the genitive should regularly be employed in expressions involving numerals, as, *fossa trium pedum*, a three-foot ditch (ditch of three feet [in depth]), and the ablative to describe parts of the body, as, *puella oculīs nigrīs*, a black-eyed girl.

VOCABULARY

carry from (out of), *efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātum.*
differ, *differō, differre, distulī, dīlātum.*
disposition, mind, *animus, -ī*, m.
elderly men, *māiōrēs nātū* (greater in respect to birth).
equal, *pār, paris.*
excel, surpass, conquer, *superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.*
flee, *fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitum.*
fleet, swift, *vēlōx, vēlōcis.*
horse, *equus, -ī*, m.
inflict, *īnferō, īnferre, intulī, inlātum.*
influence, *auctōritās, -tātis*, f.
kill, slay, *occīdō, -ere, occīdī, occīsum.*
light-armed, *levis armātūrae.*
marvelous, *mīrus, -a, -um.*
name, *nōmen, -inis*, n.
population, *multitūdō hominum.*
renown, glory, *glōria, -ae*, f.
size, *māgnitūdō, -inis*, f.
strength, *vīs, vīs*, f.

EXERCISE 1

1. Men of unfriendly disposition often inflict injuries on their neighbors. 2. In this legion were men of the greatest valor. 3. The Bellovaci were a tribe of great influence. 4. Caesar said that the Gauls differed from each other (among themselves) in language. 5. In that place a fifteen-foot trench had been drawn (*dūcō*) by the soldiers. 6. That large-eyed (abl.) boy seems to see everything. 7. A town of the Aquitanians, Tolosa by

(in respect to) name, was six miles distant from our camp. 8. Each carried from home provisions for (of) three months. 9. Father and son are of equal height, but the son excels the father in strength. 10. Caesar knew that after peace had been made (abl. abs.) the Gauls would be kindly disposed (of good mind) toward (*in*) the Romans.

EXERCISE 2 (Last five sentences based on B. G. I. 11)

1. The horses were fleet and of marvelous size. 2. Marius, who conquered the Teutons, was [a man] of great renown. 3. Rome surpassed in population the rest-of-the (*reliquas*) cities of Italy. 4. All the elderly men had come to Caesar on that day to-arrange-for (*dē*) a surrender. 5. The light armed infantry (foot-soldiers of light equipment), [now that] the bravest centurions had been killed (abl. abs.), fled in (into) all directions (parts). 6. The Helvetians ravaged the fields of the Haedui and carried away their children into slavery. 7. During those days the Haedui kept the enemy off from their towns. 8. The Haedui had informed Caesar that all their fortunes had been wasted by the enemy. 9. Nothing except the Roman army can defend the fields and towns of the Haedui. 10. We must show (pass. periphrastic) that there is nothing left.

LESSON XI

1. Subjective Genitive: 63, *b*.
2. Objective Genitive with Nouns: 63, *c*.
3. Objective Genitive with Adjectives: 64.
4. Genitive and Accusative with *meminī*, *oblīviscor*, and *reminīscor*: 65, *a*.

Note 1. The student should not be troubled if he has difficulty in distinguishing between the subjective genitive and the

genitive of possession (63, *a*). In the expression *adventus mīlitum*, the arrival of the soldiers, it is as well to call *mīlitum* a possessive genitive as to call it, as is often done, a subjective genitive.

Note 2. The objective genitive with nouns primarily denotes the person or thing whereon the action or feeling of the governing noun terminates, as on a sort of grammatical object. Examples: —

imperium māgnae partis, rule over a large part (much like *ruling a large part*).

legionis cohortātiō, the exhorting of the legion (much like *exhorting the legion*).

To feel that the genitive is, after certain adjectives (App. 64), a kind of object is perhaps easier still, as,

iniuriae cōnscius, conscious of wrong (much like *recognizing wrong*).

Note 3. When they govern words denoting *persons:* —

oblīvīscor (forget) regularly takes the genitive,

reminīscor (recall) regularly takes the accusative,

meminī (remember) takes either the genitive or the accusative.

When they govern words denoting *things*, all of these verbs take either the genitive or the accusative, except that neuter adjectives and neuter pronouns are regularly in the accusative, as, *ea meminī*, I remember those things.

Note 4. The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect of the defective verb *meminī* are used for the present, imperfect, and future, respectively.

VOCABULARY

animal, *animal, -ālis*, n.
bravely, *fortiter*.
calamity, *calamitās, -tātis*, f.
desire, *cupiditās, -tātis*, f.
desirous of, *cupidus, -a, -um*.
fame, glory, *glōria, -ae*, f.
forget, *oblīvīscor, -līvīsci, -lītus sum*.
forgetful of, *oblītus, -a, -um* (part. of *oblīvīscor*).
hope, *spēs, -eī*, f.
know, *sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum*.
merchant, *mercātor, -ōris*, m.
military science, *rēs mīlitāris*.
pleasure, *voluptās, -tātis*, f.
remember, *meminī, meminisse* or *reminīscor, reminīscī*.
skilful in, *perītus, -a, -um*.
so, *tam* or *ita*.
summer, *aestās, -tātis*.
take away, *tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum*.
victory, *victōria, -ae*, f.
winter, *hiems, hiemis*, f.

EXERCISE 1

1. We know that the strength of animals is frequently marvelous. 2. A desire for fame has brought calamity on (*īnferō*) many. 3. The hope of victory was taken away when the leader was killed (abl. abs.). 4. Brave soldiers are desirous of life but more desirous of victory. 5. The boy did that, [being] forgetful of the wish of his father and mother. 6. Considius, who had been sent forward with scouts, was considered (*habeō*) most skilful in military science. 7. In winter we all remember with pleasure the days of summer. 8. The people will never forget the soldiers who defended the city so bravely on that day. 9. That which you said to me about the nature of the mind I have not forgotten. 10. The Romans always remembered Caesar and the battles in (by) which he conquered the brave Gauls. 11. The merchant whom you[1] say you remember, I[1] have forgotten.

EXERCISE 2 (B. G. I. 12)

1. That canton remembered Piso, and that not only he but Cassius also had been killed. 2. The legions had not yet forgotten Cassius and that his army had been sent under the yoke. 3. Caesar could remember wrongs done-to-the-state (*publice*) and forgot wrongs done-to-himself (*private*). 4. The scouts informed Caesar of the smoothness of that river. 5. Rafts and boats had to be joined in the river by the Helvetians (App. 71). 6. Caesar avenged the wrongs to the Roman people in the same battle in which he cut to pieces a quarter (fourth part) of the Helvetian state. 7. On account of the memory of his father-in-law he will inflict a signal calamity on them.

[1] The personal pronouns *ego* and *tū* are expressed as subjects in cases of contrast or emphasis.

8. Three quarters (parts) of the Helvetians had already crossed and now (*nunc*) about a quarter (fourth part) was-on-its-way-across (was crossing). 9. They paid the penalty for (of) the calamity which they had inflicted on Cassius. 10. In the third watch the forces which were crossing were informed that the Romans had come.

LESSON XII

1. Direct Questions.
2. Indirect Questions: 141.

Note 1. Direct questions are often introduced in Latin by some interrogative word which corresponds to an English interrogative, as, *quis es?* who are you? *ubi sumus?* where are we? *cūr hōc facis?* why are you doing this?

Note 2. Often, however, the Latin has an interrogative word (particle) where the English lacks it, English giving the interrogative notion by the order only. This occurs in the case of single questions that may be answered by "yes" or "no," and in the case of certain double (alternative) questions.

Note 3. Single direct questions that may be answered by "yes" or "no": —

1. *timēsne?* are you afraid?

2. *nōnne timēs?* are you not afraid? *i.e.*, you are afraid, are you not?

3. *num timēs?* are you afraid? (Uttered with such expression as to show it to mean, you are not afraid, are you?)

The enclitic *-ne* of *timēsne* (1) merely gives warning that the sentence is a question.

Nōnne (2) indicates that the speaker expects the answer "yes."

Num (3) indicates that the speaker expects the answer "no."

Note 4. Double (alternative) direct questions: —

1. *utrum pūgnat an fugit?* is he fighting or running away?

2. *pūgnatne an fugit?* is he fighting or running away?

3. *pūgnat an fugit?* is he fighting or running away?

The alternative part may be the bare negative (*nōn*) with *an*, as: —

1. *utrum pūgnat an nōn?* is he fighting or not?

Note 5. Direct questions, both single and double, become indirect by being associated (*e.g.*, as subject or object) with verbs of asking, knowing, doubting, or any form of expression which can suggest an interrogative idea. *The verb of the indirect question is regularly in the subjunctive mood.* Examples: —

1. *nesciō ubi sīmus*, I do not know where we are.

2. *rogat timeāsne* or *rogat num timeās*, he asks whether you are afraid.

Observe that here *-ne* and *num* have the same force, *num* not having with indirect questions the power of suggesting "no" as an answer, which it has with direct questions.

3. *Tibi dīcam utrum pūgnet* { *an nōn* / *necne* }, I will tell you whether he is fighting or not.

Note 6. Skeleton showing particles serviceable for double questions both direct and indirect: —

utrum . . . an . . .
-ne . . . an . . .
. . . an . . .

VOCABULARY

accustomed (to become), *cōnsuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētum;* in perf., *be accustomed.*
ancients, *antiquī, -ōrum* (from adj., *antīquus, -a, -um*, **ancient**).
army, *exercitus, -ūs*, m.
ask, *rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.*
cavalryman, *eques, -itis*, m.
come, *veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum.*
day, *diēs, -ēī*, m. *or* f.
fight, *pūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.*
find out, learn (by investigating), *reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertum.*
friend, *amīcus, -ī*, m.
how many, *quot* (indecl.).
island, *īnsula, -ae*, f.
large, *māgnus, -a, -um.*
long, *longus, -a, -um.*
much, more, most, *multus, plūs, plūrimus.*
ocean, *ōceanus, -ī*, m.
receive, *accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.*
way, journey, road, *iter, itineris*, n.
whether, in single questions, *num* or *-ne;* in double questions, *utrum* or *-ne.*
write, *scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptum.*

EXERCISE 1

1, *a*. How-many rivers flow into that ocean? *b*. I do not know. 2, *a*. Who came to the general at daybreak?

b. I have not been able to learn. 3, *a*. Where are the armies, the victories, and the renown of the ancients? *b*. Can you ask? 4. Have you received the long letter which I wrote you (either ind. obj. or acc. with *ad* after *scrībō*)? 5. Have you not heard that so large a tribe will send more soldiers than the smaller [ones]? 6. Are your friends on their way (in the journey), or[1] have they already arrived? 7. Were the Helvetians accustomed (pluperf.) to receive hostages or give [them]? 8. Did the cavalrymen fight more bravely on that day or not? 9. Do you ask whether Britain is a large island? 10. I am trying to find out whether the winters in Britain are long or short. 11. I forget whether she is beautiful or not.

EXERCISE 2 (B. G. I. 13)

1. Do you see the bridge which Caesar is building (plain relative clause)? 2. Do you see what-sort-of (*quālis*) a bridge Caesar is building (indirect question)? 3. Having seen this, we can understand why the Helvetians are sending Divico [as an] ambassador. 4. After this battle had been fought, the Helvetians did not despise the Roman army. 5. They have done in one day that which we did with the utmost difficulty in twenty (*use word, not abbreviation*) days. 6. We do not know what they can do in twenty days. 7. Did the Helvetians learn the more (*plūs*) from their fathers and ancestors, or from Caesar? 8. Did Caesar contend rather by trickery than by valor? 9. Did the former valor of the Helvetians disturb the Romans on that day? 10. We remember Divico but we have forgotten that which he said (Lesson XI, note 3).

[1] "In double questions *an* or *-ne*,
Not *aut* or *vel*, the word must be."

LESSON XIII

1. Dative of Possession with *esse:* 72.
2. Dative with adjectives: 73.

Note 1. Examples of Dative of Possession: —

erant eī trēs fīliae, he had three daughters (lit., three daughters were to him).

est tibi cōnsilium, you possess prudence (lit., prudence is to you).

Note 2. Of this type are datives after certain compounds of *esse* (*ad-, dē-esse,* to be wanting), which signify the opposite of possession, as: —

hōc ūnum Caesarī dēfuit, This was the only thing Caesar lacked (lit., this alone was wanting to Caesar).

Note 3. A predicate possessive adjective or a predicate possessive genitive differs somewhat in meaning from the dative of possession by emphasizing the possessor, while the dative merely expresses the fact of possession; *e.g.:* —

equus est meus, the horse belongs to me;

equus est Mārcī, the horse belongs to Marcus;

equus est Mārcō, Marcus has a horse.

Note 4. Of practically the same meaning with the last example of Note 3 is: —

Mārcus equum habet, Marcus has a horse.

Note 5. Examples of Dative with Adjectives: —

cōnsimilis fugae profectiō vidēbātur, the departure seemed very similar to a flight.

castris idōneum locum dēligit, he chooses a place suitable for a camp.

VOCABULARY

cavalry, *equitātus, -ūs,* m.
dwell, live, *incolō, -ere, -coluī.*
friendly, *amīcus, -a, -um.*
gate, *porta, -ae,* f.
infantry, pl. (usually) of *pedes, -itis,* m.
judgment, *iūdicium, -ī,* n.
lack, be wanting in, *dēsum, -esse, -fuī.*
like, *similis, -e.*
suitable, *idōneus, -a, -um.*
unfriendly, *inimīcus, -a, -um.*
wish, *volō, velle, voluī.*

EXERCISE 1

1. The camp had four gates. 2. Who has a better sword? 3. Caesar had a large fleet and a brave army. 4. Caesar was informed that the enemy had both cavalry and infantry. 5. This boy wishes to be like his father. 6. Do you know what nations dwell next to the Germans? 7. Those tribes were friendly to the Germans but unfriendly to the Romans. 8. Sabinus thought that this place was suitable in all respects (in respect to all things — abl. of spec.) for a camp. 9. The soldiers did not lack (*dēsum*) courage but javelins. 10. Gaul did not belong to (was not of) Ariovistus rather (*potius*) than to the Roman people. 11. The judgment with-respect-to (*dē*) these matters lies not with (is not of) the soldiers but with the general.

EXERCISE 2 (B. G. II. 1)

1. The Belgians, who (App. 115, *b*) were a third part of Gaul, were giving hostages to each other. 2. The Romans were informed by rumors that the Germans had wished (perf. infin.) to subdue all Gaul. 3. After the Germans had been subdued, our army was led against the Belgians. 4. The more powerful, by hiring men (abl. abs.), seize the royal power. 5. Some Gauls on account of fickleness of mind are eager for Roman rule. 6. Under our rule the Roman army will generally winter in Gaul. 7. It has been shown above that the Belgians were instigated (perf. infin.) by some Gauls. 8. As they were-unwilling (*nōlō*) to-take-oath-together, so they were-unwilling to exchange hostages (give hostages among themselves). 9. The Germans said that they (reflexive) had been in Gaul a-longer-time than the Romans.

LESSON XIV

1. Dative of Purpose or Tendency: 69.
2. Dative of Reference: 70, *a*.
3. Dative of Separation: 68.

Note 1. Examples of Dative of Purpose or Tendency: —

1. *diēs conloquiō dictus est*, a day was set for the conference.

2. *quae ad oppūgnandum ūsuī erant*, whatever things were of use (lit., for use) for making an attack.

Note 2. Examples of Dative of Purpose or Tendency combined with Dative of Reference: —

1. *ūna rēs nostrīs māgnō ūsuī erat*, one thing was of great service (lit., for great service) to our men.

2. *tertiam aciem nostrīs subsidiō mīsit*, he sent the third line as (for) a relief to our men.

3. *Gallīs magnō ad pugnam erat impedīmentō*, it was [for] a great hindrance to the Gauls for fighting.

Note 3. Examples of Dative of Separation: —

1. *hostibus spēs potiundī oppidī discessit*, the hope of getting possession of the town left the enemy (lit., went away for, — *i.e.*, in the case of, — the enemy).

2. *scūtō mīlitī dētrāctō*, having snatched a shield from a soldier (lit., having snatched away a shield in the case of a soldier).

Note 4. While the dative of purpose or tendency cannot mean persons, the dative of reference is commonly a personal word. Further, the dative of reference usually means persons benefited or injured, helped or hindered, or persons with reference to whom, or in whose case, something happens, is true, or of interest. Thus in Note 2, 1 and 2, *nostrīs* denotes the persons helped; *Gallīs* in 3, the persons hindered. The datives *hostibus* and *mīlitī* of Note 3, though loosely called datives of separation, are in reality datives of reference, showing *in whose case* something happened.

VOCABULARY

brother, *frāter, frātris*, **m.**
care, *cūra, -ae*, **f.**
cohort, *cohors, cohortis*, **f.**
detriment, *dētrīmentum, -ī*, **n.**
other, *alius, -a, -ud.*
protection, *praesidium, -ī*, **n.**
ravage, *vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.*

rescue, (snatch away, take away), *ēripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptum.*
safety, *salūs, -ūtis,* **f.**
sorrow, *dolor, -ōris,* **m.**
summon, *arcessō, -ere, arcessīvī, arcessītum.*
take away (draw away), *dētrahō, -ere, -trāxī, -trāctum.*
war, *bellum, -ī,* **n.**

EXERCISE 1

1. These things will receive my attention (will be for a care to me). 2. Your friendship will be [for] a protection to us all. 3. The Germans were summoned by the Belgians for aid. 4. How many cohorts did he leave as a guard for the camp? 5. Did you say that this war would be detrimental (for a detriment) to all the neighboring peoples? 6. He had been a-means-of safety (for safety) to others, but he himself was killed. 7. I wish to take away the sword from (for, in the case of) that boy. 8. By his valor he rescued his brother from (*ex*) peril. 9. One victory removed (*ēripiō*) from the soldiers their fear of the warlike Germans. 10. After peace had been made, the ravaged fields were a-source-of-sorrow to the conquered Belgians.

EXERCISE 2 (B. G. II. 2)

1. Within fifteen days he will be informed of this by Caesar. 2. What commission was given the Gauls on that day by him? 3. The army must be led out of hither Gaul by Q. Pedius (App. 71) the lieutenant. 4. The Gauls were disturbed in the beginning of the summer on-account-of-this. 5. When the army had been gathered into one place (abl. abs.), Caesar set out for the Belgians. 6. We think [that] the Senones are finding that out. 7. All uniformly announce [that] there is an abundance of fodder in the territory of the Belgians. 8. Are you able to find out what is-going-on (App. 141) among the Bel-

gians? 9. The Gauls, being disturbed (not abl. abs.; Lesson VII, Caution) on account of these messages, are beginning to secure supplies of grain. 10. Have they broken up camp or not (Lesson XII, Note 4, 6)?

LESSON XV

1. Ablative with Certain Deponents: 88.
2. Genitive with *potior:* 88, *a*; 65, *d*.
3. Ablative with *opus* and *usus*, when they mean *need:* 89.
4. Ablative of Accordance: 92.

Note 1. The ablative with *ūsus* is not frequently found.

Note 2. *Opus* sometimes stands in the predicate, while the thing needed, especially if it be expressed by a neuter pronoun or adjective, is made the subject, *e.g.*, *sī quid ipsī opus esset*, if he himself wanted anything (lit., if anything were a need to himself).

VOCABULARY

advantage, *commodum, -ī,* n.
all, whole, the whole of, *tōtus, -a, -um.*
capture, *expūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.*
courage, *fortitūdō, -inis,* f.
crowded together, *confertus, -a, -um.*
custom, *mōs, mōris,* m.
dare, *audeō, -ēre, ausus sum.*
easily, *facile.*
enjoy, *fruor, fruī, frūctus sum.*
fortune, *fortūna, -ae,* f.
need, *opus,* n. (only in nom. and accus. with this meaning).
now, *nunc.*
opinion, *sententia, -ae,* f.
possession, get . . . of, *potior, -īrī, potītus sum.*
something, *aliquid* (*aliquis, -qua, -quid*).
spare, save, *servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.*
supreme, superlative of *superus, superior, suprēmus* or *summus.*
townspeople, *oppidānī, -ōrum,* m.
use, *ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum.*

EXERCISE 1

1. The soldiers, [being] crowded together, could not use their swords readily (easily). 2. The townspeople said that they wished (themselves to wish) to enjoy (*ūtor*)

peace. 3. The children of kings often enjoy (*fruor*) fortune and renown. 4. The advantages which you enjoy are not for me. 5. The Nervii had not yet got possession of (*potior* with abl.) the camp and baggage of the Romans. 6. The Helvetians who went forth from home with their wives and children were unable to get possession of (*potior* with gen.) all Gaul. 7. Now we need (there is need — *opus* — to us) good hope and supreme courage. 8. Did you say that you needed something (Note 2)? 9. In (according to) my opinion, those cavalrymen will not dare to attack our [men]. 10. Having captured the town (abl. abs.), Caesar spared the townspeople according to his custom.

EXERCISE 2 (B. G. II. 3)

1. The Suessiones enjoy the same laws as (relative pro.) the rest-of-the Belgians. 2. Not even the Remi conspired with the Suessiones, but they intrusted themselves to the power of the Romans. 3. The ambassadors said that the Remi and the Suessiones had one and the same magistrate. 4. Their brothers and kinsmen who dwell on-this-side-of the Rhine will assist the Romans with grain. 5. Hostages must be given by all the states (App. 71). 6. The frenzy of the Germans was not so great as (*quantus*) [was that] of the Belgians. 7. Did the Germans intrust themselves and all their possessions to the protection of Caesar? 8. All will be in arms sooner than any one expects it (lit. than the opinion of all). 9. One of (from, *ex*) the ambassadors who had been sent by the Remi (App. 85) was Iccius, the first [man] of the state. 10. After they had given hostages (abl. abs.), they did the things commanded.

LESSON XVI

1. Ablative of Price: 98.

2. Genitive of Indefinite Value (*māgnī, tantī*): 65, *e*.

3. The Comparatives *amplius, longius, plūs*, and *minus*, not requiring the Ablative or *quam:* 86, *b* (Review 86, *a*).

Note 1. The Ablative of Price is often very similar to the ablative of means. Compare *buy* for *ten dollars* (price), and *buy* with *ten dollars* (means).

Note 2. The Genitive of Indefinite Value is akin to the genitive of description (Lesson X, Note). Compare: —

1. *vir summae virtūtis*, a man of the greatest courage.
2. *vir minimī pretī*, a man of very little worth.
3. *vir est tantī*, the man is of so much (account).

Note 3. Indefinite value is expressed by the ablative also: *māgnō equum vēndidit*, he sold the horse at a high figure.

VOCABULARY

avoid, *vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*.
city, *urbs, urbis*, f.
fifty, *quīnquāgintā*.
injury, *iniūria, -ae*, f.
land, *ager, agrī*, m.
little (by a little), *paulō*, abl. of *paulus, -a, -um*.
more, *plūs* (*multus, plūs, plūrimus*), or *amplius* (*amplus, amplior, amplissimus*).
pay, reward, *mercēs, -ēdis*, f.
place, pitch, *pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum*.
price, value, *pretium, -ī*, n.
ship, *nāvis, -is*, f.
time, *tempus, -oris*, n.
two hundred, *ducentī, -ae, -a*.
weep, *fleō, -ēre, flēvī, flētum*.

EXERCISE 1

1. You have bought this land at a very small price. 2. This man has inflicted many injuries on the city (App. 67, *c*) for pay. 3. It is of great [importance] to us to avoid that danger. 4. I shall not weep: the matter (*rēs*) is not of such (so much) [moment] to me. 5. The consul was away from the city more (*plūs* or *amplius*) than ten days (acc.). 6. He had gone a little (App. 95)

more than two hundred paces from the camp. 7. They themselves did not have more than fifty ships. 8. A messenger reported that less (*minus*) than three thousand men had defeated (infin.) the whole army. 9. At that time Caesar had not more than two thousand soldiers. 10. The Romans pitched a camp less than three miles (thousands of paces less than three) from the camp of the Helvetians.

EXERCISE 2 (B. G. II. 4)

1. The Bellovaci have very great influence among the Belgians on account of their valor. 2. We do not inquire from whom (App. 84) the Belgians are descended. 3. The Germans, having overrun Gaul (abl. abs.), were unable (not able) to enter within the borders of the Belgians. 4. Caesar is finding out through the Remi what strength the Belgians have (what the B. are able) in war. 5. How large a number of men did the warlike Nervii promise? 6. Very extensive (wide) and fertile lands were possessed by the Suessiones. 7. Galba with the consent (App. 93) of the Suessiones demanded for himself the sovereignty over a large part of Britain. 8. Do you think that Britain is more fertile than Gaul or not (Lesson XII, Note 4)? 9. Galba, a man of the utmost fairness (justice) and discretion (prudence), was a very powerful king. 10. Blood relationship and marriage ties united the Remi with the Bellovaci.

LESSON XVII

1. Secondary Object with Direct Object: 75, *a*.
2. Verbs compounded with *trāns* and *circum*: 75, *b*, Note.
3. Predicate Accusative with Direct Object: 76, *a*, Note.

Note 1. After both verbs of asking, demanding, teaching, etc., and verbs of making, calling, choosing, etc., two objects are found,

but the predicate accusative is different from the secondary object in this, that it seems to be a sort of predicate after *esse* understood. Compare: —

1. *hōs sententiam* (secondary obj.) *rogō*, I ask them their opinion.

2. *Cicerōnem cōnsulem* (pred. acc.) *populus creāvit*, the people elected Cicero [to be] consul.

Note 2. *Petō* (ask, seek, beg) and *postulō* (demand) take *ab* with the ablative in place of the accusative of the person: *auxilium ab Rōmānīs petīvērunt*, they sought aid of the Romans. *Quaerō* (inquire about, ask) takes *ab*, *dē*, or *ex* with the ablative: *quaerit ex perfugis causam*, he asks from deserters the reason.

VOCABULARY

again, *iterum.*
appoint, place, *cōnstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtum.*
bridge, *pōns, pontis,* m.
call, name, *appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.*
certain (indef.), *quīdam, quaedam, quoddam* (adj.), or *quiddam* (subst.).
chief, first, leading, *prīnceps, prīncipis.*
demand, *flagitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,* or *postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.*
few, *paucī, -ae, -a.*
inquire about, ask, seek, *quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī* or *quaesiī, quaesītum.*
lead across, *trādūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum.*
overcome, *superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.*
promise, *polliceor, -ērī, pollicitus sum.*
prudence, *prūdentia, -ae,* f.
senate, *senātus, -ūs,* m.
teach, show, *doceō, -ēre, docuī, doctum.*

EXERCISE 1

1. I wish to ask (*rogō*) you your opinion. 2. Few are able to teach children prudence. 3. The Roman senate had in Caesar's consulship called Ariovistus friend. 4. He demanded (*flagitō*) again of the Haeduans the cavalry which they had promised. 5. Caesar, having overcome this tribe (abl. abs.), will appoint a-certain-man [as] king there. 6. With your help we shall make him very friendly (adj. as pred. acc.) to us. 7. The tribes that

dwelt beyond (across) the Rhine were called Transrhenani. 8. The Romans quickly led two thousand soldiers across the bridge. 9. The Germans who had been led across the Rhine into Gaul said that they were unwilling (did not wish) to return home. 10. The chief [men] of the city demanded (*postulō*) this of the consul. 11. Will you inquire-about these [things] of (from) others?

EXERCISE 2 (B. G. II. 5)

1. All the forces which had been collected from those states were led across this river. 2. The Remi showed (*doceō*) him that the Belgians had pitched (inf.) a camp not far from that bridge. 3. The river will be a protection to one side of the camp. (Translate in two ways. Lesson XIV, Note 2, suggests one.) 4. Children of leading men must be brought as hostages by the Remi (App. 71). 5. A wall twelve feet high will make the camp safe. 6. Caesar had found out that there was a bridge over this river. 7. The Remi will be safer than the Bellovaci. (Translate in two ways. App. 86, *a*.) 8. Did Caesar greatly encourage the chief men of the Remi or not (Lesson XII, Note 4)? 9. Quintus Titurius the lieutenant was fortifying the camp with a wall and a ditch. 10. Having placed a garrison there, he sent a part of his troops into the most distant territory of the Bellovaci.

LESSON XVIII

1. Cognate Accusative: 81.
2. Accusative used adverbially: 82.
3. Accusative with *propior* and *propius*, *proximus* and *proximē*: 78, *a* (cf. 73).

Note 1. The Cognate Accusative (Accusative of Kindred Meaning) is illustrated by such expressions as *mīrum somnium*

somniāre, to dream a strange dream, and *vītam dūram vīvere*, to live a hard life. Less obvious are *pauca querī*, to make a few complaints (to complain a few [complaints]) and *ficta respondēre*, to make false reply (to respond false [responses]).

Note 2. As *prope*, near, governs the accusative, it is not strange that the kindred words *propior*, *propius*, *proximus*, *proximē* should govern that case. The adverbs *propius* and *proximē* take the accusative frequently, the adjectives *propior* and *proximus* show a marked preference for the dative.

VOCABULARY

advise, *moneō*, *-ēre*, *monuī*, *monitum*.
battle, *pūgna*, *ae*, f., or *proelium*, *-ī*, n.
centurion, *centuriō*, *-ōnis*, m.
command, be in command of, *praesum*, *-esse*, *-fuī*.
large, great, *māgnus*, *māior*, *māximus* (*māximam partem*, for the most part).
near, *prope*, adv., and prep. with accus.
nearer, *propior*, *ius* (adj.), *propius* (adv.).
nearest, *proximus*, *-a*, *-um* (adj.); *proximē* (adv.).
sea, *mare*, *-is*, n.
seem, be seen, *videor*, *vidērī*, *vīsus sum*.
think, *sentiō*, *-īre*, *sēnsī*, *sēnsum*.
winter, *hiemō*, *-āre*, *-āvī*, *-ātum*.

EXERCISE 1

1. You seem to have the same thoughts (to think the same) as [rel. pron.] I about this. 2. How many battles did the legions fight during all those years? 3. My father will give you this advice (advise you this). 4. All of us (we all) know that a general has greater power (is able more) than a lieutenant or a centurion. 5. At that time Divitiacus was very strong (was able very much) in Gaul and Dumnorix was very weak (was able very little). 6. The cavalry which Caesar used (App. 88) had for the most part been gathered from the Gallic tribes. 7. Near the camp was a large town by the name of Alesia (Alesia in respect to name — App. 97). 8. Having

learned this, Caesar on the next day moved his camp nearer Ariovistus. 9. The Aquitanians, on whom Crassus is making war (App. 67, *c*), are next to Spain. 10. The legions which Crassus commanded (App. 67, *c*) were wintering next to the sea.

EXERCISE 2 (B. G. II. 6)

1. The Belgians had begun to throw a multitude of men about the town. 2. They threw stones from every direction against the defenders of the wall. 3. With great violence the Belgians stripped the wall of its defenders. 4. Having thrown a shower (multitude) of stones and javelins (abl. abs.), they could easily approach the gates. 5. Did Iccius hold out easily or with difficulty on that day (Lesson XII, Note 4)? 6. On the same night the messenger whom Iccius had sent came to them. 7. Caesar says that Iccius was (perf. inf.) a Roman of most aristocratic lineage (of highest nobility — App. 96). 8. One of those who had stood on the wall as defenders the whole day became (was made) their messenger (messenger for them). 9. That town must be attacked by us (App. 71) on the march. 10. The Belgians knew that Caesar's camp was eight miles distant.

LESSON XIX

1. Gerundive: 164, *a*, *b*, *c*, Note, *d*.
2. Gerund: 165, *a*, *b*, *c*, *d*, *e*.

Note 1. The gerundive is peculiar in that while it is a participle (future passive) or verbal adjective, thus being of a class of words which are ordinarily wholly subordinate to the substantives which they modify, it has partly outgrown this subordinate relation and shows a desire, so to speak, to become a verbal noun and govern an object. In the phrase *dē expūgnandō oppidō*, with regard to capturing the town, the gerundive

expūgnandō seems not to be content with its subordinate relation, as a modifier of *oppidō*, a relation which might roughly be expressed by the translation *with regard to the town being* (or *to be*) *captured*, but to desire to be the chief word of the phrase and to govern *oppidō*. Grammatically, *expūgnandō* modifies *oppidō* — with regard to the town being (or to be) captured — but logically, it governs *oppidō* as its object — with regard to capturing the town.

Note 2. The gerund, on the other hand, is a complete verbal noun and is equal to the task of governing its object both grammatically and logically, *e.g.*, *spatium pila coniciendī*, time for hurling javelins. Here *coniciendi* is a genitive modifying *spatium*, and *pila* is the object of *coniciendi*. The corresponding gerundive construction would be *spatium pilōrum coniciendōrum*.

Note 3. The two constructions sometimes appear in one sentence: *neque cōnsilī habendī* gerundive modifying *cōnsilī*) *neque arma capiendī* (gerund modifying *spatiō* and governing *arma*) *spatiō datō*, time being given neither for taking counsel nor for seizing arms.

Note 4. After prepositions the gerund is not used with an object, the gerundive construction alone being then permissible: *e.g.*, *ad pācem petendam*.

Note 5. When it seems possible to use either the gerund or gerundive of a transitive verb, a good rule for the beginner is to use the gerundive. But of intransitive verbs only gerunds can be employed. The deponent *ūtor*, *potior*, etc., having originally been transitive, may appear in the gerundive construction: *e.g.*, *spem potiundōrum castrōrum*, the hope of capturing the camp.

VOCABULARY

barbarian, *barbarus, -a, -um.*
begin battle, *proelium committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.*
come together, *conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum.*
crush, *opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum.*
deliberate, *dēlīberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.*
plunder, *praedor, -ārī, -ātus sum.*
proximity, *propinquitās, -tātis,* f.
signal, *signum, -ī,* n.
take, assume, *sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum.*
there, thither, *eō.*
wage war, *bellum gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum.*
wait for, *exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.*
war, *bellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.*

EXERCISE 1

1. The cavalry did not dare to begin to cross (make a beginning of crossing). 2. Will you take time for (*ad*) deliberation (deliberating)? 3. Change the following so as to use the gerundive in place of the gerund: —

a. *causa arma capiendī*, reason for seizing arms.

b. *cupidus urbem videndī*, desirous of seeing the city.

4. Two great nations that live near the Rhine are desirous of waging war (warring: use gerund of *bellō*). 5. After this had been reported (abl. abs.), the Belgians no longer (*nōn iam*) had hope of waging war (use proper form of *bellum* and the gerundive of *gerō*). 6. On account of the proximity of the enemy, our soldiers did not wait-for the signal for (of) beginning battle. 7. We shall all come together to defend (for — *ad* — defending) them. 8. A part of the cavalry had gone there (*eō*) to plunder (for the sake of plundering: gerund followed by *causā*). 9. All hope of getting possession of the camp immediately departed. 10. We have learned that the barbarians have formed a plan for (of) crushing this legion.

EXERCISE 2 (B. G. II. 7)

1. The smoke and fires indicated that the camp extended (pres. inf.) more than eight miles. 2. Caesar will use as guides those who have come as messengers. 3. All those troops had been sent as help to the Remi (Lesson XIV, Note 2). 4. Having set fire to this village, the Belgians made-haste to lay waste the country districts (fields). 5. An eagerness to get (of getting) possession of these buildings was inspired in (came to) the enemy. 6. For this reason the enemy had pitched a camp two miles away (away by two miles — App. 95). 7. The slingers and bowmen whom Caesar had sent there (thither)

were unable to get possession of the town (App. 88, *a*). 8. [Their] keenness for the fray (desire for fighting) left the enemy (went away for the enemy — Lesson XIV, notes 3 and 4) at the arrival of the slingers and bowmen. 9. They did not linger near the town, but laid waste the lands of the Remi which they could reach (whither they were able, etc.). 10. The Remi had less hope (gen. of the whole) than Caesar.

LESSON XX

1. Certain Indefinite Pronouns or Adjectives): *aliquis, quīvīs, ūllus, nūllus, nōn nūllus, quisquam, quisque, quīdam*: 116.

2. Two different cases of *alius* in one clause: 117, *b*.

Example: *aliī aliam in partem perfugiēbant*, they rushed, some in one direction and others in another.

3. Adjectives used adverbially, *e.g., frequēns, prīnceps*: 105.

Example: *ea pars prīncipe poenās pependit*, this part first paid (*i.e.*, was the first to pay) the penalty.

4. Adjectives denoting a part, *e.g. summus, medius, īmus*: 106.

Example: *mediā nocte*, the middle part of the night, midnight.

Note 1. The indefinite pronoun *quisquam* and the corresponding adjective *ullus* are used mostly with negative expressions or with expressions implying a negative; *e.g., neque repertus est quisquam*, nor has any one been found. *sine ullo labore*, without any labor.

VOCABULARY

any, *ūllus, -a, -um* (neg., *nūllus*).
any one, *quisquam*, no fem., *quidquam* or *quicquam*.
any one, some one, *aliquis* (*-quis*), *aliqua, aliquid* (*-quod*).
any you please, *quīvīs, quaevīs, quidvīs* or *quodvīs*.
certain, *quīdam, quaedam, quiddam* or *quoddam*.
deserter, fugitive, *perfuga, -ae*, f.
die, *morior, morī* or *morīrī, mortuus sum*.
each, each one, every, *quisque, quaeque, quidque* or *quodque*.
follow, pursue, *sequor, sequī, secūtus sum*.
late at night, *multā nocte*.
long, for a long time, *diū*.

middle, *medius, -a, -um.*
native land, fatherland, *patria, -ae,* **f.**
numerous, in large numbers, *frequēns, -entis* (in pl.).
refuse, *recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.*
reward, *praemium, -ī,* **n.**
robber, *latrō, -ōnis,* **m.**
secretly, in secret, *sēcrētō.*
some (pl.), *nōn nūllī, -ae, -a.*
take, capture, *capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum.*
trouble, *negōtium, -ī,* **n.**
way, manner, *modus, -ī,* **m.**

EXERCISE 1

1. Some one of (*ex*) the soldiers reported that the general was afraid (the general to be afraid). 2. This one legion dares to attack any number you please (*quīvīs*) of the enemy. 3. This man has never been of (for) any assistance (help) to us. 4. [In] no way can we find out what reward has been given to each one. 5. After this had been announced, some went forth from the camp late at night. 6. These men are all most valiant (very brave), and no one (nor has any one) of them ever refused to die for (*prō*) his native land. 7. I have learned that a certain man talked with him in-secret for-a-long-time. 8. Six cohorts are-pursuing, and it will be no trouble (nor will it be anything of trouble) to capture the deserters. 9. Robbers from all parts of Gaul had gathered (come together) there in-very-large-numbers. 10. The messengers were sent, one in one direction, another in another. 11. On the middle of the hill was seen a large number of infantry.

EXERCISE 2 (B. G. II. 8)

1. This place is not suitable for drawing up a line of battle. 2. Caesar had placed the engines of war at the ends of the ditches. 3. On account of the great numbers (multitude) of the foe, the soldiers had need of great valor (to the soldiers was need, etc. — App. 89). 4. The soldiers do not know why (*quā dē causā*) Caesar has decided (App. 141) to refrain from battle. 5. The enemy, having

led their troops out of the camp (abl. abs.), were unable to surround our men. 6. Caesar was the first to do (first did) this. 7. A line of battle in array (drawn up) cannot occupy so much space (so much of place). 8. He knew that our men were not inferior in valor (App. 97) but *easily* in number. 9. Every-day (daily) he formed a battle-line on the top of the hill in front of the camp. 10. The legions which have been enlisted most recently will construct a ditch four hundred paces [long] (of four hundred p.).

LESSON XXI

Examine carefully the following, particularly the examples, which will not only serve as models for the sentences for translation in this lesson, but will serve also to make plain the real force of certain subordinate subjunctive constructions to be treated in subsequent lessons. (Read App. 131.)

I. Imperative Mood: 147.

ēdūc cōpiās, lead out the troops.

discēdite a fīnibus nostrīs, depart from our country.

II. Certain Independent Uses of the Subjunctive:—

1. In Exhortations or Commands — Volitive Subjunctive (the negative is *nē*).

pontem faciāmus, let us make a bridge.

uterque cum equitātū veniat, let each come with cavalry.

nē dīcant, let them not say.

2. In Wishes (negative is *nē*).

a. Possible. *nē longius prōgrediātur*, may he not advance farther! (Present subjunctive used.)

b. Unfulfilled in present. *utinam nē longius prōgrederētur*, would that he were not advancing farther! (Imperfect subjunctive used.)

c. Unfulfilled in past. *utinam nē longius prōgressus esset*, would that he had not advanced farther! (Pluperfect subjunctive used.)

III. Prohibitions (negative is *nē*): 147, *a*, 1, 2.

1. *nōlī* with infinitive.
   nōlī iniūriās īnferre, do not inflict injuries.
2. *nē* with present or perfect subjunctive, perfect usually.
   nē iniūriās intulerīs, do not inflict injuries.

Note 1. Observe that prohibitions are not expressed by an imperative with a negative, as one might expect they would be.

Note 2. Observe that we have no use for *nōn* in sentences like these. Subjunctive sentences expressing will (volition) and wish are negatived by *nē*. Certain rare exceptions to this rule need not here be taken into account.

VOCABULARY

bring, lead to, *addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum.*
finish (do up), complete, weaken, *cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.*
indignity, *indīgnitās, -tātis,* **f.**
insult, *contumēlia, -ae,* **f.**
ready, prepared, *parātus, -a, -um.*
three days, space of, *trāduum, -ī,* **n.**

EXERCISE 1

1. Bring (*addūcō*) the hostages to me within three days (App. 100). 2. Hurry (hasten) home and tell your brother (not acc.) that we have need of him (need of him — App. 89 — to be to us). 3. Let us hold (*teneō*) in memory the valor and the victories of our fathers. 4. Let us not endure these indignities and insults. 5. Let him not rescue himself through-the-help-of (*per*) his friends. 6. May our cavalry return at day-break! 7. Would that we were ready for (*ad* with gerundive construction) waging war! 8. Oh! that (would that) we had not gone forth from

home! 9. Do not forget friends. 10. Do not think that the war has been finished by the capture of this town (this town having been captured).

EXERCISE 2 (B. G. II. 9)

1. Hasten (use plural) to the river and tear down the bridge. 2. After the bridge has been torn down (abl. abs.), lead back the troops to our camp. 3. In the meantime we shall have a cavalry battle (shall contend in a cavalry battle) between the camp and the march. 4. The enemy will attempt to keep our men from supplies. 5. May they not find the ford which is behind our camp! 6. We must begin to cross (a beginning of crossing must be made by us, App. 71) at that point (there). 7. A ford of the Axona was found by the cavalrymen (App. 85) of the enemy, which[1] was of great service to them. 8. The Belgians knew that the lieutenant Quintus Titurius was in command of (had) this fort (App. 67, *c*). 9. Oh! that (would that) they had not attacked our men entangled (impeded) in the river! 10. Do not carry on this great war with a part of your army.

LESSON XXII

1. Sequence of Tenses: 128.
2. Commands in Indirect Discourse: 154, *c*; 145, *a*, Note.
3. Noun or Substantive Clauses Defined: 143.
4. Certain Substantive Clauses with *ut* or *nē*: 145, *a*.

Note 1. The use of the Latin tenses in both principal and subordinate clauses is more a matter of common sense than of rule. A student who has a good idea of the meanings of the tenses of

[1] When the antecedent of a relative pronoun is a clause, the demonstrative *id* is frequently used to represent the clause before the relative is brought in; hence here, *id quod*, instead of merely *quod*.

the indicative in principal clauses should have little difficulty with tenses of the indicative or subjunctive in subordinate clauses. Speaking generally, the tenses are managed about as we should expect. Examples: —

they do not know where they are, *nesciunt ubi sint.*

they did not know where they were, *nesciēbant ubi essent.*

they do not know where they have been, *nesciunt ubi fuerint.*

they did not know where they had been, *nesciēbant ubi fuissent.*

Now without any rule for the sequence of tenses, one would most naturally use the present subjunctive for *are*, the imperfect for *were*, the perfect for *have been*, and the pluperfect for *had been* in the above sentences.

A little less obvious is the use in such sentences as the following: —

I advise you to go (that you should go), *moneō ut eās.*

I advised you to go (that you should go), *monuī ut īrēs.*

Here both *eās* and *īrēs* refer to time subsequent (future) to that of the verb on which they depend. (Any subjunctive tense has this power of expressing relatively future time.) But as *eās* expresses futurity *reckoned from a present point of view* (*moneō*), it naturally stands in the *present* tense, and as *īrēs* expresses futurity *reckoned from a past point of view* (*monuī*), it naturally stands in an appropriate *past* tense.

Note 2. Substantive clauses with *ut* and *nē* are in many cases independent commands, exhortations, wishes, or prohibitions, that have been somewhat disguised by being made to serve as subordinate clauses. Examples: —

petunt Bellovacī ut clēmentiā ūtātur, the Bellovaci beg that he may show (use) mercy. (Original — a request, which may be classed as a wish: may you show mercy, *clēmentiā ūtāris*).

dat negōtium Senonibus ut cognōscant, he gives to the Senones the commission that they should find out. (Original — a command: find out, *cognōscite.*)

VOCABULARY

arms, weapons, *arma, -ōrum*, **n.**

beg, seek, *petō, -ere, petīvī, petītum.*

council, *concilium, -ī*, **n.**

cut off, shut off, *interclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum.*

decide, *cōnstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtum.*

flank, side, *latus, -eris*, **n.**

former, *prīstinus, -a, -um.*
grant, *concēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum.*
nothing, *nihil* (indecl.).
remain, *remaneō, -ēre, -mānsī, -mānsum.*
retain, *retineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum.*
return, go back, *redeō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itum.*
supplies, *commeātus, -ūs,* **m.**
surround, come around, *circumveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum.*
throw, hurl, *coniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum.*
unprotected, open, *apertus, -a, -um.*
urge, exhort, *cohortor, -ārī, -hortātus sum.*
woman, *mulier, mulieris,* **f.**

EXERCISE 1

1. Concerning your opinion that the shortest road is (infin.) the best, I will say nothing. 2. Concerning your opinion that we should go back by the same road (original: you should go back, etc.), I will say nothing. 3. Find out these things. What did he say? He said that we should find out these things. 4. Do not throw javelins. What did he say? He said that you should not throw javelins. 5. They have persuaded the Aquitanians (not acc.) to cut (that they should cut) the Romans off from supplies. 6. He urged the soldiers to keep in mind (retain the memory of) former victories. 7. Caesar advised Labienus to surround the enemy on the unprotected flank. 8. They begged that he should not remain in the camp. 9. I cannot grant you the privilege of retaining your arms (I cannot grant that you should retain, etc.). 10. Having called a council (abl. abs.), they decided that the women and children should go out of the town (original: let the women and children go, etc.).

EXERCISE 2 (B. G. II. 10)

1. We cannot persuade them to delay [any] longer. 2. They decided that the cavalry should be the first to cross (should first [adj. — Lesson XX, 3] cross) the river.

3. A great number of them attacked our men floundering (impeded) in the river. 4. Our men knew that the enemy were drawing-near (approaching) to fight (for the sake of fighting). 5. They will convene from-all-quarters to defend the Bellovaci (for defending, etc. — App. 164, *c*). 6. Caesar was informed that a council had been called (inf.) by the enemy. 7. The slingers and bowmen who had been sent with the light-armed Numidians did not use javelins. 8. Though the first had been repulsed (abl. abs.), nevertheless (*tamen*), the rest, with-the-utmost-daring, made-an-attempt (attempted) to cross. 9. Let us defend our own territories rather than those of others. 10. Each-man knows that his hope in-regard-to seeing his home has disappointed him.

LESSON XXIII

1. Impersonal Verbs: 119, *a*, *b*; 67, *b*, Note.

2. Certain Substantive Uses of the Infinitive with or without Subject Accusative: 149.

3. The Infinitive Construction after Certain Verbs — *iubeō vetō, patior, cōgō*, etc.: 151.

4. The impersonal *interest* with Genitive Case: 65, *c* (Review 65, *e*).

Note 1. It would seem natural that *iubeō* (command) and *imperō* (command), having the same meaning, should govern the same construction, but such is not the case. *Iubeō* regularly takes the infinitive, and *imperō* regularly takes a subjunctive substantive clause (Lesson XXII, Note 2). Examples: —

eōs accēdere iussit, he ordered them to approach.

eīs imperāvit ut accēderent, he ordered them to approach.

Note 2. After some verbs, *e.g.*, *cōgō*, *interest*, *licet*, *oportet*, *permittō* (oftener with *ut* clause), *placet*, either an infinitive or a subjunctive substantive clause may be used.

placuit eī ut lēgātōs mitterent he decided (it pleased him) to send (that he should send) ambassadors.

māiōrī partī placuit castra dēfendere, the majority preferred (it pleased, etc.) to defend the camp.

Note 3. Subjunctive substantive clauses with *oportet* are never to be introduced by *ut;* such clauses with *licet*, seldom.

hōc faciāmus oportet, we ought to do this.

This usage applies to some extent to many other verbs.

VOCABULARY

allow, suffer, permit, *licet, -ēre, licuit;* or *patior, -ī, passus sum;* or *permittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.*

command, order, *imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.*

compel, *cōgō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum* (see Vocab. of Lesson IV).

decide (when meaning it is pleasing), *placet, -ēre, placuit.*

easy, *facilis, -e.*

interest, be of importance, *interest, -esse, -fuit.*

order, command, *iubeō, -ēre, [illegible].*

ought, is necessary or proper, *oportet, -ēre, oportuit.*

tear down, *interscindō, -ere, -scidī, -scissum.*

take away, *abripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptum.*

EXERCISE 1

1. It is not easy to remember everything (all things — Lesson XI, Note 3). 2. It has been said that the Germans are braver than the Gauls. 3. They are not allowed (it is not allowed to them) to do this. 4. Caesar decided (it pleased Caesar) to put Decimus Brutus in command of the fleet (67, c). 5. He ordered (use *iubeō*) the Aduatuci to give themselves up, surrender themselves and all their possessions. 6. He had commanded (use *imperō*) the Britons to send hostages into Gaul. 7. We cannot suffer you to take away (*ēripiō*) lands (fields) from our friends (App. 68). 8. This Roman cannot by the capture of one town (abl. abs.) compel us to beg peace of (Lesson XVII, Note 2) him (reflex.). 9. It is to the interest of the Germans (it interests the Germans) to tear down the bridges. 10. It is of great (*māgnī*) [importance] that the Romans should return to (*in*) Gaul immediately. 11. They have

been persuaded (App. 67, *b*, note) to resist the king. 12. Our children ought not to be taken away from us (dat.).

EXERCISE 2 (B. G. II. 11)

1. Although their ranks were in great disorder (abl. abs.), still (*tamen*) those-in-front seemed to be out of (absent-from) danger. 2. The cavalry, over whom (App. 67, *c*) Quintus Pedius is in command, will delay the rear according to orders (as has been ordered). 3. Caesar had ordered the soldiers to return to camp toward sunset. 4. We do not clearly see why they are decamping (App. 141) in the second watch. 5. On account of the exceedingly large number (very great multitude) of the fugitives (fleeing [ones]) the van was many miles (acc. or abl.) distant from the rear. 6. He gave immediate command to (immediately commanded) scouts to investigate (find out) the matter. 7. He saw that each one could do this without any danger. 8. The scouts learned at daybreak that the departure of this great multitude was very similar to a flight. 9. The men-in-the-rear, who had made a stand and were fighting bravely, were a protection (App. 69) to those-in-front. 10. Caesar, fearing a trick, kept his men in camp a large part (App. 80) of the night.

LESSON XXIV

1. Substantive Clauses introduced by *ut* (that not) and *nē* (that) after Verbs of Fearing: 145, *b*.

2. Purpose Clauses introduced by *ut* (that), *nē* (that not), or a Relative: 135.

3. *Quō* introducing Purpose Clause containing Comparative: 135, *a*.

4. Other ways of expressing Purpose: 135, *a*, Note.

Note 1. To a student familiar with *ut* meaning *that* and *nē* meaning *that not*, as, for example, in the substantive *ut* and *nē* clauses already considered and in purpose clauses, it naturally seems peculiar that these meanings should be exactly reversed after verbs of fearing, *nē* with these meaning *that not* and *nī* meaning *that*. The reason is a simple one. Take the following: *nē audiat . . . timeō*, let him not hear . . . I am afraid (he will). *Nē* is naturally used here (Lesson XXI, II. 1). Now put *timeō* first: *timeō . . . nē audiat*, I am afraid . . . let him not hear. Considered as one sentence this practically means, I am afraid that he will hear. Thus *nē* gets the meaning *that*. *Ut*, which in other kinds of clauses is in meaning the opposite of *ne*, contrasts with it here also, and to do so must mean *that not*.

Caution. Do not try to express purpose by using the Latin infinitive.

VOCABULARY

before, *ante*, prep. with acc.
climb, ascend, *ascendō, -ere, ascendī, ascēnsum.*
command, order . . . according to, *iussū* (only in abl. sing.).
defender, *dēfēnsor, -ōris*, m.
from all directions | **sides**, *undique.*
set [*ob-cadō,* **fall**], *occidō, -ere, -cidī, -cāsum.*
son, *fīlius, -ī*, m.
storm, tempest, *tempestās, -tātis*, f.
sun, *sōl, sōlis*, m.

EXERCISE 1

1. I fear that this will be a severe (great) storm. 2. The soldiers were afraid that the cavalry might not return before the battle. 3. These remained to talk (that they might talk with the general in private (secretly). 4. He said this that we might not think him to-be-afraid. 5. Caesar sent scouts to find out (who should, etc.) in what direction the Helvetians were marching (App. 141). 6. The Gauls fortified the camp according-to-the-command of Vercingetorix that they might be able more easily to withstand (sustain) the attacks of the Romans. 7. The townspeople, after their bravest defenders had been slain (abl. abs.) sent men (use proper

form of *is*) to say that they would surrender all their weapons. 8. They are afraid that envoys will come to demand the king's son as a hostage. 9. We climbed the mountain in order longer to see the setting sun. 10. Translate in three ways (*ut* clause; *ad* with gerundive — App. 164, *c*; and *causā* with gerundive — App. 164, *a*): They came together from all directions to defend the town.

EXERCISE 2 (B. G. II. 12)

1. Translate in two ways: The Suessiones had a very large town. 2. The Gauls had heard that Caesar was coming to attack Noviodunum. 3. Caesar was afraid that the Suessiones would try to defend that town. 4. Having seen the height of the wall (abl. abs.), he knew that there was need (*opus*) of a very large agger (App. 89). 5. They mounted (*ascendō*) the wall in order to see the works. 6. The Gauls had not heard with how great (*quantus*) swiftness the Romans could (were able to — App. 141) throw-up an agger. 7. Sheds, which were useful (for use) for attacking, were being prepared. 8. The Remi were afraid that Caesar would not be able to capture this town. 9. Ambassadors were sent by the Suessiones to beg that the town might be spared. 10. The Remi will beg Caesar (Lesson XVII, Note 2) to spare the Suessiones.

LESSON XXV

1. Relative Clauses with the Indicative: 133, *a*, *b*.
2. Descriptive (Characteristic) Clauses: 134.

Note 1. In the sentence *secūtae sunt tempestātēs quae nostrōs in castrīs continērent*, the meaning is not, there followed storms, and they kept our men in camp, but rather, as shown by the mood, there followed storms such as kept our men in camp. The relative clause is not loosely attached to the main clause to

add something of possible interest, but is closely attached to its antecedent *and describes it* (What kind of storms? Storms severe enough to keep, etc.). Such closely attached descriptive clauses regularly take the subjunctive mood. Frequently indicative relative clauses are closely attached, but they regularly do not describe, but merely point out, as, *eā legiōne quam sēcum habēbat*, with that legion which he had with him. Here the relative clause does not tell *what kind of* a legion, but *what* legion, therefore the mood is indicative.

Note 2. After negative expressions like *nēmō erat quī . . .* (there was no one who . . .) and *neque repertus est quisquam quī . . .* (nor has any one been found who . . .) a descriptive subjunctive clause is *always* used; also *generally* after similar positive expressions like *sunt quī . . .* (there are [some] who . . .) and *multī erant quī . . .* (there were many who . . .): —

neque repertus est quisquam quī morī recūsāret, and no one has been found who refused to die (*What sort of* a person? A *refusing-to-die* person).

Note 3. Instead of being introduced by the relative pronoun, relative clauses, either determining or descriptive, may be introduced by relative adverbs, *quā* (where), *cum* (when), etc.: —

fuit tempus cum Germānōs Gallī virtūte superārent, there was a time when the Gauls surpassed the Germans in valor. (The *cum*-clause describes *tempus* and therefore is subjunctive.)

VOCABULARY

all the others, the rest, *cēterī, -ae, -a.*
along with, together with, *cum.*
at home, *domī.*
commend, praise, *laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.*
here, *hīc.*
Italy, *Ītalia, -ae,* f.
leadership, *prīncipātus, -ūs,* m.
multitude, *multitūdō, -inis,* f.
(powerful), be very powerful, *plūrimum posse* (lit., be able very much).
when, *cum.*
where, *quā.*

EXERCISE 1

1. Along with all-the-others was Dumnorix the Haeduan, of (*dē*) whom mention has been made by us (it has been spoken, etc.) before. 2. Dumnorix was a man who had

always wished to be very powerful at home. 3. Two men were striving for (*dē*) leadership, one of whom sought help from Caesar. 4. There were in this legion *two* centurions who were not afraid on account of the multitude of the foe. 5. Gaius Fabius led a legion into the territory of the Atrebates, where he knew Caesar must march (a journey must be made by Caesar). 6. Who is there that has not heard that Ariovistus was a German king? 7. There is no one in this legion who is braver than you. 8. There were no other ships in which they could return, if these were lost (abl. abs.). 9. The soldiers did nothing which the general could not commend. 10. There was a time when there were no cities in Italy.

EXERCISE 2 (B. G. II. 13)

1. There was not a woman in the town who did not stretch out her hands to the Romans. 2. The women and children who were on (*in*) the wall had no weapons. 3. They begged (sought from) the Romans not to come (App. 145, *a*) into the town. 4. The older men hastened to the camp and put themselves under the protection of Caesar. 5. All had come out of the town to beg for peace. 6. The Bellovaci indicated that they would give themselves up and all their possessions. 7. Caesar, according to his custom, commanded (*iubeō* or *imperō*) the Bellovaci (Lesson XXIII, Note 1) to bring to him the first [men] of the state. 8. They did not know whether (Lesson XII, Note 5, 3) Caesar would accept (act. periphrastic) their capitulation (receive them into surrender) or not. 9. After peace had been concluded (*faciō*), the weapons which were in the town were given up. 10. They led to the Roman camp two sons of Galba, whom Caesar had accepted as hostages.

LESSON XXVI

1. Review of Purpose Clauses: 135, *a*.
2. Review of Descriptive (Characteristic) Clauses: 134; Lesson XXV, Note 1.
3. Clauses of Result introduced by *ut* and *ut nōn*: 136, *a*.
4. Clauses of Result introduced by a relative: 134, *b*.

Note 1. Ordinarily a sharp line may be drawn between clauses of purpose and clauses of result: —

quam ob rem mansit? mansit ut mēcum conloquerētur. Why did he stay? He stayed *to converse with me.* (Purpose.)

quam prope accesserant hostēs? tam prope accesserant ut oculōs vidēre possēmus. How near had the enemy come? They had come so near *that we could see their eyes.* (Result.)

Note 2. No sharp line can be drawn between descriptive clauses and clauses of result. Indeed, all descriptive clauses contain a consecutive (result) idea; hence both these kinds of clauses might rationally be called consecutive, or result, clauses. Still, in some the descriptive idea seems more prominent, and in others the result idea. The use of words meaning *such* or *so* in the antecedent clause brings the result idea into greater prominence.

reperti sunt complures quī scūta manibus revellerent et dēsuper vulnerārent, many were found *who pulled away the shields with their hands and inflicted wounds from above.* (Descriptive.)

nēmō tam stultus erit quī nōn videat, no one will be so foolish *as not to (that he will not) see.* (Result.)

Note 3. The negative of result clauses is *nōn*, but negative purpose clauses, being of volitive origin, require *nē*.

VOCABULARY

fear, *vereor, -ērī, ceritus sum.*
(inflict), inflict punishment on any one, *dē aliquo supplicium sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum.*
live, *vīvō, -ere, vīxī, vīctum.*
punishment, *supplicium, -ī,* **n.**
region, *regio, -onis* **f.**
severe, heavy, *gravis, -e.*
so great (large), *tantus, -a, -um.*
state, *rēs pūblica, rei pūblicae,* **f.,** or *cīvitās, -tātis,* **f.**
terrify (thoroughly), *perterreō, -ēre, -terruī, -territum.*
throw away, *abiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum.*
trick, ambush, *insidiae, -arum,* **f.**
wound, *vulnus, -eris,* **n.**
wretched, *miser, -era, -erum.*

EXERCISE 1

1. Ariovistus said that he had led so great an army across the Rhine in order to help (bear aid to) the Sequanians. 2. There were many who wished to help us, but few who could. 3. Men (*eī*) who are enemies to the state ought (*oportet* — Lesson XXIII. Notes 2 and 3) not be made consuls. 4. Few have been found so wretched as not to wish to live. 5. Crassus proceeded into Aquitania that auxiliaries might not be sent from those regions into Gaul. 6. A certain Greek general inflicted on his soldiers so severe punishment that they feared him more (*potius*) than [they did] the enemy. 7. Many of them were so terrified that they threw away their weapons (abl. abs.) and fled. 8. Publius Sextius has been weakened by wounds so severe that he cannot hold himself up (sustain himself). 9. They went out of camp with so great a tumult that Caesar feared a trick. 10. The Haeduans had suffered (received) such a calamity that they could no longer (*nōn iam*) defend themselves from the Germans.

EXERCISE 2 (B. G. II. 14)

1. A friendship which brings slavery on the state must not be sought by us (App. 71). 2. The Haeduans have so long (*tam diū*) been under the protection of the Romans that they are accustomed (perfect) to endure wars in their behalf. 3. We know how great indignities and insults have been inflicted (App. 141) on them (App. 67, *c*). 4. They said that by those wars the state had been reduced to slavery. 5. The authority of the Haeduans must be increased by the Roman people. 6. The chief-men of the Haeduan state employed (used) this policy (*cōnsilium*) at all times. 7. Those men fled to Britain to seek help (genitive with *causā*). 8. Diviciacus begged the Haeduans

not to revolt (App. 145 *a*) from the Romans. 9. It has been said that the influence of that state had been increased by the friendship of the Roman people. 10. Having suffered all these calamities, they dismissed their troops.

LESSON XXVII

1. Substantive Clauses with *quod:* 144.

2. Review of Substantive Clauses with *ut* and *nē:* 145, *a*, *b*; Lesson XXII, Note 2.

3. Substantive Clauses (of the result type) with *ut:* 145, c.

Note 1. It is instructive to note how a pure clause of result, which is adverbial, may pass into a substantive clause which, though retaining the consecutive (result) form, may have little or none of the consecutive meaning: —

1. They made such an outcry that their departure seemed like a flight, *[illegible]*. Plainly result.

2. They made their departure seem like a flight, *fēcērunt ut . . . vidērētur.* Result idea not so plain, as the *ut*-clause is a sort of object.

3. The result was that their departure seemed like a flight, *factum est ut . . . vidērētur.* The *ut*-clause is felt to be the subject, so that the result idea seems practically extinguished.

With the last (3) compare *accēdēbat ut tempestātem ferrent,* there was the additional fact (it was added) that they [the ships] rode out the storm. Here there is not the faintest idea of result, although the *ut*-clause is, in origin, related to result clauses.

Note 2. After *accēdit* and *accidit* either an indicative *quod*-clause or a subjunctive *ut*-clause may be used, though *accidit* prefers the *ut*-clause: —

accēdēbat hūc quod *Dumnorix dixerat,* furthermore (it was added to this that) Dumnorix had said.

Compare *accēdēbat* ut, etc., above.

Note 3. Substantive *quod*-clauses frequently explain a noun, pronoun (*e.g.*, *id*, *illud*), or adjective used substantively: —

hīs rēbus ūnum repūgnābat quod cognōverat, etc., one [consideration] opposed these views, [viz.,] that he had learned, etc.

Note 4. Substantive *ut*-clauses may be used, as indicated, after *faciō, factum est, accīdit, accidit;* also after *fit* (it happens), *consuētūdō est* (it is the custom), *iūs est* (it is the law), *fore* (it would be [that]), and similar expressions : —

iūs est bellī ut quī vīcerint imperent, etc., it is the law of war that those who have conquered should rule, etc.

VOCABULARY

(add), be added, *accīdo, -ere, -cessī, -cessum* (lit., go to, approach; used as pass. of *addō*).
against, *contrā*, prep. with acc.
bring up, *supportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.*
conveniently, *commodē.*
custom, *cōnsuētūdō, -inis,* f.
delay, *moror, -ārī, morātus sum.*
hasty, *repentīnus, -a, -um.*
lucky, fortunate, *opportūnus, -a, -um.*
number, *numerus, -ī,* m.
plan, counsel, *cōnsilium, -ī,* n.
plunder, *praedor, -ārī, praedātus sum.*
prepare, make ready, *parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.*
(result), the result was, *factum est* (lit., it was made).

EXERCISE 1

1. The result was that grain could not be brought up conveniently enough (sufficiently e.). 2. There was the additional fact (it was added) that he had a large army and a large number of cavalry. 3. We saw that it would happen (be — *fore*) that no one would be able (imperf. subj.) to resist him (App. 67, *b*). 4. For (*dē*) these reasons (causes) it happened that this tribe, though having made all preparations (all things having been prepared) for (*ad*) departing, nevertheless delayed. 5. A very lucky thing happened [namely], that (*quod*) the enemy's cavalry went away on that day to plunder. 6. This was the custom of the Gauls, to form[1] (take) hasty plans. 7. The reason for (of) returning was that (*quod*) the Germans had fled into the forests. 8. Furthermore (it was added that) the Britons knew that the Romans must win-

[1] Either an *ut*-clause or an infin. may be used.

ter in Gaul. 9. This has always been a great help to me [namely], that I have a good memory. 10. Vercingetorix tried to persuade all the Gauls to contend in arms against the Romans.

EXERCISE 2 (B. G. II. 15)

1. Caesar found out that these were men of great influence. 2. The Nervii surpassed the Ambiani in all respects (in respect to all things). 3. They considered (thought) that the rest of the Belgians had thrown away their ancestral courage. 4. There is nothing which weakens (Lesson XXV, Note 2) courage more (*plus*) than wine. 5. These warlike men did not permit merchants to bring in articles tending to luxury. 6. Caesar inquired (Lesson XVII, Note 2) of Divitiacus why the Nervii had not sent (App. 141) ambassadors. 7. According to their customs the Nervii ordered (Lesson XXIII, Note 1) merchants who had brought in wine to depart (*discēdo*) from their territory. 8. It is not the custom among warlike men to surrender arms and give hostages. 9. Having found out these facts (things), the Nervii declared that they would not surrender. 10. Out of respect to Divitiacus the Ambiani were taken by Caesar (App. 85) under his protection and spared.

LESSON XXVIII

Clauses with *nē, quīn,* and *quōminus:* 145, *e.*

Note 1. The conjunction *quīn* is said originally to have meant "whereby not," being made up of an old pronominal form *quī* (whereby) and *nē,* while *quōminus* (*quō*+*minus*) means "whereby the less" (="whereby not").

Note 2. *Quīn* is used only after negative expressions; *quōminus* after either a positive or a negative; *nē* usually after a positive: —

retinērī nōn poterant quīn *tēla conicerent,* they could not be prevented from throwing javelins (whereby they should not, etc.).

ventō tenēbantur quōminus *venīre possent*, they (the ships) were held by the wind from being able to come (whereby they were not able, etc.).

nōn recūsāvit quōminus *poenam subīret*, he did not refuse to submit to punishment.

impedior nē *plūra dīcam*, I am hindered from saying more.

Note 3. *Non dubitō* (I do not doubt) and *nōn est dubium* (it is not doubtful) are regularly used with *quīn*. But *dubitō* meaning *hesitate* regularly takes the infinitive.

Note 4. A few frequently occurring words of opposition that may be followed by a *quīn* or *quōminus* clause are *dēterreō* (deter), *impediō* (hinder), *prohibeō* (prevent), and *recūsō* (refuse). Of these *prohibeō* is much oftener followed by the infinitive (App. 151).

VOCABULARY

deter, prevent, *dēterreō, -ēre, -terruī, -territum.*

doubt, hesitate, *dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.*

doubtful, *dubius, -a, -um.*

hinder, impede, *impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.*

however, moreover, *autem* (never first in a sentence).

(personal) enemy, *inimīcus, -ī,* **m.** (distinguished from *hostis,* **public enemy**).

pity, mercy, *misericordia, -ae,* **f.**

Pompey, *Pompēius, -ī,* **m.**

prevent, prohibit, *prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.*

surpass, excel, *praecēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum.*

swiftness, speed, *celeritās, -tātis,* **f.**

(that), but that, *quīn* (used after negative expressions) or *quōminus* (used after expressions either positive or negative).

toward, *in* with acc.

EXERCISE 1

1. Will they try to hinder us from returning by this road? 2. The boys could not be deterred from going through this field. 3. The storm did not prevent them from marching twenty miles on that day. 4. He always prohibited the soldiers from killing women and children. 5. No one doubts that Caesar often had pity on (used pity towards) personal enemies and the foes of the state. 6. There is no doubt (it is not doubtful) that this will be (act. periphrastic) most dangerous to our state. **7. No**

one can doubt that many animals surpass men in swiftness. 8. There was no doubt that Caesar, having subdued all Gaul, wished to enjoy (use) peace. 9. He did not long hesitate, however, to lead his legions into Italy to crush Pompey. 10. Do you say that the army refused to follow him on that occasion?

EXERCISE 2 (B. G. II. 16)

1. The Nervii had been persuaded (App. 67, *b*, Note) to await there the arrival of the Atrebates. 2. They had learned from captives that Caesar had been marching for three days (App. 80) through their territory. 3. Nothing can prevent the Atrebates from trying the fortune of war along with the Nervii. 4. These swamps were more than ten miles distant from the camp. 5. Captives had found out that the Nervii, having hastily gathered (thrown together) the women into the marsh-lands (abl. abs.), were waiting for the forces of their neighbors. 6. The army had no access to this place (on account of the swamps). 7. The women did not hesitate to go to a place where the Romans could not find them (App. 134). 8. Let us prevent (Lesson XXI, II. 1) them from encamping in our own territory or that of our neighbors (order — our own or of our neighbors' territory). 9. The Nervii had encamped there in order to wait for their neighbors, who were on the march. 10. Those who are useless for fighting will not refuse to remain (*maneo*) in the marsh-lands many days.

LESSON XXIX

1. The temporal Conjunctions *ubi*, *ut* (when), *postquam*, *posteā quam*, *cum prīmum*, and *simul atque* with the Indicative: 137, *a*.

2. *Cum*-temporal: 137, *b*. (Review Lesson XXV, Note 3.)

Note 1. *Cum*-temporal clauses, being relative, follow the rules which govern other relative clauses; that is, they take the indicative when their main function is to point out (determine which), and the subjunctive when their main function is to describe.

Note 2. *Cum*-temporal Clauses with Indicative: —

1. *tum cum in Asiā rēs māgnās permultī āmīserant, scīmus Rōmae fidem concidisse*, at that time when very many had lost large fortunes in Asia, we know that credit failed at Rome. The main intention of the *cum*-clause is *to point out the time*, to establish a *temporal* connection between financial disaster in Asia and financial disaster at Rome.

2. *cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterīus factiōnis prīncipēs erant Aeduī*, when Caesar came into Gaul, the Aedui were leaders of the one party. The temporal idea of the *cum*-clause is uppermost. The leadership may have shifted from tribe to tribe, but *at the time of Caesar's arrival*, the *Aedui* were leaders.

Note 3. If the main intention of a *cum*-temporal clause is not to point out a time or date, but rather to describe a situation or to give the circumstances under which something happened, the subjunctive is used: —

1. *in secundō proeliō cecidit Critiās cum fortissimē pugnāret*, in the second battle Critias fell while bravely fighting. Here the main intention of the *cum*-clause is plainly not to tell the time or date of the man's death, — *in secundō proeliō* does that, — but rather to tell the circumstances of it. He died *fighting*.

2. *cum ex captīvīs quaereret Caesar, reperiēbat*, etc., when Caesar inquired of captives, he found out, etc. The main intention of the *cum*-clause is not to show *when* Caesar found out. To be sure, it does show that, but the main bearing of the clause is to show the *circumstances*, the *way*, the *manner* of his finding out. He found out *on inquiring*.

Note 4. Sometimes it is hard to tell whether a *cum*-clause is in its main signification a *when*-clause (temporal) or a *since* (causal) or *although* (concessive or adversative) clause. Fortunately this causes no extra trouble in writing Latin, for when the temporal *cum*-clause can be regarded as expressing, in any degree, cause or concession, the subjunctive is used: —

1. *Germānī cum suōs interfīcī vidērent, sē ex castrīs ēiēcērunt*, when the Germans saw that their men were being killed, they rushed from the camp. Here a causal idea is associated with

the temporal: when (and because) they saw . . ., they rushed . . .

2. *cum omnibus de causis Caesar pācātam Galliam existimāret, subitum bellum coortum est*, when for all reasons Caesar considered Gaul to have been subdued, a sudden war arose. The temporal clause contains an adversative (concessive) idea: when (and although) he considered . . . war arose.

Note 5. It is helpful to remember that *cum* with a *perfect* is generally used to point out a time, and so takes the *indicative*, while *cum* with an *imperfect* or *pluperfect* is generally used to give the circumstances, and so with these tenses takes the *subjunctive*. To express present or future ideas *cum*-temporal regularly takes the *indicative*, but the descriptive notion is sometimes strong enough in clauses of future reference to require the subjunctive.

VOCABULARY

after, *postquam* or *postea quam*.
arrival, *adventus, -ūs,* **m.**
as soon as (when), *simul atque, cum prīmum*.
began, *coepī, coepisse, coeptus*.
booty, *praeda, -ae,* **f.**
conceal, hide, *cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*.
disembark, *nāvī ēgredior, -ī, -gressus sum*.
inside, *intrā,* prep. with acc.
lay waste, devastate, *vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*.
night, *nox, noctis,* **f.**
pursue, *cōnsector, -ārī, -ātus sum*.
reason, cause, *causa, -ae,* **f.**
safe, *tūtus, -a, -um*.
scatter, disperse, *dispergō, -ere, -spersī, -spersum*.
shore, *lītus, -oris,* **n.**
when, *ubi, ut, cum*.
winter-quarters, *hīberna, -ōrum,* **n.**

EXERCISE 1

1. After Caesar arrived there, he for (*dē*) two reasons decided to cross the Rhine. 2. When (use *ubi*) the enemy began to retreat, Caesar sent the cavalry to pursue them. 3. Indutiomarus fled as soon as he was informed of Caesar's arrival. 4. As soon as the ships came to land, the legions disembarked. 5. When (use *ubi*) the Britons saw that a large number of boats was coming, they brought

together all their forces to the shore. 6. When (use *cum*) it is necessary (*opus*), the army marches all night. 7. When (use *cum*) they saw that the Romans were inside the gates, they rushed (*sē ēiciō*) from (*ex*) the town. 8. When (*cum*) Volusenus had come with the cavalry, he learned that the Germans had on that day attacked the camp. 9. When they had retreated across the Rhine with that booty which they had concealed in the woods (forests), they were safe. 10. When he had scattered the enemy (abl. abs.) [and] laid waste their fields (abl. abs.), he led his army into winter-quarters.

EXERCISE 2 (B. G. II. 17)

1. Certain-ones of those who were following Caesar during those days observed closely the legions' customary-manner (*cōnsuētūdō*) of march. 2. When they had shown this to the Nervii, all thought that the Roman army could easily be checked. 3. Not daring (when — *cum* — they did not dare) to attack all the legions simultaneously (*simul*), they decided (*statuō*) to attack the first. 4. They had learned from the Gauls that this legion was a long distance away from the rest of the legions. 5. The Nervii had no cavalry, but were very strong (*plūrimum valeō*) in infantry. 6. Moreover (*autem*, not first) hedges prevented Caesar's cavalry from coming (Lesson XXVIII, Note 2) against (*ad*) them. 7. Having adopted (*capiō*) this plan, they selected a suitable place for a camp. 8. When (*ubi*) Caesar learned that the Nervii were not far away, he sent forward the cavalry.

LESSON XXX

1. *Dum*, meaning "while," with present Indicative: 137, *c*.

2. *Dum*, *dōnec*, or *quoad*, meaning "as long as," with Indicative: 137, *d*.

3. *Dum, dōnec,* or *quoad,* meaning "until": 137, *e.*
4. *Antequam* and *priusquam:* 137, *f.*

Examples: —

1. *dum haec geruntur, Caesarī nūntiātum est,* while these things were going on, it was reported to Caesar. (Note the Latin historical present with *dum* [while].)

dum, dōnec, quoad

2. *dum anima est, spēs esse dīcitur,* as long as there is life, there is said to be hope. (Any tense of the indicative may be used with *dum,* etc., meaning "as long as."

dum, dōnec, quoad

3. *a. in senātū fuit eō diē quoad senātus est dīmissus,* he was in the senate that day until the senate was dismissed. ("Until" clause of past fact — indicative.)

dum, dōnec, quoad

b. dum nāvēs eō convenīrent, exspectāvit, he waited until the ships should assemble at that place. ("Until" clause of anticipation from *past point of view* — always subjunctive.)

antequam, priusquam

4. *a. nec prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad Rhēnum pervēnērunt,* and they did not cease to flee before they arrived at the Rhine. (*prius quam* with clause of past fact — indicative. Note that *prius* stands in the main clause, while *quam* stands in the subordinate one. Both *antequam* and *priusquam* may be thus divided, especially after negatives.)

antequam, priusquam

b. priusquam sē hostēs reciperent, Noviodūnum contendit, before the enemy should recover themselves, he hastened to Noviodunum. (*priusquam* clause of anticipation from past point of view — always subjunctive. *Antequam* might have been used.)

Note 1. In clauses introduced by *dum, dōnec,* or *quoad,* meaning "until," or by *antequam* or *priusquam,* futurity (anticipation)

from the present point of view, that is, *real futurity*, is expressed by the present or future perfect indicative or the present subjunctive: —

1. *dēlīberā hōc dum ego* { *redeō*[1] / *redierō* / *redeam* }, consider this till I return.

2. *antequam* { *veniat*[1] / *vēnerit* / *venit* }, *litterās mittet*, before he comes he will send a letter.

VOCABULARY

approach, draw near, *accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum.*
as long as, *dum, dōnec,* or *quoad.*
back, *tergum, -ī,* **n.** (*tergum vertere,* to flee).
battle-line, *aciēs, -ēī,* **f.**
before, *antequam* or *prīusquam.*
enroll, enlist, *cōnscrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum.*
(near), be near, be at hand, *subsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus.*
new, *novus, -a, -um.*
turn, *vertō, -ere, vertī, versum.*
until, *dum, dōnec,* or *quoad.*
unwilling . . . be, *nōlō, nōlle, nōluī.*
while, *dum.*
why, *quā dē causā.*

EXERCISE 1

1. While Caesar was building (making) the bridge, the Germans retreated into the forests. 2. As long as he lived, he defended us. 3. Wait until you become (*fīō*) consul. 4. The children were afraid until their father returned. 5. While he was delaying there, it was reported that the Germans were attacking the winter-quarters of these legions. 6. He held the soldiers in camp until he should find out why the Belgians were-going-away (departing). 7. The Germans were unwilling to begin battle before their cavalry should return. 8. Winter was at hand (near) before he was able to capture this town. 9. Having enrolled a new legion, he arrived at the winter-

[1] The tense actually used by the Latin author of this sentence. The others would have been equally good.

quarters before the Gauls should find out that he had departed from Italy. 10. Before our men should approach nearer, the whole battle-line of the Gauls took flight (turned their backs).

EXERCISE 2 (B. G. II. 19)

1. While the Nervii were arranging their ranks within the forests, our cavalry crossed the river. 2. The enemy did not attack before they saw that the legions were engaged (occupied) in the work. 3. They lay concealed in the woods until the legions should begin to fortify the camp. 4. The Roman legions could fortify a camp with incredible swiftness. 5. When the Nervii saw the legions and the baggage, they suddenly sent forward their cavalry. 6. According to their custom, they made the attack suddenly, so that our cavalry was thrown into great confusion. 7. Behind the six legions which Caesar was leading all the baggage had been placed. 8. We must fortify the camp before the two legions come which are bringing up the rear. 9. After the camp has been fortified (abl. abs.), we shall have a place to which we may retreat. 10. The Belgians cannot see from the forest how many (*quot*) legions have come.

LESSON XXXI

1. Mood of Subordinate Verbs in Indirect Discourse: 154. *b*

2. Tense of Subordinate Verbs in Indirect Discourse: 155, *a*, *b*; 128.

3. Causal Clauses with *quia*, *quoniam*, *quandō*, *quod*, *cum*, or a relative pronoun: 138, *a*, *b*.

Note 1. Observe in the following how the English does not suggest the *subjunctive*, the proper *mood* for subordinate verbs of indirect discourse, but does suggest the proper *tense* — which is very frequently the case.

Direct Discourse.	
The army which Caesar leads is valiant,	*exercitus quem Caesar dūcit fortis est.*
Indirect Discourse after Primary Tense.	
he *says* that the army which Caesar *leads* is valiant,	**dīcit** *exercitum quem Caesar* **dūcat** *fortem esse.*
Indirect Discourse after Secondary Tense.	
he *said* that the army which Caesar *led* was valiant,	**dīxit** *exercitum quem Caesar* **dūceret** *fortem esse.*

Note 2. When *quod*-causal takes the subjunctive in what is, *in form*, direct discourse, the clause is *really*, that is, *logically*, in a sort of indirect discourse (informal indirect discourse): *Brūtus īrātus erat*, **quod** *Caesar* **vellet** *rēx fierī*, Brutus was angry because [as he thought] Caesar wished to become king. The subjunctive *vellet* shows that the reason is quoted.

Note 3. Subjunctive with *quī* (= *cum is*, since he; *cum ego*, since I, etc.):—

peccāsse mihi videor quī ā tē discesserim, it seems to me that I have done wrong in separating from you (lit., I seem . . . who have [*i.e.*, since I have] separated . . .).

VOCABULARY

because, *quod.*
believe, *crēdō, -ere, crēdidī, crēditum.*
hate, *ōdī, ōdisse* (defective verb).
power, *potentia, -ae,* **f.**
since, *quia, quoniam, quandō,* or *cum.*

EXERCISE 1

1. All believe that when winter comes Caesar will go to Italy. 2. It was reported that the cavalry, which had been sent by the Treveri, having heard of this battle, had returned home. 3. I wrote you this because I thought that you wished to be informed of it. 4. Since (*cum*) these things are so (*ita*), we must immediately send help to them.

5. Dumnorix hated Caesar because through him his power had been taken away (*ēripiō*). 6. Since we know that they are trying to form a conspiracy, let us crush them. 7. Since (*quoniam*) I cannot save myself along (*ūnā*) with you, I wish to die for (*prō*) you. 8. Dumnorix was unwilling to go to Britain with Caesar, because [as he said] he was afraid of the sea. 9. Ariovistus, who (since he) had assumed (*sūmō*) such lofty airs (*tantus spīritus*), did not seem endurable (fut. pass. part. of *ferō*).

EXERCISE 2 (B. G. II. 26)

1. He displayed the flag because he saw that the enemy were rushing to arms. 2. Since the enemy seem to be rushing to arms, we must draw up a line of battle. 3. We know that the soldiers who were fortifying the camp did many things of their own accord (through themselves). 4. Caesar said that he had forbidden those who were looking-for materials-for-a-rampart to advance too far. 5. After the signal had been given, a line of battle was drawn up. 6. The signal which had been given with the trumpet recalled the soldiers. 7. The near-approach of the enemy did not prevent Caesar from (Lesson XXVIII, Note 2) haranguing the soldiers. 8. Former battles have taught the lieutenants what they should do. 9. Soldiers who have been trained in former battles (App. 134) can suggest to themselves what ought to be done. 10. When the lieutenants saw that the foe was advancing, they thought that the soldiers ought to be recalled from the work.

LESSON XXXII

Conditional Sentences: 140, *a*, *b*, *c*. (Study this reference carefully before reading the following notes, which are intended merely to supplement the information given in the appendix.)

Note 1. The *if*-part of a conditional sentence is called the protasis, the conclusion is called the apodosis.

Note 2. In the most regular types of conditional sentences, the verbs of both protasis and apodosis are in the same mood and tense. Very frequently, however, there is disagreement between the verb of the protasis and that of the apodosis in point of mood, or tense, or both. These variations from the so-called regular types furnish no real difficulty, for when a different mood or tense is used in the protasis from that used in the apodosis, *the thought requires that variation*, and so it seems, and is, natural. The English sentence, If you did that for me yesterday, I shall always feel grateful to you (*sī id prō mē hesternō diē fēcistī, semper tibī grātiam habēbō*), is, according to the so-called types, irregular, because in the protasis the perfect tense is used, and in the apodosis, the future. But the student could hardly make a mistake in the Latin tenses here. The "irregularity" is not a difficulty. Take the scriptural "If you love me, keep my commandments" (*sī dīligitis mē, praecepta mea cōnservāte*). This comes under none of the regular types, for the indicative is in the protasis while the imperative is in the apodosis. Here, too, the irregularity is not a difficulty.

Note 3. Distinguish carefully in the translation into Latin of "shall . . . will," "should . . . would" in conditions, the former taking indicative forms denoting future time and the latter subjunctive forms referring to the future: —

1. If you command, (shall command), (shall have commanded), he will go, *sī* (*iubēs*), *iubēbis*, (*iusseris*), *ībit*.

In future conditions English (commonly) and Latin (occasionally) use the present indicative with a future force. The future perfect in future conditions is much more common in Latin than in English. It represents the action of the protasis as finished before that of the apodosis begins: If you shall have commanded, (then) he will go. *The future is the tense ordinarily used in indicative future conditions.*

2. If you should command (should have commanded), he would go, *sī iubeās* (*iusseris*), *eat*.

The perfect subjunctive (*iusseris*) would mean, "should have commanded." Compare the future perfect indicative above, "shall have commanded." *The present is the tense commonly used in subjunctive future conditions.*

Note 4. Consider the following: —

1. If you were my friend, you would not say this (implying, but you *are not* my friend, and so you *do*). The supposition of friendship is therefore contrary to the fact. In all such cases, use the subjunctive mood, and the *imperfect* to refer to *present* time: *sī amīcus meus essēs, hōc nōn dīcerēs.*

2. If you had been my friend, you would not have said this (implying, but you *were not*, and so you *did*). Again contrary to fact, being different from the other only in the time, so the Latin is different only in the tense, the *pluperfect* being necessary to refer to *past* time: *sī amīcus meus fuissēs, hōc nōn dīxissēs.*

3. If you were my friend [which you *are not*], you would not have said this [which you *did*]. Evidently this is a combination of the protasis of (1) and the apodosis of (2), and is, therefore, an irregular, or mixed, condition; but it is no harder to understand than the others: *sī amīcus meus essēs, hōc nōn dīxissēs.*

VOCABULARY

foot, *pēs, pedis,* **m.**
forces, troops, supplies, *cōpiae, -ārum,* **f.** (The sing. means **abundance, plenty, supply.**)
full, *plēnus, -a, -um.*
if, *sī.*
moon, *lūna, -ae,* **f.**
province, *prōvincia, -ae,* **f.**
tide, *aestus, -ūs,* **m.**

EXERCISE 1

1. If the moon is full, the tides are high (great). 2. If the moon was full, the tides were high. 3. If the moon is (shall be) full, the tides will be high. 4. If the moon should be full, the tides would be high. 5. If the moon were full, the tides would [now] be high. 6. If the moon had been full, the tides would have been high. 7. If Caesar had known that the cavalry of the enemy was away, he would have attacked the camp immediately. 8. If you should attempt to march through the Roman province, I would prevent [you]. 9. If we gather far (much) greater forces (abl. abs.), we shall not be able to defend this town. 10. If the river were a foot (App. 95) deeper, we should not be able to cross. 11. If you

summon me, I will come. 12. If you should summon me, I would come.

EXERCISE 2 (B. G. II. 21)

1. If the temper (mind) of the soldiers is ready for a fight, the signal for battle must be given. 2. If the soldiers retain the recollection of their former valor, they will bravely resist the attack. 3. If the enemy had been farther away, he would not have given the signal. 4. Every man would have fought most valiantly, if the signal had been given (abl. abs.). 5. Caesar hurried away to the tenth legion to give the necessary commands. 6. If the soldier saw that standard, he took-his-place near it. 7. He will urge them not to lose (App. 145, *a*) time for fighting. 8. The time is so short that we cannot hunt-up (*quaerō*) our own standards. 9. If the enemy should run-against the tenth legion, they would not long (*diū*) retain the memory of their former valor. 10. While Caesar was encouraging (App. 137, *c*) the tenth legion with no very lengthy exhortation, the soldiers were drawing the coverings from their shields.

LESSON XXXIII

Conditional Sentences in Indirect Discourse: 157, *a*, *b*, *c*.

Note 1. Compare the following: —

1. If any one believes this, he is mistaken, *sī quis hōc crēdit, errat.*

2. Whoever believes this is mistaken, *quī* (or *quīcumque*) *hōc crēdit, errat.*

Evidently the clause introduced by "whoever" is as much a condition as that introduced by "if." Words meaning *whoever, whatever, whenever*, etc., may introduce conditions of all types.

Note 2. Observe that *quis* after *sī* in (1) is indefinite, meaning "any one." This is regularly the meaning of *quis* when it follows *sī, nisi, nē*, or *num*. See App. 116.

Note 3. Conditions are ordinarily introduced negatively by *sī nōn* (if not) or *nisi* (unless), *sī nōn* being used when *nōn* would modify a single word, and *nisi* when the whole condition is negatived: —

1. *sī nōn praesēns perīculum, at certē longinquā obsidiōne famēs timenda est*, if not present danger, still, at any rate, starvation by reason of a protracted siege, is to be feared.

2. *dēsilīte, commīlitōnēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere*, leap down, comrades, unless you wish to betray the standard to the enemy.

But often *nisi* and *sī nōn* seem interchangeable.

Note 4. Examples of changes occurring when conditions of direct discourse are put into indirect discourse after primary and secondary tenses. The direct forms are marked with numerals, the indirect by letters: —

1. *sī lacessimur, pūgnāmus*, if we are provoked, we fight.
   - *a. dīcunt sē, sī lacessantur, pūgnāre*, they say that if they are provoked, they fight.
   - *b. dīxērunt sē, sī lacesserentur, pūgnāre*, they said that if they were provoked, they fought.

2. *sī lacessēmur, pugnābimus*, if we are (shall be) provoked, we shall fight.
   - *a. dīcunt sē, sī lacessantur, pūgnātūrōs esse*, they say that if they are (shall be) provoked, they will fight.
   - *b. dīxērunt sē, sī lacesserentur, pūgnātūrōs esse*, they said that if they should be provoked, they would fight.

3. *sī lacessāmur, pūgnēmus*, if we should be provoked, we would fight.
   - *a. dīcunt sē, sī lacessantur, pūgnātūrōs esse*, they say that if they should be provoked, they would fight.
   - *b. dīxērunt sē, sī lacesserentur, pūgnātūrōs esse*, they said that if they should be provoked, they would fight.

4. *sī lacessītī essēmus, pūgnāvissēmus*, if we had been provoked, we should have fought.
   - *a. dīcunt sē, sī lacessītī essent, pūgnātūrōs fuisse*, they say that if they had been provoked, they would have fought.
   - *b. dīxērunt sē, sī*, etc., as in (*a*).

5. *sī pūgnent, vincantur*, if they should fight, they would be conquered.

a. *dīcō sī pūgnent, futūrum esse* (or *fore*) *ut vincantur,* I say that if they should fight, they would be conquered (lit., it would be that they would be conquered).

b. *dīxī sī pūgnārent, futūrum esse* (or *fore*) *ut vincerentur,* I said that if they should fight, they would be conquered.

6. *sī pūgnāvissent, victī essent,* if they had fought, they would have been conquered.

a. *dīcō sī pūgnāvissent, futūrum fuisse ut vincerentur,* I say that if they had fought, they would have been conquered (lit., it would have been that they would be conquered).

b. *dīxī sī,* etc., as in (*a*).

VOCABULARY

any one, *quis* (usually after *si, nisi, nē,* and *num*).
diminish, *dēminuō, -ere, -minuī, -minūtum.*
expel, *expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum.*
mistaken, be, *errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.*
reduce (drive back), *redigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum.*
revolt, *dējiciō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.*
slave, *servus, -ī,* **m.**
slavery, *servitūs, -tūtis,* **f.**
terrify thoroughly, *perterreō, -ere, -terruī, -territum.*
unless, *nisi.*
whoever, *quī* or *quīcumque.*

EXERCISE 1

1. Whoever sees the army of the Germans will be thoroughly terrified. 2. If any one should believe that Britain is a small island, he would be mistaken. 3. If Procillus had not been rescued, the pleasure of Caesar's victory would have been diminished. 4. Unless we wish to become slaves, we must expel these Romans. 5. I tell you that if Caesar is giving the signal, I do not hear it. 6. I tell you that if Caesar gives the signal, I shall not hear it. 7. We know that if this town should be lost (abl. abs.), we should have no hope of safety. 8. We believe that if this town had been captured (abl. abs.), the Romans

would have wintered there. 9. We thought that if they should revolt from the Roman people, they would be reduced to (*in*) slavery. 10. We think that if they had revolted from the Roman people, they would have been reduced to slavery.

EXERCISE 2 (B. G. II. 22 and 23)

1. Unless I draw up the army as I have indicated (shown), the legions will fight some in one place (part) and others in another. 2. If any think (*putō*) that the Atrebates can be easily thrown into flight, let them try it. 3. The Nervii believed (*crēdō*) that if they should cross the river, they would put the legions to flight. 4. I think that the battle would not have been renewed, had not the legions advanced into an unfavorable situation (place). 5. Since the intervening hedges interfere-with (App. 138, *b*) the view, I cannot see whether the enemy is renewing the battle or not (Lesson XII, Note 5, 3). 6. The Atrebates were quickly driven into the river, because they were (App. 138, *a*) out-of-breath and weakened by wounds. 7. The nature of the ground (place) prevented Caesar from drawing up (Lesson XXVIII, Note 2) the army as the orderly arrangement (arrangement and order) of military science demanded. 8. Caesar said that under the leadership of Boduognatus, who held (App. 134, *b*) the chief command, the Nervii hastened to this place. 9. Throw into flight the Nervii, who are advancing in a very dense line. 10. The Nervii began to make-for (seek) this place to attack the legion on the unprotected flank.

LESSON XXXIV

Concessive Clauses introduced by: —

1. *Quamquam* taking the indicative: 139, *a*.
2. *Etsī* and *tametsī:* 139, *a*.

3. *Cum* and *quamvīs* taking the subjunctive: 139, *b*.
4. A relative pronoun taking the subjunctive.

Note 1. *Quamquam* (although) is used with the indicative *in statements of fact* (note example in App. 139, *a*). Hence we should not use it in a sentence like the following: although I should see him, I should not recognize him. Here one might have *etsī*, *tametsī*, *cum*, or *quamvīs*.

Note 2. *Etsī* is composed of *et* + *sī* and really means *even if* (= although); *tametsī* is composed of *tamen* + *et* + *sī* and really means *yet even if*, which is a sort of *although*. These words being compounds of *sī*, may, generally speaking, be used with any of the constructions with which *sī* can be used: —

sī[a] (*etsī*[b] *tametsī*) *venit*,[1] *vēnit*,[2] *veniet*,[3] *veniat*,[4] *venīret*,[5] *vēnisset*,[6] etc., if[a] (although)[b] he is coming,[1] came,[2] comes[3] (shall come), should come,[4] were coming,[5] had come,[6] etc. But *tametsī* is rarely found with the subjunctive.

Note 3. *Quamvīs* (*quam* + *vīs*) really means *as much as you wish* (*please*), *however you please:* —

hominēs, quamvīs in turbidīs rēbus sint, tamen interdum animīs relaxantur, men, let them be in circumstances as troubled as you please (or, briefly, *although* they are in troubled circumstances), nevertheless sometimes relax their minds (lit., relax themselves — or, are relaxed — in their minds).

Note 4. In Lesson XXXI, Note 3, we learned that relative clauses denoting *cause* take the subjunctive. This is true also of relative clauses denoting *concession:* —

Cicerō, quī omnēs superiōrēs diēs mīlitēs in castrīs continuisset, quīnque cohortēs frūmentātum mīsit, Cicero, who (= though he) all the preceding days had held the soldiers in camp, sent five cohorts to forage.

Note 5. Correlative with any of these concessive connectives, *tamen* may stand in the main clause, just as in English we say *yet* in correlation with *though* or *although:* "Though (*etsī*, etc.) he slay me, yet (*tamen*) will I trust in him." See example in Note 3.

VOCABULARY

across, beyond, *trāns*, prep. with acc.
although, though, *quamquam*, *etsī* (**even if**), *tametsī*, *cum*, *quamvīs*.
complain, *queror*, *-ī*, *questus sum*.

daily, *cotīdiē.*
discipline, training, *disciplīna, -ae,* **f.**
drive (from), *dēpellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum.*
labor, *labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.*
move, break up (as a camp), *moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum.*
obtain, *cōnsequor, -ī, -secūtus sum.*
still, yet, nevertheless, *tamen.*
visit (go to), *adeō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itum.*
worn out, *dēfessus, -a, -um* (past part. of *dēfetīscor, -ī, -fessus sum*).

EXERCISE 1

1. Although the Germans (order — The Germans, although, etc.) are of great physical proportions (Lesson X, Note II, 2), yet they are not equal to the Romans in discipline. 2. Although the soldiers (order — The soldiers, although, etc.) were worn out with the march, still they did not complain. 3. Although Caesar saw that the enemy was breaking up (moving) camp, still he decided to wait until the scouts should return. 4. Good men perform (do) many good acts (things), although they see that they will obtain no reward. 5. He was a man of most aristocratic lineage (highest nobility) although he labored daily in the fields. 6. Even if I learn that this tribe hates traders (merchants), yet I shall try to visit it. 7. Let them be as brave as you please (Note 3), they cannot resist so great a multitude. 8. Though you are a Gaul, will you say that you are a Roman? 9. Though a large agger was thrown up (*iactō*, abl. abs.), they could not drive the defenders from the wall. 10. Does he, who (= though he) is a boy, think that he can lead an army across the Alps?

EXERCISE 2 (B. G. II. 24)

1. The legions, though they were hard pressed, were not routed. 2. However (*quamvīs*) exceptional their reputation for valor was, the Treveri took-to-flight at that time. 3. Although the Belgians had scattered the cav-

alry and slingers in all directions, they could not get possession of the camp. 4. Though the cavalry had been routed by the first attack of the foe, yet the legions were victorious (victors). 5. If the camp-followers had not seen (App. 140, *b*, 2) that our men were victorious, they would not have gone out to plunder. 6. The cavalry were greatly terrified when they met the enemy face-to-face. 7. The soldiers reported to Caesar that the horsemen who had been sent (App. 154, *b*) by the Treveri had hurried home. 8. The light-armed infantry fled, some in one direction, others in another. 9. After these had been scattered, the enemy saw that the legions were coming. 10. While the cavalrymen were fleeing (App. 137, *c*) in all directions, those legions were busy in the enemy's camp.

ENGLISH-LATIN AND LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARIES

VOCABULARY

ENGLISH–LATIN

A

abandon, *relinquō.*
able, am, *possum.*
about, concerning, *dē.*
about, nearly, *ferē, circiter.*
abundance, *cōpia.*
acceptable, *acceptus.*
access, approach, *aditus.*
(account), on account of, *propter, ob.*
(accustomed), become accustomed, *cōnsuēscō.*
across, *trāns.*
(add), be added, *accēdō.*
advance, *prōcēdō.*
advantage, *commodum.*
advise, *moneō.*
afraid, am, *timeō, vereor.*
after (conj.), *postquam, posteāquam.*
again, *iterum.*
against, *contrā, ad, in, cum* (with verb of contending).
agger, *agger.*
aid, *auxilium, subsidium.*
all, *omnis, tōtus.*
allow, *licet, patior.*
all the others, *cēterī.*
along with, *ūnā cum.*
already, *iam.*
although, *quamquam, etsī, tametsī, cum, quamvīs.*
always, *semper.*
am, *sum.*
ambassador, *lēgātus.*
among, *inter, in, apud.*
ancestors, *māiōrēs.*
ancestral, *patrius.*
ancients, *antīquī.*
and, *et, atque, -que.*
animal, *animal.*
announce, *nūntiō.*
another, *alius.*
any, *ūllus* (after negatives).
any one (any thing, in neuter), *quisquam* (after negatives), *aliquis, quis* (usually after *sī, nisi, nē,* or *num*).
any you please, *quīvīs.*
appoint, *cōnstituō.*
approach, *accēdō, succēdō, adpropinquō.*
arms, weapons, *arma.*
army, *exercitus.*
arouse, *incitō.*
arrange, *cōnstituō.*
arrangement, *ratiō.*
arrival, *adventus.*
arrive, *perveniō.*
article, thing, *rēs.*
as, *ut, quī.*
ascend, *ascendō.*
ask, *rogō.*
as long as, *dum, dōnec, quoad.*

assist, *iuvō.*
as soon as, *simul atque, cum prīmum.*
attack, *impetus.*
attack, *oppūgnō, adeō.*
attack (make an attack on) any one, *in aliquem impetum faciō.*
attempt, *cōnātus.*
attempt, *cōnor.*
authority, *auctōritās.*
auxiliaries, *auxilia.*
avenge, *ulcīscor.*
avoid, *vītō.*
await, *exspectō.*
away, am, *absum.*

B

back, *tergum.*
bad, *malus.*
baggage, *impedīmenta.*
baggage-animal, *iūmentum.*
bank, *rīpa.*
barbarian, *barbarus.*
battle, *pūgna, proelium.*
battle-line, *aciēs.*
bear, *ferō.*
beat, defeat, *superō, vincō.*
beautiful, *pulcher.*
because, *quod.*
become, *fīō.*
before, *ante* (prep. and adv.), *anteā* (adv.).
before (conj.), *antequam, priusquam.*
beg, beg for, seek, *petō.*
began, *coepī.*
begin, *incipiō, ineō.*
begin battle, *proelium committō.*
beginning, *initium.*
behind, *post.*
(behalf), in behalf of, *prō.*
believe, *crēdō.*
best, *optimus* (superl. of *bonus*).
better, *melior* (comp. of *bonus*).
between, among, *inter.*
beyond, across, *trāns.*
bind, *obstringō.*
blood relationship, *propinquitās.*
boat, *nāvis.*
booty, *praeda.*
border, limit, *fīnis.*
both, *et.*
bowman, *sagittārius.*
boy, *puer.*
brave, *fortis.*
bravely, *fortiter.*
break down, *rescindō.*
break through, *perrumpō.*
break up, move, *moveō.*
(breath), out of breath, *exanimātus.*
bribery, *largītiō.*
bridge, *pōns.*
bring, carry, *ferō, portō.*
bring, lead, *dūcō.*
bring, lead to, *addūcō.*
bring in, *īnferō, importō.*
bring on, inflict, *īnferō.*
bring together, *cōgō, condūcō.*
bring up, supply, *supportō.*
bring up the rear, *agmen claudō.*
brother, *frāter.*
Brundisium, ī, n. (name of a town in S. E. Italy).
build, *faciō, aedificō.*
building, *aedificium.*
busy, am, *versor* (frequently about equivalent to *sum*).
but, *sed.*

buy, *emō*.
by, *ā, ab*.

C

calamity, *calamitās*.
call, call together, *convocō*.
call, name, *appellō*.
camp, *castra*.
camp-follower, *cālō*.
can, am able, *possum*.
canton, *pāgus*.
captive, *captīvus*.
capture, *capiō, expūgnō*.
Capua, ae, f. (name of a town near Naples).
care, *cūra*.
carry, *gerō, ferō;* carry on war, *bellum gerō*.
carry (lead) away, *abdūcō*.
carry from, *efferō*.
cart, *carrus*.
cause, *causa*.
cavalry, *equitātus*.
cavalry (adj.), *equester*.
cavalryman, *eques*.
cease, *dēsistō*.
centurion, *centuriō*.
certain, certain one, *quīdam*.
check, *impediō*.
chief, chief man, *prīnceps*.
chief command, *summa imperī*.
children, *puerī, līberī*.
city, *urbs*.
clearly see, *perspiciō*.
climb, *ascendō*.
cohort, *cohors*.
collect, *cōgō*.
come, *veniō*.
come (go) out, *ēgredior*.
come through, *perveniō*.
come to, be added (be inspired in), *accēdō*.
come together, *conveniō*.
command (according to command), *iussū*.
command, be in command of, *praesum;* put in command of, *praeficiō*.
command, order, *imperō, iubeō*.
(thing) commanded, order, *imperātum*.
commend, *laudō*.
commission, task, *negōtium*.
compel, *cōgō*.
complain, *queror*.
conceal, *cēlō*.
concerning, *dē*.
conquer, *superō, vincō*.
consent, willingness, *voluntās*.
consider, *habeō*.
conspiracy, *coniūrātiō*.
conspire, *coniūrō, cōnsentiō*.
construct (carry along) a ditch, *fossam obdūcō* or *perdūcō*.
consul, *cōnsul*.
consulship, *cōnsulātus*.
contend, *contendō*.
convene, *conveniō*
conveniently, *commodē*.
could, was able, *poteram, potuī*.
council, *concilium*.
counsel, *cōnsilium*.
country, territory, *fīnēs*.
courage, *virtūs*.
covering, *tegimentum*.
cross, *trānscō*.
crowded together, *cōnfertus*.
crush, *opprimō*.
custom, *mōs, cōnsuētūdō*.
cut off, shut off, *interclūdō*.
cut to pieces, *concīdō*.

D

daily (adj.) *cotīdiānus.*
daily (adv.), *cotīdiē.*
danger, *perīculum.*
dangerous, *perīculōsus.*
dare, *audeō.*
(daring), with the utmost daring, *audācissimē.*
daughter, *fīlia.*
day, *diēs.*
(day) by day, *interdiū.*
(at) day-break, *prīmā lūce.*
debtor, *obaerātus.*
decamp, *castrīs ēgredior.*
decide, *statuō, cōnstituō.*
decide (it is pleasing), *placet.*
declare, *cōnfīrmō.*
deep, *altus.*
defeat, *superō, vincō.*
defend, *dēfendō.*
defender, *dēfēnsor.*
delay, *moror.*
deliberate, *dēlīberō.*
demand, *flāgitō, postulō, poscō.*
dense, crowded, *cōnfertus.*
depart, *discēdō, proficīscor, abeō.*
departure, *profectiō.*
depth, *altitūdō.*
descend, be descendant of, arise, *orior.*
deserter, *perfuga.*
desire, *cupiditās, studium.*
desirous, *cupidus.*
despise, *dēspiciō.*
deter, *dēterreō.*
detriment, *dētrīmentum.*
die, *morior.*
differ, *differō.*
(with) difficulty, *vix, aegrē.*
diminish, *dēminuō.*
direction, *pars.*
(from all) directions, *undique.*
disappoint, fail, *fallō.*
discipline, *disciplīna.*
disembark, *nāvī ēgredior.*
dismiss, *dīmittō.*
(disorder), in great disorder, *perturbātus.*
display, show, *prōpōnō.*
disposition, *animus.*
distant, am, *absum.*
(most) distant, *extrēmus.*
disturb, *permoveō, commoveō.*
ditch, *fossa.*
do, *faciō.*
do you? *-ne* (enclitic).
doubt, *dubitō.*
doubtful, *dubius.*
draw from, *dētrahō.*
draw up, form, *īnstruō.*
drive, *compellō.*
drive back, *repellō.*
drive from, *dēpellō.*
dwell, *incolō.*

E

each, *quisque.*
(to) each other, *inter sē.*
(am) eager for, desire, *studeō.*
eagerness, *studium.*
earth, *terra.*
(ease), with ease, easily, *facile.*
easy, *facilis.*
eight, *octō.*
elderly men, *māiōrēs nātū.*
encamp, *castra pōnō; cōnsīdō.*
encourage, *cohortor.*
end of the ditch, *extrēma fossa.*
endure, *perferō, sustentō.*

enemy, *hostis.*
enfeeble, *effēminō.*
engine of war, *tormentum.*
enjoy, *ūtor, fruor.*
enlist, *cōnscrībō.*
enough, *satis.*
enroll, *cōnscrībō.*
enter, enter within, *ingredior.*
envoy, *lēgātus.*
equal, *pār.*
even if, *etsī.*
ever, *umquam.*
everybody, every man, *omnēs quisque.*
everything, *omnia*
excel, *superō, praecēdō.*
except, *praeter.*
exceptional, *singulāris.*
exhortation, *cohortātiō.*
expel, *expellō.*
extend, *pertineō, pateō.*
eye, *oculus.*

F

face to face, *adversus.*
fame, *glōria.*
far, by far, *longē;* too far, *longinquus.*
farther (adj.), *ulterior.*
father, *pater.*
father-in-law, *socer.*
fear, *timor.*
fear, *timeō, vereor.*
fertile, *ferāx.*
few, *paucī.*
fickleness of mind, *mōbilitās animī.*
field, *ager.*
fifteen, *quīndecim.*
fifty, *quīnquāgintā.*
fight, *pūgnō, dīmicō.*
fight, fighting, *pūgna, proelium.*
find, come upon, *inveniō.*
find, find out, discover, *reperiō, cognōscō.*
finish, complete, *cōnficiō.*
fire, *ignis.*
first, *prīmus, prīnceps.*
flag, *vēxillum.*
flank, side, *latus.*
flee, *fugiō.*
fleet, *classis.*
fleet, swift, *vēlōx.*
flight, *fuga.*
flow, *fluō.*
fodder, *pābulum.*
foe, *hostis.*
follow, *sequor.*
foot, *pēs.*
foot-soldier, *pedes.*
for (prep.), *ad, prō* (in behalf of).
for (concerning), *dē.*
forbid, *vetō.*
forced (march), *māgnum (iter).*
forces, *cōpiae.*
ford, *vadum.*
forest, *silva.*
forget, *oblīvīscor.*
forgetful of, *oblītus.*
form, make, *faciō, īnstruō.*
form (take) a plan, *cōnsilium capiō.*
former, *prīstinus, superior*
fort, *castellum.*
fortify, *mūniō.*
fortunate, *opportūnus.*
fortune, *fortūna.*
four, *quattuor.*
four hundred, *quadringentī.*

fourth, *quārtus*.
frenzy, *furor*.
frequently, *saepe*.
friend, *amīcus*.
friendly, *amīcus*.
friendship, *amīcitia*.
from (prep.), *ab, dē, ex*.
from (conj.), *quōminus, quīn*.
from there, thence, *inde*.
(front), in front of, *prō*.
(front), those in front, *priōrēs*.
full, *plēnus*.

G

garrison, *praesidium*.
gate, *porta*.
gather, *cōgō*.
general, *imperātor*.
generally, *vulgō, ferē*.
get possession of, *potior*.
girl, *puella*.
give, *dō*.
give up, surrender, *trādō, dēdō*.
go, *eō*.
go away (out, forth), *exeō*.
go away, *abeō, discēdō*.
go back, *redeō, revertor*.
good, *bonus*.
go on, is going on (happening), passive of *gerō*.
go out, *exeō, ēgredior*.
grain, *frūmentum*.
grant, *concēdō*.
great, large, *māgnus*.
greatly, *māgnopere*.
Greek, *Graecus*.
grind, *molō*.
guard, *praesidium*.
guide, leader, *dux*.

H

hand, *manus*.
happen, *accidō*.
(would) happen, would be, *fore*.
harangue, *cohortor*.
hasten, make haste, *contendō*.
hasty, *repentīnus*.
hate, *ōdī*.
have, *habeō*.
he, *is, ille, hīc*.
hear, hear of, *audiō*.
heavy, *gravis*.
hedge, *saepēs*.
height, *altitūdō*.
help, *auxilium, subsidium*.
help, to, *auxilium ferre*.
here, *hīc*.
hereafter, *posteā*.
hesitate, *dubitō*.
high, *altus*.
high-born, *nōbilis*.
highest, *summus* (superl. of *superus*).
hill, *collis*.
himself, him (intensive), *ipse*.
himself, him (reflexive), *suī, sibi*, etc.
hinder, impede, *impediō, prohibeō*.
hire, *condūcō*.
hither, nearer, *citerior*.
hold, *teneō, obtineō*.
hold out (sustain an attack), *sustineō*.
home, *domus;* at home, *domī;* from home, *domō*.
hope, *spēs*.
horse, *equus*.
horseman, *eques*.
hostage, *obses*.

hostile, *inimīcus*.
hour, *hōra*.
household, *familia*.
however (conj.), *quamvīs*.
however (adv.), *autem*.
how great (large), *quantus*.
how many, *quot*.
hunt up, search for, *quaerō*.
hurry, hasten, *contendō*.
hurry away, *dēcurrō*.

I

if, *sī*.
immediately, *statim*.
impede, *impediō*.
in, *in*.
increase, *amplificō*.
incredible, *incrēdibilis*.
indicate, *sīgnificō*.
indignity, *indignitās*.
infantry, *peditēs*.
inferior, *īnferior*.
inflict, *īnferō*.
inflict punishment on any one, *dē aliquō supplicium sūmō*.
influence, *auctōritās*.
(influence), am of (have) very great influence, *plūrimum valeō, plūrimum possum*.
influence, lead to, *addūcō*.
inform, *certiōrem faciō;* be informed, *certior fīō*.
inhabit, *incolō*.
injury, *iniūria*.
in order that, to . . . *ut, quō* (with comparatives).
inquire, inquire about, *quaerō*.
inside, *intrā*.
instigate, *sollicitō*.
insult, *contumēlia*.
intercessor, *dēprecātor*.
(it) interests, is of interest to, *interest*.
interfere with, obstruct, *impedīō*.
intervening, thrown between, *interiectus*.
into, *in*.
intrust, *permittō, commendō*.
iron, *ferrum*.
island, *īnsula*.
itself, *ipse*.

J

javelin, *pīlum*.
join, join together, *iungō*.
journey, *iter*.
judgment, *iūdicium*.
justice, *iūstitia*.

K

keep from, prohibit, *prohibeō*.
keep, hold, *contineō*.
keep off, *prohibeō*.
kill, *occīdō, interficiō*.
kindness, *beneficium*.
king, *rēx*.
kinsman, *cōnsanguineus*.
known, *sciō* (not know, *nesciō*), *intellegō*.

L

labor, *labor*.
labor, to, *labōrāre*.
lack, be wanting in, *dēsum*.
lake, *lacus*.
land, *ager*.
language, *lingua*.
large, *māgnus*.

late at night, *multā nocte.*
law, *lēx.*
lay waste, *vāstō.*
lead, *dūcō.*
lead across, *trādūcō.*
lead away, *abdūcō.*
lead back, *redūcō.*
leading man, *prīnceps.*
lead to, *addūcō.*
leader, *dux.*
leadership, *prīncipātus.*
learn, *cognōscō.*
leave, *relinquō.*
left, remaining, *reliquus;* nothing left, *nihil reliquī.*
legion, *legiō.*
lengthy, *longus.*
less (adv.), *minus.*
letter, *epistola, litterae.*
levy, *imperō.*
lie concealed, *lateō.*
lieutenant, *lēgātus.*
life, *vīta.*
light-armed, *levis armātūrae.*
like, similar, *similis.*
line, line of march, *agmen.*
line of battle, *aciēs.*
linger, tarry, *moror.*
little, by a little, *paulō.*
little, small, *parvus* (*minimum posse*, to be very weak).
live, dwell, *incolō.*
live, am alive, *vīvō.*
lofty, *altus.*
long, *longus.*
long, for a long time, *diū.*
look for, seek, *petō.*
lose, *āmittō.*
love, *amō.*
lucky, *opportūnus.*
luxury, *lūxuria.*

M

made, am, become, *fīō.*
magistrate, *magistrātus.*
make, do, *faciō.*
make, render, *reddō.*
make war, *bellum īnferō.*
man, *vir, homō.*
many, *multī.*
march, *iter;* on the march, *in itinere.*
march, *iter faciō.*
marriage, *mātrimōnium;* give in marriage, *in mātrimōnium dō.*
marriage tie, alliance, *adfīnitās.*
marry, take a wife, *in mātrimōnium dūcō.*
marsh, marsh land, *palūs.*
marvelous, *mīrus.*
matter, thing, *rēs.*
meantime, in the meantime, *interim.*
meet, *occurrō.*
memory, *memoria.*
merchant, *mercātor.*
mercy, *misericordia.*
message, *nūntius.*
messenger, *nūntius.*
middle, *medius.*
mile, *mīlle passūs.*
miles, *mīlia passuum.*
military science, *rēs mīlitāris.*
mind, *animus.*
mischief, *maleficium.*
mistaken, am, *errō.*
month, *mēnsis.*
moon, *lūna.*
more, *plūs, amplius, potius.*
(for the) most part, *māximam partem.*

mother, *māter.*
mount, climb, *ascendō.*
mountain, *mōns.*
move, *moveō.*
much, *multus*
multitude, *multitūdō.*
my, *meus.*

N

name. *nōmen.*
narrowness of the passage, *angustiae.*
nation, *nātiō*
native land, *patria.*
nature, *nātūra.*
near, am, am at hand, *subsum.*
near, *ad, prope, apud.*
near approach, coming up, *adventus.*
nearer, *propior* (adj.), *citerior; propius* (adv.)
nearest, next, *proximus* (adj.), *proximē* (adv.).
necessary, *necessārius.*
necessary, is, is fitting, *oportet.*
need, *opus, ūsus.*
neighboring, *finitimus.*
neighbors, *fīnitimī.*
neither, *neque, nec.*
never, *numquam.*
nevertheless, *tamen.*
new, *novus.*
next, following, *proximus, posterus.*
night, *nox.*
(night), by night, *noctū.*
no (not any), *nūllus.*
nobility, *nōbilitās.*
noble, *nōbilis.*
no longer, *nōn diūtius, nōn iam.*
no one, *nēmō.*
nor, *neque, nec.*
not, *nōn, nē.*
not . . . even, *nē . . . quidem.*
nothing, *nihil.*
not yet, *nōndum.*
now, *nunc.*
number, *numerus.*
(in large) numbers, *frequēns* (in pl.).

O

oath, *iūsiūrandum.* (See take oath together.)
observe closely, *perspiciō.*
obtain, *cōnsequor, obtineō.*
obtain a request, *impetrō.*
(occasion), on that occasion, *tum, eō tempore.*
occupy, *occupō.*
ocean, *ōceanus.*
of (concerning), *dē.*
of (from), *ā, ab, ex, dē.*
often, *saepe.*
older men, *māiōrēs nātū.*
on, *in.*
on account of, *propter, ob.*
one, *ūnus.*
one . . . another, *alius . . . alius.*
only (adv.), *sōlum;* not only . . . but also, *nōn modo . . . sed etiam.*
on this side of, *cis.*
opinion, *sententia, opīniō.*
or, *aut, vel, an* (in double questions).
(order), at the order of, *iussū.*
order, arrangement, *ōrdō.*
order, *iubeō, imperō.*

(order), in order to, *ut*, *quō* (with comparative).
or not, *an nōn*, *necne*.
other, *alius*.
(others'), of others, *aliēnus*.
ought, is necessary, proper, *oportet*.
our, *noster*; our men, *nostrī*.
out of, *ex*.
over, in, *in*.
overcome, *superō*, *vincō*.
overhang, *impendeō*.
overrun, harass, *vexō*.

P

pace, *passus*.
part, *pars*.
(parts), from all parts, on every side, *undique*.
pay, *mercēs*.
pay, *persolvō*.
peace, *pāx*.
penalty, *poena*.
people, *populus*.
peril, *perīculum*.
permit, *permittō*, *patior*, *licet*.
personal enemy, *inimīcus*.
persuade, *persuādeō*.
pitch, place, *pōnō*.
pity, *misericordia*.
place, *locus*.
place, *pōnō*.
plan, *cōnsilium*.
please, *placet*.
pleasure, *voluptās*.
pledge, *fidēs*.
plunder, *praedor*.
policy, *cōnsilium*.
Pompey, *Pompēius*, *ī*, m.
population, *multitūdō hominum*.
possess, *possideō*.
possession, *possessiō*.
possession, get possession of, *potior*.
power, *potentia*; *potestās*.
powerful, *potēns*.
powerful, am very, *plūrimum possum* or *valeō*.
practicable, *expedītus*.
praise, *laudō*.
prepare, *parō*.
prepared, ready, *parātus*.
press (hard), *premō*.
prevent, prohibit, *prohibeō*, *impediō*.
price, *pretium*.
private, *prīvātus*.
proceed, *proficīscor*.
prohibit, *prohibeō*.
promise, *polliceor*.
protect, defend, *dēfendō*, *mūniō*.
protection, *praesidium*, *fidēs*.
province, *prōvincia*.
provisions, *cibāria*.
proximity, *propinquitās*.
prudence, *prūdentia*.
public, *pūblicus*.
punishment, *supplicium*.
pursue, *sequor*, *cōnsector*.
put in command of, *praeficiō*.
put one's self under protection, *in fidem veniō*.
put to flight, *in fugam dō* (*conicio*); *fugō*.

Q

(quarters), from all quarters, *undique*.
quickly, *celeriter*.

R

raft, *ratis.*
rampart, materials for a rampart, *agger.*
rank, *ōrdō.*
rather, *potius, magis.*
ravage, *vāstō.*
reach, come to, *adeō.*
readily, *facile, commodē.*
ready, *parātus.*
rear, *novissimum agmen.*
(rear), men in the rear, (*eī*) *ab extrēmō agmine.*
reason, *causa;* for this reason, *eā (quā) dē causā.*
recall, *revocō.*
receive, *accipiō.*
(most) recently, *proximē.*
recollection, *memoria.*
reduce, *redigō.*
refrain from, *temperō, supersedeō.*
refuse, *recūsō.*
(regard), in regard to, *dē.*
region, *regiō.*
remain, *maneō, remaneō.*
remember, *memoriā tenēō, meminī, reminīscor.*
renew, *redintegrō.*
renown, *glōria, fāma.*
repel, *repellō.*
report, *nūntiō.*
repulse, *repellō.*
reputation, opinion, *opīniō.*
rescue, *ēripiō.*
resist, *resistō.*
(respect), out of respect, *honōris causā.*
(respecting), with respect to, *dē.*
rest, rest of, remaining, *reliquus.*
(all the) rest, *cēterī.*
(result), the result was, *factum est.*
retain, *retineō.*
retainer, vassal, *clīēns.*
retreat, *sē recipere.*
return, *revertor, redeō.*
revolt, *dēficiō.*
revolution, *rēs novae.*
reward, *praemium.*
reward, hire, pay, *mercēs.*
rich, *dīves.*
river, *flūmen.*
road, *iter, via.*
roam, *vagor.*
robber, *latrō.*
rout, *pellō, dispergō* (scatter).
royal power, *rēgnum.*
rule, sway, *imperium.*
rumor, *rūmor.*
run against, *occurrō.*
rush to arms, *ad arma concurrō.*

S

sad, am, *doleō.*
safe, *tūtus.*
safety, *salūs.*
sailor, *nauta.*
sake, cause, *causa.*
same, *īdem;* to the same place, *eōdem.*
save, *servō.*
say, tell, *dīcō.*
scarcity, *inopia.*
scatter, *dispergō, dissipō.*
scout, *explōrātor.*
sea, *mare.*
second, *secundus.*
(in) secret, privately, *sēcrētō.*
secure, get, *comparō.*

see, *videō*.
seek, *petō*.
seem, *videor*.
seize, *capiō*, *occupō*.
(very) seldom, *minimē saepe*.
select, choose, *dēligō*.
senate, *senātus*.
send, *mittō*.
send forward, *praemittō*.
service, use, *ūsus*.
set, go down, *occidō*.
set fire to, *incendō*.
set out, proceed, *proficīscor*.
seventh, *septimus*.
severe, *gravis*.
shed, *vīnea*.
shield, *scūtum*.
ship, *nāvis*.
shore, *lītus*.
short, *brevis*.
show, *dēmōnstrō*, *doceō*.
side, flank, *latus*.
signal, striking, *īnsīgnis*.
signal, *sīgnum*.
(very) similar, *cōnsimilis*.
simultaneously, *simul*.
since, *cum*, *quoniam*, *quod*.
(in) single (file), *singulī*.
six, *sex*.
size, *māgnitūdō*.
skilful, *perītus*.
slave, *servus*.
slavery, *servitūs*.
slay, *occīdō*, *interficiō*.
slinger, *funditor*.
small, *parvus*.
smaller, *minor*.
smoke, *fūmus*.
smoothness, gentleness, *lēnitās*.
so, *ita*, *sīc*, *tam*.
so large (great), *tantus*.
so much, *tantus*.
soldier, *mīles*.
some, *aliquī*, *nōn nūllī*, *alīī* (when some form of another *alius* is used with it).
some one, *aliquis*.
something, *aliquid*.
sometimes, *nōnnumquam*.
son, *fīlius*.
soon, *mox*, *celeriter*.
sorrow, *dolor*.
so that, *ut*.
sovereignty, *imperium*.
spare, *servō*, *cōnservō*.
speak, *dīcō*.
speed, *celeritās*.
spirit, *animus*.
spring, arise, *orior*.
stand, make a stand, *cōnsistō*.
standard, *sīgnum*.
state, *cīvitās*, *rēs pūblica*.
station, *dispōnō*.
still, nevertheless, *tamen*.
stone, *lapis*.
storm, *tempestās*.
strength, *vīs*.
stretch out, extend, *pandō*.
strip, *nūdō*.
strive, *contendō*.
subdue, *pācō*.
suddenly, *subitō*.
suffer, endure, *perferō*, *accipiō* (receive).
suffer, permit, *patior*, *permittō*.
sufficiently, *satis*.
suggest, prescribe, *praescrībō*.
suicide (commit), *sibi mortem cōnscīscere*.
suitable, *idōneus*.
summer, *aestās*.
summon, *arcessō*.

sun, *sōl.*
sunset, *occāsus sōlis.*
supplies, *cōpiae, commeātus.*
supplies of grain, *rēs frūmentāria.*
supreme, *suprēmus* or *summus*, superl. of *superus.*
surpass, excel, *praecēdō.*
surrender, *dēditiō.*
surrender, give up, *dēdō, trādō.*
surround, come around, *circumveniō.*
sustain, *sustineō.*
swamp, *palūs.*
swiftness, speed, *celeritās.*
sword, *gladius.*

T

take, assume, *sūmō.*
take, capture, *capiō, expūgnō.*
take a (one's) stand (place), *cōnsistō.*
take away, *tollō, dētrahō, ēripiō, abripiō.*
take oath together, conspire, *coniūrō.*
take to flight, flee, *fugiō.*
take under protection, *in fidem recipiō.*
talk, converse, *conloquor.*
teach, *doceō.*
tear down, *interscindō.*
tell, *dīcō.*
ten, *decem.*
tend to, pertain to, *pertineō.*
tenth, *decimus.*
terrify thoroughly, greatly, *perterreō.*
territory, *fīnēs*
than, *quam.*
that, *is, ille.*
that (as conj. introducing subst. cl.), *quod, ut.*
that (who), *quī.*
that, but that, *quīn, quōminus.*
that, in order that, *ut, quō* (with comparatives); that (after verbs of fearing), *nē.*
that, so that, *ut.*
that not, lest (with purpose cl.), *nē*, that not (with result cl.), *ut nōn;* that not (after verbs of fearing), *ut.*
themselves (intensive), *ipsī;* themselves (reflexive), *suī, sibi*, etc.
there, *ibi.*
there (thither), *eō.*
thing, *rēs.*
thing commanded, *imperātum.*
think, *putō, exīstimō, arbitror,* [illegible]
third, *tertius.*
thirty, *trīgintā.*
this, *hīc, is.*
those in front, *priōrēs.*
though, see although.
thousand, *mīlle;* pl. *mīlia.*
three, *trēs.*
three days, *trīduum.*
through, *per.*
throw, hurl, *conicīō.*
throw about (around), *circumicīō.*
throw away, *abicīō.*
throw down, *dēicīō.*
throw into flight, *in fugam conicīō.*
throw into great disorder (confusion), *perturbō.*
throw together, *conicīō*

throw up, heap up, *iaciō*.
tide, *aestus*.
time, *tempus*.
to, *ad;* to which, *quō*, or *ad* with rel.
top of, *summus* (with noun).
touch, *attingō*.
toward, *in*, *ad*, *sub*.
tower, *turris*.
town, *oppidum*.
townspeople, *oppidānī*.
train, *exerceō*.
trench, *fossa*.
tribe, *nātiō*.
trial, *iūdicium*.
trick, ambush, *īnsidiae*.
trickery, *dolus*.
troops, *cōpiae*.
trouble, difficulty, *negōtium*.
trumpet, *tuba*.
try, *cōnor*, *experior*.
tumult, *tumultus*.
turn, *vertō*.
twelve, *duodecim*.
twenty, *vīgintī*.
two, *duo*.
two hundred, *ducentī*.

U

unable, am, *nōn possum*.
under, *sub*, *in* (*in fidē*, under protection).
undergo, *subeō*.
understand, *intellegō*.
undertake, *suscipiō*.
unfavorable, *inīquus*.
unfriendly, *inimīcus*.
uniformly, *cōnstanter*.
unite, *coniungō*.
unless, *nisi*.
unprotected, open, *apertus*.
until, *dum*, *dōnec*, *quoad*.
unwilling, *invītus*.
unwilling, am, *nōlō*.
urge, exhort, *cohortor*.
use, *ūsus*.
use, *ūtor*.
useless, *inūtilis*.
utmost, *summus*.

V

valiantly, *fortiter*.
valor, *virtūs*.
van, *prīmum agmen*.
Vercingetorīx, *īgis*, m.
very, *ipse*.
victor, *victor*.
victory, *victōria*.
view, sight, *prōspectus*.
village, *vīcus*.
violence, *vīs*, *impetus*.
visit, *commeō*, *adeō*.

W

wage, carry on, *gerō*.
wait, wait for, *exspectō*.
wall, *vāllum*, *mūrus*.
war, *bellum*.
war, wage war, *bellō*.
warlike, *bellicōsus*.
waste, consume, *cōnsūmō*.
waste, lay waste, ravage, *vāstō populor*, *dēpopulor*.
watch, *vigilia*.
way, journey, road, *iter*, *via*.
way, manner, *modus*.
weaken, *cōnficiō*, *remittō*.
weapons, *arma*.

weep, *fleō*.
what (interrog.), *quid*, *quae* (pl.).
when, *cum*, *ubi*.
where, *ubi*, *quā*.
whether, *num*, *-ne*, *sī*.
whether (in double questions), *utrum*, *-ne*.
which, what, *quī* (*quis*).
while, *dum*.
who (rel.), *quī*.
who (interrog.), *quis*.
whoever, *quī*, *quīcumque*.
whole, *tōtus*.
why, *quā dē causā*, *cūr*.
wide, *lātus*.
widely, *lātē*.
wife, *uxor*.
wine, *vīnum*.
winter, *hiems*.
winter, *hiemō*.
winter-quarters, *hīberna*.
wish, *volō*.
wish, desire, *voluntās*.
with, *cum*.
within, *intrā*.
woman, *mulier*.
wooded, *silvestris*.
woods, *silva*.
work, *opus*.
worn out, *dēfessus*.
would that (oh! that), *utinam* (literally, how).
wound, *vulnus*.
wretched, *miser*.
write, *scrībō*.
wrong, injury, *iniūria*.

Y

year, *annus*.
yet, nevertheless, *tamen*.
yoke, *iugum*.
yonder, *ille*.
you, *tū*.
your, *tuus*, *vester*.

VOCABULARY

LATIN–ENGLISH

The English pronunciation of proper names is in accordance with the general rules of the dictionaries. The sounds of the vowels are as follows: —

1. a as in fat, man.
2. ā as in fate, mane.
3. ä as in far, father.
4. â as in fall, talk.
5. ạ as in idea, Persia.

1. e as in met.
2. ē as in me.
3. ẹ as in ablegate,
4. ė as in her, fern.
5. ẹ as in prudent.

1. i as in pin.
2. ī as in pine.

1. o as in not.
2. ō as in no.
3. ọ̄ as in democrat.
4. ö as in move.

1. u as in tub.
2. ū as in mute.
3. ụ̄ as in singular, education.

A

A., see **Aulus.**

ā (before cons.), **ab** (before vowels or cons.), prep. w. abl. (away from), *from, by, on the side of, at, at the hands of, of; on, in;* as adv., *off, away,* II, 7; as prefix, *away, off, un-.*

abditus, -a, -um [abdō], *hidden, concealed.*

abdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum [ab+dō], tr., *put away, hide, conceal.*

abdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum [ab+dūcō], tr., *lead away, carry away.*

abiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum [ab+iaciō], tr., *throw away.*

abiēs, abietis, F., *fir-tree.*

abscīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum [abs+caedō], tr., *cut off.*

absēns, absentis, adj. [absum], *absent.*

absimilis, -e [ab+similis], *different.*

abstineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum [abs+teneō], tr. and intr., *keep back, restrain, refrain.*

abstrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctum [ab+trahō], (drag away), tr., *carry off.*

absum, abesse, āfuī [ab+sum], intr., *be away, be distant, be*

lacking, be of no value, I. 36; *take no part in*, VI. 14.

ac, see **atque**.

accēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum [ad+cēdō], intr., *go to, approach, be added*, I. 19, IV. 22; **accēdēbat** (or **accessit**) **quod**, *another reason was that*, etc.

accelerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [celer], intr., *hasten*.

acceptus, -a, -um, part. of **accipiō**, as adj., *pleasing* (to), *popular* (with); used w. dat.

accidō, -cidere, -cidī, —— [ad+cadō], intr., (fall to), *fall, happen, occur, befall*; **accidit**, impers., *it happens*.

accīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum [ad+caedō], tr., *cut into*.

accipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum [ad+capiō], tr., *receive, accept, learn, hear*.

acclīvis, -e, *ascending, rising*.

acclīvitās, -tātis, F. [ad+clīvus], *ascent*.

accommodātus, -a, -um, part. as adj. [accommodō], *suited, adapted*.

accommodō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ad+commodō], tr., *fit, adjust, put on*, II. 21.

accūrātē, adv., *carefully*.

accurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursum [ad+currō, *run*], intr., *run to, hasten to*.

accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ad+causa], tr., *call to account, blame, find fault with*.

ācer, ācris, ācre, *sharp, keen, active*.

acervus, -ī, M., *heap, pile*.

aciēs, -ēī, F., (edge), *line, battle-line, army* (in battle-array); w. **oculōrum**, *keenness*; **aciē**, II. 23, another form of genitive=**aciēī**.

ācriter, adv. [ācer], *sharply fiercely*.

āctus, part. of **agō**.

ad, prep. w. acc., *to, toward, near, on; for, to the vicinity of, according to*; adv. (w. numerals), *about*; as prefix, *to, at*.

adāctus, part. of **adigō**.

adaequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ad+aequō], tr., *make equal; reach* (by equaling), II. 32; *equal*; w. **cursum**, *keep up with*.

adamō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ad+amō, *love*], tr., *become fond of, greatly like*.

addūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum [ad+dūcō], tr., *lead to, bring to; induce, influence; draw taut*, III. 14.

adēmptum, part. of **adimō**.

adeō, -īre, -īvī (**iī**), **-itum** [ad+eō], intr., *go to, approach, attack*, II. 7, [illegible] IV. 21.

adequitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ad+equitō], intr., *ride up to*.

adferō, adferre, attulī, adlātum [ad+ferō], tr., *bring to; bring forward; offer, cite*, VI. 22; *cause, produce*.

adficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum [ad+faciō], tr., *do to, treat, affect*; w. **dolōre**, *fill*; **suppliciō adficere**, *punish*; w. **morbus**, *afflict*.

adfīgō, -fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxum [ad + fīgō], tr., *attach to.*

adfīnitās, -tātis, F. [adfīnis], *relationship, connection; ties of marriage*, II. 4.

adflictō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ad + flīgō], tr., (dash against), *wreck, shatter.*

adflīgō, -flīgere, -flīxī, -flīctum [ad+flīgō], tr., (dash at), *damage; throw down.*

adgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum [ad + gradior, *step*], dep., *approach, attack.*

adgregō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ad + gregō; grex, *herd*], tr., *join, attach;* sē adgregāre, *gather around, attach oneself.*

adhibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum [ad+ habeō], tr. (hold toward), *summon, invite, admit; use, employ; bring*, IV. 13.

adhūc, adv., *hitherto, up to this time.*

Adiatunnus, -ī, M., *Adiatunnus* (ā-di-a-tun'us), a chief of the Sotiates, III. 22.

adiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum [ad+iaciō], tr., *throw to, add to;* adiectus, *adjoining*, III. 1.

adigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum [ad+ agō], tr., *drive to, drive down*, IV. 17; w. tēlum, *hurl*, II. 21.

adimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmptum [ad+emō], tr., *take away.*

aditus, -ūs, M. [adeō], *access, approach; means of access.*

adiungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum [ad+iungō], tr., *join to, annex to*, III. 2.

adiuvō, -iuvāre, -iūvī, -iūtum [ad+iuvō], tr., *help, aid, support*, II. 17.

administer, -trī, M. [ad+minister, *servant*], *assistant, helper.*

administrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ad+ministrō, *serve*], tr., *execute, perform, do*, II. 20; *give, issue*, II. 22; *carry out*, III. 4; *manage*, IV. 29, VI. 20.

admīror, -mīrārī, -mīrātus sum [ad+mīror], dep., *wonder at, be surprised at, wonder.*

admittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum [ad+mittō], tr., *send to, let go; commit, permit*, IV. 25; in sē admittere, *commit*, III. 9; equō admissō, *at full speed.*

admodum, adv. [ad+modum, *to a degree*], *very, exceedingly.*

adolēscō, -olēscere, -olēvī, -ultum [ad+olēscō, *grow*], intr., *grow up.*

adorior, -orīrī, -ortus sum [ad+ orior], dep. (rise against), *attack.*

adpellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum [ad+pellō], tr. (drive to); w. nāvēs, *land, bring to land.*

adpetō, -petere, -petīvī, -petītum [ad+petō], tr. and intr., *strive for, seek to obtain; approach.*

adplicō, -āre, -āvī (uī), -ātum [ad+plicō, *fold*], tr., *bend toward;* sē adplicāre, *lean against.*

adpropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ad+propinquō], intr., *draw near to, approach.*

adscīscō, -scīscere, -scīvī, -scītum [ad+scīscō, *approve*], tr.,

attach to, add to; **sibi adscīscere**, *unite with themselves.*

adsiduus, -a, -um [ad, sedeō, *sit*], *constant, continuous, incessant.*

adsistō, -sistere, -stitī, —— [ad + sistō], intr., *stand near, appear.*

adsuēfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum [adsuētus, faciō], tr., *accustom, train.*

adsuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētum [ad + suēscō], intr., *become accustomed.*

adsum, -esse, -fuī [ad + sum], intr., *be near, be at hand, be present.*

Aduatucī, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Aduatuci* (ad-ū-at′ū-sī), a Belgian tribe, II. 4, etc.

adulēscēns, -entis, M. [adolēscō], *young man, youth; the younger* (w. a proper name, to distinguish one from his father).

adulēscentia, -ae, F. [adulēscēns], *youth.*

adulēscentulus, -ī, M. [adulēscēns], *very young man.*

adventus, -ūs, M. [ad + veniō], *arrival, approach, coming.*

1. **adversus, -a, -um** [part. of advertō], as adj., *opposite; unfavorable, adverse; in front,* II. 8; *face to face,* II. 24; **adversō colle**, *up the hill,* II. 19.

2. **adversus,** prep. w. acc., *against.*

advertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum [ad + vertō], tr., *turn to;* **animum advertere**, *notice.*

aedificium -ī, N. [aedificō, *build*], *building.*

aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [aedēs *house,* faciō], tr., *build.*

aegrē, adv. [aeger], *with difficulty, scarcely;* **aegerrimē**, *with the greatest difficulty.*

Aemilius, -ī, M., *Aemilius* (ē-mil′i-us), name of a Roman gens; *Lucius,* a Gaul, an officer in Caesar's cavalry, I. 23.

aequāliter, adv. [aequālis], *evenly, uniformly.*

aequinoctium, -ī, M. [aequus, nox], *the equinox.*

aequitās, -tātis, F. [aequus], (evenness), *fairness;* **animī aequitās**, *contentment.*

aequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [aequus], tr., *make equal, equalize.*

aequus, -a, -um, *even, equal; fair, just, favorable.*

aerāria, -ae, F. [aes], *coppermine.*

aes, aeris, N., *copper, money;* **aes aliēnum** (the money of another), *debt.*

aestās, -tātis, F., *summer.*

aestimātiō, -ōnis, F. [aestimō], *valuation, an estimate.*

aestimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *regard, consider, estimate.*

aestuārium, -ī, N. [aestus], *inlet, sea-marsh.*

aestus, -ūs, M., *tide.*

aetās, -tātis, F., *age, advanced age.*

aeternus, -a, -um, *everlasting, perpetual.*

āfutūrus, see **absum.**

ager, agrī, M., *field, country, territory.*

agger, aggeris, M. [ad + gerō], (what is carried to a place), *mound* (as used in sieges), *rampart* (of a camp, etc.); *materials for a rampart*, II. 20; *earth* (stones, timber, etc.); see Introd. 52.

agmen, -minis, N. [agō], *army* (on the march); **novissimum agmen**, *rear* (of an army); **prīmum agmen**, *van* (the foremost division of an army).

agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, tr. (put in motion), *drive, do; speak, parley, plead, discuss;* w. **cum tribūnīs**, I. 41, *arrange;* w. **vīnea**, II. 12, *move forward*, etc.; w. **cuniculus**, III. 21, *extend*; see **grātia.**

alacer, -cris, -cre, *eager.*

alacritās, -tātis, F. [alacer], *liveliness, eagerness,*

ālārius, -a, -um [āla, *wing*], *of a wing;* **ālāriī, -ōrum**, M. pl. as noun, *auxiliary troops* (stationed on the wings of the army).

albus, -a, -um, *white.*

alcēs, alcis, F., *elk.*

Alesia, -ae, F., *Alesia* (a-lē'shi-ạ), a city of the Mandubii, now *Alise Sainte Reine.*

aliās, adv. [alius], *at another time;* **aliās . . . aliās**, *at one time . . . at another.*

aliēnus, -a, -um [alius], *belonging to another, foreign; unfavorable, inappropriate*, VI. 11.

aliō, adv. [alius], *to another place elsewhere.*

aliquamdiū, adv. [aliquam + diū], *for some time.*

aliquandō, adv. [ali + quandō], *sometime, finally.*

aliquantō, adv., *somewhat, considerably.*

aliquis, -quid, indef. pron. (App. 27), *some, any;* as adj., **aliquī, -qua, -quod**, *some, any;* as adv., **aliquid**, I. 40, *to some extent.*

aliquot, indecl. adj., *some, several.*

aliter, adv. [alius], *otherwise.*

alius, -a, -ud, adj. or pron. (App. 12, and 117), *another, other* (of more than two); before **ac** or **atque**, *different;* pl., *some, others;* **alius . . . alius**, *one . . . another;* **aliī . . . aliī**, *some . . . others;* for **alius aliā, aliī aliam in partem**, etc., see App. 117.

Allobrogēs, -um (acc. **Allobrogas**), M. pl., *the Allobroges* (a-lob'rō-jēz), a tribe southwest of Lake Geneva, conquered by the Romans in 121 B.C., I. 6, 10, 11, 14, etc.

alō, alere, aluī, altum (or **alitum**), tr., *feed, nourish, support, increase; raise*, V. 12.

Alpēs, -ium, F., *the Alps*, I. 10, etc.

alter, -era, -erum, adj. or pron. (App. 12), *the other* (of two), *second* (in a series), *another;* **alter . . . alter**, *the one . . . the*

other; **alterī . . . alterī,** *one party* (or division) . . . *the other;* **alterius,** or **alterius** *of another,* used as gen. of **alius.**

altitūdō, -inis, F. [**altus**], *height, depth.*

altus, -a, -um [**alō**], *high, deep:* neut. as noun, *the deep* (sea), III. 12, IV. 24.

alūta, -ae, F., *leather.*

ambactus, -ī, M., *vassal.*

Ambarrī, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Ambarri* (am-bar'rī), a tribe on the Arar, related to the Haedui, I. 11, etc.

Ambiānī, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Ambiani* (am-bi-ā'nī), a Belgian tribe, II. 4, etc.

Ambiliatī, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Ambiliati* (am-bi-lī'a-tī); their location is uncertain.

Ambiorīx, -īgis, M., *Ambiorix* (am-bī'ō-riks), chief of the Eburones.

Ambivaretī, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Ambivareti* (am-bi-var'e-tī), a tribe on the Loire.

Ambivaritī, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Ambivariti* (am-bi-var'i-tī), a tribe on the left bank of the Meuse.

ambō, -ae, -ō, adj. (declined like **duo**), *both* (together).

āmentia, -ae, F. [**āmēns**], *want of reason, folly, madness.*

amīcitia, -ae, F. [**amīcus**], *friendship.*

amīcus, -a, -um [**amō**, *love*], *friendly;* masc. as noun, *friend.*

āmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum [**ā**+**mittō**], tr., *send away, dismiss; lose.*

amor, amōris, M. [**amō**], *love.*

amplē, adv. [**amplus**], *largely, abundantly.*

amplificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**amplus, faciō**], tr., *enlarge, increase, extend.*

amplitūdō, -inis, F. [**amplus**], *size, extent, greatness.*

amplius, adv. [comp. of **amplē**], *more, further.*

amplus, -a, -um, *large, great;* w. **mūnera,** *lavish;* w. **genus,** *illustrious; important, distinguished,* IV. 12; neut. comp., **amplius,** as noun, *more.*

an, conj., *or,* introducing the second part of a double question; sometimes to be omitted in trans., I. 37.

Anartēs, -ium, M. pl., *the Anartes* (an-är'tēz), a tribe of the Daci.

anceps, ancipitis, adj. [**ambō**+**caput**], (two-headed), *double;* **anceps proelium,** *i.e.,* facing in two directions.

ancora, -ae, F., *anchor.*

Andebrogius, -ī, M., *Andebrogius* (an-de-brō'ji-us), a leader of the Remi, II. 3.

Andēs, -ium, M. pl., *the Andes* (an'dēz), a tribe on the Loire.

angulus, -ī, M., *angle, corner.*

angustē, adv. [**angustus**], *closely.*

angustiae, -ārum, F. pl. [**angustus**], *narrowness, narrow pass; difficulties,* III. 18.

angustus, -a, -um [**angō**, *squeeze*], *narrow, small;* neut. as noun,

in angustō, II. 25, *in a critical situation.*

anima, -ae, F., *soul.*

animadvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum [animum + ad + vertō], tr. (turn the mind to), *perceive, notice, attend to; punish*, I. 19.

animal, animālis, N. [anima], *animal.*

animus, -ī, M., *soul, mind, feeling, heart, attention; spirit, courage.*

annus, -ī, M., *year.*

annuus, -a, -um [annus], *yearly, every year.*

ānser, ānseris, M., *goose.*

ante, prep. w. acc., *before;* adv., *before, ago, previously*, I. 31, l. 606; as prefix, *before, in advance.*

anteā, adv. [ante+ea], *before, previously.*

antecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum [ante+cēdō] tr., *go before, go in advance; excel, surpass.*

anteferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum [ante+ferō], tr. (bear before), *prefer.*

antemna, -ae, F., *sail-yard.*

antepōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum [ante+pōnō], tr., *place before.*

antīquitus, adv. [antīquus], *in former times, anciently.*

antīquus, -a, -um [ante], *former, ancient, of old times.*

Antistius, -ī, M., *Antistius* (antis'ti-us), name of a Roman gens; *Antistius Reginus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Antōnius, -ī. M., *Antonius* (antō'ni-us), a Roman family name; *Marcus* ("*Mark Antony*"), one of Caesar's lieutenants, and member of the second triumvirate.

apertē, adv. [apertus], *openly, manifestly.*

apertus, -a, -um [aperiō], *open, exposed, unprotected;* see **latus.**

Apollō, Apollinis, M., *Apollo* (a-pol'ō), a god of the Greeks and Romans.

appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *call* (by name), *name.*

Apr., see **Aprīlis.**

Aprīlis, -e, *of April.*

aptus, -a, -um, *fitted, suitable.*

apud, prep. w. acc., *among, before, near, in the presence of, with.*

aqua, -ae, F., *water.*

aquātiō, -ōnis, F. [aqua], *getting water.*

aquila, -ae, F., *eagle*, the standard of a legion; see Introd. 49.

Aquilēia, -ae, F., *Aquileia* (ak-wi-lē'ya), a town at the head of the Adriatic, I. 10.

Aquītānia, -ae, F., *Aquitania* (ak-wi-tā'ni-a), the southern division of Gaul, I. 1, III. 11, etc.

Aquītānus, -a, -um, *Aquitanian;* masc. pl. as noun, *the Aquitani* (ak-wi-tā'nī), Aquitanians, people of Aquitania, I. 1, etc.

Arar, Araris, acc. -im, abl., -ī, M., *the Arar* (ā'rar), modern

Saône (sōn), a tributary of the Rhone, I. 12, etc.

arbitrium, -ī, N. [arbiter, *judge*], *decision, judgment; will, pleasure.*

arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum [arbiter, *judge*], dep., *think, judge, consider.*

arbor, -oris, F., *tree.*

arcessō, -ere, arcessīvī, arcessītum, tr. (cause to come), *summon, send for, invite.*

arduus, -a, -um, *steep.*

argentum, -ī, N., *silver.*

āridus, -a, -um, *dry;* neut. as noun, *dry land,* IV. 24.

ariēs, arietis, M., *battering-ram; buttress;* **prō ariete**, *as a buttress,* IV. 17.

Ariovistus, -ī, M., *Ariovistus* (ā-ri-ō-vis'tus), a German king, I. 31–53.

arma, -ōrum, N. pl., *arms, equipment.*

armāmenta, -ōrum [armō], *equipment, rigging,* III. 14.

armātūra, -ae, F. [armō], *armor, equipment.*

armātus, -a, -um [armō], part. as adj., *armed;* **armāta mīlia**, *thousands of armed men;* masc. pl. as noun, *armed men,* III. 3.

armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *arm, equip.*

arroganter, adv. [arrogāns], *presumptuously, haughtily.*

arrogantia, -ae, F. [arrogāns], *haughtiness, arrogance.*

ars, artis, F., *art, branch of industry.*

artē, adv. [artus], *closely, firmly.*

articulus, -ī, M. [artus, *joint*], *little joint, joint.*

artificium, -ī, N. [artifex, *artist*], *an art.*

Arvernī, -ōrum, M., *the Arverni* (är-vėr'nī), a Gallic tribe southwest of the Haedui, whose country is now Auvergne, I. 31.

arx, arcis, F., *fortress, citadel.*

ascendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsum [ad+scandō, *climb*], tr., *climb, ascend.*

ascēnsus, -ūs, M. [ascendō], *ascent, climbing.*

aspectus, -ūs, M. [aspiciō, *look at*], *appearance, sight.*

at, conj., *but; at least,* I. 43.

atque (before vowels or cons.), **ac** (before cons.), conj., *and, and also;* after **par**, *as;* after a comparative or word implying comparison, *than.*

Atrebās, Atrebātis, M., *one of the Atrebates;* pl., *the Atrebates* (at-re-bā'tēz), a tribe of the Belgae, II. 4, etc.

attingō, -tingere, -tigī, -tāctum [ad+tangō], tr., *touch upon, border upon, reach.*

attribuō, -tribuere, -tribuī, -tribūtum [ad+tribuō], tr., *assign.*

attulī, see **adferō**.

auctior, -ius, comp. of **auctus** [augeō], w. **honōre**, *richer in,* I. 43.

auctor, -ōris, M. [augeō], *originator, promoter.*

auctōritās, -tātis, F. [auctor],

influence, authority, prestige; advice.

audācia, -ae, F. [audāx], *daring, boldness, courage; audacity, presumption.*

audācter, adv. [audāx], *boldly.*

audeō, audēre, ausus sum, semi-dep., *dare.*

audio, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, tr., *hear, hear about.*

audītiō, -ōnis, F. [audiō], *report, hearsay.*

augeō, augēre, auxī, auctum, tr., *increase.*

Aulercī, -ōrum, M., *the Aulerci* (â-ler′sī), a tribe of northwestern Gaul.

Aulus, -ī, M., *Aulus* (â′lus), a Roman personal name.

aureus, -a, -um [aurum], *of gold, golden.*

aurīga, -ae, M. [aurea, *bridle*], *charioteer, driver.*

auris, -is, F., *ear.*

Aurunculēius, -ī, M., *Lucius Aurunculeius* (â-rung-kṳ̄-lē′yus) *Cotta,* one of Caesar's lieutenants, II. 11, etc.

Auscī, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Ausci* (â′sī), an Aquitanian tribe.

ausus, part. of **audeō.**

aut, conj., *or;* **aut . . . aut,** *either . . . or.*

autem, conj., *on the other hand, but; furthermore, besides.* (App. 171, *e.*)

auxiliāris, -e [auxilium], *auxiliary;* masc. pl. as noun, *auxiliaries.*

auxilior, -ārī, -ātus sum [auxilium], dep., *give aid.*

auxilium, -ī, N. [augeō], *aid, help;* pl., *auxiliary forces, auxiliaries;* **auxilī causā,** *as auxiliaries.*

avāritia, -ae, F. [avārus], *avarice, greed.*

āversus, -a, -um, part. as adj. [āvertō], *turned away;* **āversus hostis,** *the enemy in flight;* **āversī,** *in the rear,* II. 26.

āvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum [ā+vertō], tr., *turn away, turn aside.*

avis, -is, F., *bird.*

avus, -ī, M., *grandfather.*

Axona, -ae, F., *the Axona* (aks′o-na), modern *Aisne* (ān), a river of the Belgae, II. 5, etc.

B

Baculus, -ī, M., *P. Sextius Baculus* (bac′u-lus), a centurion, II. 25, III. 5.

Baleārēs, -ium, M. pl., *the Baleares* (bal-ē-ar′ēz), inhabitants of the Balearic Islands.

Baleāris, -e, adj., *Balearic* (bal-ē-ar′ik), II. 7.

balteus, -ī, M., *belt.*

barbarus, -a, -um, *foreign, uncivilized, rude;* masc. pl. as noun, *barbarian, foreigner.*

Basilus, -ī, M., *Basilus* (bas′i-lus); see **Minucius.**

Batāvī, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Batavi* (ba-tā′vī), *Batavians,* a tribe near the mouth of the Rhine.

Belgae, -ārum, M. pl., *the Belgae* (bel′jē), *Belgians,*

inhabitants of northern Gaul, I. 1, II. 1, 3, etc.; see Introd. 22.

Belgium, -ī, N., *Belgium.*

bellicōsus, -a, -um [bellum], *warlike.*

bellicus, -a, -um [bellum], *of war, in war.*

bellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr., *make war, fight.*

Bellovacī, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Bellovaci* (be-lov'a-sī), the strongest tribe of the Belgae, II. 4, 5, 10, 13, etc.

bellum, -ī, N., *war.*

bene, adv. [bonus] (App. 19), *well.*

beneficium, -ī, N. [bene+faciō], (a well-doing), *kindness, favor, benefit;* **beneficiō sortium**, *thanks to the lots*, I. 53.

Bibracte, -is, N., *Bibracte* (bi-brak'tē), largest town of the Haedui, modern *Mont Beuvray*, I. 23, etc.

Bibrax, **Bibractis**, F., *Bibrax* (bī'braks), a town of the Remi, II. 6, 7.

bīduum, -ī, N. [bis+diēs], *two days.*

biennium, -ī, N. [bis+annus], *two years.*

Bigerriōnēs, -um, M. pl., *the Bigerriones* (bī-jer-ri-ō'nēz), a tribe in Aquitania.

bīnī, -ae, -a, dist. num. adj., *two each, two at a time.*

bipedālis, -e [bis+pedālis], *two feet thick.*

bipertītō, adv. [bis+partītus], *in two divisions.*

bis, num. adv., *twice.*

Biturīgēs, -um, M. pl., *the Bituriges* (bit-ū-rī'jēz), a tribe of central Gaul, in the vicinity of modern *Bourges*, I. 18, etc.

Boduognātus, -ī, M., *Boduognatus* (bod-ū-og-nā'tus), leader of the Nervii, II. 23.

Bōiī, **Bōiōrum**, M. pl., *the Boii* (bō'i-ī), a wandering Celtic tribe, allies of the Helvetii, I. 5, 25; later settled w. the Haedui, I. 28. (A kindred tribe north of the Danube gave the name to Bohemia.)

bonitās, -tātis, F. [bonus], *goodness, fertility.*

bonus, -a, -um, *good, friendly.* (App. 18); as noun, **bonum**, *good*, I. 40; pl., *goods, property*, VI. 19.

bōs, **bovis**, gen. pl., **boum**, M. or F., *ox, cow;* pl., *cattle.*

bracchium, -ī, N., *forearm, lower arm; arm.*

Brātuspantium, -ī, N., *Bratuspantium* (brat-us-pan'shi-um) a town of the Bellovaci, II. 13.

brevis, -e, *short, brief.*

brevitās, -tātis, F. [brevis], *shortness, brevity.*

Britannī, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Britons.*

Britannia, -ae, F. *Britain*, II. 4, 14, III. 8, IV. 20, etc., V. 8, 12, etc.

brūma, -ae, F. [brevi-ma, *shortest*, sc. **diēs**, *the shortest day*], *the winter solstice.*

Brūtus, **-ī**, M., *Brutus* (brō′tus), a Roman family name; *D. Junius Brutus*, a lieutenant of Caesar, III. 11.

C

C, for **centum**.

C. for **Gāius**, abbreviation of Gāius.

Cabūrus, **-ī**, M. (*Gaius Valerius*) *Caburus* (ka-bū′rus), a Gaul honored with Roman citizenship by C. Valerius Flaccus, I. 47.

cadāver, **-eris**, *dead body.*

cadō, **cadere**, **cecidī**, **cāsum**, intr., *fall.*

caedēs, **-is**, F. [**caedō**], *killing, murder, slaughter.*

caedō, **caedere**, **cecīdī**, **caesum**, tr., *cut, cut down.*

caelestis, **-e** [**caelum**, *heaven*], *heavenly;* as noun, *god.*

Caemānī, **-ōrum**, M. pl., *the Caemani* (sē-mā′nī), a Belgian tribe, II. 4.

Caerōsī, **-ōrum**, M. pl., *the Caerosi* (sē-rō′sī), a Belgian tribe, II. 4.

caeruleus, **-a**, **-um** [**caelum**, *heaven*], *dark blue.*

Caesar, **-is**, M., *Caesar* (sē′zar), a Roman family name; **Gāius Iūlius**, *Gaius Julius;* see Introd. 1–21.

caespes, **caespitis**, M., *sod.*

calamitās, **-tātis**, F., *disaster, calamity, defect, loss, misfortune, harm.*

Caletī, **-ōrum**, M. pl., *the Caleti,* (kal′e-tī), a Belgian tribe, II 4, etc.

callidus, **-a**, **-um** [**calleō**, *be wise*], *shrewd, clever.*

cālō, **-ōnis**, M., *soldier's servant, camp-follower.*

campester, **-tris**, **-tre** [**campus**], *of the plain, on the plain*, VII. 81.

campus, **-ī**, M., *plain, level country.*

Canīnius, **-ī**, M., *Caninius* (ka-nin′i-us) name of a Roman gens; *Caninius Rebilus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Cantabrī, **-ōrum**, M. pl., *the Cantabri* (kan′ta-brī), a tribe in northern Spain.

Cantium, **-ī**, N., *Kent.*

caper, **caprī**, M., *goat.*

capillus, **-ī**, M. [**caput**], *hair* (of the head).

capiō, **capere**, **cēpī**, **captum**, tr., *take; take captive; occupy, seize, deceive*, I. 40; *derive, get; reach* (in sailing); *choose, select;* w. **cōnsilium**, *form, adopt;* w. **arma**, *take up.*

capra, **-ae**, F., *she-goat.*

captīvus, **-ī**, M. [**capiō**], *captive, prisoner.*

captus, **-ūs**, M. [**capiō**], *capacity, standard*, IV. 3.

caput, **capitis**, N., *head, person*, II. 33; *mouth* (of a river), IV. 10.

Carcasō, **-ōnis**, F., *Carcaso* (kär′ka-sō), a town of the Tectosages, modern *Carcassonne.*

carīna, **-ae**, F., *keel.*

Carnutēs, **-um**, M. pl., *the Carnutes* (kär'nū-tēz), a tribe north of central Gaul.

carō, **carnis**, F., *flesh, meat.*

carpō, **carpere**, **carpsī**, **carptum**, tr., *criticise, ridicule.*

carrus, **-ī**, *cart, wagon.*

cāseus, **-ī**, M., *cheese.*

Cassiānus, **-a**, **-um**, *of Cassius;* **bellum Cassiānum**, *the war with Cassius*, I. 13.

Cassius, **-ī**, M., *Cassius* (kash'-ius), name of a Roman gens; *L. Cassius* (*Longinus*), consul, 107 B.C., I. 7, 12.

castellum, **-ī**, N. [**castrum**], *fort, redoubt, stronghold.*

Casticus, **-ī**, M., *Casticus* (kas'ti-cus), a prominent Sequanian, I. 3.

castra, **-ōrum**, N. pl. [**castrum**, *fort*], *camp;* see Introd. 43.

cāsus, **-ūs**, M. [**cadō**], (a falling), *accident, chance, fate, calamity; condition, pass*, II. 31; *occurrence*, III. 13; *emergency*, IV. 31.

Catamantāloedis, **-is**, M., *Catamantaloedis* (kat-ą-man-tą-lē'dis), a king of the Sequani, I. 3.

catēna, **-ae**, F., *chain.*

Caturīgēs, **-um**, M. pl., *the Caturiges* (kat-ū-rī'jēz), an Alpine tribe, I. 10.

causa, **-ae**, F., *cause, reason, excuse*, I. 42; *case, situation;* **causam dīcere**, *plead a case, stand trial;* **causā** (following a genitive), *on account* (of), *for the sake* (of), *for the purpose* (of); **multīs dē causīs**, *for many reasons.*

cautēs, **-is**, F., *reef, sharp rock.*

caveō, **cavēre**, **cāvī**, **cautum**, intr., *take care, be on one's guard.*

Cavillōnum, **-ī**, N., *Cavillonum* (kav-il-ō'num), a town of the Haedui.

cecidī, **cecīdī**, see **cadō**, **caedō**.

cēdō, **cēdere**, **cessī**, **cessum**, intr., *go from, go away, depart, retreat*, II. 19; *yield.*

celer, **celeris**, **celere**, *quick, rapid.*

celeritās, **-tātis**, F. [**celer**], *quickness, speed.*

celeriter, adv. [**celer**], *quickly.*

cēlō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, tr., *conceal, hide.*

Celtae, **-ārum**, M. pl., *the Celts* (selts), I. 1; see Introd. 22.

cēnseō, **cēnsēre**, **cēnsuī**, **cēnsum**, tr., *estimate, be of opinion, think;* w. **senātus**, *decree;* w. **sententia**, *favor.*

cēnsus, **-ūs**, M. [**cēnseō**], *enumeration, census.*

centum, indecl. adj., *hundred.*

centuriō, **-ōnis**, M. [**centuria**], *centurion;* see Introd. 37.

cēpī, see **capiō**.

cernō, **cernere**, **crēvī**, **crētum**, tr. (separate), *distinguish, see, see plainly, perceive.*

certāmen, **-inis**, N. [**certō**], *contest.*

certē, adv. [**certus**], *certainly, at least.*

certus, **-a**, **-um**, *certain, sure, fixed, definite, established, regular*, II. 22; *trustworthy;* **cer-**

tiōrem facere, *inform;* **certior fierī**, *be informed.*

cervus, **-ī**, M., *stag.*

cēterus, **-a**, **-um**, *the rest;* usually pl., *the rest, the others.*

Ceutronēs, **-um**, M. pl., *the Ceutrones* (sū′trō-nēz), an Alpine tribe, east of the Allobroges, I. 10.

cibāria, **-ōrum**, N. pl. [**cibus**], *food, provisions,* **molita cibāria**, *ground grain.*

cibus, **-ī**, M., *food.*

Cicerō, **-ōnis**, M., *Cicero* (sis′e-rō), name of a Roman family; *Q. Tullius Cicero,* one of Caesar's lieutenants, brother of the orator.

Cimberius, **-ī**, M., *Cimberius* (sim-bē′ri-us), a leader of the Suebi, I. 37.

Cimbrī, **-ōrum**, M. pl., *the Cimbri* (sim′brī), a German tribe, who together with the Teutoni, overran Gaul and invaded Italy. They were defeated by Marius, 101 B.C., I. 33, etc.

cingō, **cingere**, **cīnxī**, **cīnctum**, tr., *surround.*

cippus, **-ī**, M., *pointed column, post.*

circinus, **-ī**, M. [**circum**], *pair of compasses.*

circiter, adv., and prep. w. acc., *about.*

circuitus, **-ūs**, M. [**circumeō**], (a going around), *roundabout way, circuit, circumference.*

circum, prep. w. acc., *around, about;* as prefix, *around.*

circumclūdō, **-clūdere**, **-clūsī**, **clūsum** [**circum** + **claudō**], tr., *encircle, surround.*

circumdō, **-dare**, **-dedī**, **-datum** [**circum** + **dō**], tr., *put around, build around, surround;* **circumdatus**, part. as adj., *encompassing,* I. 38.

circumdūcō, **-dūcere**, **-dūxī**, **-ductum** [**circum** + **dūcō**], tr., *lead around, draw around.*

circumeō, **-īre**, **-iī**, **-itum** [**circum** + **eō**], intr., *go around;* tr., *inspect, make the rounds of.*

circumiciō, **-icere**, **-iēcī**, **-iectum** [**circum** + **iaciō**], tr., *throw around, station around.*

circummūniō, **-īre**, **-īvī**, **-ītum** [**circum** + **mūniō**], tr., *fortify* (around), *protect.*

circumplector, **-plectī**, **-plexus sum** [**circum** + **plector**], dep., *surround, inclose.*

circumsistō, **-sistere**, **-stetī** (**-stitī**), —— [**circum** + **sistō**], tr., *stand around, surround, rally around.*

circumveniō, **-venīre**, **-vēnī**, **-ventum** [**circum** + **veniō**], tr., *come around, surround.*

cis = **citrā**.

citātus, **-a**, **-um** [**citō**, *put in motion*], *swift, with a swift current,* IV. 10.

citerior, **-ius**, comp. adj. [**citrā**, App. 18], *nearer, hither;* see **Gallia**.

citissimē, adv., sup. of **citō**, *very quickly.*

citrā (or **cis**), adv., and prep. w. acc., *on this side* (of).

citrō, adv., *hither;* see **ultrō**.

cīvis, -is, M., *citizen.*

cīvitās, -tātis, F. [**cīvis**], *citizenship, state, tribe, nation.*

clam, adv., *secretly.*

clāmitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [clāmō], tr., *cry out.*

clāmor, -ōris, M., *shouting, uproar.*

classis, -is, F., *fleet.*

claudō, **claudere**, **clausī**, **clausum**, tr., *close, shut;* **agmen claudere**, *bring up the rear.*

clāvus, -ī, M., *nail, bolt.*

clēmentia, -ae, F. [**clēmēns**, *mild*], *kindness, mildness.*

cliēns, -entis, M. [**clueō**, *hear, obey*], *follower, retainer,* I. 4; *subject allies,* I. 31, IV. 6.

clientēla, -ae, F. [**cliēns**], *dependency, vassalage;* see **dīcō**.

Cn., abbr. of *Gnaeus.*

coacervō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**con** + **acervō**], tr., *heap up.*

coāctus, see **cōgō**.

Cocosātēs, -um, M. pl., *the Cocosates* (kok-ō-sā′tēz), a tribe in Aquitania.

coëmō, -ēmere, -ēmī, -ēmptum [**con** + **emō**], tr., *buy up, purchase.*

coëō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itum [**con** + **eō**], intr., *come together, unite.*

coepī, def. verb (App. 47), *began;* w. a passive complementary infinitive, **coeptus sum**, etc., is used.

coërceō, -ercēre, -ercuī, -ercitum [**con** + **arceō**, *confine*], tr., *restrain.*

cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**con** + **agitō**], tr., *consider* (thoroughly), *ponder, think, plan.*

cognātiō, -ōnis, F. [**cognātus**], *kinship;* pl., *kinsmen, families.*

cognōscō, -gnōscere, -gnōvī, -gnitum [**con** + **gnōscō**], tr., *learn, ascertain;* perf., *have learned,* hence, *know;* plup., *knew.*

cōgō, **cōgere**, **coēgī**, **coāctum** [**con** + **agō**], tr., *drive together, collect, assemble; compel.*

cohors, **cohortis**, F., *cohort,* tenth part of a legion; see Introd. 28.

cohortātiō, -ōnis, F. [**cohortor**], *encouraging, encouragement.*

cohortor, -hortārī, -hortātus sum [**con** + **hortor**], dep., *encourage, exhort, urge.*

colligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum [**con** + **legō**], tr., *gather, collect, acquire,* VI. 12; **sē colligere**, *recover one's self, rally.*

collis, -is, M., *hill.*

colō, **colere**, **coluī**, **cultum**, tr., *till, cultivate; worship,* VI. 17.

colōnia, -ae, F. [**colō**], *colony.*

color, -ōris, M., *color.*

combūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ūstum [**con** + **ūrō**, *burn*], tr., *burn up, consume.*

commeātus, -ūs, M. [**commeō**], *supplies, provisions.*

commemorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**con** + **memorō**], tr., *call to mind, mention, relate, state,* IV. 16.

commendō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum

[con+mandō], tr., *intrust, surrender.*

commeō, commeāre, commeāvī, commeātum, intr., *go back and forth;* **commeāre ad,** *visit.*

commīlitō, -ōnis, M. [mīles], *fellow-soldier, comrade.*

comminus, adv. [con+manus], *in close quarters, in a hand to hand contest.*

committō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum [con+mittō], tr. (send together), *commit, permit, allow, intrust; do, perpetrate, cause;* w. **proelium,** *join, fight.*

Commius, -ī, M., *Commius* (kom'i-us), a chief of the Atrebates.

commodē, adv. [commodus], *conveniently, easily, fitly, properly, effectively.*

commodum, -ī, N. [commodus], *advantage, profit, convenience.*

commodus, -a, -um [com+modus], *suitable, fitting, advantageous.*

commonefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum [commoneō + faciō], tr., *remind, admonish.*

commoror, -ārī, -ātus sum [com+moror], dep., *delay, stay.*

commoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum [con+moveō], tr., *move, disturb; alarm, influence.*

commūnicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [commūnis], tr., *communicate, share, impart; put along* (with), VI. 19.

commūniō, -mūnīre, -mūnīvī, -mūnītum [con+mūniō], tr., *fortify strongly.*

commūnis, -e [con+mūnus], *common, in common, general, public;* **commūnis rēs,** *a matter of common interest.*

commūtātiō, -ōnis, F. [commūtō], *change.*

commūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [con+mūtō, *change*], tr., *change completely, exchange* (for), VI. 22.

1. **comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** [con+parō], tr., *prepare, make ready, arrange; procure, obtain, gain.*
2. **comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** [con+par, *like*], tr., *compare,* I. 31, VI. 24.

compellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum [com+pellō], tr., *drive together, drive,* II. 23.

comperiō, -perīre, -perī, -pertum [con+pariō], tr., *learn, discover, ascertain.*

complector, -plectī, -plexus sum [con+plectō, *fold*], dep., *embrace.*

compleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum [con+pleō, *fill*], tr., *fill up, fill;* w. **montem,** *cover.*

complūrēs, -a (-ia) [com+plūrēs, App. 16], *several, many, many of,* I. 52.

comportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [con+porto], tr., *bring together.*

comprehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsum [com+prehendō], tr., *seize, grasp, capture, arrest; catch,* VI. 16.

con-, **com-**, **co-**, prefix, *with, together, completely, thoroughly, strongly.*

cōnātum, **-ī**, N., **cōnātus**, **-ūs**, M. [cōnor], *trial, attempt, undertaking.*

concēdō, **-cēdere**, **-cessī**, **-cessum** [con+cēdō], tr. (make way), *yield, concede, make concession, grant, allow.*

concidō, **-cidere**, **-cidī**, —— [con+cadō], intr., *fall down, fall.*

concīdō, **-cīdere**, **-cīdī**, **-cīsum** [con+caedō], tr., *cut to pieces, kill; cut off*, III. 9.

conciliō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [concilium], tr., *bring together, win over, secure, gain.*

concilium, **-ī**, N. [con+calō, *call*], *assembly, council, meeting.*

concitō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [con+citō], tr., *rouse, stir up.*

conclāmō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [con+clāmō], intr., *cry out, exclaim.*

conclūdō, **-clūdere**, **-clūsī**, **-clūsum** [con+claudō], tr., *inclose, shut in, confine.*

concurrō, **-currere**, **-currī** (**-cucurrī**), **-cursum** [con+currō], intr., *run together, rush, charge; gather*, VI. 13; pass. impers., **concurrī**, *to rush*, II. 20; **concursum est**, *they rushed*, II. 33.

concursus, **-ūs**, M. [concurrō], *running together, running to and fro, onset.*

condiciō, **-ōnis**, F. [con+dicō], *agreement, terms; condition, state.*

condōnō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [con+dōnō], tr., *give, give up, remit; pardon, overlook.*

Condrūsī, **-ōrum**, M. pl., *the Condrusi* (kon-drū'sī), a Belgian tribe, II. 4, IV. 6.

condūcō, **-dūcere**, **-dūxī**, **-ductum** [con+dūcō], tr., *bring together, hire*, II. 1.

cōnferō, **-ferre**, **-tulī**, **-lātum** [con+ferō], tr., *bring together, collect, gather; attribute*, I. 40, l. 842; w. **ager**, I. 31, *compare;* w. **diem**, I. 40, l. 854, *postpone;* **sē cōnferre**, *betake one's self, go.*

cōnfertus, **-ā**, **-um** [part. of **cōnferciō**, *pack together*], *crowded together, dense.*

cōnfestim, adv., *immediately, at once.*

cōnficiō, **-ficere**, **-fēcī**, **-fectum** [con+faciō], tr., *do thoroughly, accomplish, complete, finish; muster*, II. 4; w. **tabula**, *write;* w. **ratiō**, *keep* (an account); w. **vulneribus**, *exhaust, overcome;* w. **alūta**, *tan.*

cōnfīdō, **-fīdere**, **-fīsus sum** [con+fīdō, *trust*], semi-dep., *trust* (fully), *have confidence, be confident, rely upon; believe*, II. 30.

cōnfīgō, **-fīgere**, **-fīxī**, **-fīxum** [con+fīgō], tr., *fasten together, brace.*

cōnfīrmātiō, **-ōnis**, F. [cōnfīrmō], *assurance.*

cōnfīrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [con+fīrmō], tr., *make firm, establish, assure, declare;* w. profectiōnem, *fix;* w. animōs, *encourage.*

cōnflīgō, -flīgere, -flīxī, -flīctum [con+flīgō, *strike*], intr., *contend with, have a combat.*

cōnfluēns, -entis [cōnfluō], M., *confluence, junction.*

congredior, -gredī, -gressus sum [con+gradior], dep., *come together, meet, meet in strife, contend;* congredī armīs, *fight.*

congressus, -ūs, M. [congredior], *meeting, encounter, engagement.*

coniciō, conicere, coniēcī, coniectum [con+iaciō], tr., *throw together, hurl, cast; put, place* (hurriedly), II. 16; in fugam conicere, *put to flight.*

coniūnctim, adv. [coniungō], *jointly, in common.*

coniungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum [con+iungō], tr., *join together, unite;* sē coniungere, *combine.*

coniūrātiō, -ōnis, F. [coniūrō], *conspiracy, league,* I. 2; *confederacy.*

coniūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [con+iūrō], intr. (swear together), *form a league, conspire, combine.*

conlātus, see cōnferō.

conlaudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [con+laudō], tr., *praise highly.*

conligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [con+ligō, *bind*], tr., *bind together.*

conlocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [con+locō], tr., *place* (together), *put, place, station, settle;* with or without nūptum, *give in marriage;* w. rēs, *arrange,* III. 4.

conloquium, -ī, N. [con+loquor], *conference.*

conloquor, -loquī, -locūtus sum [con+loquor], dep. (speak together), *talk, converse, confer, hold a conference.*

cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., *try, attempt.*

conquīrō, -quīrere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum [con+quaerō], tr., *search for; bring together, collect, gather.*

cōnsanguineus, -a, -um [sanguis, *blood*], *related by blood, kindred;* as noun, *kinsman.*

cōnscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsum [con+scandō, *climb*], tr., *mount;* w. nāvēs, *go aboard, embark.*

cōnscīscō, -scīscere, -scīvī, -scītum [con+scīscō, *decree*], tr., *decide, resolve;* cōnscīscere sibi mortem, *commit suicide.*

cōnscius, -a, -um [con+sciō], *knowing, conscious, aware;* sibi cōnscius, *aware.*

cōnscrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum [con+scrībō], tr. (write together), *enroll, enlist.*

cōnsecrātus, -a, -um [part. of cōnsecrō], *sacred, consecrated.*

cōnsecrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [sacer], tr., *consecrate.*

cōnsector, -ārī, -ātus sum [cōn-

sequor], dep., *follow eagerly, overtake.*

cōnsēnsus, -ūs, M. [cōnsentiō], *agreement, consent.*

cōnsentiō, -sentīre, -sēnsī, -sēnsum [con+sentiō], intr. (think alike), *agree, unite.*

cōnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum [con+sequor], dep., *follow up, pursue, overtake; secure, obtain, accomplish.*

cōnservō, -servāre, -servāvī, -servātum [con+servō], tr., *save, spare, protect; observe, respect*, III. 16.

Cōnsidius, -ī, M., *Considius* (kon-sid'i-us), an officer in the Roman army, I. 21, 22.

cōnsīdō, -sīdere, -sēdī, -sessum [con+sīdō], intr. (sit down), *encamp, settle, halt; hold a session*, VI. 13; *take position*, VII. 89.

cōnsilium, -ī, N. [cōnsulō], *counsel, plan, purpose, design; council* (of war), I. 40, I. 806, III. 3; *prudence*, III. 5; *judgment*, III. 16, IV. 21, *conduct*, IV. 22.

cōnsimilis, -e [con+similis], *very like, quite like.*

cōnsistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitum [con+sistō, *place*], intr., *stand, halt, take a stand; dwell, settle;* w. **nāvēs**, *ride at anchor;* **cōnsistere in**, *consist of, depend upon.*

cōnsōlor, -ārī, -ātus sum [con+sōlor, *comfort*], dep., *encourage, cheer, console.*

cōnspectus, -ūs, M. [cōnspiciō], *sight, view.*

cōnspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum [con+speciō], tr., *see, espy, catch sight of.*

cōnspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum [cōnspiciō], dep., *catch sight of, see, perceive.*

cōnspīrō, -āre, -āvī, ātum [con+spīrō, *breathe*], intr., *combine, conspire.*

cōnstanter, adv. [cōnstāns], *uniformly, steadily, resolutely.*

cōnstantia, -ae, F. [cōnstāns], *firmness, steadfastness.*

cōnsternō, -sternere, -strāvī, -strātum [con+sternō], tr., *cover.*

cōnstitī, see **cōnsistō** or **cōnstō.**

cōnstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum [con+statuō], tr. and intr., *place, station, draw up, arrange; decide, decree, resolve, appoint, put upon;* w. **turris**, *set up, erect;* w. **nāvēs**, *anchor.*

cōnstō, -stāre, -stitī, -statum [con+stō], intr., *stand firm;* **cōnstat**, impers., *it is certain, evident, established, known.*

cōnsuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētum [con+suēscō], intr., *become accustomed;* in perf., *be accustomed, be used.*

cōnsuētūdō, -inis, F. [cōnsuēscō], *custom, way, manner, mode of life; familiarity*, I. 47; **ex cōnsuētūdine**, *according to custom.*

cōnsul, -is, M., *consul.*

cōnsulātus, -ūs, M. [cōnsul], *consulship.*

cōnsuló, -sulere, -suluī, -sultum, tr. and intr., *deliberate, consult, deliberate upon, consider.*

cōnsultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [freq. of cōnsulō], intr., *deliberate, take counsel.*

cōnsultum, -ī, N. [cōnsulō], *decree, decision.*

cōnsūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsī, sūmptum [con+sūmō], tr., *use up, consume, spend, destroy.*

cōnsurgō, -surgere, -surrēxī, -surrēctum [con+surgō, *rise*], intr., *rise together, rise in a body.*

contāgiō, -ōnis, F. [tangō], *contact, association.*

contegō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctum [con+tegō], tr., *cover up.*

contemptiō, -ōnis, F. [contemnō], *a despising, scorn;* **in contemptiōnem venīre**, *be despised.*

contemptus, -ūs, M. [contemnō], *a despising, contempt;* **contemptuī est**, *is an object of contempt*, II. 30.

contendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum [con+tendō], intr., *strive, fight, contend, attempt*, IV. 17; *hasten, endeavor to go, press on*, I. 7; w. verbs of motion, *endeavor, hasten;* tr., *strive for*, I. 31, l. 586; impers., *there is fighting*, II. 9.

contentiō, -ōnis, F. [contendō], *struggle, conflict, contest.*

contexō, -texere, -texuī, -textum [con+texō, *weave*], tr., *weave together, join*, IV. 17.

continēns, -entis (abl. -ī), part. as adj., *unbroken, continuous;* as noun, *continent, i.e.* mainland of Europe.

continenter, adv., *continually.*

contineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum [con+teneō], tr., *hold together, bound* (geographically), *restrain, keep;* w. **mōns**, I. 38, *fill;* **sē continēre**, *remain.*

contingō, -tingere, -tigī, -tāctum [con+tangō], tr. and intr., *touch, border on;* w. dat., *happen.*

continuātiō, -ōnis, F. [continuō], *continuation.*

continuus, -a, -um, *continuous, successive*, I. 48.

contrā, prep. w. acc., *against, opposite, contrary to;* adv., *against, in opposition*, II. 17; **contrā atque**, *otherwise than.*

contrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctum [con+trahō], tr., *draw together, bring together;* w. **exercitum**, *mass.*

contrārius, -a, -um [contrā], *facing, opposite.*

contrōversia, -ae, F., *dispute, quarrel, controversy.*

contulī, see **cōnferō**.

contumēlia, -ae, F., *insult, disgrace; buffeting, violence*, III. 13.

convallis, -is, F., *valley.*

conveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum [con+veniō], tr. and intr., *come together, assemble;*

meet, I. 27; impers., *be agreed upon*, I. 36, II. 19; *it behooves, it is necessary*, VII. 85.

conventus, **-ūs**, M., [con+veniō], *assembly, meeting;* **ad conventūs agendōs**, *to hold the courts* (provincial courts of justice).

convertō, **-vertere**, **-vertī**, **-versum** [con+vertō], tr., *turn around, turn, change;* **conversa sīgna īnferre**, *face about and advance.*

convincō, **-vincere**, **-vīcī**, **-victum** [con+vincō], tr., *overcome, convict; prove clearly*, I. 40; *expose.*

convocō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [con+vocō], tr., *call together, summon.*

coörior, **-orīrī**, **-ortus sum** [con+orior], dep., *arise; break out*, III. 7.

cōpia, **-ae**, F., *plenty, abundance, supply, number;* pl., *forces, troops, resources*, I. 31; *wealth, supplies*, IV. 4.

cōpiōsus, **-a**, **-um** [cōpia], *well-supplied, rich.*

cōpula, **-ae**, F., *grappling-hook.*

cor, **cordis**, N., *heart;* **cordī esse**, *to be dear, pleasing.*

cōram, adv. [con+ōs, *face*], (face to face), *in person.*

Coriosolitēs, **-um**, M. pl. (acc., **-as**), *the Coriosolites* (kō-ri-ō-sol'i-tēz), a Gallic tribe on the northwestern coast.

cornū, **-ūs**, N., *horn; wing* (of an army).

corōna, **-ae**, F., *crown, wreath;* **sub corōnā vendere**, *sell as slaves.*

corpus, **-oris**, N., *body.*

cortex, **corticis**, M. and F., *bark* (of a tree).

Cōrus, **-ī**, M., *the northwest wind.*

cotīdiānus, **-a**, **-um** [diēs], *daily.*

cotīdiē, adv. [quot+diēs], *every day, daily.*

Cotta, **-ae**, M., *Cotta*, see **Aurunculēius.**

crassitūdō, **-inis**, F. [crassus], *thickness.*

Crassus, **-ī**, M., *Crassus* (kras'us), a Roman family name. 1. *M. Licinius Crassus*, the triumvir, noted for his wealth, I. 21. 2. *P. Licinius Crassus*, son of 1, a lieutenant of Caesar, I. 52, II. 34, III. 7–9, 11, 21–27.

crātēs, **-is**, F., *wickerwork, hurdle; fascines* (a bundle of rods or brush used in filling trenches, etc.).

crēber, **-bra**, **-brum**, *numerous, frequent,*

crēdō, **crēdere**, **crēdidī**, **crēditum**, tr., *believe, suppose.*

cremō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, tr., *burn, consume;* **īgnī cremāre**, *burn to death.*

creō, **creāre**, **creāvī**, **creātum**, tr., *create, elect.*

Crēs, **Crētis**, acc. pl., **Crētās** (Greek ending), M., *a Cretan*, II. 7.

crēscō, **crēscere**, **crēvī**, **crētum**, intr., *grow, increase.*

Critognātus, -ī, M., *Critognatus* (krit-og-nā'tus), a chief of the Arverni.

cruciātus, -ūs, M. [**cruciō**, *torture*], *torture, suffering, punishment;* **summum in cruciātum venīre**, *suffer extreme torture.*

crūdēlitās, -tātis, F. [**crūdēlis**], *cruelty, tyranny.*

crūdēliter, adv. [**crūdēlis**], *cruelly.*

crūs, crūris, N., *leg.*

cubīle, -is, N., [**cubō**, *lie down*] (App. 7), *couch, bed, resting-place.*

culmen, culminis, N., *summit, height.*

culpa, -ae, F., *blame, fault;* **culpam cōnferre**, *lay the blame on.*

cultūra, -ae, F. [**colō**, *till*], *cultivation, tilling.*

cultus, -ūs, M. [**colō**], *civilization, culture, manner of life;* w. **corporis**, *care.*

1. **cum**, prep. w. abl., *with;* written as an enclitic after a personal, reflexive, or relative pronoun.

2. **cum**, conj., *when, while, since, although;* see **prīmum**; **cum . . . tum**, *not only . . . but also.*

cumulus, -ī, M., *heap.*

cunctātiō, -ōnis, F. [**cunctor**], *hesitation, delay.*

cunctor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., *hesitate, delay.*

cūnctus, -a, -um [**coniūnctus**], *all* (taken together).

cunīculus, -ī, M. (burrowing rabbit), *mine, underground passage.*

cupidē, adv. [**cupidus**], *eagerly.*

cupiditās, -tātis, F. [**cupidus**], *desire.*

cupidus, -a, -um [**cupiō**], *desirous* (of), *eager* (for).

cupiō, cupere, cupīvī, cupītum, tr. and intr., *desire, long for; wish well* (to), *be well-disposed.*

cūr, adv. (interrog. and rel.), *why.*

cūra, -ae, F., *care, attention;* **sibi cūrae esse**, *be one's care*, App. 69.

cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**cūra**], tr. and intr., *care for;* w. gerundives, *have* (something done), *see to, cause.* App. 164, c.

currus, -ūs, M. [**currō**], *chariot.*

cursus, -ūs, M. [**currō**], *running, speed, course, direction*, IV. 28; **māgnō cursū**, *at full speed;* see **incitō**.

custōdia, -ae, F., *guard.*

custōs, custōdis, M., *guard, keeper, watch, spy.*

D

D, symbol for **quīngentī**.

Dācī, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Daci* (dā'sī), *Dacians*, inhabitants of Dacia, a Roman province north of the Danube.

damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *find guilty, condemn, convict.*

Dānuvius, -ī, M., *the Danube.*

dē, prep. w. abl., *down from,*

from, concerning, about, of, for; w. vigiliā, *in, during;* as prefix, *down, off, away; completely; not.*

dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum [dē+habeō], tr., *owe;* w. inf., *ought.*

dēcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum [dē+cēdō], intr., *go away, depart, withdraw, retire; die,* VI. 19.

decem, indecl. adj., *ten.*

dēcernō, -cernere, -crēvī, -crētum [dē+cernō], tr., *decide, determine; decree,* II. 35.

dēcertō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [dē+certō, *fight*], tr. and intr. (fight out), *fight* (a decisive battle), *contend.*

dēcessus, -ūs, M. [dēcēdō], *departure;* w. aestus, *ebbing,* III. 13.

dēcidō, -cidere, -cidī, —— [dē+cadō], intr., *fall down, fall.*

decimus, -a, -um [decem], *tenth.*

Decimus, -ī, M., *Decimus* (des'imus), a Roman personal name.

dēcipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum [dē+capiō], tr., *deceive.*

dēclārō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [dē+clārō], tr., *make clear, reveal, declare.*

dēclīvis, -e [dē+clīvus, *slope*], *sloping;* dēclīvia et dēvexa, *steep declivities.*

dēclīvitās, -tātis, F. [dēclīvis], *downward slope.*

dēcrētum, -ī, N. [dēcernō], *decision, decree.*

decumānus, -a, -um [decimus], *belonging to the tenth, decuman;* decumāna porta, *rear gate,* where the tenth cohort was stationed on guard.

decuriō, -ōnis, M. [decuria], *decurion,* commander of a decuria or squad of cavalry.

dēcurrō, -currere, -cucurrī (or -currī), -cursum [dē+currō], intr., *run down.*

dēdecus, -oris [dē+decus, *honor*], *disgrace.*

dēditīcius, -a, -um [dēdō], *surrendered, subject;* masc. pl. as noun, *captives, prisoners.*

dēditiō, -ōnis, F. [dēdō], *surrender;* in dēditiōnem accipere, *receive the surrender of.*

dēdō, dēdere, dēdidī, dēditum, tr., *give up, yield, surrender, devote.*

dēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum [dē+dūcō], tr., *lead away, withdraw, lead; reduce,* II. 31.

dēfatīgātiō, -ōnis, F. [dēfatīgō], *weariness.*

dēfatīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [dē+fatīgō, *weary*], *wear out* tr., *exhaust.*

dēfectiō, -ōnis, F., [dē+faciō], *revolt, defection.*

dēfendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsum [dē+fendō, *strike*], tr., *ward off, keep off; protect, defend.*

dēfēnsiō, -ōnis, F. [dēfendō] *defense.*

dēfēnsor, -ōris, M. [dēfendō] *defender; defense,* IV. 17.

dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum [dē+ferō], tr., *carry, bring; report.*

II. 17, 19; *give to, bestow upon*, II. 4, V. 6.

dēfessus, -a, -um, *worn out, weary, exhausted.*

dēficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum [dē+faciō] tr. and intr., *fail; revolt*, II. 14.

dēfīgō, -fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxum [dē+fīgō, *fasten*], tr., *fix, fasten, plant firmly*, IV. 17.

dēfīniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum [dē+fīniō], tr., *fix, set; define.*

dēfōrmis, -e [dē, fōrma], *ill-shaped, deformed, unsightly.*

dēfugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitum [dē+fugiō], tr., *avoid, shun.*

dēiciō, dēicere, dēiēcī, dēiectum [dē+iaciō], tr., *throw down, cast down, drive down*, IV. 28; *dislodge;* w. spē, *disappoint; destroy*, IV. 17.

dēiectus, -ūs, M. [dēiciō], *slope, descent;* **lateris dēiectūs**, *lateral slopes*, II. 8.

deinceps, adv. [deinde, capiō], *one after another, in succession, without interruption*, III. 29.

deinde, adv., denoting order, *then, secondly, furthermore.*

dēlectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *please, delight;* pass., *take pleasure* (in).

dēlēctus, part. of **dēligō**.

dēleō, dēlēre, dēlēvī, dēlētum, tr., *blot out, destroy.*

dēlīberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [dē+lībra, *balance*], tr. and intr. (weigh well), *deliberate, ponder, consider.*

1. **dēligō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [dē+ligō, *bind*], tr., *tie, bind fast.*

2. **dēligō**, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum [de+legō, *gather*], tr., *choose, select.*

dēlitēscō, -litēscere, -lituī, ——, intr., *hide away, conceal oneself.*

dēmentia, -ae, F. [dēmēns], *folly.*

dēmetō, -metere, -messuī, -messum [dē+metō], tr., *cut down, reap, harvest.*

dēmigrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [dē+migrō], intr., *move away.*

dēminuō, -minuere, -minuī, -minūtum [dē+minuō], tr., *lessen, diminish, reduce, take away.*

dēmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, tr., *send down;* w. caput, *lower, bow*, I. 32.

dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [dē+mōnstrō, *show*], tr., *point out, explain; mention*, II. 1.

dēmoror, -ārī, -ātus sum [dē+moror], dep., *retard, delay.*

dēmum, adv., *at length, at last.*

dēnegō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [dē+negō], tr., *refuse, deny.*

dēnī, -ae, -a, dist. num. adj., *ten each, ten at a time.*

dēnique, adv., *at last, finally; at least*, II. 33.

dēnsus, -a, -um, *dense, thick.*

dēnūntiō, -nūntiāre, -nūntiāvī, -nūntiātum [dē+nūntiō], tr., *announce, declare.*

dēpellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum [dē+pellō], tr., *drive away, avert.*

dēperdō, -perdere, -perdidī, -perditum [dē+perdō], tr. (destroy), *lose*, I. 43.

dēpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum [dē+pōnō], tr., *put down, lay aside, place;* w. memoria, *blot out.*

dēpopulor, -ārī, -ātus sum [dē+populor], dep., *ravage, plunder, lay waste.*

dēportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [de+portō], tr., *carry off.*

dēprecātor, -ōris, M. [dēprecor], *mediator.*

dēprecor, -ārī, -ātus sum [dē+precor, *pray*], dep., *plead for*, II. 31; *call for quarter*, IV. 7; *petition against*, V. 6.

dērēctē, adv. [dērēctus, *straight*], *in a straight line.*

dērēctus, -a, -um [dērigō], *straight; laid lengthwise*, IV. 17.

dērogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [dē+rogō], tr., *take away, withdraw, refuse.*

dēscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsum [dē+scandō], intr., *come down, descend; resort to*, VI. 16.

dēserō, -serere, -seruī, -sertum [dē, *not*+serō, *join*], tr., *leave, forsake, abandon, desert.*

dēsertor, -ōris, M. [dēserō], *deserter.*

dēsīderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *desire.*

dēsidia, -ae, F. [dēses, *idle*], *idleness*

dēsīgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [dē+sīgnō], tr., *indicate, mean.*

dēsiliō, -silīre, -siluī, -sultum [saliō, *leap*], intr., *leap down, dismount.*

dēsistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitum [dē+sistō], intr. (stand away from), *desist, cease.*

dēspectus, -ūs, M. [dēspiciō] (a looking down upon), *view, prospect.*

dēspērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [dē+spērō], intr., *be hopeless, despair;* tr., *despair of*, II. 24, IV. 15.

dēspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum [dē+specio, *look*], tr., *look down upon, despise.*

dēspoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [dē+spoliō], tr., *deprive, despoil.*

dēstinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *fasten.*

dēstitī, see **dēsistō**.

dēstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum [dē+statuō], tr. (set down), *leave, abandon, desert.*

dēstringō, -stringere -strīnxī, -strictum [dē+stringō, *draw*], tr., *unsheathe, draw.*

dēsum, deësse, dēfuī [dē+sum], intr., *be lacking, be wanting, fail.*

dēsuper, adv. [dē+super], *from above.*

dēterior, -ius, comp. adj., *worse, inferior; less valuable*, I. 36.

dēterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum [dē+terreō], tr. (frighten off), *prevent, hinder.*

dētineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum [dē+teneō], tr., *hold back, detain*, III. 12.

dētrahō, trahere, -trāxī, -trāctum [dē+trahō], tr., *take away, remove, withdraw.*

dētrīmentum, -ī, N. [dēterō, *rub away*], *loss, injury, disadvantage.*

dēturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [dē+turbō], tr., *drive off* (in disorder).

deus, -ī, M. (App. 10), *god.*

dēvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum [dē+vehō], tr., *carry away, convey, bring.*

dēveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum [dē+veniō], intr., *come down, come.*

dēvexa, -ōrum, N. pl. [dēvehō], *steep places.*

dēvōtus, -ī, M. [dēvoveō], *devoted follower.*

dēvoveō, -vovēre, -vōvī, -vōtum [dē+voveō], tr., *consecrate, devote.*

dexter, -tra, -trum, *right;* **dextra** (sc. **manus**), *right hand.*

dī, pl. of **deus.**

Diablintēs, -um, M. pl., *the Diablintes* (dī-ą-blin'tēz), a tribe in northwestern Gaul.

diciō, -ōnis, F. [dīcō], *sway, dominion* (cf. English "say").

dicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *dedicate;* w. **sē,** *give up.*

dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictum, tr., *say, speak, name;* w. **diēs,** *appoint;* w. **causa,** *plead;* w. **sententia,** *express;* w. **iūs,** *declare.*

dictiō, -ōnis, F. [dīcō], *a speaking, pleading.*

dictum, -ī, N. [dīcō], *word, command, statement;* **dictō audiēns,** *obedient.*

dīdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum [dī+dūcō], tr. (lead apart), *divide,* III. 23.

diēs, -ēī, M. or F. sing., M. pl., *day, time, season;* **multō diē,** *late in the day;* **ad diem,** *on the appointed day,* II. 5; **in diēs,** *daily.*

differō, -ferre, distulī, dīlātum [dis+ferō], intr. (bear apart), *differ.*

difficilis, -e [dis+facilis], *not easy, difficult.*

difficultās, -tātis, F. [difficilis], *difficulty.*

diffluō, -fluere, -fluxī, —— [dis+fluō], intr., *flow* (in different directions).

diffundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsum [dis+fundō], tr., *pour out, spread out,* VI. 26.

digitus, -ī, M., *finger.*

dignitās, -tātis, F. [dignus], *worth, dignity, reputation, rank, authority, honor.*

dīī, see **deus.**

dīiūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [dis+iūdicō], tr., *decide.*

dīligenter, adv. [dīligēns], *carefully, faithfully,* II. 5; **parum dīligenter,** *with little care,* III. 18.

dīligentia, -ae, F. [dīligēns], *care, faithfulness, earnestness.*

dīligō, -ligere, -lēxī, -lēctum [dī+legō], tr. (choose out), *esteem, love.*

dīmētior, -mētīrī, -mēnsus sum [dis+mētior], dep., *measure*

measure off, lay out; **dīmēnsus**, *measured*, IV. 17.

dīmicātiō, -ōnis, F. [dīmicō], *contest, struggle.*

dīmicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [dis+micō, *brandish*], intr., *fight, contend, struggle.*

dīmidium, -ī, N. [dis+medius], *half.*

dīmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum [dī+mittō], tr., *send in all directions, send away, dismiss, let go; lose*, II. 21, VI. 12.

dirimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmptum [dis+emō], tr., *take apart, break up*, I. 46.

dīripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptum [dī+rapiō], tr. (snatch away), *seize, plunder.*

dis-, **dī-**, prefix, *apart, away, not.*

Dīs, Dītis, M., *Pluto*, god of the lower world.

discēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum [dis+cēdō], intr. (go apart), *depart, go away, go, retire, leave.*

discessus, -ūs, M. [discēdō], *departure, withdrawal.*

disciplīna, -ae, F. [discō], *training, discipline, system of doctrine, instruction.*

disclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum [dis+claudō], tr., *separate, hold apart.*

discō, discere, didicī, ——, tr., *learn.*

disiciō, disicere, disiēcī, disiectum [dis+iaciō], tr., *throw apart, drive apart, scatter, rout.*

dispergō, -spergere, -spersī, -spersum [dis+spargō], tr., *disperse, scatter about.*

dispersus, -a, -um, part. of **dispergō**.

dispōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum [dis+pōnō], tr., *place at intervals, arrange, station.*

disputō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [dis+putō], tr., *debate, discuss.*

dissēnsiō, -ōnis, F. [dissentiō], *disagreement, discussion, strife.*

dissimulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [dis+simulō], tr., *conceal.*

dissipō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *scatter, disperse.*

distineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum [dis+teneō], tr., *keep apart.*

distō, -stāre, ——, —— [dis+stō], *stand apart, be apart.*

distribuō, -tribuere, -tribuī, -tribūtum [dis+tribuō], tr., *distribute, assign.*

dītissimus, -a, -um, see **dīves**.

diū, adv. (App. 19), *long* (in time), *for a long time;* **quam diū**, *as long as.*

diurnus, -a, -um [diēs], *by day, during the day.*

diūtius, comp. of **diū**.

diūturnitās, -tātis, F. [diūturnus], *length, long continuance.*

diūturnus, -a, -um [diū], *long, lasting.*

dīversus, -a, -um, part. and adj. [dīvertō], *turned away, opposite, different; separate*, II. 23; *separated*, II. 22.

dīves, dīvitis, adj. (comp., **dītior**, sup., **dītissimus**), *rich.*

Dīviciācus, **-ī**, M., *Diviciacus* (div-i-shi-ā′kus). 1. A druid and statesman of the Haedui, the most famous and most intelligent Gaul mentioned by Caesar, I. 3, 16, 18, etc., II. 5, 10, etc. 2. A king of the Suessiones, II. 4.

Dīvicō, **-ōnis**, M., *Divico* (div′i-kō), a leader of the Helvetii, I. 13, 14.

dīvidō, **-videre**, **-vīsī**, **-vīsum**, tr., *divide, separate.*

dīvīnus, **-a**, **-um**, *sacred, religious, divine.*

dō, **dare**, **dedī**, **datum**, tr., *give.*

doceō, **-ēre**, **-uī**, **doctum**, tr., *teach, instruct; declare, show.*

doleō, **-ēre**, **-uī**, **-itum**, intr., *suffer, grieve.*

dolor, **-ōris**, M. [**doleō**], *pain, grief, distress, indignation, resentment;* **dolōre adficere**, *fill with discontent.*

dolus, **-ī**, M., *treachery, deceit.*

domesticus, **-a**, **-um** [**domus**], *of one's home, of one's own, his own, their own*, II. 10.

domicilium, **-ī**, N. [**domus**], *dwelling-place, home.*

dominor, **-ārī**, **-ātus sum** [**dominus**], dep., *be master, rule.*

dominus, **-ī**, M., *master.*

domus, **-ūs**, F. (decl. App. 8), *house, home;* abl., **domō**, *from home;* loc., **domī**, *at home.*

dōnō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [**dōnum**], tr., *give, present, honor.*

dōs, **dōtis**, F. [**dō**], *dowry, marriage portion.*

druidēs, **-um**, M. pl., *the druids*, priests and wise men of Gaul and Britain.

Dūbis, **Dūbis**, M., *the Dubis* (dū′bis), river, modern *Doubs*, a tributary of the Arar, I. 38.

dubitātiō, **-ōnis**, F. [**dubitō**], *doubt, hesitation.*

dubitō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [**dubius**], intr., *hesitate* (usually w. complementary inf.; *doubt* (usually followed by **quīn**).

dubius, **-a**, **-um**, *doubtful, uncertain.*

ducentī, **-ae**, **-a** [**duo**+**centum**], *two hundred.*

dūcō, **dūcere**, **dūxī**, **ductum**, tr., *lead, bring, draw; put off*, I. 16; *consider, think*, I. 3, IV. 30; w. **bellum**, I. 38, *prolong.*

dum, conj., *until, as long as, while.*

Dumnorīx, **-īgis**, M., *Dumnorix* (dum′nō̄-riks), a prominent Haeduan, younger brother of Diviciacus, I. 3, 9, 18–20, V. 6, 7.

duo, **duae**, **duo**, num. adj. (App. 16), *two.*

duodecim, indecl. adj. [**duo**+**decem**], *twelve.*

duodēnī, **-ae**, **-a**, dist. num. adj., *twelve each, every twelve*, III. 12.

duodēvīgintī, indecl. adj., *eighteen.*

duplex, **duplicis** (abl., **-ī**), *double, twofold.*

duplicō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [**duplex**], tr., *double.*

dūritia, **-ae**, F. [dūrus], *hardness, hardship.*

dūrō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [dūrus], tr., *harden; toughen, train.*

dūrus, **-a**, **-um**, *hard, difficult.*

dux, **ducis**, M. [dūcō], *leader, guide.*

E

ē (before cons.), **ex** (before vowels or cons.), prep. w. abl., *out of, from, of; according to,* I. 52, *in accordance with; in, on, by;* as prefix, *out, forth, completely, up, off.*

Eburōnēs, **-um**, M. pl., *the Eburones* (eb-ū-rō'nēz), a Belgian tribe, II. 4, etc.

Eburovīcēs, **-um**, M. pl., *the Eburovices* (eb-ū-rō-vī'sēz), a division of the Aulerci.

ēdiscō, **-discere**, **-didicī**, — [ex+discō], tr., *learn by heart, commit to memory.*

ēditus, **-a**, **-um** [ēdō], *elevated, rising.*

ēdō, **ēdere**, **ēdidī**, **ēditum** [ex+dō], tr., *give forth, produce, show, make,* I. 31.

ēdoceō, **-docēre**, **-docuī**, **-doctum** [ex+doceō], tr., *make known, tell.*

ēdūcō, **-dūcere**, **-dūxī**, **-ductum** [ē+dūcō], tr., *lead out, draw out.*

effēminō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [ex, fēmina, *woman*], tr., *weaken, enervate.*

efferō, **efferre**, **extulī**, **ēlātum** [ex+ferō], tr., *bear out, take away, carry along;* **in vulgus efferre**, *spread abroad among, disclose to.*

efficiō, **-ficere**, **-fēcī**, **-fectum** [ex+faciō], tr. (make out), *bring about, cause; complete, construct, accomplish; form,* I. 38, IV. 10; *cover,* IV. 35; *produce,* V. 14.

effugiō, **-fugere**, **-fūgī**, **-fugitum** [ex+fugiō], tr., *escape.*

egeō, **egēre**, **eguī**, —, intr., *want, need.*

egestās, **-tātis**, F. [egēns], *poverty, want.*

ēgī, see **agō**.

ego, **meī** (App. 21), *I.*

ēgredior, **-gredī**, **-gressus sum** [ex+gradior], dep., *go out, march out;* **(ē) nāvī (nāvibus) ēgredī**, *disembark.*

ēgregiē, adv. [ēgregius], *excellently, remarkably well.*

ēgregius, **-a**, **-um** [ex+grex, *herd, crowd*], *uncommon, extraordinary, distinguished.*

ēiciō, **ēicere**, **ēiēcī**, **ēiectum** [ex+iaciō], tr., *cast out, drive out;* **sē ēicere**, *rush out.*

ēlātus, see **efferō**.

elephantus, **-ī**, M., *elephant.*

ēligō, **-ligere**, **-lēgī**, **-lēctum** [e+legō], tr., *select, choose;* **ēlēctus**, II. 4, *chosen, picked.*

Elusātēs, **-um**, pl., *the Elusates* (el-ū-sā'tēz), an Aquitanian tribe.

ēmigrō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [ē+migrō], intr., *move, emigrate.*

ēmittō, **-mittere**, **-mīsī**, **-missum** [ē+mittō], tr., *send out, let*

go, discharge, hurl, throw aside.

emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptum, tr. *buy.*

ēnāscor, -nāscī, -nātus sum [ē+nāscor], dep., *grow out.*

enim, conj. (App. 171, *e*), *for, in fact*, II. 17.

ēnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ē+nūntiō], tr. (tell out), *report.*

1. **eō, īre, īvī (iī), itum**, intr., *go, march, proceed.*

2. **eō**, adv. [is], *to that place, thither; there, in that place; on this account.*

eōdem, adv. [īdem], *to the same place, to the same thing.*

ephippiātus, -a, -um [ephippium], *using saddles.*

ephippium, -ī, N. [*ἐπί, upon, ἵππος, horse*], *saddle.*

epulum, -ī, N., **epulae, -ārum**, F., *feast, banquet.*

eques, equitis, M. [equus], *horseman;* pl., *cavalry;* also, *a knight*, in Rome or Gaul.

equester, equestris, equestre [eques], *of a horseman, of cavalry, cavalry.*

equitātus, -ūs, M. [eques], *cavalry.*

equus, equī, M., *horse;* **ex equīs**, *from horseback;* **ad equum rescrībere**, *enroll among the knights* (or, among the cavalry).

Eratosthenēs, -is, M., *Eratosthenes* (er-ạ-tos'thẹ-nēz), a famous scholar of Alexandria, third century, B.C.

ērēctus, -a, -um [ērigō], part. as adj., *high.*

ergō, adv., *then, therefore.*

ērigō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctum [ex+regō], tr., *set up, raise, raise up.*

ēripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptum [ē+rapiō, *seize*], tr., *snatch away, take away, wrest, rescue;* **sē ēripere**, *escape*, I. 4.

ērumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum [ex+rumpō], tr. and intr., *break forth, rush forth.*

ēruptiō, -ōnis, F. [ērumpō], *sudden rush, sortie, sally.*

esseda, -ae, F., or **essedum, -ī**, N., *war-chariot*, of the Britons.

essedārius, -ī, M. [esseda], *chariot-fighter, i.e.* one fighting from a chariot.

Esuviī, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Esuvii* (ē-sū'vi-ī), a Gallic tribe on the northwestern coast.

et, conj., *and;* **et . . . et**, *both . . . and.*

etiam, conj., and adv., *and also, also, even.*

etsī, conj. [et+sī], *although.*

euntis, etc., see **iēns**, part. of **eō**.

ēvādō, -vādere, -vāsī, -vāsum [ex+vādō], intr., *escape.*

ēvellō, -vellere, -vellī, -vulsum [ē+vellō], tr., *pull out.*

ēveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum [ē+veniō], intr. (come out), *result.*

eventus, -ūs, M. [ēveniō], *outcome, result, issue*, III. 3; *fate*, IV. 31.

ēvocātus, -ī, M., part. as noun [ēvocō], *reënlisted veteran, i.e.* one who reënlists after completing his term of service.

ēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ē+ vocō], tr., *call out, summon.*

ēvolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ē+ volō], intr. (fly out), *rush forth.*

ex, see **ē**.

exāctus, see **exigō**.

exagitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ex+ agitō], tr., *harass, disturb.*

exāmināō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [exāmen, *tongue of a balance*], tr., *weigh.*

exanimātus, -a, -um [part. of exanimō], *out of breath, wearied, weakened.*

exanimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ex+ anima], tr. (deprive of breath), *kill.*

exaudiō, -audīre, -audīvī, -audītum [ex+audiō], tr., *overhear.*

excēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum [ex+cēdō], intr., *go out, depart, withdraw, retire.*

excellō, -cellere, -celluī, -celsum, intr., *be eminent, surpass, excel.*

excelsus, -a, -um [excellō], *high.*

excipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum [ex+capiō], tr., *take from, receive;* w. **impetus**, *meet;* w. **tēla**, *pick up;* w. **aestus**, etc., *withstand; catch*, VI. 28.

excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ex+ citō], tr., *arouse, incite, stir; raise, set up*, III., 14.

excruciō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *torture.*

excursiō, -ōnis, F. [excurrō] (a running out), *sortie, sally.*

excūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ex+ causa], tr., *excuse.*

exemplum, -ī, N. [eximō, *take out*] (sample), *precedent, example.*

exeō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itum [ex+ eō], intr., *go out.*

exerceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum [ex+ arceō, *restrain*], tr., *train, drill.*

exercitātiō, -ōnis, F. [exerceō], *practice, training.*

exercitātus, -a, -um [exercitō], *trained.*

exercitus, -ūs, M. [exerceō] (a trained body of men), *army; the infantry.*

exigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum [ex+ agō], tr., *complete, finish, spend.*

exiguitās, -tātis, F. [exiguus, *scanty*], *scantiness, shortness*, II. 21; *small number, scarcity*, IV. 1; *small size*, IV. 30.

exiguus, -a, -um [exigō], *small, limited.*

eximius, -a, -um [eximō], *extraordinary, excellent.*

exīstimātiō, -ōnis, F. [exīstimō], *judgment, opinion, regard.*

exīstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ex+ aestimō, *value*], tr., *estimate, judge, consider; suppose, think.*

exitus, -ūs, M. [exeō], *outcome, result; end, conclusion.*

expedītus, -a, -um, part. as adj. [expediō, *disentangle*], *unincumbered, free; ready*, IV. 33; w. **iter**, *free from obstacles, practicable;* w. **legiōnēs**, *without baggage.*

expellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum

[ex+pellō], tr., *drive out, remove.*

experior, -perīrī, -pertus sum, dep., *try, test, experience;* w. **eventus**, *await*, III. 3.

expleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum [ex+pleō, *fill*], tr., *fill up.*

explōrātor, -ōris, M. [explōrō], *scout.*

explōrātus, -a, -um, part. as adj, [explōrō], *assured.*

explōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ex+plōrō], tr., *investigate, find out.*

expōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum [ex+pōnō], tr., *set forth, display*, IV. 23; pass., *disembark*, IV. 37.

exportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ex+portō], tr., *carry out, carry away.*

exprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum [ex+premō], tr., *force out, wrest, extort.*

expūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ex+pūgnō], tr., *take by storm, capture.*

exquīrō, -quīrere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum [ex+quaerō], tr., *search out, inquire into, ascertain*, I. 41; *ask for.*

exsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum [ex+sequor], dep., *follow out, follow up, enforce, execute.*

exsistō, -sistere, -stitī, —— [ex+sistō], intr. (stand forth), *arise; protrude.*

exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ex+spectō], tr. and intr. (look out for), *wait for, await, wait to see expect; wait.*

exspoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ex+spoliō], tr., *deprive, rob.*

exstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctum [ex+struō, *pile*], tr., *heap up, pile up, build up, raise.*

exterior, -ius (comp. of **exterus**, App. 18), *outer, outside, exterior.*

exterreō, -terrēre, -terruī, -territum [ex+terreō], tr., *frighten, alarm.*

extimēscō, -timēscere, -timuī, —— [ex+timēscō], tr., *dread.*

extrā, prep. w. acc., *outside of, beyond.*

extrēmus, -a, -um [exterus, App. 18], *outermost, farthest, extreme, last; the end of*, II. 8, III. 12; **ad extrēmum**, *as a last resort*, III. 3; *at last*, IV. 4.

extrūdō, -trūdere, -trūsī, -trūsum [ex+trūdō], tr. (thrust out), *shut out*, III. 12.

exuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtum, tr., *deprive, strip.*

exūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ūstum [ex+ūrō, *burn*], tr., *burn up.*

F

Fabius, -ī, M., *Fabius* (fā'bi-us), name of a Roman gens. 1. *Quintus Fabius Maximus*, conqueror of the Allobroges and Arverni, 121 B.C., I. 45. 2. *Gaius Fabius*, a lieutenant of Caesar, VII. 90.

facile, adv. [facilis], *easily.*

facilis, -e [faciō], *easy* (comparison, App. 17).

facinus, facinoris, N. [faciō], *(action, deed), misdeed, crime.*

faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, tr., *make, do, cause;* w. **proelium,** *fight;* w. **cōpiam,** *furnish,* I. 28; **iter facere,** *march.*

factiō, -ōnis, F. [faciō], *faction, party.*

factum, -ī, N. [faciō], *action, deed.*

facultās, -tātis, F. [faciō], *opportunity* (of doing), *means, supply;* pl., *resources.*

fāgus, -ī, F., *beech-tree.*

fallō, fallere, fefellī, falsum, tr., *deceive;* **fallendō,** *by deception.*

falx, falcis, F., *sickle; hook,* used in pulling down walls.

fāma, -ae, F., *report, fame, reputation.*

famēs, famis, F., *hunger.*

familia, -ae, F., *household, vassals,* I. 4; *family;* see **māter.**

familiāris, -e [familia], *belonging to the household, private;* as noun, *intimate friend;* **rēs familiāris,** *private property.*

fās, indecl. noun, N., *the will of the gods, right* (in the sight of the gods).

fastīgātē, adv. [fastīgātus], *sloping.*

fastīgātus, -a, -um, part. as adj. [fastīgō], *sloping, inclined.*

fastīgium, -ī, N. (peak), *slope, elevation.*

fātum, -ī, N. [for, **fātus,** *speak*], (that which is spoken), *fate.*

faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautum, intr., *favor.*

fēlīcitās, -tātis, F. [fēlīx], *good fortune, success.*

fēlīciter, adv. [fēlīx], *successfully, favorably.*

fēmina, -ae, F., *woman; female* (of animals).

fera, -ae, F., *wild beast.*

ferāx, ferācis, adj. [ferō], *fertile.*

ferē, adv. (generally following the word it modifies), *almost, nearly, about; usually, generally,* III. 12.

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum (App. 45), tr., *bear, carry, bring, offer; call,* VI. 17; *endure;* **ferendus,** I. 33, *endurable;* w. **cōnsuētūdō, opīniō,** *be;* w. **laus,** *receive;* **sīgna ferre,** *advance, march, move;* pass., *rush,* II. 24; *flow,* IV. 10.

ferreus, -a, -um [ferrum], *of iron, iron* (adj.).

ferrum, -ī, N., *iron.*

fertilis, -e [ferō], *fertile.*

fertilitās, -tātis, F. [fertilis], *fertility.*

ferus, -a, -um, *wild, savage, warlike.*

fībula, -ae, F., *clasp, brace,* IV. 17.

fictus, -a, -um, part. of **fingō.**

fidēlis, -e [fidēs], *faithful.*

fidēs, fideī, F., *faith, confidence, protection, pledge; good faith, faithfulness, trustworthiness; loyalty;* **per fidem,** I. 46, *in violation of good faith, treacherously;* **in fidem recipere,** *receive under (his) protection.*

figūra, -ae, F., *shape, form.*

fīlia, -ae, F., *daughter.*

fīlius, -ī, M., *son.*

fingō, fingere, **fīnxī**, fictum, tr., *form, make, assume, feign*, I. 39; *invent*, IV. 5.

fīniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum [**fīnis**], tr., *limit, bound; measure*, VI. 18.

fīnis, -is, M., *end, boundary;* pl. *territory, country, boundaries.*

fīnitimus, -a, -um [**fīnis**], *bordering on, adjoining, neighboring;* **fīnitimī**, as noun, *neighbors.*

fīō, fierī, **factus sum**, irr. passive of **faciō** (App. 43), *be made, be done; arise, occur;* impers., *it happens, it comes about, the result is.*

fīrmiter, adv. [**fīrmus**], *firmly.*

fīrmitūdō, -inis, F. [**firmus**], *strength, firmness.*

fīrmus, -a, -um, *strong, firm.*

fistūca, -ae, F., *pile-driver, rammer.*

Flaccus, -ī, M., *Flaccus* (flak'us), name of a Roman family; *Gaius Valerius Flaccus*, governor of the province of Gaul, 83 B.C., I. 47.

flāgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *demand.*

flamma, -ae, F., *flame, fire.*

flectō, flectere, flexī, flexum, tr., *turn aside, guide;* **sē flectere**, *bend, wind.*

fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētum, intr., *weep.*

flētus, -ūs, M. [**fleō**], *weeping, lamentation.*

flō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr., *blow.*

flōrēns, -entis, adj. (blooming), *flourishing, prosperous.*

fluctus, -ūs, M., *wave.*

flūmen, **flūminis**, N. [**fluō**], *river.*

fluō, fluere, fluxī, fluxum, intr., *flow.*

fore = **futūrus** (-a, -um) **esse.**

fōrma, -ae, F., *form, shape.*

fors, fortis, F., *chance;* **forte**, abl. used as adv., *by chance, perhaps.*

fortis, -e, *strong, brave.*

fortiter, adv. [**fortis**], *bravely.*

fortitūdō, -inis, F. [**fortis**], *bravery.*

fortūna, -ae, F., *chance, fortune, good fortune, lot;* pl., *property, possessions, chances of success*, III. 12.

fossa, -ae, F. [**fodiō**, *dig*], *ditch, trench.*

fovea, -ae, F., *pit, pitfall.*

frangō, -ere, **frēgī**, **frāctum**, tr., *break, crush, subdue*, I. 31; *shatter*, IV. 29.

frāter, **frātris**, M., *brother.*

frāternus, -a, -um [**frāter**], *brotherly, fraternal;* **frāternum nōmen**, *name of brothers.*

fremitus, -ūs, M. [**fremō**, *roar*], *din, loud noise, uproar.*

frequēns, -entis, adj., *in large numbers.*

frētus, -a, -um, *relying on.*

frīgidus, -a, -um [**frīgeō**, *be cold*], *cold.*

frīgus, -oris, N., *cold, cold weather;* pl., *cold seasons.*

frōns, frontis, F., *forehead, front;* **in frontem, ā fronte**, *in front.*

frūctuōsus, -a, -um [frūctus], *fruitful, productive.*

frūctus, -ūs, M. [fruor], *enjoyment; fruit, income, profit*, VI. 19, *advantage*, VII. 86.

frūgēs, -um, F. pl. [fruor], *crops, field products.*

frūmentārius, -a, -um [frūmentum], *abounding in grain, fruitful, pertaining to grain;* **rēs frūmentāria**, *supplies.*

frūmentor, -ārī, -ātus sum [frūmentum], dep., *procure grain, forage.*

frūmentum, -ī, N., *grain;* pl., *crops* (standing grain).

fruor, fruī, frūctus sum, dep., *enjoy.*

frūstrā, adv., *in vain, without effect*, III. 4.

fuga, -ae, F., *flight;* **fugā sē recipere**, *flee;* **in fugam dare**, *put to flight.*

fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitum [fuga], intr., *flee.*

fugitīvus, -ī, M. [fugiō], *deserter, fugitive; runaway slave*, I. 23.

fūmus, -ī, M., *smoke.*

funda, -ae, F., *sling.*

funditor, -ōris, M. [funda], *slinger;* see Introd. 29.

fundō, fundere, fūdī, fūsum, tr., *pour out, scatter, put to flight*, III. 6.

fūnebris, -e [fūnus], *of a funeral;* pl. as noun, *funeral rites.*

fūnis, -is, M., *rope, cable.*

fūnus, fūneris, N., *funeral.*

furor, -ōris, M., *madness, rage, frenzy.*

fūrtum, -ī, N. [fūr, *thief*], *theft.*

G

Gabīnius, -ī, M., *Gabinius* (gabin'i-us), name of a Roman gens; *Aulus*, consul, 58 B.C. I. 6.

gaesum, -ī, N., *javelin* (of the Gauls).

Gāius, Gāī, Gāiō, etc., M., *Gaius* (gā'yus), a Roman personal name, abbr. *C.*

Galba, -ae, M., *Galba* (gal'ba). 1. King of the Suessiones, II. 4. 2. *Servius Sulpicius Galba*, a lieutenant of Caesar, III. 1-6.

galea, -ae, F., *helmet.*

Gallī, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Gauls*, inhabitants of Gallia; see Introd. 22–25.

Gallia, -ae, F., *Gaul* (gâl); **Gallia Cisalpīna** or **Citerior**, extending east and south of the Alps to the Apennines, now northern Italy, the valley of the Po, I. 24, etc.; **Gallia Trānsalpīna**, or **Ulterior**, extending west of the Alps and the Rhine to the Atlantic, I. 7, etc.; see Introd. 14.

Gallicus, -a, -um [Gallus], *Gallic.*

gallīna, -ae, F., *hen.*

Gallus, -a, -um, *Gallic;* see Trebius.

Garumna, -ae, M., *the Garonne* (gä-ron'), a river of southwestern Gaul, I. 1.

Garumnī, -ōrum, M., *the Garumni* (ga-rum'nī), an Aquitanian tribe.

Gatēs, -ium, M. pl., *the Gates* (gā'tez), an Aquitanian tribe.

gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum, semidep., *rejoice, be glad.*

Genāva, -ae, F., *Geneva* (jenē'va), a town of the Allobroges, I. 6, 7.

generātim, adv. [genus], *by tribes.*

gēns, gentis, F., *tribe, race, nation.*

genus, generis, N., *birth, race, family; kind, class*, IV. 24; *method.*

Germānī, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Germans;* see Introd. 26.

Germānia, -ae, F., *Germany*, IV. 4, V. 13, VI. 11, etc.

Germānicus, -a, -um, *German.*

Germānus, -a, -um, *German;* masc. as noun, *a German.*

gerō, gerere, gessī, gestum, tr., *do, carry on, wage;* pass., *be carried on, be going on, happen.*

gladius, -ī, M., *sword;* see Introd. 41.

glāns, glandis, F., *acorn; bullet* (of lead).

glōria, -ae, F., *fame, renown, reputation, glory.*

glōrior, -ārī, -ātus sum [glōria], dep., *boast, glory.*

Gnaeus, -ī, M., *Gnaeus* (nē'us), a Roman personal name, abbr. *Cn.*

Graecus, -a, -um, *Greek, Grecian;* masc. pl. as noun, *the Greeks.*

Grāiocelī, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Graioceli* (gra-yō'se-lī), an Alpine tribe, I. 10.

grandis, -e, *large, prominent.*

grātia, -ae, F. [grātus], *favor, good-will, influence; thanks, gratitude;* **grātiam referre**, *render thanks, make a grateful return;* **grātiās agere**, *thank*, I. 41.

grātulātiō, -ōnis, F. [grātulor], *expression of joy, congratulation; joy*, I. 53.

grātulor, -ārī, -ātus sum [grātus], dep., *congratulate.*

grātus, -a, -um, *pleasing, agreeable.*

gravis, -e, *heavy, hard, difficult; serious, severe;* **graviōris aetātis**, *of more advanced age.*

gravitās, -tātis, F. [gravis], *importance, influence, power.*

graviter, adv. [gravis], *heavily, severely, seriously;* **graviter ferre**, *be annoyed* (at), *be vexed* (at); w. **premere**, *hard.*

gravō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [gravis], tr., *make heavy;* pass., *be reluctant, object.*

gubernātor, -ōris, M., *pilot.*

gustō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *taste.*

H

habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, tr., *have, hold, consider, regard;* w. **ōrātiō**, *deliver, make;* see **satis.**

Haeduī, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Haedui* (hed'ū-ī), *Haeduans*, a Gallic tribe west of the

Sequani, friendly to Caesar until 52 B.C.

Haeduus, -a, -um, *of the Haedui, Haeduan;* masc. as noun, *a Haeduan.*

harpagō, -ōnis, M., *grappling-hook.*

Harūdēs, -um, M. pl., *the Harudes* (ha-rö′dēz), a tribe of Germans, allies of Ariovistus, I. 31, 37, 51.

Helvētia, -ae, F., *Helvetia* (hel-vē′shia), now Switzerland.

Helvētiī, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Helvetii* (hel-vē-shi-ī), *Helvetians*, a Gallic tribe inhabiting Helvetia.

Helvētius, -a, -um, *of the Helvetii, Helvetian.*

Hercynius, -a, -um, *Hercynian* (her-sin′i-an); **Hercynia silva**, a great forest of southern Germany.

hērēditās, -tātis, F. [hērēs, *heir*], *inheritance.*

Hibernia, -ae, F., *Ireland.*

hībernus, -a, -um [hiems], *of winter;* **hīberna, -ōrum**, N. pl. as noun (sc. **castra**), *winter-quarters.*

hīc, haec, hōc, dem. pron., *this, the following, such; he, she, it;* pl., *these, they.*

hic, adv., *here*, IV. 19.

hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr. [hiems], *winter, pass the winter;* impers. in pass. IV. 29.

hiems, hiemis, F., *winter;* **in hiemem**, *for the winter*, IV. 29; *storm, stormy season.*

hinc, adv., *hence, from this place.*

Hispānia, -ae, F., *Spain.*

homō, hominis, M. or F. (human being), *man.*

honestus, -a, -um [honor], *regarded with honor, honored, distinguished, worthy.*

honor (or **honōs**), **honōris**, M., *honor, respect;* **honōris causā**, *out of respect* (for).

honōrificus, -a, -um [honor + faciō], *honorable.*

hōra, -ae, F., *hour*, one twelfth of the time from sunrise to sunset, varying with the time of year.

horreō, horrēre, horruī, ——, tr., *dread, shudder at.*

horribilis, -e [horreō + bilis], *terrible, dreadful.*

hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., *urge, encourage, exhort; induce.*

hospes, hospitis, M., *guest-friend, guest, friend* (bound by ties of hospitality).

hospitium, -ī, N. [hospes], *hospitality; alliance*, I. 31; *friendship*, I. 47; a sacred alliance between states or individuals, involving certain obligations and honors; hereditary in the case of individuals. See Smith's "Dict. of Greek and Roman Antiquities."

hostis, -is, M. (stranger), *enemy* (of the state); pl., *the enemy.*

hūc, adv., *to this place, hither;*

to this number, IV. 22; *against these*, VI. 27.

hūmānitās, -tātis, F. [hūmānus], *refinement.*

hūmānus, -a, -um [homō], *refined, civilized.*

humilis, -e [humus, *ground*], *low; weak, humble;* comp., *less important*, IV. 3; *weaker*, VI. 22.

I

I, symbol for **ūnus.**

iaceō, -ēre, -uī, ——, intr., *lie, lie dead*, II. 27.

iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum, tr., *throw, cast;* w. agger, *throw up, construct.*

iactō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [freq. of iaciō], tr., (throw often), *throw, toss about; discuss*, I. 18.

iactūra, -ae, F. [iaciō] (a throwing away), *loss; concession, sacrifice*, VI. 12.

iam, adv., w. pres. tense, *by this time, now;* w. past tense, *already, at length, now;* w. fut. tense, *presently;* w. a negative, *longer.*

ibi, adv., *there, in that place.*

Iccius, -ī, M., *Iccius* (ik'shi-us), a leader of the Remi, II. 3, 6.

ictus, -ūs, M. [icō, *strike*], *stroke, blow, thrust.*

Īd., see **Īdūs.**

īdem, eadem, idem, dem. pron. [is] (App. 23), *the same.*

identidem, adv. [idem+et+idem], *again and again, repeatedly.*

idōneus, -a, -um, *suitable, convenient, fit.*

Īdūs, -uum, F., *the Ides* (īdz), the fifteenth day of March, May, July, and October, thirteenth of other months, I. 7.

iēns, gen. **euntis**, pres. part. of **eō**, *go.*

īgnis, -is, M., *fire.*

ignōminia, -ae, F. [in+nōmen], *disgrace, dishonor.*

ignōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *not to know, be ignorant of;* pass., *be unnoticed.*

ignōscō, -gnōscere, -gnōvī, -gnōtum [in+(g)nōscō], intr. (not to know), *pardon.*

ignōtus, -a, -um, part. as adj. [ignōscō], *unknown.*

ille, **illa**, **illud**, dem. pron. (App. 23), *that* (yonder), *he, she, it;* pl., *those, they.*

illīc, adv. [ille], *there, in that place.*

illō, adv. [ille], *to that place, there.*

Īllyricum, -ī, N., *Illyricum* (i-lir'i-kum), a country on the eastern coast of the Adriatic, one of Caesar's provinces, II. 35: see Introd. 14.

imbēcillitās, -tātis, F. [imbēcillus], *weakness.*

imber, **imbris**, M., *rain, rainstorm.*

immānis, -e, *enormous, huge.*

immittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum [in+mittō], tr., *let down, put upon, place, hurl*, V. 44.

immolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [in+mola], tr. (sprinkle w. sacrificial meal), *sacrifice.*

immortālis, -e [in+mortālis], *immortal.*

immūnitās, -tātis, F. [immūnis], *freedom* (from public burdens), *immunity.*

impedīmentum, -ī, N. [impediō], *hindrance, impediment;* pl., *baggage, baggage-train.*

impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum [in+pēs], tr., *entangle, hinder, interfere with, impede, incumber, obstruct, make difficult,* II. 22.

impedītus, -a, -um, part. as adj. [impediō], *entangled, hindered, impeded, incumbered; difficult,* II. 28, *impassable; occupied,* V. 7.

impellō, impellere, impulī, impulsum [in+pellō], tr., *urge on, impel, induce, move.*

impendeō, -ēre, ——, —— [in+pendeō, *hang*], intr., *overhang.*

impēnsus, -a, -um [impendō, *weigh out*], *expensive, great,* IV. 2.

imperātor, -ōris, M. [imperō], *commander in chief;* see Introd. 33.

imperātum, -ī, N. [imperō], *command.*

imperītus, -a, -um [in+perītus], *inexperienced, unskilled, ignorant,* IV. 22, 24.

imperium, -ī, N. [imperō], *command, control, power, supreme power, sway; government,* I. 33; **nova imperia**, *a change of government,* II. 1.

imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. and intr., *command, demand, levy* (upon).

impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *obtain one's request, obtain, procure, bring to pass.*

impetus, -ūs, M., *attack, onset; force, fury; current,* IV. 17.

impius, -a, -um [in+pius], *wicked.*

implōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [in+plōrō, *cry*], tr., *beseech, implore.*

impōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum [in+pōnō], tr., *place on;* w. **stīpendium**, *levy, levy on.*

importō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [in+portō], tr., *bring in, import.*

improbus, -a, -um [in+probus] (not good), *base, bold, reckless.*

improvīsō, adv. [in, *not*+prō+vīsus] (unforeseen), *unexpectedly;* **dē improvīsō** (of a sudden), *unexpectedly.*

imprūdēns, -entis, adj. [in+prūdēns], *not foreseeing, unaware.*

imprūdentia, -ae, F. [imprūdēns], *imprudence, indiscretion.*

impūbēs, impūberis, adj. [in+pūbēs, *grown up*], *immature, youthful; unmarried,* VI. 21.

impūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [in+pūgnō], intr., *attack, charge.*

impulsus, see impellō.

impūne, adv. [in+poena], *without punishment, unpunished.*

impūnitās, -tātis, F. [in+

poena], *freedom from punishment, impunity.*

īmus, -a, -um, see **īnfimus.**

in, prep. w. acc. (of motion), *into, to, toward, for, against, upon, in, into the country of, among, over;* w. abl. (of rest), *in, on, among, over;* as prefix, *in, into, over, on, at, against;* negative prefix, *not.*

incendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēnsum, tr., *set fire to, burn.*

incertus, -a, -um [in+certus], *uncertain, untrustworthy; disordered*, IV. 32.

incidō, -cidere, -cidī, —— [in+cadō], intr., *fall in, fall into hands of*, I. 53; *happen, occur*, II. 14.

incīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum [in+caedō], tr., *cut into*, II. 17.

incipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum [in+capiō], intr., *begin.*

incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [in+citō], tr., *set in motion, urge on, incite, rouse;* **cursū incitātō**, *at full speed;* **sē incitāre**, *rush in*, III. 12; **incitātōs**, *at full speed*, IV. 33.

incognitus, -a, -um [cognōscō], *unknown.*

incolō, -ere, -uī, tr. and intr., *inhabit, dwell in, dwell.*

incolumis, -e, *safe, unhurt, unharmed.*

incommodum, -ī, N. [incommodus], *disadvantage, misfortune, harm.*

incrēdibilis, -e [in, *not*+crēdō], *incredible, extraordinary, remarkable.*

increpitō, -āre, ——, —— [increpō, *upbraid*], tr. and intr., *taunt.*

incursiō, -ōnis, F. [incurrō], *raid, invasion, attack.*

incursus, -ūs, M. [incurrō], *advance, approach, attack.*

incūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [in+causa], tr., *rebuke, censure, find fault with.*

inde, adv., *from that place, thence, from that source, from that position*, IV. 25; *then*, II. 19.

indicium, -ī, N. [indicō, *show*], *information;* **per indicium**, *through informers.*

indīcō, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dictum [in+dīcō], tr., *declare, appoint;* w. **concilium**, *summon.*

indignitās, -tātis, F. [indignus], *unworthiness, disgrace, insult.*

indīligenter, adv. [indīligēns], *carelessly.*

indūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum [in+dūcō], tr., *lead into, lead on, induce; cover*, II. 33.

indulgeō, -dulgēre, -dulsī, -dultum, intr., *favor.*

induō, induere, induī, indūtum, tr., *put on;* w. **sē**, *impale.*

indūtiae, -ārum, F. pl., *truce.*

ineō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itum [in+eō], tr., *go into, enter, enter upon, begin;* w. **cōnsilium**, *form, adopt;* **initā aestāte**, *at the beginning of summer.*

inermis, -e [in, *without*+arma], *unarmed, without weapons.*

iners, -ertis, adj., *indolent, unmanly*, IV. 2.

īnfāmia, -ae, F., *disgrace, infamy.*

īnfectus, -a, -um [in+factus], *not done;* īnfectā rē, *without success.*

īnferior, -ius, adj. (App. 18), *lower, inferior.*

īnferō, -ferre, intulī, inlātum [in+ferō], tr., *bring into, bring in, bring upon, place upon; inflict, cause;* w. bellum, *make upon;* w. alacritās, spēs, *inspire* (in); sīgna īnferre, *charge, attack;* causā inlātā, I. 39, *offering a reason.*

īnferus, -a, -um, *below.*

īnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum [in+faciō], tr. (work into), *stain, dye.*

īnfimus, -a, -um, or īmus, -a, -um, sup. of īnferus (App. 18), *lowest, lowest part of, base of;* ab īmō, *from the base, at the bottom*, IV. 17.

īnfīnītus, -a, -um [in+fīniō], *unlimited, countless.*

īnfīrmitās, -tātis, F. [īnfīrmus], *weakness, fickleness.*

īnfīrmus, -a, -um [in+fīrmus], *weak, weakened*, VI. 27.

īnflectō, -flectere, -flexī, -flexum [in+flectō], tr., *bend.*

īnfluō, -fluere, -fluxī, -fluxum [in+fluō], intr., *flow into.*

īnfrā, adv. and prep. w. acc., *below.*

ingēns, ingentis, adj., *vast, huge, large.*

ingredior, -gredī, -gressus sum [in+gradior], dep., *enter.*

iniciō, inicere, iniēcī, iniectum [in+iaciō], tr., *throw into, inspire; lay on*, IV. 17.

inimīcitia, -ae, F., [inimīcus], *enmity, hostility.*

inimīcus, -a, -um [in+amīcus], *unfriendly.*

inīquitās, -tātis, F. [inīquūs], *inequality, unevenness; unfavorableness, difficulty*, II. 22.

inīquus, -a, -um [in+aequus], *uneven, unfair, unjust, unfavorable;* inīquior, *less favorable*, II. 10.

initium, -ī, N. [ineō], *beginning;* w. capit ā, I. 1, *begins at.*

initus, see ineō.

iniungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum [in+iungō], tr., *impose upon.*

iniūria, -ae, F. [iūs], *wrong, injustice, outrage, injury;* iniūriā, *unjustly, without cause*, I. 35.

iniussus, -ūs, M., used only in abl., *without command.*

inlātus, see īnferō.

inligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [in+ligō, *bind*], *bind fast.*

inlustris, -e, *bright; distinguished, prominent, illustrious.*

innāscor, -nāscī, -nātus sum [in+nāscor], dep. (be born in), *spring up.*

innītor, -nītī, -nīxus or -nīsus sum [in+nītor], dep., *lean on.*

innocēns, -entis [in+nocēō], adj., *innocent;* used as noun, VI. 16.

innocentia, -ae, F. [innocēns], *integrity, innocence.*

inopia, -ae, F. [inops, *needy*], *lack, scarcity.*

inopīnāns, -antis, adj. [opīnor, *think*], *not expecting, off one's guard, unaware.*

inquam, inquit, def. verb, pres. tense, *I say, he says*, used w. a direct quotation.

inrīdeō, -rīdēre, -rīsī, -rīsum [in+rīdeō], tr. and intr., *laugh at, ridicule, jeer.*

inrīdiculē, adv. [in+rīdiculē], *without wit.*

inrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum [in+rumpō], tr. and intr., *break into, rush into, attack.*

īnsciēns, -entis, adj. [in+sciō], *not knowing.*

īnscientia, -ae, F. [in+scientia], *lack of knowledge, ignorance.*

īnscius, -a, -um [in+sciō], *not knowing, ignorant.*

īnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum [in+sequor], dep., *follow up, pursue.*

īnserō, -serere, -seruī, -sertum [in+serō], tr., *put in, insert.*

īnsidiae, -ārum, F. pl. [insideō], *ambush, ambuscade; stratagem*, IV. 13.

īnsīgne, -is, N., *sign, signal, standard; decoration, ornament*, II. 21; *distinction.*

īnsīgnis, -e [in + sīgnum] (marked), *remarkable, noted.*

īnsiliō, -silīre, -siluī, -sultum [in+saliō], intr., *leap upon.*

īnsinuō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [in+sinuō, *bend*], tr., *bend into; sē īnsinuāre, make one's way in.*

insistō, -sistere, -stitī, —— [in+sistō], tr. and intr., *stand on; adopt, pursue*, III. 14; *get a footing*, IV. 26.

īnsolenter, adv. [īnsolēns], *haughtily, insolently.*

īnstabilis, -e [in+stabilis], *unsteady.*

īnstar, indecl. noun, *image;* **īnstar mūrī**, *like a wall*, II. 17.

īnstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum [in+statuō], tr., *set up, establish, build, construct, erect, form, draw up*, III., 24; *begin, train*, I. 14; *prepare, procure*, III. 9; *adopt, devise*, IV. 17.

īnstitūtum, -ī, N. [īnstituō], *custom, institution.*

īnstō, -stāre, -stitī, -statum [in+stō], intr., *stand near, be near, be at hand, approach, press forward.*

īnstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctum [in+struō], tr., *build, draw up, marshal.*

īnsuēfactus, -a, -um [īnsuēscō, faciō], *trained.*

īnsuētus, -a, -um, *unaccustomed.*

īnsula, -ae, F., *island.*

īnsuper, adv. [in+super], *above, on the top.*

integer, -gra, -grum, *whole, fresh, unimpaired;* **integrī**, pl., as noun, *fresh troops.*

integō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctum [in+tegō], tr., *cover.*

intellegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctum

[inter+legō, *gather*], tr., *learn, perceive, know, understand.*

intendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum [in+tendō], tr., *stretch.*

intentus, -a, -um [intendō], *intent* (upon), *attentive.*

inter, prep. w. acc., *between, among;* of time, *during, for, within;* as prefix, *between.*

intercēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum [inter+cēdō], intr., *go between, intervene; exist between*, I. 43; of time, *elapse.*

intercipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum [inter+capiō], tr. (take between), *intercept.*

interclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum [inter+claudō, *close*], tr., *cut off;* w. itinera, *block.*

interdīcō, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dictum [inter+dīcō], tr., *forbid, prohibit, interdict*, I. 46.

interdiū, adv. [inter+diū], *during the day, by day.*

interdum, adv. [inter+dum], *sometimes.*

intereā, adv. [inter+ea], *in the meantime, meanwhile.*

intereō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itum [in+tereō], intr., *perish.*

interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum [inter+faciō], tr., *kill.*

intericiō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum [inter+iaciō], tr., *throw between, place between;* pass., *lie between, intervene, be scattered*, III. 8.

interim, adv., *meanwhile.*

interior, -ius, adj. (App. 18), *inner, interior;* pl. as noun, *those within*, VII. 82.

intermittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum [inter+mittō], tr. and intr. (send between), *stop, cease, discontinue, leave an interval, interrupt;* w. trīduum, nox, tempus, etc., intermissus, *having elapsed, intervening.*

interneciō, -ōnis, F. [inter+necō, *kill*], *massacre, destruction.*

interpellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *disturb, interfere with.*

interpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum [inter+pōnō], tr., *place between, interpose, give*, V. 6; w. causa, *allege;* pass., *occur*, IV. 32.

interpres, -pretis, M., *interpreter.*

interpretor, -ārī, -ātus sum [interpres], dep., *explain, interpret.*

interscindō, -scindere, -scidī, -scissum [inter+scindō], tr., *destroy.*

intersum, -esse, -fuī, —— [inter+sum], intr., *be between; take part*, IV. 16; *preside over*, VI. 13; impers., *it concerns, it interests.*

intervāllum, -ī, N. [inter+vāllum], *interval, space.*

interventus, -ūs, M. [interveniō], *coming between, intervention.*

intexō, -texere, -texuī, -textum [in+texō], tr., *weave in, interweave, plait.*

intrā, prep. w. acc., *within.*

intrītus, -a, -um [in, *not*+terō, *rub*], *unwearied.*

1. **intrō**, adv., *to the inside, within.*

2. **intrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *enter, penetrate.*

intrōdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum [intrō+dūcō], tr., *lead in.*

intrōmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum [intrō+mittō], tr., *let in, admit.*

intrōrsus, adv. [intrō+versus], *within.*

intueor, -tuērī, -tuitus sum [in+tueor], dep., *look at, look upon.*

inūsitātus, -a, -um [in+ūsitātus], *unusual, strange.*

inūtilis, -e [in+ūtilis], *useless, unserviceable.*

inveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum [in+veniō] (come upon), *discover, find* (without seeking).

inventor, -ōris, M. [inveniō], *inventor, author.*

inveterāscō, -veterāscere, -veterāvī, —— [vetus], intr., *become fixed* or *established; settle.*

invictus, -a, -um [in+victus], *unconquered, invincible.*

invideō, -vidēre, -vīdī, -vīsum [in+videō], tr. and intr. (look askance at), *envy, be jealous of.*

invidia, -ae, F., *envy.*

inviolātus, -a, -um, *inviolable.*

invītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *invite, summon; request,* IV. 6.

invītus, -a, -um, *unwilling; against one's will;* **sē invītō**, *against his will.*

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, intensive pron (App. 24), *himself, herself, itself; very;* pl., *themselves;* gen., *his own, their own.*

īracundus, -a, -um [īra, *wrath*], *wrathful.*

is, ea, id, dem. pron. (App. 23), *that, he, she, it;* pl., *these, those, they.*

iste, ista, istud, dem. pron. (App. 23), *that* (of yours).

ita, adv., *so, thus, in this way,* **ita utī**, *just as.*

Ītalia, -ae, F., *Italy,* I. 10, 33, 40, II. 29, etc.

itaque, conj., *and so, accordingly, therefore.*

item, adv., *in like manner, also.*

iter, itineris, N. [eō, *go*], *way, journey, march, course;* w. **facere**, *to march;* **māgnum iter**, *forced march, great stage;* **ex itinere**, (*while*) *on the march.*

iterum, adv., *again, a second time.*

itūrus, part. of **eō**.

iuba, -ae, F., *mane.*

iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussum, tr., *order, direct.*

iūdicium, -ī, N. [iūdex, *judge*], *judgment, decision, trial, place of trial;* **optimum iūdicium facere**, *express the highest opinion,* I. 41, l. 867.

iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [iūdex, *judge*], tr., *judge, decide, determine, think.*

iugum, -ī, N., *yoke, i.e.* two spears set upright in the ground with another placed

across them, I. 7, 12; *ridge* (of a mountain), II. 24; *yoke* (of a wagon).

iūmentum, -ī, N. [iugum], *yoke-animal, beast of burden.*

iūnctūra, -ae, F. [iungō], *joining.*

iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūnctum, tr., *join.*

Iuppiter, Iovis, M., *Jupiter*, the chief god of the Romans.

Iūra, -ae, M., *Jura*, a mountain range running from the Rhine to the Rhone, west of the Helvetii, I. 2.

iūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [iūs], intr., *swear, take an oath.*

iūs, iūris, N., *right, rights, justice; law;* the principle of right, upon which law (lēx) is based.

iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī, N. [iūrō], *oath.*

iūstitia, -ae, F. [iūstus], *justice, fairness.*

iūstus, -a, -um [iūs], *just, right, proper, fair; important*, IV. 16; *regular*, VI. 19.

iuventūs, -tūtis, F. [iuvenis], *youth; young men* (collectively).

iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtum, tr., *help, aid.*

iūxtā, adv., and prep. w. acc., *near, near by.*

K

Kalendae, -ārum, F. pl. (abbr. Kal.), *the Calends*, the first day of a month.

L

L., symbol for **quīnquāgintā.**

L., see **Lūcius.**

Labiēnus, -ī, M. (*Titus*) *Labienus* (lā-bi-ē'nus), Caesar's chief lieutenant during the Gallic war, afterward his enemy, taking the side of Pompey, I. 10, 21, 54, II. 11, 26, III. 11, IV. 38. See Smith's "Dict. of Roman Biography."

labor, -ōris, M., *exertion, labor, work, hardship.*

labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [labor], intr., *toil, strive; be hard-pressed, be in danger* or *distress;* tr., *be anxious for*, I. 31; impers. pass., *there is a struggle.*

labrum, -ī, N., *lip; rim*, VI. 28.

lac, lactis, N., *milk.*

lacessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum [laciō, *entice*], tr., *excite, provoke, attack, harass.*

lacrima, -ae, F., *tear.*

lacus, -ūs, M., *lake.*

laetitia, -ae, F. [laetus], *gladness, joy.*

laetus, -a, -um, *joyful, glad.*

languidus, -a, -um, *weary, exhausted.*

lapis, lapidis, M., *stone.*

largior, -īrī, -ītus sum, dep. [largus, *abundant*], *give freely, give bribes; afford*, VI. 24.

largiter, adv. [largus], *in abundance;* **largiter posse**, *have great influence.*

largītiō, -ōnis, F. [largior], *a giving freely, generosity.*

lassitūdō, -inis, F. [lassus, *faint*], *faintness, weariness.*

lātē, adv. [lātus], *widely, broadly.*

lateō, latēre, latuī, ——, intr., *lie hid, be concealed, escape notice*, III. 14.

lātitūdō, -inis, F. [lātus], *breadth, width, extent.*

Latobrīgī, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Latobrigi* (lat-ō-brī′jī), neighbors and allies of the Helvetii, I. 15, etc.

latrō, -ōnis, M., *robber.*

latrōcinium, -ī [latrō], *robbery, brigandage.*

lātus, -a, -um, *broad, wide.*

latus, lateris, N., *side, flank;* **ab latere apertō, ad latus apertum**, *on the exposed flank;* **ab lateribus**, *on the flanks*, II. 8.

laus, laudis, F., *praise, glory, honor.*

lavō, lavāre, lāvī, lautum or **lōtum**, tr., *wash;* pass., *bathe.*

laxō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *extend, open.*

lēgātiō, -ōnis, F. [lēgātus], *embassy, mission.*

lēgātus, -ī M. [lēgō, *dispatch*], *ambassador, envoy;* as a military officer, *lieutenant.*

legiō, -ōnis, F. [legō, *collect*], *legion;* see Introd. 28.

legiōnārius, -a, -um [legiō], *of a legion, legionary.*

Lemannus, -ī, M., w. lacus, *Lake Geneva, Lac Leman*, I. 2, 8; III. 1.

Lemovīcēs, -um, M. pl., *the Lemovices* (lem-ō̤-vī′sēz), a tribe west of the Arverni, whose chief town is now called *Limoges.*

lēnis, -e, *gentle, soft.*

lēnitās, -tātis, F. [lēnis], *gentleness, smoothness, slowness* (of a river).

lēniter, adv. [lēnis], *gently.*

Lepontiī, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Lepontii* (lē̤-pon′shi-ī), an Alpine tribe.

lepus, -oris, M., *hare.*

Leucī, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Leuci* (lū′sī), a Gallic tribe west of the Vosges Mts., I. 40.

levis, -e, *light.*

levitās, -tātis, F. [levis], *lightness; inconstancy*, II. 1.

lēx, lēgis, F., *law.*

Lexoviī, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Lexovii* (leks-ō′vi-ī), a Gallic tribe of the northwestern coast.

libenter, adv. [libēns, *glad*], *gladly, willingly.*

līber, lībera, līberum, *free.*

līberālitās, -tātis, F. [līberālis], *generosity, liberality.*

līberāliter, adv. [līberālis], *generously, courteously, kindly.*

līberē, adv., *freely.*

līberī, -ōrum, M. pl. [līber] (free persons), *children.*

līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [līber], tr., *free, release.*

lībertās, -tātis, F. [līber], *free-*

dom, liberty, permission, IV. 15.

lībrīlis, -e [**lībra**, *balance, pound*], *weighing a pound.*

liceor, licērī, licitus sum, dep., *bid* (at auction).

licet, licēre, licuit, impers. (App. 48), *it is permitted, it is allowed.*

Liger, Ligeris (acc., **-im**, abl., **ī**), M., *the Liger* (lī'jer), a river of Gaul; modern *Loire* (lwär).

Lingonēs, -um (acc., **-ēs** or **as**), M. pl., *the Lingones* (ling'gō-nēz), a Gallic tribe, north of the Haedui, I. 26, 40, etc.

lingua, -ae, F., *tongue, language.*

lingula, -ae, F. [**lingua**], *tongue of land.*

linter, -tris, F., *boat.*

līnum, -ī, N., *flax.*

Liscus, -ī, M., *Liscus* (lis'kus), a magistrate (vergobret) of the Haedui, I. 16–18.

littera, -ae, F., *letter* (of alphabet); pl., a *letter* (epistle), *dispatch,* II. 1.

lītus, -oris, N., *shore.*

locus, -ī, M.; pl. **loca, -ōrum,** N., *place, ground, locality, region, position, site; rank; opportunity,* I. 40, l. 839; *situation,* II. 26; *precedence,* V. l. 103.

longē, adv., *far, by far;* **longius,** *farther, longer* (of time).

longinquus, -a, -um [**longus**], *long, of long duration, continued; distant,* IV. 27.

longitūdō, -inis, F. [**longus**], *length.*

longurius, -ī, M., *long pole.*

longus, -a, -um, *long;* **longior diēs,** *later day.*

loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, dep., *speak.*

lōrīca, -ae, F., *coat of mail; breastworks.*

Lūcius, -ī, M., *Lucius* (lū'shius), a Roman personal name.

lūna, -ae, F., *moon.*

lūx, lūcis, F., *light, daylight, dawn;* **prīmā lūce,** *at daybreak.*

lūxuria, -ae, F., *luxury.*

M

M., see **Mārcus.**

M. for **mīlle.**

māchinātiō, -ōnis, F. [**māchinor**, *contrive*], *contrivance, engine, machine,* IV. 17.

maestus, -a, -um [**maereō**], *sad.*

Magetobriga, -ae, F., *Magetobriga* (ma-je-tob'ri-gą), a Gallic town; site unknown, I. 31.

magis, comp. adv. (App. 19), *more, rather;* **eō magis,** *the more.*

magistrātus, -ūs, M. [**magister**], *magistracy, magistrate, officer.*

māgnificus, -a, -um [**māgnus**], *grand, magnificent.*

māgnitūdō, -inis, F. [**māgnus**], *greatness, size.*

māgnopere, adv. [**māgnō** + **opere**], *greatly, especially, earnestly.*

māgnus, -a, -um, *great, large;* w. **vōx,** *loud.*

māior, -ius, adj., comp. of **māgnus**; pl. as noun, *ancestors.*

malacia, -ae, F., *calm.*

male, adv. [malus], *badly;* **male rēs gesta**, *mismanagement.*

maleficium, -ī, N. [male+faciō], *evil deed, offense, crime, harm, injury.*

mālo, mālle, māluī (App. 46), *wish rather, prefer.*

malus, -a, -um, *bad.*

mālus, -ī, M., *mast.*

mandātum, -ī, N. [mandō], *order, instruction, command; message*, I. 37.

mandō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [manus+dō], tr. (put in hand), *commit, intrust; commission, order;* **fugae sē mandāre**, *flee.*

Mandubiī, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Mandubii* (man-dū'bi-ī), a tribe north of the Haedui whose chief town was Alesia.

māne, adv., *in the morning.*

maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsum, intr., *remain, abide.*

manipulus, -ī, M. [manus], *maniple*, two centuries of soldiers; lit. "handful," for the standard of the maniple was originally a handful or wisp of hay.

Manlius, -ī, M. (*Lucius*) *Manlius* (man'li-us), proconsul of Gaul, 78 B.C.

mānsuēfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, tr., *tame.*

mānsuētūdō, -inis, F. [mānsuētus, *tamed*] (tameness), *gentleness.*

manus, -ūs, F., *hand; armed force, band.*

Marcomannī, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Marcomanni* (mär-kō-man'nī), a tribe of Germans, allies of Ariovistus, I. 51.

Mārcus, -ī, M., *Marcus* (mär'-kus), a Roman personal name.

mare, maris, N., *sea.*

maritimus, -a, -um [mare], *of the sea, on the seacoast, maritime;* **maritima ōra**, *seacoast;* **maritimae rēs**, *seamanship.*

Marius, -ī, M., *Marius* (mā'ri-us), name of a Roman gens; *Gaius*, the celebrated general and consul, uncle of Julius Caesar, died 86 B.C., I. 40.

Mārs, Mārtis, M., *Mars*, the Roman god of war.

mās, maris, M., *male.*

matara, -ae, F., *javelin* (of the Gauls).

māter, mātris, F., *mother;* **māter familiae**, *matron.*

māteria, -ae, F., *timber, wood.*

Matiscō, -ōnis, F., *Matisco* (mą-tis'kō), a town of the Haedui.

mātrimōnium, -ī, N. [māter], *marriage;* **in mātrimōnium dare**, *give in marriage;* **in mātrimōnium dūcere**, *marry*, I. 9.

Matrona, -ae, M., *the Marne* (märn), a tributary of the Seine, I. 1.

mātūrē, adv., comp. **mātūrius**, sup. **mātūrissimē** and **mātūrrimē** [mātūrus], *early.*

mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [mātūrus], tr. and intr., *hasten.*

mātūrus, -a, -um, *ripe, early.*

māximē, sup. adv. (App. 19), *most, mostly, very greatly, especially.*

māximus, -a, -um, sup. of māgnus (App. 18), *greatest, largest; very great, very large.*

Māximus, -ī, M., *Maximus* (mak'si-mus), surname of Fabius, I. 45.

mediocris, -cre [medius], *ordinary, moderate, small,* IV. 17.

mediocriter, adv. [mediocer], *moderately;* nōn mediocriter, *in no moderate degree.*

Mediomatricī, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Mediomatrici* (mē-di-ō-mat'ri-sī), a tribe north of the Vosges Mts.

mediterrāneus, -a, -um [medius, terra], *inland.*

medius, -a, -um, *middle, the middle of; in the middle of;* in colle mediō, *halfway up the hill;* medium utrīusque, I. 34, *midway between the two.*

melior, comp. of bonus.

membrum, -ī, N., *limb.*

meminī, -isse, def. verb (App. 47), *remember;* perf. system used with meanings of the pres. system.

memoria, -ae, F., *memory;* memoriā tenēre, *remember.*

Menapiī, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Menapii* (men-ā'pi-ī), a Belgian tribe, II. 4, etc.

mēns, mentis, F., *mind, spirit, feeling, will,* III. 19.

mēnsis, -is, M., *month.*

mēnsūra, -ae, F. [mētior], *measurement.*

mercātor, -ōris, M. [mercor, *trade*], *trader, merchant.*

mercātūra, -ae, F. [mercor, *trade*], *trading, the pursuits of trade.*

mercēs, mercēdis, F. [mereō, *earn*], *hire, pay.*

Mercurius, -ī, M., *Mercury,* the Roman god of trade, etc.

mereor, merērī, meritus sum, dep., *deserve, merit.*

meridiēs, -ēī, M. [medius+diēs], *mid-day, noon; the south,* V. 13.

meritum, -ī, N. [mereō], *desert, merit.*

Messāla, -ae, M., *Messala* (mesā'la), a Roman family name; *Marcus,* consul, 61 B.C., I. 2, 35.

mētior, mētīrī, mēnsus sum, dep., *measure, measure out, give out.*

Metius, -ī, M. (*Marcus*) *Metius* (mē'shius), sent to Ariovistus to represent Caesar I. 47, 53.

metō, metere, messuī, messum, tr., *reap.*

metus, -ūs, M., *fear.*

meus, -a, -um, *my.*

mīles, mīlitis, M., *soldier.*

mīlitāris, -e [mīles], *of a soldier, military;* rēs mīlitāris, *warfare, the art of war.*

mīlitia, -ae, F. [mīles], *military service.*

mīlle, indecl. adj., *thousand;* as noun, mīlia, mīlium, N. pl.,

thousand, thousands; see **passus.**

Minerva, -ae, F., *Minerva*, the Roman goddess of wisdom.

minimē, adv., sup. of **parum** (App. 19), *least, by no means.*

minimus, -a, -um, sup. of **parvus** (App. 18), *least, very little.*

minor, -us, comp. of **parvus.**

Minucius, -ī, M., *Minucius* (mi-nū′shi-us), name of a Roman gens; *Minucius Basilus*, one of Caesar's officers.

minuō, **minuere**, **minuī**, **minūtum** [minus], tr., *make smaller, lessen, weaken;* w. **aestus**, *ebb;* w. **contrōversia**, *settle.*

minus, adv., comp. of **parum** (App. 19), *less, not at all, not.*

mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., *wonder.*

mīrus, -a, -um, *wonderful, surprising;* **mīrum in modum**, *in a wonderful manner.*

miser, **misera**, **miserum**, *wretched, unfortunate.*

misericordia, -ae [misericors], *pity, compassion, mercy.*

miseror, -ārī, -ātus sum [miser], dep., *pity, lament, bewail.*

mittō, **mittere**, **mīsī**, **missum**, tr., *send;* w. **pīlum**, **tēlum**, *hurl.*

mōbilis, -e [moveō] (easily moved), *changeable, hasty, impulsive.*

mōbilitās, -tātis, F. [mōbilis], *mobility, speed,* IV. 33; *changeableness, fickleness,* II. 1.

mōbiliter, adv. [mōbilis], *easily, readily.*

moderor, -ārī, -ātus sum [modus], dep., *control, check.*

modo, adv. [modus], *only;* **nōn modo . . . sed etiam**, *not only . . . but also.*

modus, -ī, M., *measure, extent, amount; way, manner; character,* IV. 27; **quem ad modum** (in what manner), *how, as, just as;* **ad hunc modum**, *after this manner;* **hūius modī**, *to this effect,* III. 3; **ēius modī**, *of such a nature, such.*

moenia, **moenium**, N. pl. [mūniō], *walls* (of a city), *fortifications.*

mōlēs, **mōlis**, F. (massive structure), *dike.*

molestē, adv., *with trouble* or *difficulty;* **molestē ferre**, *be vexed, be annoyed.*

mōlīmentum, -ī, N. [mōlior, *strive*], *effort, exertion, difficulty.*

mollis, -e, *infirm, yielding, weak.*

mollitia, -ae, F. [mollis] (softness), *weakness.*

molō, -ere, -uī, -itum, tr., *grind.*

mōmentum, -ī, N. [moveō], *movement; importance, weight.*

Mona, -ae, F., *Mona* (mō′na), the Isle of Man.

moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, tr., *advise, warn, admonish,* IV. 23.

mōns, **montis**, M., *mountain; cliff,* IV. 23.

mora, -ae, F., *delay.*

morbus, -ī, M., *disease.*

Morinī, **-ōrum**, M. pl., *the Morini* (mor'i-nī), a Belgian tribe, II. 4, etc.

morior, **morī** (**morīrī**), **mortuus sum** [mors], dep., *die.*

moror, **-ārī**, **-ātus sum** [mora], dep., *delay ; tarry, remain.*

mors, **mortis**, F., *death.*

mortuus, part. of **morior.**

mōs, **mōris**, M., *custom, manner;* pl., *customs, character.*

Mosa, **-ae**, M., *the Meuse* (mūz), IV. 9.

mōtus, **-ūs**, M., *motion, movement.*

moveō, **movēre**, **mōvī**, **mōtum**, tr., *move.*

mulier, **mulieris**, F., *woman.*

multitūdō, **-inis**, F. [multus], *great number, multitude; the common people, populace.*

multō, adv. [multus], *by much, much* (App. 95).

multum, adv. [multus], *much,* (App. 19).

multus, **-a**, **-um** (App. 18), *much;* pl., *many;* see **diēs.**

mundus, **-ī**, M., *world, universe.*

mūnīmentum, **-ī**, N. [mūniō], *defense, fortification.*

mūniō, **mūnīre**, **mūnīvī**, **mūnītum**, tr., *fortify, protect.*

mūnītiō, **-ōnis**, F. [mūniō], *fortification, defense;* **mūnītiō operis**, *strength of the defenses.*

mūnus, **-eris**, N., *duty, service, task; gift*, I. 43.

mūrālis, **-e** [mūrus] (of a wall), *mural.*

mūrus, **-ī**, M., *wall* (the general word), *earthwork.*

mutilus, **-a**, **-um**, *maimed, mutilated.*

N

nactus, see **nancīscor.**

nam, conj., *for.*

Nammēius, **-ī**, M., *Nammeius* (nam-mē'yus), an envoy of the Helvetians, I. 7.

Namnetēs, **-um**, M. pl., *the Namnetes* (nam'ne-tēz), a tribe at the mouth of the Loire.

namque, conj. [nam+que], *for;* gives a reason, with implied repetition of preceding statement, *e.g.* I. 38. *and* (he thought so) *for.*

nancīscor, **nancīscī**, **nactus**, dep., *obtain, meet with, find*, I. 53, IV. 23.

Nantuātēs, **-um**, M. pl., *the Nantuates* (nan-tū-ā'tēz), an Alpine tribe.

Narbō, **-ōnis**, M., *Narbo* (när'bō); modern *Narbonne.*

nāscor, **nāscī**, **nātus sum**, dep., *be born; rise, spring, arise; be found*, V. 12, VI. 25.

Nasua, **-ae**, M., *Nasua* (nash'ū-ą), a leader of the Suebi, I. 37.

nātālis, **-e** [nātus], *of birth;* **diēs nātālis**, *birthday.*

nātiō, **-ōnis**, F., *birth, origin; race, nation, tribe.*

nātūra, **-ae**, F., *nature.*

1. **nātus**, part., see **nāscor.**

2. **nātus**, **-ūs**, M. [nāscor], *birth, age;* **māior nātū** (greater in

age), *older;* **māiōrēs nātū**, pl. as noun, *elders, ancestors.*

nauta, -ae, M., *sailor.*

nauticus, -a, -um [**nauta**], *naval;* **nauticae rēs**, *seamanship.*

nāvālis, -e [**nāvis**], *pertaining to a ship, naval.*

nāvicula, -ae, F. [**nāvis**+**cula**], *little boat.*

nāvigātiō, -ōnis, F. [**nāvigō**], *sailing, navigation.*

nāvigium, -ī, N. [**nāvis**], *ship, vessel.*

nāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**nāvis**], intr., *sail;* impers. in pass., IV. 31.

nāvis, -is, F., *ship;* **nāvis longa**, *galley, warship;* see Introd. 57.

nāvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *do zealously;* **operam nāvāre**, *do one's best.*

1. **nē**, adv., *not;* **nē . . . quidem**, *not even*, always emphasizing a word or phrase standing between **nē** and **quidem**.

2. **nē**, conj., *that . . . not, lest;* after word of fearing, *that.*

-nĕ, enclitic particle, introducing questions; w. direct questions, not to be translated; w. indirect questions, *whether*, followed by **an**, *or.*

nec, see **neque**.

necessāriō, adv., *of necessity, under compulsion.*

necessārius, -a, -um [**necesse**], *needful, necessary; urgent,* I. 17; **necessārium tempus**, *time of need;* as noun, *friend, kinsman.*

necesse, indecl. adj., *necessary.*

necessitās, -tātis, F. [**necesse**], *necessity, need.*

necessitūdō, -inis, F. [**necesse**] (necessity), *intimacy, friendship.*

necne, adv., *or not.*

necō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *put to death, kill.*

nefārius, -a, -um [**nefās**, *crime* against the gods], *wicked, infamous.*

neglegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctum [**nec**+**legō**], tr., *disregard, neglect, overlook, ignore, treat lightly.*

negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *say . . . not, deny, refuse.*

negōtium, -ī, N. [**nec**+**ōtium**], *business, affair, undertaking; difficulty;* **dare negōtium** (assign the task), *direct,* w. dat.

Nemetēs, -um, M. pl., *the Nemetes* (nem'e-tēz), a German tribe allied with Ariovistus, I. 51.

nēmō, dat., **nēminī**, acc., **nēminem**, other forms from **nūllus**, [**nē**+**homō**], *no one.*

nēquāquam, adv., *by no means.*

neque (before vowels or cons.), **nec** (before cons.), conj., *and not, nor;* **neque** (**nec**) . . . **neque** (**nec**), *neither . . . nor.*

nēquīquam, adv. [**nē**+**quīquam**], *in vain, without reason,* II. 27.

Nervicus, -a, -um, *of the Nervii, Nervian.*

Nerviī, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Nervii*

(nėr′vi-ī), the most powerful tribe of the Belgae, II. 4, etc.

nervus, -ī, M., *sinew, muscle;* pl., *power, strength.*

neu, see **nēve**.

neuter, neutra, neutrum, *neither;* pl., *neither side*, II. 9.

nēve (or **neu**), conj., *and not, nor; and that not*, IV. 17.

nex, necis, F., *death, violent death.*

nihil, indecl. noun, *nothing;* **nihil vīnī**, *no wine;* as adv., *not at all, not;* **nihil iam**, *no longer.*

nihilō, adv. (abl. of **nihilum**), *by nothing, none;* **nihilō minus**, *none the less, nevertheless* (App. 95).

nisi, conj., *if not, unless, except.*

nītor, nītī, nīsus or **nīxus sum**, dep., *rely upon, strive.*

nōbilis, -e, *well-known, famous; high-born;* as noun, *man of high birth, nobleman*, I. 44; pl., *the nobles.*

nōbilitās, -tātis, F. [nōbilis], *nobility;* collectively, *the nobles;* w. **summa**, *rank*, II. 6.

noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitum, intr., *harm, injure.*

noctū, adv. [nox], *by night.*

nocturnus, -a, -um [nox], *by night, at night.*

nōdus, -ī, M., *knot; node on a joint.*

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī [nōn+volō, App. 46], irr., *be unwilling, not wish.*

nōmen, nōminis, N., *name*, **suō nōmine**, *on his own account;* **nōmine**, w. gen., *by way of, as.*

nōmināt im, adv. [nōmen], *by name, individually.*

nōminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *name, mention.*

nōn, adv., *not.*

nōnāgintā, indecl. adj., *ninety.*

nōndum, adv. [nōn+dum], *not yet.*

nōnnihil, adv. [nōn+nihil], *somewhat, considerably.*

nōnnūllus, -a, -um [nōn+nūllus] (not none), *some;* pl. as noun, *some.*

nōnnumquam, adv. [nōn+numquam], *sometimes.*

nōnus, -a, -um, *ninth.*

Nōrēia, -ae, F., *Noreia* (nō-rē′ya), a town of the Norici, now Neumarkt, in Styria, I. 5.

Nōricus, -a, -um, *of the Norici* (nō′ri-sī), *Norican.* The land of the Norici was south of Germany, now part of Austria and Bavaria.

nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtum, tr., *become acquainted with, learn;* perf., *know.*

noster, -tra, -trum, poss. pron., *our;* pl., **nostrī** (sc. **mīlitēs**), *our soldiers, our forces.*

nōtitia, -ae, F. [nōscō], *knowledge.*

nōtus, -a, -um [part. of **nōscō**], *known.*

novem, indecl. adj., *nine.*

Noviodūnum, -ī, N., *Noviodunum* (nō-vi-ō-dū′num), a

town of the Suessiones ("New-town"), II. 12.

novitās, **-tātis**, F. [novus], *newness, novelty.*

novus, **-a**, **-um**, *new, recent;* **novae rēs, nova imperia**, *change of government, revolution;* **novissimī**, **-ōrum**, masc. pl. as noun, *those in the rear*, last in the formation of the marching line; see **agmen.**

nox, **noctis**, F. (App. 6), *night;* **prīmā nocte**, *early in the night;* **multā nocte**, *late at night.*

noxia, **-ae**, F. [noceō], *guilt, offense, crime.*

nūbō, **nūbere**, **nūpsī**, **nūptum**, intr. (veil oneself), *marry;* see **conlocō.**

nūdō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [nūdus], tr., *lay bare, leave unprotected*, II. 23; **nūdārī dēfēnsōribus**, *be cleared of defenders.*

nūdus, **-a**, **-um**, *bare, unprotected*, I. 25.

nūllus, **-a**, **-um** [neg. of **ūllus**] (App. 12), *not any, no, none, no one.*

num, interrogative particle implying a negative answer; has no equivalent English word.

nūmen, **nūminis**, N. [nuō, *nod*], *divine will.*

numerus, **-ī**, M., *number, amount*, II. 17; *account*, VI. 13; **in hostium numerō habēre**, *regard as enemies.*

Numidae, **-ārum**, M. pl., *the Numidians*, who lived in northern Africa, II. 7, 10, 24.

nummus, **-ī**, M., *coin, money.*

numquam, adv. [nē+umquam], *never.*

nunc, adv., *now.*

nūntiō, **nūntiāre**, **nūntiāvī**, **nūntiātum** [nūntius], tr., *report, announce; direct*, IV. 11.

nūntius, **-ī**, M. *messenger; message, news.*

nūper, adv., *recently.*

nūptum, see **nūbō.**

nūtus, **-ūs**, M. [nuō, *nod*], *nod, command.*

O

ob, prep. w. acc., *on account of;* **ob eam rem**, *on this account;* as prefix, *against, before, down.*

obaerātus, **-ī**, M. [aes], *debtor.*

obdūcō, **-dūcere**, **-dūxī**, **-ductum** [ob+dūcō], tr. (draw before), *extend, construct*, II. 8.

obiciō, **-icere**, **-iēcī**, **-iectum** [ob+iaciō], tr., *throw before, place in front, expose;* **obiectus**, *lying opposite.*

obitus, **-ūs**, M. [obeō], *destruction.*

oblātus, see **offerō.**

oblīquē, adv. [oblīquus], *obliquely, in a slanting position.*

oblīvīscor, **-līvīscī**, **-lītus sum**, dep., *forget.*

obsecrō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [ob, sacrum], tr., *beseech, entreat, implore.*

observō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [ob+servō], tr., *watch, observe, heed, respect, regard, keep.*

obses, **obsidis**, M. and F. [ob-

sideō], *hostage*, a person given by one nation to another as a pledge of good faith.

obsideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessum [ob+sedeō], tr. (sit down against), *besiege, blockade.*

obsidiō, -ōnis, F. [obsideō], *siege; oppression*, IV. 19.

obsīgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ob+sīgnō], tr., *seal.*

obstinātē, adv. [obstinō, *persist*], *persistently, firmly.*

obstringō, -stringere, -strīnxī, -strictum [ob+stringō, *bind*], tr., *bind, lay under obligation.*

obtemperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ob+temperō], intr., *submit, obey.*

obtestor, -ārī, -ātus sum [testis], dep., *call to witness, entreat, implore.*

obtineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum [ob+teneō], tr., *hold, possess, occupy; gain.*

obveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum [ob+veniō], intr., *come against, meet, encounter; fall to the lot of.*

occāsiō, -ōnis, F. [occidō], *opportunity, occasion.*

occāsus, -ūs, M. [cadō], *falling;* occāsus sōlis, *the setting of the sun, the west;* inter occāsum sōlis et septentriōnēs, *toward the northwest*, I. 1.

occidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cāsum [ob+cadō], intr., *fall;* occidēns sōl, *the west* (lit. setting sun).

occīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum [ob+caedō], tr., *kill, slay.*

occultē, adv. [occultus], *secretly.*

occultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *hide, conceal.*

occultus, -a, -um [occulō], *hidden;* in occultō, *in secret.*

occupātiō, -ōnis, F. [occupō], *occupation, duty, business; engagement.*

occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *seize, take possession of; cover, occupy*, II. 8; *engage, be busy*, II. 19.

occurrō, -currere, -currī (-cucurrī), -cursum [ob+currō], intr., *run* (to meet), *meet, encounter; find, meet with*, IV. 26; *occur.*

Ōceanus, -ī, M., *the ocean, i.e.* the Atlantic, I. 1, II. 34, III. 7, etc.

Ocelum, -ī, N., *Ocelum* (os'e-lum), a town of the Graioceli, in the Alps, I. 10.

octāvus, -a, -um, *eighth.*

octingentī, -ae, -a, *eight hundred.*

octō, indecl. adj., *eight.*

Octodūrus, -ī, M., *Octodurus* (ok-tō-dū'rus), chief town of the Veragri, in the Alps, III. 1; now *Martigny.*

octōgintā, indecl. adj., *eighty.*

oculus, -ī, M., *eye.*

ōdī, ōdisse, def. verb (App. 47), *hate*, perf. system, w. meanings of pres. system.

offendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsum [ob+fendō], tr. and intr., (strike against), *displease, offend, vex.*

offēnsiō, **-ōnis**, F. [offendō], (a striking against), *offense, wounding, hurting.*

offerō, **offerre**, **obtulī**, **oblātum** [ob+ferō], tr. (bear against), *present, offer; put in one's way; put in one's power*, IV. 13; **sē offerre**, *expose oneself, meet.*

officium, **-ī**, N., *duty, service, allegiance;* **ab officiō discēdere**, I. 40, *forsake his allegiance.*

omittō, **-mittere**, **-mīsī**, **-missum** [ob+mittō], tr., *let go, neglect, disregard*, II. 17.

omnīnō, adv. [omnis], *in all, altogether, entirely, at all*, I. 32, IV. 1.

omnis, **-e**, *all, every, the whole of.*

onerārius, **-a**, **-um** [onus], *of burden;* **nāvis onerāria**, *transport;* see Introd. 57.

onus, **oneris**, N., *weight.*

opera, **-ae**, F. [opus], *service, work;* **dare operam**, *take pains, try.*

opīniō, **-ōnis**, F. [opīnor, *think*], *opinion, idea, supposition; reputation*, II. 8, 24; *impression, notion; expectation*, III. 3.

oportet, **oportēre**, **oportuit**, impers., *it is necessary, it ought.*

oppidānus, **-ī**, M. [oppidum], *inhabitant of a town, townsman.*

oppidum, **-ī**, N., *town* (usually fortified), *stronghold.*

opportūnē, adv. [opportūnus], *advantageously, conveniently.*

opportūnitās, **-tātis**, F. [opportūnus], *fitness, advantage, opportunity.*

opportūnus, **-a**, **-um** [ob+portus], *convenient, suitable, favorable.*

opprimō, **-primere**, **-pressī**, **-pressum** [ob+premō], tr. (press against), *crush, overwhelm, oppress, conquer; surprise*, IV. 4.

oppūgnātiō, **-ōnis**, F. [oppūgnō], *storming, attack; mode of attack*, II. 6.

oppūgnō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [ob+pūgnō], tr., *fight against, attack, assault.*

(ops), **opis**, F., *aid, influence;* pl., *resources, means, wealth, power, help.*

optimē, adv., sup. of **bene**, *best.*

optimus, **-a**, **-um**, sup. of **bonus**, *best.*

1. opus, **operis**, N., *work, a work, fortification; structure*, IV. 17; *craft*, VI. 17.

2. opus, indecl. noun, N., *need, necessity.*

ōra, **-ae**, F., *coast.*

ōrātiō, **-ōnis**, F. [ōrō], *speech, address, argument, words.*

ōrātor, **-ōris**, M. [ōrō], *speaker, envoy*, IV. 27.

orbis, **-is**, M., *circle.*

Orcynia, **-ae**, F., *Orcynia* (or-sin'i-a).

ōrdō, **ōrdinis**, M., *order, rank, line; century.*

Orgetorīx, **-īgis**, M., *Orgetorix* (or-jet'o-riks), a prominent

Helvetian nobleman, I. 2–4, 26.

orior, orīrī, ortus sum, dep., *rise, spring, spring up, descend;* **orīrī ab**, *begin at;* **oriēns sōl**, *the east.*

ōrnāmentum, -ī, N. [ōrnō], *decoration, honor*, I. 44.

ōrnātus, -a, -um [ōrnō], *furnished, supplied;* sup., *thoroughly furnished.*

ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ōs], tr. and intr., *speak, plead, entreat.*

Osismī, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Osismi* (ō-siz'mī), a coast tribe north of the Veneti.

ostendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum [ob+tendō], tr., *show, point out, declare.*

ōvum, -ī, N., *egg.*

P

P., see **Pūblius.**

pābulātiō, -ōnis, F. [pābulor, *forage*], *foraging.*

pābulum, -ī, N., *fodder, green fodder.*

pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [pāx], tr., *pacify, subdue.*

pactum, -ī, N. [pacīscor], (agreement), *manner.*

paene, adv., *almost.*

paenitet, paenitēre, paenituit, impers., *it causes regret:* **eōs paenitet**, *they regret, they repent*, IV. 5.

pāgus, -ī, M., *canton, district.*

palam, adv., *openly, publicly.*

palma, -ae, F., *palm of the hand.*

palūs, -ūdis, F., *swamp, marsh.*

pandō, pandere, pandī, passum (pānsum), tr., *spread out;* **passīs manibus**, *with outstretched hands.*

pār, paris (abl. **parī**, gen. pl., **parium**), adj., *equal, a match.*

parātus, -a, -um, part. of **parō**, as adj., *prepared, ready;* may be followed by **ad**+ a gerund or gerundive (App. 164, 165), by an inf., or by **ut**+ subjunct; sup. w. **nāvēs**, *fully equipped*, III. 14.

parcō, parcere, pepercī (parsī), parsum, intr., *spare.*

pāreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, intr., *obey, submit to.*

parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *make ready, provide, prepare, prepare for*, III. 9, *procure, obtain, acquire.*

pars, partis, F., *part, side, direction;* **ūnā ex parte**, *on one side*, I. 2; **in utram partem, quam in partem**, *in what direction, to what place?* **aliam in partem**, *in another direction;* **māgnā ex parte**, *in great measure, to a great extent*, I. 16.

partim, adv. [pars], *partly.*

partior, partīrī, partītus sum, dep. [pars], *divide.*

parum, adv. (App. 19), *little.*

parvulus, -a, -um [parvus], *very small; very young*, VI. 28; **parvulum proelium**, *skirmish.*

parvus, -a, -um, *little, small;* **ā parvīs (puerīs)**, *from childhood.*

passim, adv., *in all directions.*

1. **passus**, **-ūs**, M., *pace* (five Roman feet, the distance between two successive positions of the same foot); **mīlle passūs**, *mile* (a thousand paces); pl., **mīlia passuum** (63, *e*).

2. **passus**, perf. part. of **pandō**, or of **patior**.

patefaciō, **-facere**, **-fēcī**, **-factum** [**pateō** + **faciō**], tr., *open, throw open.*

patefīō, pass. of **patefaciō**.

patēns, **-entis**, part. as adj. [**pateō**], *open, exposed.*

pateō, **-ēre**, **-uī**, ——, intr. (lie open), *extend; be open*, VI. 23.

pater, **patris**, M., *father.*

patienter, adv. [**patiēns**], *patiently.*

patientia, **-ae**, F. [**patiēns**], *endurance.*

patior, **patī**, **passus sum**, dep., *suffer, endure; allow, permit.*

patrius, **-a**, **-um** [**pater**], *of a father, ancestral, traditional.*

paucī, **-ae**, **-a**, *few;* **pauca** (sc. **verba**), *briefly*, I. 44.

paucitās, **-tātis**, F. [**paucī**], *small number, fewness, small size.*

paulātim, adv. [**paulum**], *little by little, gradually.*

paulisper, adv. [**paulum**], *for a short time.*

paulō, adv. [**paulus**], *by a little, a little.*

paululum, adv., *a very little.*

paulum, adv. [**paulus**, *little*], *a little.*

pāx, **pācis**, F., *peace*

peccō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, intr., *offend, transgress, do wrong*, I. 47.

pecūnia, **-ae**, F. [**pecus**], *property, money.*

pecus, **-oris**, N., *cattle, flesh of cattle, meat.*

pedālis, **-e** [**pēs**], *of a foot; a foot* (in dimension), III. 13.

pedes, **peditis**, M. [**pēs**], *foot-soldier;* pl., *infantry.*

pedester, **-tris**, **-tre** [**pedes**], *of infantry;* **pedestria itinera**, *approaches by land;* **pedestrēs cōpiae**, *infantry.*

peditātus, **-ūs**, M. [**pedes**], *infantry.*

Pedius, **-ī**, M., (*Quintus*) *Pedius* (pē'di-us), one of Caesar's lieutenants, II. 2.

pēior, **pēius** (comp. of **malus**), *worse.*

pellis, **-is**, F., *skin, hide; tent* (made of leather), III. 29.

pellō, **pellere**, **pepulī**, **pulsum**, tr., *drive, beat, rout, defeat.*

pendō, **pendere**, **pependī**, **pēnsum**, tr., *weigh;* w. **stīpendium**, etc., *pay.*

pependī, see **pendō**.

per, prep. w. acc., *through, by, by means of;* as prefix, *through, thoroughly, very.*

percontātiō, **-ōnis**, F. [**percontor**, *inquire*], *questioning, inquiry.*

percurrō, -currere, -cucurrī (-currī), -cursum [per+currō], tr., *run along.*

percutiō, -cutere, -cussī, -cussum [per+quatiō, *shake*], *thrust through, strike through.*

perdiscō, -discere, -dicidī, —— [per+discō], tr., *learn thoroughly.*

perditus, -a, -um, part. as adj. [perdō], *desperate.*

perdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum [per+dūcō], tr., *lead through, lead safely, bring; extend, continue;* w. mūrus, *construct.*

pereō, perīre, periī, peritum [per+eō], intr. (pass away), *perish.*

perequitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [per+equitō], tr. and intr., *ride through, ride about.*

perfacilis, -e [per+facilis], *very easy.*

perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum [per+ferō], tr. (bear through), *carry, bring; report,* IV. 21; *suffer, endure, submit to.*

perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum [per+faciō], tr., *do thoroughly, accomplish, complete, bring about.*

perfidia, -ae, F. [perfidus], *faithlessness, treachery.*

perfringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāctum [per+frangō], tr., *break through.*

perfuga, -ae, M. [fugiō], *deserter:* prō perfugā, *in the character of a deserter,* III. 18.

perfugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitum [per+fugiō], intr., *flee for refuge.*

perfugium, -ī, N. [perfugiō], *place of refuge.*

pergō, pergere, perrēxī, perrēctum [per+regō], intr., *proceed directly, advance.*

perīclitor, -ārī, -ātus [perīculum], dep., *try, test, put to the test.*

perīculōsus, -a, -um [perīculum], *full of danger, dangerous, perilous.*

perīculum, -ī, N., *trial,* IV. 21; *danger, risk, peril; test,* I. 40, l. 818.

perītus, -a, -um, *experienced* (in), *familiar with, skilled, skilful.*

permaneō, -ēre, -mānsī, -mānsum [per+maneō], intr., *remain.*

permittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum [per+mittō], tr., *let go, give up, surrender; intrust; allow, grant, permit.*

permoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum [per+moveō], tr., *move thoroughly, rouse, alarm, influence.*

permulceō, -mulcēre, -mulsī, -mulsum [per+mulceō], tr., *soothe, appease, calm.*

perniciēs, -ēī, F., *destruction, ruin.*

perpaucī, -ae, -a [per+paucī], *very few.*

perpendiculum, -ī, N. [perpendō], *plumb-line.*

perpetuus, -a, -um [per+petō], *continuous, whole, constant,*

incessant, perpetual, permanent; **in perpetuum**, *forever;* **perpetuō**, abl. as adv., *constantly, permanently.*

perrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum [per+rumpere], tr. and intr., *break through, get across.*

persequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum [per+sequor], dep., *follow after, follow up, pursue.*

persevērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [per+sevērus, *strict*], intr., *persist, continue.*

persolvō, -solvere, -solvī, -solūtum [per+solvō], tr. (release completely), *pay.*

perspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum [per+speciō], tr., *see through, perceive, observe, see.*

persuādeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsum [per+suādeō, *advise*], tr. and intr., *persuade; inculcate,* VI. 14.

perterreō, -terrēre, -terruī, -territum [per+terreō], tr., *frighten thoroughly, terrify;* **timōre perterritus**, *panic-stricken.*

pertināciа, -ae, F. [pertīnāx], *stubbornness, obstinacy.*

pertineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, ——, [per+teneō], intr., *extend, reach, tend; concern, pertain, belong;* **eōdem pertinēre**, *signify the same thing,* I. 14.

perturbātiō, -ōnis, F. [perturbō], *disturbance, panic.*

perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [per+turbō], tr., *disturb, confuse, throw into confusion.*

perveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum [per+veniō], intr., *come to, arrive at, reach, belong* (legally); impers. in pass.

pēs, pedis, M., *foot.*

petō, petere, petīvī, petītum, tr., *seek, ask, beg; aim at, attack;* **fugam petere**, *flee;* **fugā salūtem petere**, *flee for safety.*

phalanx, phalangis, F., *phalanx*, a body of soldiers in close array, the first rank holding their shields before them, the others holding theirs horizontally over them.

Pictonēs, -um, M. pl., *the Pictones* (pik'tō-nēz), a tribe of western Gaul.

pīlum, -ī, N., *spear, javelin;* see Introd. 41.

pīlus, -ī, M., a *maniple* (of the triarii or veteran soldiers).

piscis, -is, M., *fish.*

Pīsō, -onis, M., *Piso* (pī'sō), a Roman family name; 1. *Marcus*, consul 61 B.C., I. 2; 2. *Lucius*, consul 58 B.C., and father-in-law of Caesar, I. 6, 12; 3. *Lucius*, grandfather of the consul Lucius, slain by the Helvetii, 107 B.C., I. 12; 4. an Aquitanian, IV. 12.

placeō, placēre, placuī, placitum, intr., *please;* impers., *it pleases.*

plācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *appease.*

plānitiēs, -ēī, F. [plānus], *plain, level stretch of country.*

plānus, -a, -um, *flat, level.*

plēbs, plēbis (or **plēbēs, plēbeī**) F., *common people, people*

plēnē, adv. [plēnus], *fully.*

plēnus, -a, -um, *full.*

plerīque, plēraeque, plēraque, pl. adj., *very many, most of.*

plērumque, adv., *generally, commonly, for the most part.*

plumbum, -ī, N., *lead;* **plumbum album**, *tin.*

plūrimum, adv., sup. of **multum** (App. 19), *most;* **plūrimum posse**, *be most* (or *very*) *powerful, have greatest* (or *great*) *influence.*

plūs, comp. adj., and adv. [**multus**, App. 16, 18, 19], *more;* pl., *more, many, several.*

pōculum, -ī, N., *drinking vessel, cup.*

poena, -ae, F. *punishment, penalty.*

pollex, pollicis, M., *thumb;* **digitus pollex**, *thumb.*

polliceor, -ērī, -itus sum [prō+**liceor**], dep. (hold forth), *promise.*

pollicitātiō, -ōnis, F. [**polliceor**], *promise.*

Pompēius, -ī, M., (*Gnaeus*) *Pompeius*, Pompey the great, famous Roman general and statesman, member of triumvirate w. Caesar and Crassus; consul, 55 B.C.; see Introd. 12.

pondus, ponderis, N., *weight.*

pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum, tr., *place, put;* w. **castra**, *pitch;* pass., of countries, towns, *be situated;* w. **certāmen**, *depend;* w. **arma**, *lay down.*

pōns, pontis, M., *bridge.*

poposcī, see **poscō.**

populātiō, -ōnis, F. [**populor**], *ravaging.*

populor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., *devastate, lay waste, ravage.*

populus, -ī, M., *people, nation.*

porrigō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctum [por (prō)+**regō**], tr., *stretch out, extend;* **porrēcta**, II. 19, *extended.*

porta, -ae, F., *gate.*

portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *carry.*

portōrium, -ī, N., *toll, duty, customs duty*, a tax levied on goods coming into or passing through a territory.

portus, -ūs, M., *harbor, port.*

poscō, poscere, **poposcī**, ——, tr., *demand.*

possessiō, -ōnis, F. [**possideō**], *possession, property.*

possideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessum [por (prō)+**sedeō**], tr., *occupy, have possession of.*

possum, posse, potuī [**potis**, *able*+**sum**, App. 42], irr., *be able, can;* usually w. a complementary infinitive; see **plūrimum, tantum.**

post, adv. and prep., w. acc., *after.*

posteā, adv. [**post**+**ea**], *afterwards.*

posteāquam, conj., *after.*

posterus, -a, -um [**post**] (App. 18), *following;* pl. as noun, *posterity, descendants.*

postpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum [**post**+**pōnō**], tr., *place after, disregard*, V. 7.

postquam, conj. [post+quam], *after.*

postrīdiē, adv. [posterus+diēs], *on the day after, the next day;* **postrīdiē ēius diēī**, *the next day after that.*

postulātum, -ī, N. [postulō], *demand.*

postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *ask, demand, request; require,* II. 22, IV. 23.

potēns, -entis, adj. [possum], *powerful;* **potentiōrēs**, masc. pl. as noun, *the more powerful,* II. 1.

potentātus, -ūs, M. [potēns], *power, leadership.*

potentia, -ae, F. [potēns], *power, influence.*

potestās, -tātis, F. [potis], *power, opportunity;* **potestātem facere**, *give an opportunity.*

potior, -īrī, -ītus sum, dep., *get control of, obtain possession of, secure.*

potius, adv., *rather, more.*

prae, prep. w. abl., *before, in front of; in comparison with.* II. 30; as prefix, *before, over,*

praeacūtus, -a, -um [prae+acūtus], *sharpened, pointed.*

praebeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum [prae+habeō], tr., *present, furnish, afford, give.*

praecaveō, -cavēre, -cāvī, -cautum [prae+caveō], intr., *take precaution, be on one's guard.*

praecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum [prae+cēdō], tr., *go before, surpass, precede, excel.*

praeceps, praecipitis (abl. sing., ī, nom. pl., neut., -ia), adj., [prae+caput], *headlong; in great haste,* II. 24; *steep.*

praecipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum [prae+capiō], tr. (take in advance), *direct, order;* **praeceptum erat**, impers., *the command had been given.*

praecipitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [praeceps], tr., *throw headlong.*

praecipuē, adv. [praecipuus], *especially.*

Praecōnīnus, -ī, M., (*Lucius Valerius*) *Praeconinus* (prē-cō-nī'nus), a Roman lieutenant, III. 20.

praeda, -ae, F., *booty, plunder.*

praedicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [prae+dicō], tr., *declare, assert, boast.*

praedor, -ārī, -ātus sum [praeda], dep. *plunder, pillage.*

praefectus, -ī, M. [praeficiō], *commander, officer* (especially of the cavalry), *prefect.*

praeferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum [prae+ferō], tr., *bear before, place before;* **sē praeferre**, II. 27, *surpass* (lit. put themselves before).

praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum [prae+faciō], tr., *put before, put over, place in command.*

praemium, -ī, N. [prae+emō], *reward, advantage, distinction* (as a reward).

praemittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum [prae+mittō], tr., *send ahead, send in advance.*

praeoptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [prae

+optō], tr., *choose rather, prefer.*

praeparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [prae+parō], tr. (make ready beforehand), *prepare.*

praepōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum [prae+pōnō], tr., *place over, put in command* (of).

praerumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum [prae+rumpō, *break*], tr., *break off.*

praeruptus, -a, -um [praerumpō], (broken off), *steep, abrupt.*

praesaepiō, -saepīre, -saepsī, saeptum [prae+saepiō, *hedge*], tr., *fence in, barricade.*

praescrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī -scrīptum [prae+scrībō, *write beforehand*], tr., *prescribe, direct, order.*

praescrīptum, -ī, N. [praescrībō], *direction, order, command.*

praesēns, -entis [praesum], adj., *present;* **sē praesente**, *in his own presence.*

praesentia, -ae, F. [praesēns], *presence; the present;* **in praesentiā**, *for the present.*

praesertim, adv., *especially.*

praesidium, -ī, N. [praesideō, *sit in front of*], *protection, guard, garrison; source of protection*, I. 44; *assistance*, VI. 14; **praesidium pōnō**, *seek refuge*, II. 11.

praestō, -stāre, -stitī, -stitum [prae+stō], tr. and intr., *stand before, excel, surpass; show, display*, II. 27; *do*, IV. 25; impers., **praestat**, *it is better.*

praesum, praeësse, **praefuī** [prae+sum], intr., *be over, have charge of, be in command of.*

praeter, prep. w. acc., *except, besides; beyond, by, past*, I. 48; *contrary to*, III. 3; as prefix, *by.*

praetereā, adv. [praeter+ea], *besides, furthermore.*

praetereō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itum [praeter+eō], tr. and intr., *go by, pass over, omit;* **praeterita**, w. diēs, *having passed;* **praeterita**, -ōrum, as noun, *the past* ("*by-gones*").

praetermittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum [praeter+mittō], tr., *let go by, lose.*

praeterquam, adv., *except, besides.*

praetor, -ōris, M. [prae-eō] (one who goes ahead), *commander, general;* **prō praetōre**, *with the power of general*, I. 21. (The usual meaning of *praetor*, a Roman judge, is not found in Caesar).

praetōrius, -a, -um [praetor], *of a general;* **praetōria cohors**, *general's body-guard.*

premō, premĕre, pressī, pressum, tr., *press, press hard, oppress;* pass., *be burdened*, etc.

prēndō, prēndere, prēndī, prēnsum, tr., *grasp, seize.*

pretium, -ī, N., *price.*

prex, precis, F. (nom. and gen. sing. not used), *prayer, entreaty.*

prīdiē, adv., *the day before.*

prīmipīlus, -ī, M. [prīmus+

pīlus], *chief centurion* (of a legion); see Introd. 37.

prīmō, adv. [prīmus], *at first.*

prīmum, adv. [prīmus], *first, in the first place;* **quam prīmum**, *as soon as possible;* **cum prīmum**, *as soon as.*

prīmus, -a, -um (App. 18 and 20), *first;* **in prīmīs**, *especially.*

prīnceps, prīncipis, adj., *first in order, chief;* as noun, *chief, leader.*

prīncipātus, -ūs, M. [prīnceps], *first place, leadership.*

prior, prius (App. 18), *former, preceding, first;* **priōrēs**, masc. pl. as noun, *those in front.*

prīstinus, -a, -um [cf. prius], *former, previous.*

priusquam, conj. [prius+quam], *before;* often written **prius . . . quam.**

prīvātim, adv. [prīvātus], *as an individual, as a private citizen, privately.*

prīvātus, -a, -um [prīvō, *deprive*], *personal, individual, private.*

prō, prep. w. abl., *before, for, as, in behalf of, in view of, considering, in proportion to, in comparison with, instead of, in accordance with,* II. 31; as prefix, *forth, forward, before.*

probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *prove, approve, approve of, show; be satisfied with,* IV. 21.

prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum [prō+cēdō], intr., *go forward, go on, advance, proceed.*

Procillus, -ī, M. (*Gaius Valerius Procillus* (prō-sil'us), a young Gaul, in the service of Caesar, I. 47, 53.

prōcōnsul, -is, M., *proconsul,* governor of a province.

procul, adv., *at a distance.*

prōcumbō, -cumbere, -cubuī, -cubitum [prō+cumbō, *recline*], intr., *fall forward, sink down; incline,* IV. 17; *lie down,* VI. 27.

prōcūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [prō+cūrō], tr., *take care of, attend to.*

prōcurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursum [prō+currō], intr., *run forward, charge.*

prōdeō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itum [prō+eō], intr., *go forward, advance.*

prōditor, -ōris, M. [prōdō], *traitor.*

prōdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum [prō+dō], tr., *transmit, hand down* (as a tradition), *publish; betray, abandon,* IV. 25.

prōdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum [prō+dūcō], tr., *lead forth; prolong.*

proelior, -ārī, -ātus sum [proelium], dep., *fight.*

proelium, ī, N., *battle.*

profectiō, -ōnis, F. [proficīscor], *setting out, departure.*

profectus, see **proficīscor.**

prōfectus, see **prōficiō.**

prōferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum [prō+ferō], tr., *bring out.*

prōficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum [prō+faciō], tr. and intr., *accomplish; gain advantage.*

proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum, dep., *set out, depart.*

profiteor, -fitērī, -fessus sum [pro+fateor, *confess*], dep., *declare publicly, volunteer*, VI. 23.

prōflīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *defeat, rout, overcome.*

prōfluō, -fluere, -fluxī, [prō+fluō], intr., *flow forth, rise* (of rivers).

profugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitum [pro+fugiō], intr., *flee, escape.*

prōgnātus, -a, -um [prō+nāscor] *descended, sprung* (from).

prōgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum [prō+gradior], dep., *go forward, advance, proceed.*

prohibeō, -hibēre, -hibuī, -hibitum [prō+habeō], tr., *keep from, prohibit, prevent, hinder, restrain.*

prōiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum [prō+iaciō], tr., *throw in front, cast, throw down; throw away, abandon, give up*, II. 15.

prōmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum [prō+mittō], tr., *let go*; **prōmissus**, w. **capillus** (let grow), *long, flowing.*

prōmoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum [prō+moveō], tr., *move forward.*

prōmptus, -a, -um, *ready, quick.*

prōmunturium, -ī, N., *headland.*

prōnē, adv. [prōnus], *bending forward, inclined.*

prōnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [prō+nūntiō], tr., *declare, tell.*

prope, prep. w. acc., *near*; adv., *near, near by, almost.*

prōpellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum [prō+pellō], tr., *drive off, put to flight.*

properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [properus], intr., *make haste, hasten.*

propinquitās, -tātis, F. [propinquus], *nearness; kinship, ties of blood*, II. 4.

propinquus, -a, -um [prope], *near*; as noun, *kinsman, relative*; **propinqua**, *female relative.*

propius, comp. of **prope.**

prōpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, tr., *set forth, declare, relate, explain; display*, II. 20; pass., *present itself*, IV. 17.

proprius, -a, -um [prope], *one's own, private, peculiar, characteristic; a proof of*, VI. 23.

propter, prep. w. acc., *on account of.*

propereā, adv. [propter+ea], *for this reason*; **propereā quod**, *for the reason that.*

prōpūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [prō+pūgnō], intr. (fight in front), *sally forth, attack*, III. 4; pres. part. as noun, *defender.*

prōpulsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [prōpellō], tr., *drive back, repel, ward off.*

prōra, -ae, F., *prow.*

prōruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutum [prō+ruō], tr., *demolish, tear down.*

prōsequor, -sequī, -secūtus [prō+

sequor], dep., *pursue, follow;* ōrātiōne prōsequī, *address,* II. 5.

prōspectus, -ūs, M., *view, sight.*

prōspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum [prō+speciō], tr. and intr., *look forward, look out for, provide for, take precaution.*

prōsternō, -sternere, -strāvī, -strātum [prō+sternō], tr., *prostrate, overthrow.*

prōtegō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctum [prō+tegō], tr., *protect.*

prōterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum [prō+terreō], tr., *frighten away.*

prōtinus, adv., *forthwith, at once, immediately.*

prōturbō, āre, -āvī, -ātum [prō+turbō, *disturb*], tr., *drive away,* II. 19; *repulse.*

prōvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum [prō+vehō], tr., *carry forward;* prōvectae, *putting out* (of ships), IV. 28.

prōventus, -ūs, M. [prōveniō], *outcome, issue.*

prōvideō, -vidēre, -vīdī, -vīsum [pro+videō], tr., *foresee, provide;* pass. impers., *it is provided, provision is made.*

prōvincia, -ae, F., *province;* especially the Roman province of Transalpine Gaul, or Gallia Narbonensis, the valley of the lower Rhone extending from the Alps southwestward to the Pyrenees and Cévennes, and northward to Lake Geneva; see Introd. 14.

prōvolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [prō+volō, *fly*], intr. (fly forth), *dash forth, rush out.*

proximē, adv. [prope, App. 19], *next, nearest, last.*

proximus, -a, -um [prope, App. 18], *nearest, next, last.*

prūdentia, -ae, F. [prūdēns = prōvidēns], *wisdom.*

Ptiāniī, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Ptianii* (tī-ā′ni-ī), a tribe in Aquitania.

pūblicē, adv. [pūblicus], *publicly as a tribe, as a nation,* IV. 3.

pūblicus, -a, -um [populus], *of the people, of the state, public;* rēs pūblica, *state, republic, affairs of state,* I. 34; in pūblicum, *in public view.*

Pūblius, -ī, M., *Publius* (pub′li-us), a Roman personal name.

pudor, pudōris, M., *shame, sense of shame.*

puer, puerī, M., *boy;* pl., *children;* ā puerīs, *from childhood.*

puerīlis, -e [puer], *of a boy, boyish.*

pūgna, -ae, F., *fight, battle;* ad pūgnam, *in fighting, for fighting.*

pūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [pūgna], intr., *fight;* pass. impers., pūgnātur, *fighting goes on, they fight, the battle is fought.*

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, *beautiful, noble, glorious.*

Pullō, -ōnis, M., *Pullo* (pul′ō), a centurion, V. 44.

1. pulsus, -ūs, M. [pellō], *stroke.*

2. pulsus, -a, -um, part. of pellō.

pulvis, pulveris, M., *dust.*

puppis, -is, F., *stern.*

pūrgātus, -a, -um, part. as adj. [pūrgō], *excused, exonerated, blameless.*

pūrgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *clear, excuse;* **sē pūrgāre**, *apologize.*

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *reckon think, suppose.*

Pȳrēnaeus, -a, -um, w. **montēs**, *the Pyrenees*, I. 1.

Q

Q., see **Quīntus.**

quă, see **quis.**

quā, adv. [quī], *by which way, where.*

quadrāgēnī, -ae, -a, dist. num. adj., *forty each, forty at a time.*

quadrāgintā, indecl. adj., *forty.*

Quadrātus, -ī, M., *Quadratus* (kwod-rā′tus); see **Volusēnus.**

quadringentī, -ae, -a, *four hundred.*

quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quaesītum, tr., *seek, ask, inquire, consider.*

quaestiō, -ōnis, F. [quaerō], *investigation, inquiry.*

quaestor, -ōris, M. [quaerō], *quaestor*, quartermaster of the army; see Introd. 35.

quaestus, -ūs, M. [quaerō], *gaining, gain.*

quālis, -e, *of what sort? what?*

quam, adv. and conj., *how? as;* w. comparatives, *than;* w. superlatives, *as . . . as possible.*

quam ob rem, interrog. phrase, *for what reason? wherefore? why?* rel. phrase, *on account of which, wherefore, why.*

quamquam, conj., *although.*

quamvīs, adv., *however.*

quandō, adv., *at any time, ever;* **sī quandō**, *whenever*, III. 12.

quantus, -a, -um, *how great, how much; as great as, as much as;* correl. w. **tantus**, *as;* **quantō opere**, *how greatly;* **quantum**, as adv., *as, as far as*, IV. 17.

quārē, adv. [quā+rē], *wherefore, why, for which; therefore, and therefore.*

quārtus, -a, -um [quattuor], *fourth.*

quattuor, indecl. adj., *four.*

quattuordecim, indecl. adj., *fourteen.*

-que, enclitic conj., *and;* to be translated before the word to which it is attached.

queror, querī, questus sum, dep., *complain, complain of, bewail.*

quī, quae, quod, rel. pron., *who, which, that.*

quicquam, see **quisquam.**

quicquid, see **quisquis.**

quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, indef. rel. pron. and adj., *whoever, whatever.*

quid, see **quis.**

quīdam, quaedam, quoddam (quiddam), indef. pron. and

adj., *a certain;* pl., *certain, some.*

quidem, adv., *indeed;* **nē . . . quidem**, *not even*, emphasizing a word or phrase standing between **nē** and **quidem**.

quiēs, quiētis, F., *rest, sleep.*

quīn, conj. [**quī**, abl. + **ne**, *by which not*], *that, but that, from;* see **temperō**; **quīn etiam**, *furthermore, in fact.*

quīndecim, indecl. adj., *fifteen.*

quīngentī, -ae, -a, *five hundred.*

quīnī, -ae, -a, dist. num. adj., *five at a time, five each.*

quīnquāgintā, indecl. adj., *fifty.*

quīnque, indecl. adj., *five.*

quīntus, -a, -um [**quīnque**], *fifth.*

Quīntus, -ī, M., *Quintus* (kwin'tus), a Roman personal name.

1. **quis** (**quī**), **quid**, indef. pron. (App. 27), *any one, anything, some;* as adj., **quī, quae** (**qua**), **quod**, *any;* used chiefly after **sī, nisi, nē.**

2. **quis, quid**, interrog. pron. (App. 26), *who? which? what?* as adj., **quī, quae, quod**, *which? what?* as adv., **quid**, *why?*

quisnam, quidnam, interrog. pron., *who, pray? what, pray?* adj., **quīnam, quaenam, quodnam**, *what?* (possible), II. 30.

quispiam, quaepiam, quidpiam (quodpiam), indef. pron. (App. 27), *any one* (at all), *anything.*

quisquam, quicquam, indef. pron. (App. 27), *any one* (at all), *anything, any;* chiefly in negative sentences, or in questions implying a negative answer.

quisque, quidque, indef. pron. (App. 27), *each one, every one, each;* as adj., **quisque, quaeque, quodque**, *each, every, any;* **quisque nōbilissimus**, *all the nobles.*

quisquis, quicquid (quidquid), compound rel. pron., *whoever, whatever*, II. 17; only forms in common use are **quisquis, quicquid, quōquō.**

quīvīs, quaevīs, quidvīs (quodvīs), indef. pron. and adj., *any one, whatever, anything whatever; any whatever*, II. 31.

1. **quō**, conj. [=**ut eō**] (that thereby), *that, in order that,* used w. comparatives, App. 135, *a;* **quō minus**, or **quōminus** (by which the less), *that not, so that not*, IV. 22; *from* (doing anything), App. 145, *e.*

2. **quō**, adv. [**quī**] *where; to any place, anywhere*, I. 48, l. 1051; *whither, to which*, II. 7, 16; *into which*, IV. 1; *in what respect*, VI. 11.

quoad, conj. [**quō**+**ad**], *as long as, until.*

quod, conj., *because, that, the fact that, as to the fact that;* **quod sī**, *and if, but if.*

quōminus, see 1. **quō.**

quoniam, conj. [**quom** (=**cum**)

+iam], (since now), *since, because, seeing that.*

quoque, adv., *also.*

quōqueversus, adv., *in all directions.*

quot, indecl. adj., *as many as; how many?*

quotannīs, adv. [quot+annus], *every year, yearly.*

quotiēns, adv. [quot], *how often? as often as.*

R

rādīx, **rādīcis**, F., *root, base.*

rādō, **rādere**, **rāsī**, **rāsum**, tr., *scrape, shave,*

raeda (**rēda**), **-ae**, F., *wagon* (with four wheels).

rāmus, **-ī**, M., *branch.*

rapiditās, **-tātis**, F. [rapidus], *swiftness.*

rapīna, **-ae**, F. [rapiō, *seize*], *plundering, robbery.*

rārus, **-a**, **-um**, *far apart, scattered, in scattered groups.*

ratiō, **-ōnis**, F. [reor, *think*], *reckoning, consideration, account, list*, I. 29; *reason, plan, way, method, system, theory, principles*, IV. 23; *strategy*, I. 40; **aliā ratiōne**, *on* (any) *other terms*, I. 42.

ratis, **-is**, F., *raft.*

Rauracī, **-ōrum**, M. pl., *the Rauraci* (râ'ra-sī), neighbors and allies of the Helvetii, I. 5, 29.

re-, (**red-**), prefix, *back, again.*

rebelliō, **-ōnis**, F. [re+bellum], *renewal of war, rebellion.*

Rebilus, **-ī**, M., *Rebilus* (reb'i-lus); see **Canīnius**.

recēns, **-entis**, adj., *fresh, new, recent.*

receptus, **-ūs**, M. [recipiō], *retreat, place of retreat.*

recipiō, **-cipere**, **-cēpī**, **-ceptum** [re+capiō], tr., *take back, receive, admit;* **sē recipere**, *withdraw, retire, retreat, recover*, II. 12, III. 4.

reclīnō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [re+clīnō, *lean*], tr., *lean back;* w. **sē** or pass., *recline.*

rēctē, adv. [rēctus], *rightly, properly.*

rēctus, **-a**, **-um** [regō], *straight.*

recuperō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-atum**, tr., *recover, regain.*

recūsō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [causa], tr. and intr., *refuse, decline, give up; object*, V. 6.

redāctus, part. of **redigō**.

reddō, **reddere**, **reddidī**, **redditum** [re(d)+dō], tr., *give back, return; render*, II. 5, VII. 90; *grant*, VI. 13; *pay, offer*, VI. 16.

redēmptus, part. of **redimō**.

redeō, **-īre**, **-īvī** (**-iī**), **-itum** [re(d)+eō], intr., *go back, return.*

redigō, **-igere**, **-ēgī**, **-āctum**, [re(d)+agō], tr., *drive back; bring, reduce*, I. 45, II. 14, etc., *render, make*, II. 27.

redimō, **-imere**, **-ēmī**, **-ēmptum** [re(d)+emō], tr., *buy back, buy up;* w. **pācem**, etc., *secure.*

redintegrō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**

[re(d)+integer], tr., *renew, restore.*

reditiō, -ōnis, F. [redeō], *a going back, returning.*

reditus, -ūs, M. [redeō], *return.*

Redonēs, -um, M. pl., *the Redones* (redʹō-nēz), a tribe of northwestern Gaul.

redūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum [re+dūcō], tr., *bring back, lead back.*

referō, referre, rettulī, relātum [re+ferō], tr., *bring back, carry back, report;* **pedem referre,** *retreat;* see **grātia.**

reficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum [re+faciō], tr., *make over, repair;* **sē reficere,** *recover strength.*

refringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāctum [re+frangō], tr., *break open, break down.*

Rēgīnus, -ī, M., *Reginus* (rejīʹnus); see **Antistius.**

regiō, -ōnis, F. [regō], *direction, boundary, territory region, district, country;* **rēcta regiō,** *a straight line.*

rēgnum, -ī, N. [rēx], *royal power; supreme power.*

regō, regere, rēxī, rēctum, tr., *rule, direct, control;* of ships, *manage.*

rēiciō, rēicere, rēiēcī, rēiectum [re+iaciō], tr., *throw back, drive back, repulse.*

relanguēscō, -languēscere, -languī, —— [re+languēscō], intr., *become feeble, weaken.*

relātus, see **referō.**

relictus, part. of **relinquō.**

religiō, -ōnis, F. [re+ligō, *bind*], *religious scruple, sense of obligation, religion;* pl., *matters of religion.*

relinquō, -linquere, -līquī, -lictum [re+linquō, *leave*], tr., *leave behind, leave, abandon;* pass., *be left, remain.*

reliquus, -a, -um, *remaining, the rest of, left, other,* II. 15, 17.

remaneō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsum [re+maneō], intr., *remain, stay.*

rēmex, rēmigis, M. [rēmus], *oarsman, rower.*

Rēmī, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Remi* (rēʹmī), a tribe of Belgae on the Aisne, II. 3, etc.; cf. modern Rheims.

remigrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [re+migrō], intr., *return.*

reminīscor, -minīscī, ——, dep. [cf. **mēns**], *call to mind, recall, remember.*

remissus, -a, -um [remittō], *relaxed, mild,* V. 12.

remittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum [re+mittō], tr., *send back, give up, relax,* II. 15; *hurl back,* II. 27; w. **stīpendium,** *discontinue.*

remollēscō, -ere, ——, —— [re+mollēscō, *grow soft*], intr., *lose strength.*

removeō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum [re+moveō], tr., *move back, take away, remove;* **remōtus,** *distant, remote.*

remūneror, -ārī, -ātus [re+mūnus], dep., *repay, reward, remunerate.*

rēmus, -ī, M., *oar.*

Rēmus, -ī, M., *one of the Remi.*

renovō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [re+novō], tr., *renew.*

renūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [re+nūntiō, tr. (bring back word), *report.*

repellō, repellere, reppulī, repulsum [re+pellō], tr., *drive back, repulse.*

repente, adv., *suddenly.*

repentīnō, adv. [repentīnus], *suddenly.*

repentīnus, -a, -um, *unexpected, sudden, hasty.*

reperiō, reperīre, repperī, repertum [re+pariō, *procure*], tr., *find out, find* (by seeking or inquiring); *secure*, I. 53, 1124; **repertī sunt complūrēs**, *there were many*, I. 52; *originate*, VI. 13.

repetō, -petere, -petīvī, -petītum [re+petō], tr., *seek again, demand back; w.* **poenās**, *inflict.*

reportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [re+portō], tr., *carry back.*

reppulī, see repellō.

repraesentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [praesēns], tr., *do at once.*

reprehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsum, [re+prehendō], tr., *blame*, I. 20.

reprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum [re+premō], tr., *check, prevent.*

repudiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *reject, spurn.*

repūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [re+pūgnō], intr. (fight back), *resist, be in opposition, weigh against.*

repulsus, part. of repellō.

rēs, reī, F., *thing, fact;* a more definite meaning is generally suggested by the context, *circumstance, situation, consideration, argument, plan, undertaking, event, incident, matter, question, conflict;* see **novus, pūblicus, mīlitāris.**

rescindō, -scindere, -scidī, -scissum [re+scindo], tr., *break down, destroy.*

rescīscō, -scīscere, -scīvī (-sciī), -scītum [re+scīscō, *inquire*], tr., *learn, find out.*

rescrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum [re+scrībō], tr., *enroll.*

reservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [re+servō], tr., *keep back, reserve.*

resideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, —— [re+sedeō], intr., *remain, be left.*

resistō, -sistere, -stitī, ——, intr. (stand back), *withstand, oppose, resist;* **minimē resistēns**, *by no means sturdy*, III. 19.

respiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum [re+speciō], tr. and intr., *look back; have regard for, consider.*

respondeō, -spondēre, -spondī, -spōnsum [re+spondeō, *promise*], tr. and intr., *answer, reply.*

respōnsum, -ī, N. [respondeō], *reply, answer.*

rēs pūblica, see **pūblicus.**

respuō, -spuere, -spuī, —— [re+spuō, *spit*], tr., *reject.*

restitī, see resistō.

restituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum [re+statuō], tr. (set up again), *restore, renew.*

retineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum [re+teneō], tr., *hold back, detain, keep, retain, arrest.*

retrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctum [re+trahō], tr., *bring back.*

revellō, -vellere, -vellī, -vulsum [re+vellō], tr., *tear away, pull away.*

revertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum [re+vertō], intr., *turn back, return;* revertor, -ī, dep., is generally used in the present system.

revinciō, -vincīre, -vīnxi, -vīnctum [re+vinciō], tr., *bind fast.*

revocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [re+vocō], tr., *call back.*

rēx, rēgis, M., *king, chieftain.*

Rhēnus, -ī, M., *the Rhine*, I. 1, 2, 5, 27, etc.

Rhodanus, -ī, M., *the Rhone*, I. 1, 2, 6, 8, etc.

rīpa, -ae, F., *bank* (of a river).

rōbur, rōboris, N., *oak.*

rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *ask, request, beg; invite*, I. 44.

Rōma, -ae, F., *Rome*, I. 31.

Rōmānī, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Romans.*

Rōmānus, -a, -um, *Roman.*

rōstrum, -ī, N. [rōdō, *gnaw*], *beak* (of bird or of ship).

rota, -ae, F., *wheel.*

rubus, -ī, M., *bramble.*

Rūfus, -ī, M., *Rufus;* see Suīpicius.

rūmor, -ōris, M., *report, rumor.*

rūpēs, -is, F. [rumpō], *rock, cliff.*

rūrsus, adv. [reversus], *again, in turn.*

Rutēnī, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Ruteni* (rö-tē′nī), a Gallic tribe south of the Arverni, I. 45.

Rutilus, -ī, M., *Rutilus* (rö′ti-lus); see Semprōnius.

S

Sabīnus, -ī, M., *Sabinus* (sa-bī′-nus); see Titūrius.

Sabis, Sabis, M., *the Sabis* (sā′bis), modern *Sambre*, tributary of the Meuse, II. 16.

sacrificium, -ī, N., *sacrifice, offering.*

saepe, adv., *often;* minimē saepe, *very seldom;* saepius, I. 32, *repeatedly.*

saepenumerō, adv., *often.*

saepēs, -is, F., *hedge.*

saeviō, saevīre, saeviī, saevītum [saevus], intr., *rage, blow fiercely.*

sagitta, -ae, F., *arrow.*

sagittārius, -ī, M. [sagitta], *archer, bowman.*

salūs, salūtis, F. (health), *safety, welfare.*

sanciō, sancīre, sānxī, sānctum, tr. (make sacred), *solemnly agree, ordain, establish.*

sānctus, -a, -um [sanciō], *sacred.*

sānitās, **-tātis**, F. [sānus], (soundness of body or mind), *good sense.*

Santonēs, **-um**, or **Santonī**, **-ōrum**, M., *the Santones, Santoni* (san'tō-nez, san'tō-nī), a tribe in western Gaul, on the Bay of Biscay, I. 10, etc.

sānus, **-a**, **-um**, *sound* (in mind or body); **prō sānō**, *as a sane man.*

sarcina, **-ae**, F. [sarciō], *pack, baggage*; see Introd. 42.

sarmentum, **-ī**, N. [sarpō, *trim*], *twig, branch*; pl., *fagots.*

satis, indecl. adj., often used as a noun, *enough, sufficient*; **habēre satis**, *hold* or *consider* (it) *enough*; adv., *sufficiently, quite, very.*

satisfaciō, **-facere**, **-fēcī**, **-factum** [satis+faciō], tr., *do enough, satisfy, make amends, apologize.*

satisfactiō, **-ōnis**, F. [satisfaciō], *apology.*

saucius, **-a**, **-um**, *wounded.*

saxum, **-ī**, N., *rock, large stone.*

scālae, **-ārum**, F. [scandō], *scaling-ladder.*

scapha, **-ae**, F., *skiff, light boat.*

scelerātus, **-a**, **-um** [scelus], (crime-stained), *criminal.*

scelus, **sceleris**, N., *crime.*

scientia, **-ae**, F. [sciō], *knowledge.*

scindō, **scindere**, **scidī**, **scissum**, tr., *break down, demolish.*

sciō, **scīre**, **scīvī**, **scītum**, tr., *know.*

scrībō, **scrībere**, **scrīpsī**, **scrīptum**, tr., *write.*

scrobis, **-is**, M. and F., *ditch, pit.*

scūtum, **-ī**, N., *shield.*

sē, see **suī.**

sēcrētō, adv. [sēcrētus], *separately, secretly, privately.*

sectiō, **-ōnis**, F. [secō] (a cutting, hence a division of spoils in battle), *booty.*

sectūra, **-ae**, F. [secō], *quarry.*

sēcum = **cum sē.**

secundum, prep. w. acc. [sequor], *following, along; according to; besides*, I. 33.

secundus, **-a**, **-um** [sequor] (following), *second, favorable, successful*; **secundiōrēs rēs**, *more favorable circumstances, greater prosperity.*

secūris, **-is**, F. [secō, *cut*], *ax*; pl., *power, authority* (a bundle of rods containing an ax being an emblem of authority in Rome).

sed, conj., *but.*

sēdecim, indecl. adj. [sex+decem], *sixteen.*

sēdēs, **sēdis**, F. [sedeō, *sit*], *seat, abode; home, settlement*, I. 31.

sēditiōsus, **-a**, **-um** [sēditiō] (full of discord), *mutinous, seditious, revolutionary.*

Sedulius, **-ī**, M., *Sedulius* (sedū'li-us), leader of the Lemovices.

Sedūnī, **-ōrum**, M. pl., *the Seduni* (sedū'nī), an Alpine tribe.

Sedusiī, **-ōrum**, M. pl., *the*

Sedusii (se-dū′shi-ī), a tribe of Germans allied with Ariovistus, I. 51.

Segusiāvī, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Segusiavi* (sē-gū-shi-ā′vī), a Gallic tribe west of the Allobroges, I. 10.

semel, adv., *once;* **ut semel**, *when once, as soon as.*

sēmentis, -is, F. [**sēmen**, *seed*], *sowing, planting.*

semper, adv., *always.*

Semprōnius, -ī, M., *Sempronius* (sem-prō′ni-us), name of a Roman gens; *Sempronius Rutilus*, one of Caesar's officers.

senātor, -ōris, M. [**senex**], *senator.*

senātus, -ūs, M. [**senex**], *senate, council of elders.*

senex, senis, M. (App. 10), *old man.*

sēnī, -ae, -a, dist. num. adj., *six at a time, six each.*

Senonēs, -um, M. pl., *the Senones* (sen′ọ̄-nēz), a Gallic tribe on the Seine, II. 2, etc.

sententia, -ae, F. [**sentiō**], (way of thinking), *opinion, decision, determination; meaning, effect*, I. 45.

sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsum, tr., *feel, think, perceive, see.*

sentis, -is, M., *brier, thorn.*

sēparātim, adv., *separately, privately.*

sēparātus, -a, -um [**sēparō**], *separate.*

septem, indecl. adj., *seven.*

septentriō, -ōnis, M., usually pl. (seven plough-oxen, the seven stars forming the "dipper," in the Great Bear), *the north;* **sub septentriōnibus** (under the north stars), *in the north;* **in septentriōnem et orientem sōlem**, *towards the northeast*, I. 1.

septimus, -a, -um [**septem**], *seventh.*

septingentī, -ae, -a, *seven hundred.*

septuāgintā, indecl. adj., *seventy.*

sepultūra, -ae, F. [**sepeliō**, *bury*], *burial.*

Sēquana, -ae, F., *the Seine* (sān), a river of Gaul, I. 1.

Sēquanī, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Sequani* (sek′wạ-nī), *Sequanians*, a tribe of eastern Gaul, west of the Helvetii, I. 1, 2, 3, etc.

Sēquanus, -a, -um, *of the Sequani, Sequanian;* masc. as noun, *a Sequanian.*

sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, dep., *follow, seek;* w. **poena**, I. 4, *be inflicted upon.*

Ser, see **Servius.**

sermō, -ōnis, M. [**serō**, *join*], *speech, conversation.*

serō, serere, sēvī, satum, tr., *sow, plant.*

Sertōrius, -ī, M., *Sertorius* (sẹ̀r-tō′ri-us), a Roman general, III. 23.

servīlis, -e [**servus**], *of a slave; of the slaves*, I. 40.

serviō, -īre, -iī, -ītum [**servus**], intr., *be a slave, serve, give heed to.*

servitūs, -tūtis, F. [servus], *slavery.*

Servius, -ī, M., *Servius*, a Roman personal name.

servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *guard, protect, watch;* w. **ōrdinēs**, etc., *keep, maintain.*

servus, -ī, M., *slave.*

sēsē, see **suī** (App. 21).

sēsquipedālis, -e [sēsqui-, *one-and-a-half*, **pedālis**], *a foot-and-a-half in thickness*, IV. 17.

sētius [or **sēcius**], adv., comp., *less;* **nihilō sētius**, *nevertheless, in addition*, IV. 17; strengthens **tamen** in V. 7.

seu, conj., see **sīve**.

sēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [sē, *away* **vocō**], tr., *call away, draw away, call aside.*

sex, indecl. adj., *six.*

sexāgintā, indecl. adj., *sixty.*

sexcentī, -ae, -a [sex + centum], *six hundred.*

Sextius, -ī, M., *Sextius* (seks′-ti-us), name of a Roman gens; *Titus Sextius*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

sī, conj., *if.*

Sibusātēs, -um, M. pl., *the Sibusates* (sib-ū-sā′tez), an Aquitanian tribe.

sīc, adv., *so, in such a manner, as follows*, II. 4.

siccitās, -tātis, F. [siccus], *dryness.*

sīcut, or **sīcutī**, conj. [sīc + ut], *just as; as it were.*

sīdus, **sīderis**, N., *heavenly body, constellation.*

sīgnifer, **sīgniferī**, M. [sīgnum + ferō], *standard-bearer.*

sīgnificātiō, -ōnis, F. [sīgnificō], *signal.*

sīgnificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [sīgnum + faciō], tr., *indicate.*

sīgnum, -ī, N. *standard, signal;* see **ferō**.

silentium, -ī, N. [silēns], *silence.*

Sīlius, -ī, M., *Titus Silius* (sil′i-us), a Roman officer.

silva, -ae, F., *forest, woods.*

silvestris, -e [silva], *overgrown with woods, wooded*, II. 18.

similis, -e, *similar, like.*

simul, adv., *at the same time, at once*, IV. 24; *as soon as*, IV. 26; **simul atque**, *as soon as*, IV. 27; **simul . . . simul**, *partly . . . partly.*

simulācrum, -ī, N. [simulō], *likeness, image.*

simulātiō, -ōnis, F. [simulō], *pretense, deceit;* w. **reī frūmentāriae**, *a pretended anxiety about* (for), I. 40.

simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [similis], tr. (make like), *feign, pretend.*

simultās, -tātis, F. [simul], *rivalry, jealousy.*

sīn, conj. [sī + ne], *but if.*

sine, prep. w. abl., *without.*

singillātim, adv. [singulī], *individually.*

singulāris, -e [singulī], *unique, unparalleled, matchless, extraordinary; one at a time*, IV. 26.

singulī, -ae, -a, dist. num. adj., *one at a time, one by*

one, one each, single, several, II. 17.

sinister, -tra, -trum, *left* (opposed to **dexter,** *right*); **sinistra** (sc. **manus**), *left hand.*

sinistrōrsus, adv. [**sinister**], *toward the left.*

situs, -ūs, M., *location, situation, site.*

sīve [or **seu**], conj., *or if;* **sīve . . . sīve,** *whether . . . or, either . . . or.*

socer, -erī, M., *father-in-law.*

socius, -ī, M., *partner, associate, ally.*

sōl, sōlis, M., *sun;* **oriēns sōl,** *the east.*

soldurius, -ī, M., *retainers, vassals.*

soleō, solēre, solitus sum, semi-dep., *be accustomed.*

sōlitūdō, -inis, F. [**sōlus**], *wilderness.*

sollicitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**sollicitus,** *agitated*], tr., *stir up, incite, tempt, induce, instigate.*

sōlum, adv. [**sōlus**], *only;* **nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam,** *not only . . . but also.*

solum, -ī, N., *soil, ground.*

sōlus, -a, -um (App. 12), *alone, only.*

solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtum, tr., *loosen; set sail,* IV. 28; **nāvēs solvere,** *set sail.*

soror, -ōris, F., *sister;* **soror ex mātre,** *half-sister.*

sors, sortis, F., *lot, casting lots.*

Sōtiātēs, -um, M. pl., *the Sotiates* (sō-shi-ā'tēz), a tribe in Aquitania.

spatium, -ī, N., *space, distance, period of time, time, period,* VI. 17.

speciēs, speciēī, F. [**speciō**], *appearance;* **ad speciem,** *for show.*

spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. and intr., *look, face, lie; look at, consider,* I. 45.

speculātor, -ōris, M. [**speculor**], *spy.*

speculātōrius, -a, -um [**speculātor**], *of spies;* **speculātōrium nāvigium,** *spy boat.*

speculor, -ārī, -ātus [**specula,** *watch-tower*], dep. *spy out, watch, explore.*

spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**spēs**], tr., *hope, expect.*

spēs, speī, F., *hope;* **summam** (**māgnam**) **in spem venīre,** *have highest* (*great*) *hope;* **in extrēmā spē** (lit. at the end of hope), *in utter despair,* II. 27, 33.

spīritus, -ūs, M. [**spīrō,** *breathe*] (breath), *spirit, disposition;* pl., *pride, arrogance.*

spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *deprive.*

sponte, F. (abl. of obsolete **spōns**), *of one's own accord.*

stabilitās, -tātis, F. [**stabilis**], *steadiness, stability.*

statim, adv. [**stō**], *on the spot, at once, immediately.*

statiō, -ōnis, F. [**stō**], (standing), *outpost, picket,* II. 18; *guard;* **in statiōne,** *on guard,* IV. 32.

statuō, statuere, statuī, statū-

tum, tr., *set, place, establish; determine, decide.*

statūra, -ae, F. [stō], *stature, height.*

status, -ūs, M. [stō], *state, condition, status.*

stimulus, -ī, M. *goad; pointed stake.*

stīpendiārius, -a, -um [stīpendium], (tax-paying), *tributary, under tribute;* masc. pl. as noun, *tributaries, subjects.*

stīpendium, -ī, N. [stips, *gift in money* + pendō], *tribute.*

stō, stāre, stetī, statum, intr., *stand; abide by,* VI. 13.

strepitus, -ūs, M. [strepō], *noise, uproar.*

studeō, -ēre, -uī, ——, intr., *strive, be eager* (for); *pay attention* (to); *devote oneself* (to).

studiōsē, adv. [studiōsus], *eagerly.*

studium, -ī, N. [studeō], *eagerness, desire, attachment; devotion, good will, enthusiasm,* IV. 24; *pursuit,* VI. 21.

stultitia, -ae, F. [stultus], *folly.*

sub, prep. w. acc. (of motion), *under, beneath, near to, up to;* w. **occāsum sōlis**, *towards;* w. abl. (of rest), *under;* w. **monte**, *at the foot of;* as prefix, *under, from under, up.*

subdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum [sub + dūcō], tr. (lead under), *withdraw; draw up, beach* (of ships).

subeō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itum [sub + eō], tr., *go under, undergo, suffer; advance, advance to,* II. 27; **subeuntēs**, II. 25, *coming up, advancing.*

subfodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossum [sub + fodiō, *dig*], tr., *stab underneath.*

subiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum [sub + iaciō], tr., *throw under; thrust* (from below), I. 26; *place* (below), IV. 17; *expose, put under,* VII. 77.

subigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum [sub + agō], tr., *force, reduce.*

subitō, adv. [subitus], *suddenly.*

subitus, -a, -um, *sudden.*

sublātus, see tollō.

sublevō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [sub + levō], tr., *lift up, raise up; assist, relieve, support.*

sublica, -ae, F., *pile.*

subministrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [sub + ministrō], tr., *furnish, supply.*

submittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum [sub + mittō], tr., *send under, send.*

submoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum [sub + moveō], tr., *dislodge, repulse.*

subruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutum [sub + ruō], tr., *undermine, loosen.*

subsequor, -sequī, -secūtus [sub + sequor], dep., *follow closely, follow up, follow.*

subsidium, -ī, N. [sub + sedeō], *assistance, aid, relief, reinforcement;* pl., *reserves,* II. 22.

subsistō, -sistere, -stitī, —— [sub + sistō], intr., *stand still, halt, withstand, resist.*

subsum, **-esse**, **-fuī** [sub + sum], intr., *be near at hand.*

subtrahō, **-trahere**, **-trāxī**, **-trāctum** [sub + trahō], tr., *take away, carry off.*

subvehō, **-vehere**, **-vexī**, **-vectum** [sub + vehō], tr., *bring up, convey.*

subveniō, **-venīre**, **-vēnī**, **-ventum** [sub + veniō], intr. (come to aid), *relieve, assist.*

succēdō, **-cēdere**, **-cessī**, **-cessum** [sub + cēdō], tr. and intr. (go from under), *come up, advance, approach,* II. 6; *take the place of, relieve,* III. 4; *border,* IV. 3; *succeed,* VI. 13.

succendō, **-cendere**, **-cendī**, **-cēnsum**, tr., *set on fire.*

succīdō, **-cīdere**, **-cīdī**, **-cīsum** [sub + caedō], tr., *cut down.*

succumbō, **-cumbere**, **-cubuī**, **-cubitum** [sub + cumbō], intr., *yield to, succumb to.*

succurrō, **-currere**, **-currī**, **-cursum** [sub + currō], intr., *run to aid, hasten to aid.*

sudis, **-is**, F., *stake.*

Suēbī, **-ōrum**, M. pl., *the Suebi* (swē′bī), *Swabians,* the largest tribe of Germans, I. 37, 51, 54; IV. 1, 3, 7, etc.

Suēbus, **-a**, **-um**, *Suebian* (swē′bi-an), *Swabian,* I. 53.

Suessiōnēs, **-um**, M. pl., *the Suessiones* (swes-i-ō′nēz), a tribe of Belgae on the Marne, II. 3, etc.; cf. modern Soissons.

suī, **sibi**, **sē**, reflex. pron. (App. 21), *himself, herself, itself, themselves;* **inter sē**, *from one another, to one another, to each other.*

suffrāgium, **-ī**, N., *vote.*

Sugambrī, **-ōrum**, M. pl., *the Sugambri* (sụ̄-gam′brī), a German tribe.

Sulla, **-ae**, M., *Sulla* (sul′ạ), a Roman family name; *L. Cornelius Sulla,* the famous general and dictator (died 78 B.C.), I. 21.

Sulpicius, **-ī**, M., *Sulpicius* (sul-pish′i-us); *P. Sulpicius Rufus,* one of Caesar's lieutenants.

sum, **esse**, **fuī**, **futūrus**, irr., *be.*

summa, **-ae**, F. [summus], *top; sum, total;* w. **bellī**, *management,* I. 41, II. 4; **summa imperī**, *chief command,* II. 23.

summus, **-a**, **-um**, sup. of superus (App. 18), *highest, chief, greatest, supreme; of highest interest,* I. 34, *most important,* IV. 5; w. **mōns**, **collis**, etc., *the highest part of, the top of;* as noun, **ab summō**, *from the top,* II. 18.

sūmō, **sūmere**, **sūmpsī**, **sūmptum** [sub + emō], tr., *take, undertake;* **sūmere supplicium dē**, *inflict punishment on;* **sūmere sibi**, *assume,* II. 4.

sūmptuōsus, **-a**, **-um** [sumptus], *costly, expensive.*

sūmptus, **-ūs**, M. [sūmō], *expense, cost.*

superbē, adv. [superbus], *proudly, haughtily.*

superior, **-ius**, comp. adj. [su-

perus, App. 18], *higher, upper,* IV. 28; *superior, more successful;* w. diēs, tempus, *former.*

superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [superus], tr. (be superior to), *surpass, conquer, overcome; overtop,* III. 14; *survive,* VI. 19.

supersedeō, -sedēre, -sēdī, -sessum [super + sedeō], intr., *refrain from.*

supersum, -esse, -fuī [super + sum], intr., *be over, remain, survive.*

superus, -a, -um (App. 18), *upper, higher.*

suppetō, -petere, -petīvī, -petītum [sub + petō], intr., *be at hand, be in store; hold out.*

supplex, supplicis, adj., *entreating, submissive;* as noun, *suppliant,* II. 28.

supplicātiō, -ōnis, F. [supplicō, *supplicate*] (religious festival), *public thanksgiving.*

suppliciter, adv. [supplex], *humbly, suppliantly.*

supplicium, -ī, N. [supplex], *punishment, penalty.*

supportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [sub + portō], tr., *bring up, convey, supply.*

suprā, adv., *above, before,* II. 1, 18; prep. w. acc., *above.*

suscipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum [sub + capiō], tr., *undertake, assume;* suscipere sibi, *accept.*

suspīciō, -ōnis, F. [sub + speciō, *spy*], *suspicion.*

suspicor, -ārī, -ātus [suspīciō], dep., *mistrust, suspect.*

sustentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [sustineō], tr. and intr., *hold out, endure, make a defense.*

sustineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum [sub + teneō], tr. and intr., *hold up, sustain, control, withstand, endure; hold out;* sē sustinēre, II. 25, *stand.*

sustulī, see tollō.

suus, -a, -um, poss. pron., *his* (own), *her, its, their;* w. clēmentia, *usual;* w. locus, *favorable;* pl. as noun, suī, *their friends;* sua, *their property.*

T

T., see Titus.

tabernāculum, -ī, N. [taberna, *hut*], *tent.*

tabula, -ae, F., *tablet, record, list.*

taceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, intr. and tr., *be silent; pass over in silence, keep quiet.*

tacitus, -a, -um, *silent, speechless.*

tālea, -ae, F., *rod, bar.*

tam, adv., *so, so much.*

tamen, conj., *nevertheless, yet, however.*

tametsī, conj. [tamen + etsī], *although.*

tandem, adv. [tam], *at length;* in questions, *pray.*

tantopere, adv. [tantō + opere], *so earnestly.*

tantulus, -a, -um [tantus], *so small, so little, so trivial,* IV. 22.

tantummodo, adv., *only.*

tantus, -a, -um, *so great, so*

much, such; **tantum**, as adv., *so much, only;* **tantum posse**, *have so much strength* or *weight.*

Tarbellī, **-ōrum**, M. pl., *the Tarbelli* (tär-bel'ī), a tribe in Aquitania.

tardē, adv. [**tardus**], *slowly.*

tardō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [**tardus**] (make slow), tr., *check.*

tardus, **-a**, **-um**, *slow, slack,* II. 25.

Tarusātēs, **-ium**, M. pl., *the Tarusates* (tär-ū-sā'tēz), a tribe of Aquitania.

taurus, **-ī**, M., *bull.*

Tectosagēs, **-um**, M. pl., *the Tectosages* (tek-tos'a-jēz), a division of the Volcae.

tēctum, **-ī**, N. [**tegō**], *roof, shelter.*

tegimentum, **-ī**, N. [**tegō**], *covering.*

tegō, **tegere**, **tēxī**, **tēctum**, tr., *cover.*

tēlum, **-ī**, N., *missile, weapon, javelin, spear.*

temerārius, **-a**, **-um** [**temerē**], *rash, heedless, reckless.*

temerē, adv., *rashly, recklessly; easily,* IV. 20.

temeritās, **-tātis**, F. [**temerē**], *rashness, recklessness.*

tēmō, **-ōnis**, M., *pole* (of a wagon).

temperantia, **-ae**, F. [**temperō**], *self-control, moderation, discretion.*

temperātus, **-a**, **-um** [**temperō**], *temperate, mild.*

temperō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [**tempus**], tr. and intr. (observe proper measure), *control* (oneself), *refrain.*

tempestās, **-tātis**, F., *season, weather, storm.*

temptō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, tr., *try, attempt; tempt,* III. 6.

tempus, **-oris**, N., *time, season;* **reliquum tempus**, *the future;* **omnī tempore**, *always.*

Tencterī, **-ōrum**, M. pl., *the Tencteri* (tengk'tē-rī), a German tribe that crossed the Rhine with the Usipetes.

tendō, **tendere**, **tetendī**, **tēnsum**, tr., *stretch.*

tenebrae, **-ārum**, F. pl., *darkness.*

teneō, **tenēre**, **tenuī**, **tentum**, tr., *hold, keep, bind,* I. 31, l. 616; *restrain,* I. 39; **memoriā tenēre**, *remember;* **sēsē tenēre**, I. 49, *remain.*

tener, **-era**, **-erum**, *tender, young.*

tenuiter, adv. [**tenuis**, *thin*], *thinly.*

ter, dist. num. adv., *three times.*

tergum, **-ī**, N., *back;* **terga vertere**, *turn and flee;* **post tergum**, **ā tergō**, *in the rear.*

ternī, **-ae**, **-a**, dist. num. adj., *three each, three at a time.*

terra, **-ae**, F., *land, country, ground,* I. 32, pl., *the world.*

Terrasidius, **-ī**, M., *Titus Terrasidius* (ter-a-sid'i-us), one of Caesar's tribunes.

terrēnus, **-a**, **-um** [**terra**], *of earth.*

terreō, **-ēre**, **-uī**, **-itum**, tr., *frighten, dismay, terrify.*

territō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [terreō], tr., *frighten, alarm*, V. 6.

terror, -ōris, M. [terreō], *fright, terror.*

tertius, -a, -um [trēs], *third.*

testāmentum, -ī, N. [testor], *will.*

testimōnium, -ī, N. [testis], *proof, evidence.*

testis, -is, M. or F., *witness.*

testūdō, -inis, F. (tortoise), *testudo, a close column of soldiers, with shields overlapping above their heads.*

Teutonī, -ōrum [-ēs, -um], M. pl., *the Teutoni* (tū'tǫ-nī), *Teutons*, a tribe of Germans, allies of the Cimbri; defeated by Marius, 102 B.C., I. 33, etc.

tīgnum, -ī, N., *log, pile, beam.*

Tigurīnī, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Tigurini* (tig-ū-rī'nī), a canton of the Helvetii, I. 12.

Tigurīnus, -a, -um, *of the Tigurini.*

timeō, -ēre, -uī, ——, tr. and intr., *be afraid, fear.*

timidus, -a, -um [timeō], *timid, cowardly.*

timor, -ōris, M. [timeō], *fear, dread.*

Titūrius, -ī, M., *Quintus Titurius* (tī-tū'ri-us) *Sabinus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants, II. 5. 9; III. 11, etc.

Titus, -ī, M., *Titus* (tī'tus), a Roman personal name.

tolerō, -āre, -āvī, -atum, tr., *endure, support, sustain.*

tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātum, tr., *lift up, take away, carry, destroy, break off*, I. 42; *remove*, I. 5, VI. 23; **sublātus** ("lifted up"), *elated*, I. 15; *raised*, III. 22; *weighed*, IV. 23.

Tolōsa, -ae, F., *Tolosa* (tō-lō'sạ), modern *Toulouse* (tö löz').

Tolōsātēs, -ium, M. pl., *the Tolosates* (tol-ǫ-sā'tēz), inhabitants of Tolosa, I. 10.

tormentum, -ī, N. [torqueō, *twist*], *engine* (for hurling missiles by twisted ropes); *torture, means of torture*, VI. 19.

tot, indecl. adj., *so many.*

totidem, indecl. adj. [tot + dem], *just as many, the same number.*

tōtus, -a, -um (App. 12), *the whole of, all, entire.*

trabs, trabis, F., *beam.*

trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditum [trāns + dō], tr., *hand over, give up, surrender; hand down*, IV. 7; *transmit, impart, teach*, VI. 17.

trādūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum [trāns + dūcō], tr., *lead across, bring over.*

trāgula, -ae, F., *dart*, heavy and thrown by a strap.

trahō, trahere, trāxī, trāctum, tr., *draw; hurry along*, I. 53.

trāiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum [trāns + iaciō], tr. (throw across), *pierce.*

trāiectus, -ūs, M. [trāiciō], *passage.*

trānō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [trāns + nō], tr. and intr., *swim across.*

tranquillitās, **-tātis**, F. [tranquillus], *stillness, calm.*

trāns, prep. w. acc., *across;* as prefix, *across.*

trānscendō, **-scendere**, **-scendī**, **-scēnsum** [trāns + scandō, *climb*], intr., *climb across;* **trānscendere in nāvēs**, *board the ships.*

trānseō, **-īre**, **-īvī** (**-iī**), **-itum** [trāns + eō], tr. and intr., *go across, cross, go over, pass over; move,* VI. 22; (of time) *pass by, elapse.*

trānsferō, **-ferre**, **-tulī**, **-lātum** [trāns + ferō], tr., *carry over, transfer.*

trānsfīgō, **-fīgere**, **-fīxī**, **-fīxum** [trāns + fīgō, *fix*], tr., *pierce through.*

trānsfodiō, **-fodere**, **-fōdī**, **-fossum** [trāns + fodiō], tr., *dig through, wound.*

trānsgredior, **-gredī**, **-gressus sum** [trāns + gradior], dep., *go across, cross.*

trānsmarīnus, **-a**, **-um** [trāns, mare], *beyond the sea.*

trānsmissus, **-ūs**, M., *passage, crossing.*

trānsportō, **-are**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [trāns + portō], tr., *carry across, bring across, bring over.*

Trānsrhēnānus, **-a**, **-um** [trāns, Rhēnus], *living across the Rhine;* as noun, **Trānsrhēnānī**, *those living across the Rhine,* IV. 16.

trānstrum, **-ī**, N., *cross-beam.*

trānsversus, **-a**, **-um** [trānsvertō (turned across), *at right angles,* II. 8.

Trebius, **-ī**, M., *Marcus Trebius* (trē′bi-us) *Gallus,* an officer in Caesar's army.

Trebōnius, **-ī**, M., *Trebonius* (tre-bō′ni-us), name of a Roman tribe; *Gaius,* one of Caesar's lieutenants.

trecentī, **-ae**, **-a**, *three hundred.*

trēs, **tria** (App. 16), *three.*

Trēverī, **-ōrum**, M. pl., *the Treveri* (trev′e-rī), a Gallic tribe on the Moselle; their chief town now Treves, I. 37, II. 24, III. 11, IV. 10, etc.

Tribocī, **-ōrum**, M. pl., *the Triboci* (trib′o̤-sī), a German tribe allied with Ariovistus, I. 51.

tribūnus, **-ī**, M. [tribus, *tribe*], *tribune;* see Introd. 36.

tribuō, **tribuere**, **tribuī**, **tribūtum**, tr., *bestow, attribute.*

tribūtum, **-ī**, N. [tribuō], *tribute.*

trīduum, **-ī**, N. [trēs + diēs], *three days.*

triennium, **-ī**, N. [trēs + annus], *a period of three years.*

trīgintā, indecl. adj., *thirty.*

trīnī, **-ae**, **-a**, *threefold, triple;* **trīnae catēnae**, *three sets of chains.*

triplex, **triplicis**, adj., *threefold, triple;* for **triplex aciēs** see Introd. 47.

triquetrus, **-a**, **-um**, *triangular.*

trīstis, **-e**, *sad, in sadness, sorrowful.*

trīstitia, **-ae**, F. [trīstis], *sadness, sorrowful state.*

Troucillus, -ī, M., (*Gaius Valerius*) *Troucillus* (trū-sil'-us), a leader of the province of Gaul, friendly to Caesar, I. 19.

truncus, -ī, M., *trunk* (of a tree).

tuba, -ae, F., *trumpet.*

tueor, tuērī, tūtus (**tuitus**) **sum**, dep., *watch, protect, defend.*

Tulingī, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Tulingi* (tū-lin'jī), neighbors and allies of the Helvetii, I. 5, 25, 28, 29.

Tullius, -ī, M., *Tullius*, name of a Roman gens; see **Cicerō**.

tum, adv., *then, at that time.*

tumultus, -ūs, M. [**tumeō**, *swell*], *commotion, disorder, panic; insurrection*, I. 40.

tumulus, -ī, M. [**tumeō**, *swell*], *mound, hill.*

turma, -ae, F., *troop* (of cavalry), *squadron.*

Turonī, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Turoni* (tū'rō-nī), a tribe on the Loire.

turpis, -e, *disgraceful.*

turpiter, adv. [**turpis**], *disgracefully.*

turpitūdō, -inis, F. [**turpis**], *disgrace.*

turris, turris, F., *tower.*

tūtō, adv. [comp., **tūtius**], *safely.*

tūtus, -a, -um, *safe.*

tuus, -a, -um, *your.*

U

ubi, conj., *when, where;* **ubi prīmum**, *as soon as.*

Ubiī, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Ubii* (ū'bi-ī), a German tribe on the Rhine, near modern Cologne, I. 54, IV. 3, 8, 11, 16, 19.

ubīque, adv., *everywhere, anywhere.*

ulcīscor, ulcīscī, ultus sum, dep., *punish, take revenge for, avenge.*

ūllus, -a, -um (App. 12), *any.*

ulterior, -ius, comp. adj. [**ultrā**, App. 18], *farther, beyond, more remote;* see **Gallia**.

ultimus, -a, -um, sup. adj. [**ultrā**, App. 18], *farthest, most remote.*

ultrā, adv. and prep. w. acc. (App. 18), *beyond.*

ultrō, adv. (beyond), *of one's own accord, voluntarily;* **ultrō citrōque**, *back and forth, to and fro.*

ultus, see **ulcīscor**.

ululātus, -ūs, M. [**ululō**, *howl*], *howling, shrieking.*

umquam, adv., *ever, at any time.*

ūnā, adv. [**ūnus**], *altogether, along* (with); *at the same time, in the same place.*

unde, adv. (rel. or interrog.), *from which place, whence, from which.*

ūndecimus, -a, -um, *eleventh.*

ūndēvīgintī, indecl. adj. [**ūnus** + **dē** + **vīgintī**], *nineteen.*

undique, adv. [**unde** + **que**], *from all sides, on all sides, everywhere.*

ūniversus, -a, -um [**ūnus** + **versus**], *all together, whole, entire.*

ūnus, -a, -um (App. 12), *one, alone, only one*, I. 31, l. 611.

urbs, urbis, F., *city, the city* (*i.e.* Rome).

urgeō, urgēre, ursī, ——, tr., *press, press hard, beset.*

ūrus, -ī, M., *wild ox, urochs.*

Usipetēs, -um, M. pl., *the Usipetes* (ū-sip'e-tēz), a German tribe that crossed the Rhine in 55 B.C.

ūsque, adv., *continuously, without interruption, even; even to, as far as.*

ūsus, -ūs, M. [**ūtor**], *use, practice, experience, skill, enjoyment, advantage;* **ex ūsū** ("of use"), *to the advantage, advantageous*, I. 30, 50; **ūsus est**, *there is need*, IV. 2.

ut, or **utī**, conj. w. subjunct., *that, in order that, so that, how, although*, III. l. 156; after a verb of fearing, *that not;* w. indic., *as, when;* in comparisons, *just as, as if*, I. 38.

uter, -tra, -trum (App. 12), *which* (of two).

uterque, utraque, utrumque [gen., **utrīusque**; dat., **utrīque**], adj. and pron., *both, each* (of two), *either;* **ex utrāque parte**, *on both sides.*

utī, older form of ut.

ūtilis, -e [**ūtor**], *useful.*

ūtilitās, -tātis, F. [**ūtilis**], *advantage, usefulness.*

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, dep., *use, adopt, enjoy;* w. **condiciō**, *accept.*

utrimque, adv. [**uterque**], *on both sides.*

utrum, conj. [**uter**], *whether.*

uxor, -ōris, F., *wife.*

V

V, symbol for **quīnque.**

Vacalus, -ī, M., *the Waal*, a branch of the Rhine.

vacātiō, -ōnis, F. [**vacō**], *exemption.*

vacō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr., *be vacant, be unoccupied.*

vacuus, -a, -um, *empty, vacant, unoccupied;* **vacuus ab**, *without*, II. 12.

vadum, -ī, N., *ford, shoal, shallows*, III. 12.

vāgīna, -ae, F., *sheath, scabbard.*

vagor, -ārī, -ātus sum, intr., *wander about, roam.*

valeō, -ere, -uī, -itum, intr., *be strong, have power, have influence;* **plūrimum valēre**, *be of great weight, have great* (or *greatest*) *influence, have great strength.*

Valerius, -ī, M., *Valerius* (va-lē'ri-us), name of a Roman gens. 1. *C. Valerius Troucillus*, I. 19, see **Troucillus.** 2. *C. V. Caburus*, I. 47, see **Cabūrus.** 3. *C. V. Procillus*, I. 47, son of 2. 4. *C. V. Flaccus*, I. 47, see **Flaccus.** 5. *L. V. Praeconinus*, III. 20, see **Praecōnīnus.**

valētūdō, -inis, F. [**valeō**], *health; state of health.*

vallēs, -is, F., *valley.*

vāllum, -ī, N., *palisade, rampart, wall;* **prō vāllō**, *as a barricade.*

Vangionēs, -um, M. pl., *the Vangiones* (van-jī′ō-nēz), a tribe of Germans, allied with Ariovistus, I. 51.

varietās, -tātis, F. [**varius**], *variety, varied color.*

varius, -a, -um, *varying, various, different.*

vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**vāstus**], tr. (make empty), *lay waste, ravage.*

vāstus, -a, -um, *vast, boundless.*

vāticinātiō, -ōnis, F. [**vātēs**, *prophet*], *prophecy, divination.*

ve, enclitic conj. = **vel.**

vectīgal, -ālis, N., *revenue, tax.*

vectīgālis, -e, *tributary.*

vehementer, adv. [**vehemēns**], *severely, strongly, exceedingly, greatly, desperately.*

vel, conj., *or;* **vel . . . vel**, *either . . . or.*

Velānius, -ī, M., *Quintus Velanius* (ve-lā′ni-us), one of Caesar's tribunes.

Veliocassēs, -um, M. pl., *the Veliocasses* (vel-i-ō-kas′ēz), a Belgian tribe, II. 4.

vēlōcitās, -tātis, F. [**vēlōx**], *swiftness, speed.*

vēlōx, vēlōcis, adj., *swift.*

vēlum, -ī, N., *sail.*

velut, adv. [**vel** + **ut**], *just as.*

vēnātiō, -ōnis, F. [**vēnor**, *hunt*], *hunting.*

vēnātor, -ōris, M. [**vēnor**], *hunter.*

vēndō, vēndere, vēndidī, vēnditum [**vēnum**, *sale*, + **dō**], *sell.*

Venellī, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Venelli* (ve-nel′ī), a coast tribe of northwestern Gaul, II. 34, III. 17–19.

Venetī, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Veneti* (ven′e-tī), an important tribe on the western coast of Gaul, II. 34, III. 7–16.

Venetia, -ae, F., *Venetia* (ve-nē′shi-a), country of the Veneti, III. 9.

Veneticus, -a, -um, *of* (or *with*) *the Veneti.*

veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, intr., *come, go;* **ventum est**, impers. pass. (it was come), *they came.*

ventitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [freq. of **veniō**], *come often.*

ventus, -ī, M., *wind.*

Veragrī, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Veragri* (ver′a-grī), an Alpine tribe.

Verbigenus, -ī, M., *Verbigenus* (vėr-bij′e-nus), one of the four cantons of the Helvetii, I. 27.

verbum, -ī, N., *word;* **verba facere**, *speak, plead.*

Vercassivellaunus, -ī, M., *Vercassivellaunus* (ver-kas-i-ve-lâ′nus), a leader of the Arverni.

Vercingetorīx, -īgis, M., *Vercingetorix* (vėr-sin-jet′ō-riks), a chief of the Arverni, leader of the combined Gauls in 52 B.C.; surrendered to

Caesar after the siege of Alesia; a few years later put to death by Caesar's order.

vereor, verērī, veritus sum, dep., *fear, dread.*

vergō, vergere, ——, ——, intr., *incline, slope, lie.*

vergobretus, -ī, M., *vergobret,* title of the chief magistrate of the Haedui.

vērīsimilis, -e [vērus + similis], (like the truth), *probable, likely.*

vērō, adv. [vērus] (in truth), *in fact, in deed; but, however, on the other hand* (App. 171, *e*).

versō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [freq. of vertō], intr. (turn often), *treat, deal with;* pass. as dep., *be, dwell, remain, be engaged, occupied, involved, busy; associate, unite,* I. 48.

1. **versus,** prep. w. acc. [vertō], *toward.*

2. **versus, -ūs,** M. [vertō] (turning), *line, verse.*

vertō, vertere, vertī, versum, tr., *turn.*

Verucloetius, -ī, M., *Verucloetius* (vĕr-ū-klē′shi-us), an envoy of the Helvetians, I. 7.

vērus, -a, -um, *true.*

verūtum, -ī, N. [verū], *dart.*

Vesontiō, -ōnis, M., *Vesontio* (ve-son′shi-ō), largest town of the Sequani, modern *Besançon,* I. 38.

vesper, vesperī, M., *evening;* **sub vesperum,** *toward evening.*

vēstīgium, -ī, N., *footstep, footprint, track, spot;* **in vēstīgiō,** *on the spot, immediately.*

vestiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum [vestis], tr., *clothe, cover.*

vestītus, -ūs, M. [vestiō], *clothing.*

veterānus, -a, -um [vetus], *old veteran.*

vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitum, tr., *forbid.*

vetus, veteris, adj. (App. 16), *old, former.*

vēxillum, -ī, N., *flag, banner.*

vexō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *harass, overrun, ravage.*

via, -ae, F., *way, road.*

viātor, -ōris, M. [via], *traveler.*

vīcēnī, -ae, -a, dist. num. adj., *twenty each, twenty at a time.*

vīciēs, num. adv., *twenty times.*

vicis, -is, F. (nom. and dat. not used), *change;* **in vicem,** *in turn.*

victima, -ae, F., *victim, animal for sacrifice.*

victor, -ōris, M. [vincō], *victor;* adj., *victorious, conquering,* I. 31.

victōria, -ae, F. [victor], *victory.*

victus, part. of **vincō.**

victus, -ūs, M. [vīvō], *living, mode of life; food.*

vīcus, -ī, M., *village.*

videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum, tr., *see;* pass., *be seen, seem, seem good, seem best.*

vigilia, -ae, F. [vigil, *awake*], *watch,* fourth part of the night (counting from sunset to sunrise); **dē tertiā vigiliā,**

in the third watch, after midnight.

vīgintī, indecl. adj., *twenty.*

vīmen, vīminis, N., *twig, osier.*

vinciō, vincīre, vīnxī, vīnctum, tr., *bind.*

vincō, vincere, vīcī, victum, tr., *conquer.*

vinculum, -ī, N. [vinciō], *bond, fetter, chain;* **ex vinculīs**, *in chains;* **in vincula**, *into prison.*

vindicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. (claim one's rights against), *punish.*

vīnea, -ae, F. [vīnum] (arbor for vines); *shed*, to protect a besieging body of soldiers; see **agō** and Introd. 53.

vīnum, -ī, N., *wine.*

violō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *harm.*

vir, virī, M., *man.*

virgultum, -ī, N., *brushwood.*

Viridovīx, -īcis, M., *Viridovix* (vi-rid'ō-viks), leader of the Venelli, III. 17.

Viromanduī, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Viromandui* (vir-ō-man'-dū-ī), a Belgian tribe, II. 4, etc.

virtūs, -tūtis, F. [vir] (manliness), *bravery, valor; virtue, character, ability*, IV. 21.

vīs, vīs, F. (App. 10), *force, strength, violence;* pl., **vīrēs**, *strength;* **vim facere**, *use violence.*

vīta, -ae, F., *life.*

vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *avoid, shun, escape.*

vitrum, -ī, N., *woad*, a plant used by the Britons for making a blue dye.

vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, vīctum, intr., *live.*

vīvus, -a, -um [vīvō], *living, alive.*

vix, adv., *with difficulty, scarcely.*

Vocātēs, -ium, M. pl., *the Vocates* (vō-kā'tēz), an Aquitanian tribe.

Vocciō, -ōnis, M., *Voccio* (vok'-shi-ō), king of the Norici, I. 53.

vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *call, summon.*

Vocontiī, -ōrum, M. pl., the *Vocontii* (vō-kon'shi-ī), a Gallic tribe, south of the Allobroges, I. 10.

Volcae, -ārum, M. pl., *the Volcae* (vol'sē), a tribe of the Province.

volō, velle, voluī (App. 46), tr. and intr., *wish, be willing.*

voluntās, -tātis, F. [volō], *willingness, consent, will, goodwill, wish, desire.*

voluptās, -tātis, F. [volō], *pleasure, delight.*

Volusēnus, -ī, M., *Volusenus* (vol-ū-sē'nus), name of Roman family; *Volusenus Quadratus*, a military tribune.

Vorēnus, -ī, M., *Vorenus* (vō-rē'nus), a centurion.

Vosegus, -ī, M., *the Vosges* (vōzh) *Mts.*

voveō, vovēre, vōvī, vōtum, tr., *vow.*

vōx, vōcis, F., *voice, word,*

utterance; **vōcibus**, I. 39, *talk;* **vōce māgnā**, *with a loud voice.*

Vulcānus, -ī, M., *Vulcan*, god of fire.

vulgō, adv. [**vulgus**] (among the multitude), *generally, commonly, everywhere.*

vulgus, -ī, N. (acc., **vulgus**), *the people, common people, mass;* see **efferō**.

vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**vulnus**], tr., *wound.*

vulnus, -eris, N., *wound.*

vultus, -ūs, M. [**volō**], *look, expression of countenance;* **vultum fingere**, *put on a brave face.*

INDEX

To the Grammatical Appendix and the Latin Prose Composition

(*The numbers refer to pages.*)

A

ā, ab, denoting separation, 249; place from which, 249; source, 250; agency, 250.
Ablative case, uses of, 249–253.
absolute, 252, 290.
of accompaniment, 251.
of accordance, 251.
of agent, 250.
of attendant circumstances, 251.
of cause, 251.
of comparison, 250.
of degree of difference, 251.
of description, 252, 297.
of manner, 251.
of means, 250.
of place from which, 249; in which, 253.
of price, 252, 311.
of separation, 249.
of source, 250.
of specification, 252, 297.
of time when or within which, 253.
with **opus, ūsus**, 251, 309.
with **ūtor**, etc., 250.
Accusative case, uses of, 247–249.
adverbial, 249.
as direct object, 247.
as predicate accusative, 248.
as secondary object, 248.
as subject of infinitive, 248.
cognate, 249, 314.
Accusative case, of duration of time, 249.
of extent of space, 249.
of place to which, 248.
with *ask, demand, teach*, 247, 312.
with compound verbs, 247, 312.
with prepositions, 248, 274.
with **propior, proximus**, 248.
Adjective clauses, 255.
Adjectives, agreement of, 253, 281.
attributive, 254.
compared, 221.
numeral, 222.
of 1st and 2d declension, 218.
of 3d declension, 219.
predicate, 254.
uses of, 254.
Adverbial clauses, 274.
Adverbs, comparison, 222; formation, 222; uses, 274.
Agreement, of nouns, 243; of adjectives, 253; of pronouns, 255; of verbs, 258.
alius, alter, 219, 257.
amplius, in comparisons, 250.
Antecedent, of relative pronoun, 256, 257.
antequam, with temporal clauses, 264.
Apposition, 242.
Attraction, subjunctive by, 266.

B

Base, of noun, 215.

C

Calendar, Roman, 276.
Cardinals, 222.
causā, with genitive, 275, 289.
Causal clauses, 264.
Characteristic, clauses of, 262, 330, 333.
Clauses, defined, 243.
Cognate accusative, 249.
Command, 268.
Comparison of adjectives, 221.
of adverbs, 222.
Complex sentence, 243.
Compound sentence, 242.
Concessive clauses, 265, 353.
Conditional sentences, 265, 348; in indirect discourse, 271, 350.
Conjugations, 226–240.
Conjunctions classified, 274.
Connectives, 243.
cum (conj.), causal, 264; concessive, 265; temporal, 263, 340.
cum (prep.), denoting accompaniment, 251; manner, 251; sometimes omitted, 251.
cum prīmum, with indicative, 263.

D

Dative, case, uses of, 246, 247.
of agent, 247.
of indirect object, 246.
of possessor, 247, 305.
of purpose or tendency, 246, 307.
of reference, 246.
of separation, 246.
with adjectives, 247.
with compound verbs, 246.
with verbs of special meaning, 246.
dē, denoting place from which, separation, 249.
Declension, 215–225.
Defective verbs, 240.
Demonstrative pronouns, 224, 256.
Deponent verbs, 234.
Direct object, 247.
Direct reflexive, 255.
domī, 253; **domō**, 250; **domum**, 249.
dum, uses of, 264, 342.

E

ē, ex, denoting place from which, separation, 249.
Emphasis, 275.
enim, position, 276.
eō, conjugated, 237.
etsī, with concessive clauses, 265.

F

Fearing, verbs of, with **ut, nē**, 267, 329.
ferō, conjugated, 238.
Fifth declension, 218.
Figures of speech, 277.
fīō, conjugated, 237.
First conjugation, 226; declension, 215.
Fourth conjugation, 232; declension, 217.

G

Genitive case, uses of, 244.
objective, 244, 299.
of description, 244, 297.
of indefinite value, 245, 311.
of the whole, 244.
possessive, 244, 305.
subjective, 244, 299.
with adjectives, 245.
with **potior**, 245.

Genitive case, with verbs of interest, feeling, memory, 245, 300.
Gerund, gerundive, uses of, 272, 316.

H

Hendiadys, 277.
Historical infinitive, 269.
Historical tenses, 259

I

Imperative, uses of, 268.
Imperfect tense, 259, 260.
imperō, with subjunctive, 267, 326.
Impersonal verbs, 240, 258.
Indefinite pronouns, 225, 257.
Indicative noun clauses, 267.
Indicative, uses of, 261.
Indirect discourse, 269, 292, 346.
Indirect questions, 266, 302.
Indirect reflexive, 255.
Infinitive noun clauses, 268.
Infinitive, uses of, 268.
Intensive pronoun, 225, 256.
Interrogative pronouns, 225.
Irregular verbs, 235–239.
iubeō, with infinitive, 248, 326.

L

licet, conjugated, 240.
Locative case, 253.
longius, in comparisons, 250.

M

mālō, conjugated, 239.
meminī, conjugated, 240.
Modifiers, of subject, 242; of predicate, 242.
Moods, syntax of, 260–271; in indirect discourse, 269.

N

nē, with purpose clauses, 263; with noun clauses, 267, 337.
Negative adverbs, 274.
Negative command, 268, 322.
nōlō, conjugated, 239.
Nominative case, uses of, 243.
Noun clauses, 266, 323, 328, 335
Nouns, declension of, 215–218.
Numerals, 222.

O

Object, defined, 241.
ōdī, conjugated, 240.
opus, with ablative, 251, 309.
Order of words, 275.

P

parātus, with gerund or infinitive, 269.
Participles, defined, 271; uses of, 272.
Perfect tense, 259.
Periphrastic conjugation, active, 233; passive, 234.
Personal pronouns, 223, 255.
Phrases, defined, 242.
Place, expressions of, 248, 249, 253.
Pluperfect tense, 259.
plūs, in comparisons, 250.
Polysyndeton, 277.
Possession, ways of expressing, 285.
Possessive pronouns, 224, 255.
possum, conjugated, 236.
postquam, with temporal clauses, 263.
potior, with genitive, 245; with ablative, 250.
Predicate, 241; accusative, 248; genitive, 245; noun, 244.
Prefixes, 278.

DATE DUE

MAY 1 1 '00

Demco, Inc. 38-293

Second con
sion, 215.
Secondary object, 247; tenses, 260.
Semi-deponent verbs, 235.
Sentences, defined, 241; classified, 242.
Vocative case, 244.
volō, conjugated, 239.

W

With, how expressed, 288.
Word order, 275.

CINCINNATI BIBLE COLLEGE & SEM. LIBRARY
870.01 C128c main
Caesar, Julius/Caesar's Gallic war, book
3 4320 00035 9143

870.01 C128c
Ac. #60836
Caesar, Julius.
Caesar's Gallic war
OCT 5 '88 RH 105530

GEORGE MARK ELLIOTT LIBRARY
The Cincinnati Bible Seminary

870.01 C128c
Ac. #60836
Caesar, Julius.
Caesar's Gallic war